



public works
& infrastructure

[Handwritten signature]
2024/08/23

Department:
Public Works and Infrastructure
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

MAINTENANCE, SERVICING AND REPAIR CONTRACT

TENDER No: H24/015AI
PROJECT No: WCS 056390
REFERENCE No: H24/015AI

**BOESMANSNEK, ONGELUKSNEK AND RAMATSELISO
LAND PORTS OF ENTRY: 36 MONTHS INFRASTRUCTURE
MAINTENANCE AND REPAIRS OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL,
MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL AND INSTALLATIONS
(APPOINTMENT OF A CONTRACTOR)**

TENDER DOCUMENT

AUGUST 2024

ISSUED BY:

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND INFRASTRUCTURE
Central Government Offices
c/o Bosman & Madiba (Vermeulen) Streets
PRETORIA
0001

NAME OF TENDERER:



TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOK 2 OF 2

SPECIFICATIONS

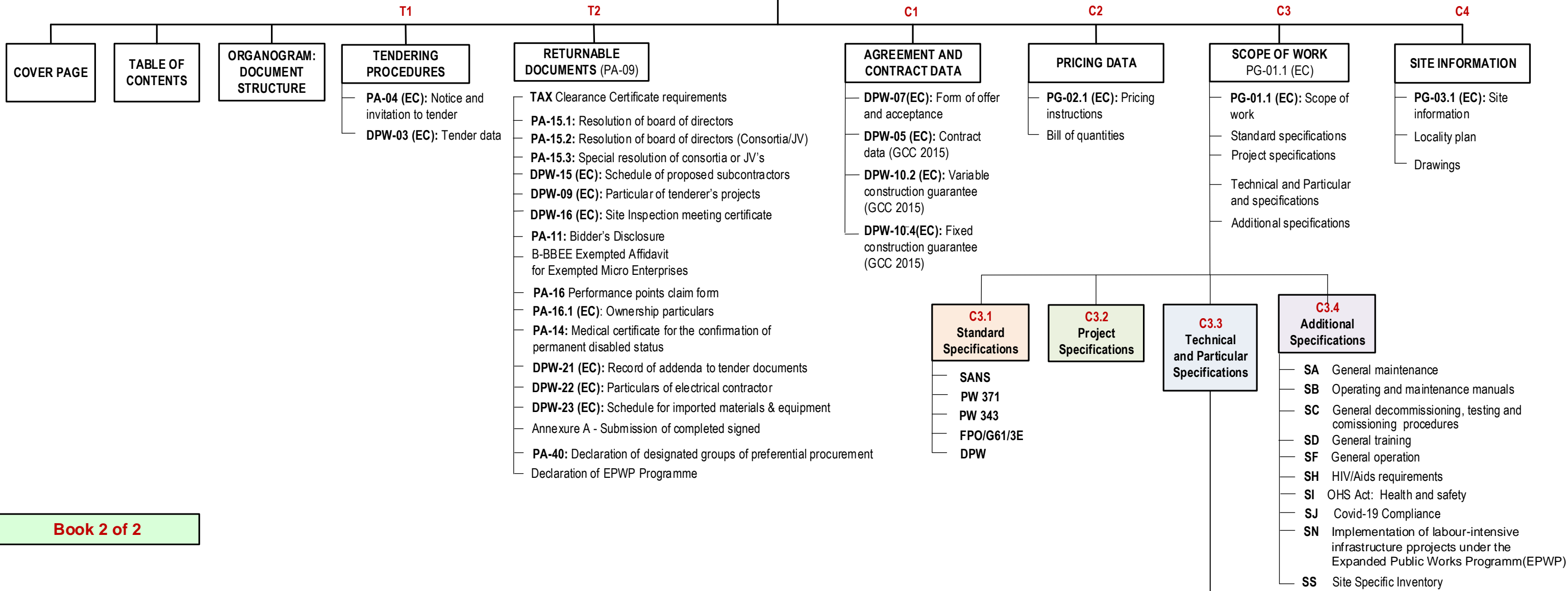
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS

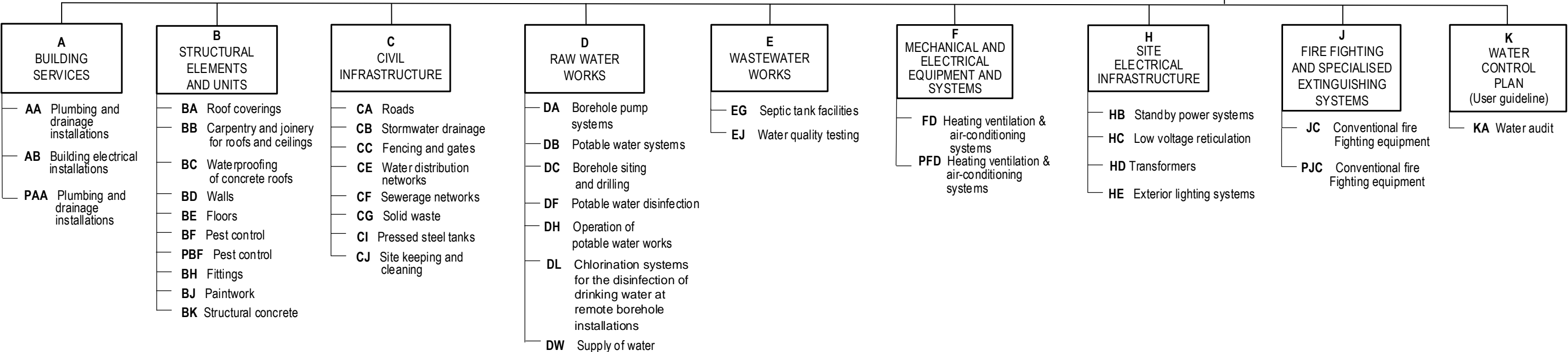
ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

**H24/015AI: BOESMANSNEK, ONGELUKSNEK AND RAMATSELISO LAND
PORTS OF ENTRY: 36 MONTHS INFRASTRUCTURE MAINTENANCE AND
REPAIRS OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL, MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL AND
INSTALLATIONS (APPOINTMENT OF A CONTRACTOR)**

Book 1 of 2



Book 2 of 2





Technical Specifications

AA	:	Plumbing and Drainage Installations
AB	:	Building Electrical Installations
BA	:	Roof Coverings
BB	:	Carpentry Joinery for Roofs and Ceilings
BC	:	Waterproofing of Concrete Roof
BD	:	Walls
BE	:	Floors
BF	:	Pest Control
BH	:	Fittings
BJ	:	Paintwork
BK	:	Structural Concrete
CA	:	Roads
CB	:	Stormwater Drainage
CC	:	Fencing and Gates
CE	:	Water Distribution Networks
CF	:	Sewerage Networks
CG	:	Solid Waste Management
CI	:	Pressed Steel Tanks
CJ	:	Site Keeping and Cleaning
DA	:	Borehole Pump Systems
DB	:	Borehole Drilling and Equipping
DC	:	Borehole Siting and Drilling
DF	:	Potable Water Disinfection and Sedimentation Units
DH	:	Operation of Potable Water Works
DL	:	Chlorination Systems for the Disinfection of Drinking Water at Remote Borehole Installations
DW	:	Supply of Water
EG	:	Septic Tank Facilities
EJ	:	Water Quality Testing
FD	:	Heating Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems
HB	:	Standby Power Systems
HC	:	Low Voltage Reticulation

BOESMANSNEK, ONGELUKSNEK AND RAMATSELISO LAND PORTS OF ENTRY: 36 MONTHS INFRASTRUCTURE MAINTENANCE AND REPAIRS OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL, MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL AND INSTALLATIONS (APPOINTMENT OF A CONTRACTOR)



HD	:	Substation Transformers
HE	:	Exterior Lighting Systems
JC	:	Conventional Fire-Fighting Equipment
KA	:	Water Audit

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

AA PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTALLATIONS

CONTENTS

AA 01	SCOPE
AA 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
AA 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
AA 04	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
AA 05	TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF MAINTENANCE WORK
AA 06	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
AA 07	OPERATING AND COMMISSIONING OF PLANT AND INSTALLATION
AA 08	GUARANTEE OF INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT
AA 09	MAINTENANCE WORK TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT
AA 10	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

AA 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the general maintenance and servicing of plumbing and drainage installations, which include the following:

- (a) Rainwater disposal systems
- (b) Soil and wastewater drainage systems
- (c) Domestic water distribution and reticulation systems
- (d) Sanitary and brassware equipment
- (e) Fire water piped reticulation networks.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document, and shall be read in conjunction with the additional and particular specifications compiled as part of this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

AA 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

AA 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

AA 02.01.01 SANS Specifications and codes

SANS 10400	-	The application of the National Building Regulations
SANS 1200 DB	-	Earthworks (pipe trenches)
SANS 1200 LB	-	Bedding (pipes)
SANS 1200	-	Medium-pressure pipelines
SANS 1200 LD	-	Sewers

SANS 10252. Part 1 - Water supply installations for buildings
SANS 10252. Part 2 - Drainage installations for buildings
SANS Specifications listed on page 3 of the DPW Specification PW 371

AA 02.01.02 Department of Public Works Specifications

PW 371 - Specification of materials and methods to be used – editions, August 2014 and December 2015.
Guide for architects concerning drainage, water supply and stormwater drainage
PW 343 - Building specifications for regional offices
FPO/G61/3E - Guide to architects
Drainage details.

AA 02.01.03 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993

The Contractor shall be required to comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993, Construction Regulations 2014 and related regulations. Non-compliance with these regulations, in any way whatsoever, will be adequate reason for suspending the works.

AA 02.01.04 Manufacturers' specifications, codes of practice and installation instructions

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

AA 02.01.05 Municipal regulations, laws and by-laws

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

AA 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The following additional general specifications and requirements shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified in the Particular Specification.

AA 03.01 GENERAL REPAIR AND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- (a) All materials and equipment supplied and installed shall be new, high quality and designed and manufactured to the relevant specifications and suitable for providing efficient, reliable and trouble-free service.
- (b) All work shall be executed in a first-class workman-like manner by qualified registered plumbers.
- (c) All equipment, component parts, fittings and materials supplied and/or installed, shall conform in respect of quality, manufacture, test and performance to the requirements of the applicable current SANS specifications and codes, except where otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer in writing.
- (d) All materials and workmanship which, in the opinion of the Engineer, are inferior to that specified for the work will be condemned. All condemned material and workmanship shall be replaced or rectified as directed and approved by the Engineer.
- (e) The Contractor shall submit a detailed list of the equipment and material to be used to the Engineer for approval before placing orders or commencing installation.

- (f) All new piping shall be installed and positioned such as to not impede on access routes, entrances and other services. The Contractor shall coordinate these new pipe routes taking other services and equipment into account.
- (g) All control equipment and serviceable items shall be installed and positioned such that they will be easily accessible and maintainable.
- (h) The Contractor shall make sure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during the repair and maintenance work to ensure the safety of the public, the Department of Public Works and the User Client.
- (i) Repair and maintenance work shall be programmed in such a manner as to ensure the shortest possible downtime of any service and the least inconvenience to the public, the Department of Public Works and the User Client. The Contractor shall make sure that the necessary notifications and notices are timeously put into place for these activities.

AA 03.02**GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR AND INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC WATER INSTALLATIONS**

- (a) All pipes are to be carefully examined for defects and flaws before installation and shall be neatly fitted. They shall be installed in such manner as to prevent the formation of air locks. Automatic air vents shall be installed on all high points of the installation.
- (b) The ends of all the pipes are to be cleaned, free from burrs, and rough edges, and joined together tightly. Where applicable, an approved pipe joint compound may be sparingly used with best quality hemp. All surplus or exposed hemp is to be thoroughly cleaned off joints before the painting of pipes.
- (c) All vertical pipes must be securely fixed with brackets and supports of approved type, fixed securely into the wall and not more than 40 mm from the wall. These fixings must be strictly adhered to.
- (d) Pipes installed in service ducts and ceiling voids are to be perfectly plumbed and secured with approved brackets, fixed securely at distances not exceeding the specified distances and not more than 40 mm away from the face of the walls or soffits. Pipes inside buildings and where specified shall be chased into walls, wrapped with building paper and properly secured and covered. Pipes must be free to move in the brackets.
- (e) Pipes passing through the walls and concrete floors are to be provided with suitable pipe sleeves extending 10 mm beyond finished floor or wall surfaces. All pipe fixings and throughways shall be free to allow movement for expansion and contraction. Any pipe fitting feeding a pipe which is rigidly secured by a structural element shall be securely anchored to prevent any stress developing between the fitting and the structural element.
- (f) Chromium or nickel-plated metal covering plates are to be provided and fixed securely to pipes passing through the ceilings and walls. This requirement is not applicable to concrete floors and ceilings.
- (g) Pipes passing through the ceilings or floors shall be offset from the wall to the front of the cornice with sufficient clearance to allow for the clear fixing of a ceiling plate. Pipes

installed directly through the cornice will not be allowed. In multi-storey buildings where wall thickness varies, the same shall apply.

- (h) All offsets are to be evenly and symmetrically set, the offsets being as high and as near the ceiling as possible.
- (i) Pipes shall be installed in such a manner to allow for contraction and expansion.
- (j) During construction all pipe ends shall be kept plugged to prevent any ingress of dirt, rubble, etc.
- (k) Damages, chases, holes, etc, in brickwork, concrete and other finishes resulting from repair, replacement and service work shall be made good to match the existing and shall include plaster, concrete work, brickwork, paint, tiling, ceilings and all required materials for the remedial action.
- (l) The work shall be of a high quality and executed by qualified tradesmen in accordance with the relevant specifications.

AA 03.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR AND INSTALLATION OF SOIL AND WASTEWATER INSTALLATIONS

The following requirements shall apply to this installation unless otherwise specified.

AA 03.03.01 Underground sanitary drainage installations

- (a) All manhole covers and frames shall be cast into the concrete cover slabs.
- (b) Manholes in trafficable areas shall be provided with type 1A heavy-duty cover and frame and surrounded by concrete slabs.
- (c) Fittings in the ground and below floor slabs shall be without access eyes.
- (d) Sewer pipes in the ground with a slope steeper than 1:5 and under surface beds shall be encased in concrete as detailed.
- (e) The sewer outside the boundary of the building complex shall be constructed strictly in accordance with the details and specifications of the local authorities.
- (f) Existing drainage invert levels and positions are to be checked against invert levels given on the drawings before commencing the work. The Contractor shall inform the Engineer immediately of any discrepancy.
- (g) All existing services are to be located and opened before commencing the proposed drainage work.
- (h) The drainage system shall be tested according to the specifications laid down by the NBRI. This shall be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.
- (i) During construction all pipe ends are to be suitably plugged to prevent any ingress of dirt, rubble, etc.
- (j) Modern technology video surveying equipment and detection equipment shall be utilised to establish blockage problems and indicate the positions of such problems.

- (k) Any drainage pipe within the 45° range below building foundations shall be encased in concrete or soilcrete as specified.
- (l) All manholes shall be constructed in accordance with professional standards.

AA 03.03.02 Above ground sanitary drainage installations

- (a) All accessible waste and soil fittings above ground level shall have inspection eyes. Inspection eyes shall not be underneath any fittings.
- (b) All single wash hand basins shall be connected to a 40 mm internal diameter waste pipe.
- (c) All groups of wash hand basins and sinks shall be connected to a 50 mm internal diameter waste pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- (d) All traps up to and including 50 mm diameter shall be of the "deep reseal" (75 mm) type.
- (e) The maximum bend on any single fitting shall be 45°, with the exception of ventilation pipes where bends of up to 90° may be used.
- (f) Drainage pipes and fittings running below concrete slabs and along walls and columns shall be suspended by means of approved type hangers, holderbats, etc, and at appropriate intervals, to provide a rigid, proper suspended system and as required by the manufacturer.
- (g) All ventilation pipes shall be finished off with a suitable durable grating.
- (h) All S-trap WC pans shall have plugged anti-siphon horns fitted to provide for cleaning access.

AA 03.04 PRESSURE TESTING OF PIPES

- (a) All new pipe installations under the repair Contract shall be pressure tested before being taken into use. The Engineer shall witness this pressure test.
- (b) Completed sections of the pipe installation shall be filled with water after all branches have been plugged, sealed or closed.
- (c) The section of pipe shall be hydraulically pressure tested by means of a suitable manually operated or mechanically driven pressure pump.
- (d) A pressure of at least 1,5 times the working pressure of the class rating of pipes or fittings shall be applied for a period of time specified in the specifications or as recommended by the manufacturers. (Refer to SANS 1200 L for minimum and maximum test pressures.)
- (e) Tests shall not be performed against closed valves.
- (f) Leakage which occurs shall be measured and calculated and checked against the allowable losses, as specified in SANS 1200 L.
- (g) If the completed section of pipe complies with all specifications and passes the tests and inspection, it can be approved by the Engineer and the Contractor instructed to backfill the open sections of trench at the joints and connections, where applicable.

- (h) The Contractor shall then proceed to build all the valve chambers, inspection chambers, etc, for underground installations and close off pipes in walls, voids and ducts for above ground installations.

AA 03.05 STERILISING OF WATER PIPES

- (a) Before any repaired and new pipeline is taken into use, the pipeline shall be sterilised over its complete length, including the fittings. The pipe shall be filled with potable water chlorinated to a concentration of 15 mg of chlorine per litre of water, which shall remain in contact with the inner surface of the pipeline for a period of not less than 24 hours. The pipeline shall be filled for sterilising in such a manner that no chlorine shock is created or air is trapped in the pipeline.
- (b) The Contractor shall submit full details of the proposed method of sterilising the pipeline to the Engineer for approval at least fourteen days prior to the commencement of sterilising.
- (c) The cost of water for filling the pipeline for sterilising shall be borne by the Contractor.
- (d) The Contractor shall provide all necessary materials, tools, equipment and labour required for sterilising the pipeline. After sterilising the pipeline the Contractor shall, at no extra cost, empty the pipeline and dispose of the water in a manner approved by the Engineer.

The Contractor may use the following products as a source of chlorine:

- chloride of lime to SANS 295 yielding 33 % free chlorine by mass;
- calcium hypochlorite to SANS 295 yielding 70 % free chlorine by mass;
- chlorine gas applied by chlorinator.

After sterilisation, an approved water quality test shall be carried out to a minimum number of 10 % of the total water points, randomly selected, evenly spread and marked on drawings. These tests shall include a full bacteriological test as per SANS 241 and the results shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval. Each abortive test shall be for the Contractor's account.

AA 03.05.01 Bacteriological requirements

When tested the water shall comply with the limits given in table AA 03.05.01/1.

TABLE AA 03.05.01/1

PROPERTY	RECOMMENDED MAXIMUM LIMIT	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE LIMIT
Total coliform bacteria count per 100 millilitre	Nil*	5
Faecal coliform bacteria count per 100 millilitre	Nil	Nil
Standard plate count per millilitre	100	Not specified

- *(a) If any coliform bacteria are found in a sample, a second sample must be taken immediately after the tests on the first sample have been completed. This sample shall be free from coliform bacteria.
- (b) Not more than 5 % of the total number of water samples (from any one reticulation system) tested per year may contain coliform bacteria.

The Engineer shall witness the sterilising of the pipes.

The Contractor shall ensure that during the sterilising procedure the necessary safety precautions are instituted to prevent the intake of water by the user and/or public from the system. On completion the system shall be properly flushed out.

AA 03.06 AIR TEST FOR SEWER AND DRAINS

The following air test requirements as specified in the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34 shall be applicable to all air tests on new sewers and drains installed under the repair work phase, and shall be executed by the Contractor and witnessed by the Engineer.

AA 03.06.01 Method of air testing

All openings in the pipeline are plugged by means of sewer testing plugs. The sewer plug at the lowest end of the pipeline is connected to an air supply hose, which is attached to a mechanically driven air blower, compressor or hand pump. Air is pumped into the pipeline at a pressure of approximately 375 mm water gauge. The pressure is held at this level for a period of two minutes to allow the air temperature to become constant. Subsequently the air supply is closed off and the time recorded for the air pressure to drop from 250 to 125 mm water gauge. If the recorded time is less than the value given in table AA 03.06.01/1 below, it means that the pipeline leaks and does not comply with the required standards of tightness. The apparatus required for the air test is commercially available.

The following requirements have to be taken into account when performing the air test:

- (a) Air-permeable pipelines such as vitrified clay or asbestos cement should preferably be tested when moist or wet.
- (b) The trench should be partially backfilled before the test is carried out. This is to stop possible temperature variations and to prevent damage to the pipeline during subsequent backfilling operations.
- (c) The testing equipment should be shielded from the direct rays of the sun.
- (d) Flexible joints are recommended for sewer and drain pipelines. Good quality flexible joints are superior to cement caulked joints and they also provide the pipeline with flexibility to prevent cracking due to subsequent soil movement.
- (e) The test method is very sensitive to flaws in the pipeline, such as cracks or leaking joints. The actual positions of flaws along the pipeline can be determined by using the special equipment.
- (f) If the pipeline is below the water table and subjected to external water pressure, the test method should be modified so that the final pressure value is higher than that of the external water pressure acting on the lowest part of the installation.

TABLE AA 03.06.01/1: MINIMUM TIMES FOR PRESSURE DROP OF 250 mm TO 125 mm WATER GAUGE

PIPE (DIAMETER (mm))	MINIMUM TIME (min - s)	CRITICAL LENGTH OF PIPELINE (m) (58 m ² INTERNAL SURFACE AREA)	MINIMUM TIME (S) FOR LONGER LENGTH (L) OF PIPELINE
100	1 - 58	184,6	0,640 L
150	2 - 57	123,1	1,439 L
200	3 - 56	92,3	2,559 L
225	4 - 26	82,1	3,239 L
250	4 - 55	73,8	3,998 L
300	5 - 54	61,5	5,757 L
375	7 - 23	49,2	8,996 L
450	8 - 51	41,0	12,954 L
525	10 - 20	35,2	17,632 L
600	11 - 49	30,8	23,030 L

AA 04 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of an inventory list and operating and maintenance manuals.

This shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance manuals.

All information shall be recorded and captured in electronic format as well as supplying the Department with three sets of hard copies.

AA 05 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

Except where otherwise provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall provide all labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out such tests. The Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests and he shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer, in writing, prior to commencing test.

In the event of the plant or installation not passing the test, the Employer shall be at liberty to deduct from the Contract price all reasonable expenses incurred by the Employer or the Engineer attending the repeated test.

Whenever any installation or equipment is to be operated for testing or adjusting as provided for above, the Contractor shall operate the entire system for as long a period as may be required to prove satisfactory performance at all times in the occupied space served by that system for up to twenty-four hours a day continuously until the system is handed over.

The Contractor shall provide all labour and supervision required for such operation and the Department may assign operating personnel as observers, but such observation time shall not be counted as instruction time.

After completing the installation or system, all equipment shall be tested, adjusted and readjusted until it operates to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall submit certificates of tests carried out to prove the performance of all equipment and also certificates to be obtained from all relevant authorities and statutory bodies, etc.

AA 06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

The Contractor shall institute an approved quality assurance (QA) system which shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval. The records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the Contract and be submitted to the Engineer at regular intervals as required.

AA 07 OPERATING AND COMMISSIONING OF PLANT AND INSTALLATION

On completion of the repair work and/or the installation of new systems the plant and equipment shall be put into operation after all tests and adjustments have been carried out to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The Contractor shall run and operate the system for a period of time as specified by the Engineer and train the staff of the User Client to operate and maintain the system. This period of time shall not exceed one month.

Logging of the operation of the installations shall commence immediately upon start-up.

The Contractor shall submit a full commissioning report.

AA 08 GUARANTEE OF INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT

The Contractor shall provide and obtain guarantees from the manufacturer(s) and/or supplier(s) to the effect that each piece of new equipment, supplied and installed under the repair contract, shall comply with the required performance and will function as part of the complete system.

All new equipment, including the complete new installations and the systems as a whole shall be guaranteed for a period of 12 (twelve) months commencing on the day of issue of a certificate of completion for repair work of the installation.

AA 09 REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

AA 09.01 GENERAL

During the repair and maintenance Contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the specified Particular Specification details.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

The repair work items shall be listed in tabular form in the Particular Specification with all relevant details, such as capacity, size, manufacturer, model number, etc.

All repair work shall be executed within the specified durations listed in the Appendix to Tender. All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of 12 months from date of issue of a certificate of completion for the repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repair work items for the plumbing and drainage installations shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Rainwater disposal systems
- (b) Soil and wastewater drainage systems
- (c) Domestic water distribution and reticulation networks
- (d) Sanitary and brassware equipment
- (e) Fire water piped reticulation networks.

AA 09.02 RAINWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEMS

AA 09.02.01 General

Repair work to the rainwater disposal system shall be detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded pipework and fittings;
- (b) Replacement of damaged, broken and missing rainwater outlets, stormwater catch pit gratings, manhole covers and frames and floor drains;
- (c) Repair work to damaged manholes, catch pits, kerb inlets, channel drains and drain points including builder's work and benching;
- (d) Initial unblocking and clearing of all rainwater drainage pipes, manholes, catch pits, drain points, channel drains and gutters;
- (e) Repair and upgrading of drainage system where necessary;
- (f) Provision of additional rainwater drainage points where outlets are insufficient and ponding occurs;
- (g) Prevention of any unauthorised effluent into this drainage system;
- (h) Reinstatement and making good of walls, tiling, floors, concrete, road surfaces, etc, to approved acceptable levels where any repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed;
- (i) Realign and fix gutters to correct falls where necessary, including additional brackets where required.

AA 09.02.02 Material and equipment specification for rainwater disposal systems

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following:

(a) Vitrified clay pipe and fittings

Vitrified clay pipes shall only be used for underground installations. The pipes and fitting shall strictly conform to SANS 559. The pipes and fittings shall have a minimum crushing strength of 45 kN/m.

The joining method to be used shall be polypropylene couplings with integral rubber seal similar or equal to Vitrosleeve in accordance with SANS 974 allowing up to 2,5° angular movement per joint and 5 mm line displacement per joint. The joint shall retain an effective water seal with regard to above conditions with a 6 m water head.

Pipes shall be cut using an approved pipe cutter and the ends shall then be trimmed by means of a pipe trimmer to remove any sharp edges.

The piping system shall be tested as indicated in this specification.

(b) Supercast cast-iron pipe and fittings

Supercast cast-iron pipes can be used for underground and above ground installations. Plain-ended cast-iron pipes and fittings, manufactured from 150, grade A grey iron in accordance with SANS 1034 shall be used. Fittings and pipes shall be free of pinholes, blowholes, blemishes, flash and foundry sand and have a smooth bore. All pipes and fittings shall be sand-blasted and coated on the inside and outside by submersion in a corrosion inhibiting oxide primer or bitumen paint.

The pipes and fittings shall be joined by means of stainless steel neoprene couplings as supplied by the manufacturer of the pipe system. The coupling shall be installed according to the manufacturer's specification and tightened with a torque wrench to a torque of 6,8 Nm.

(c) uPVC pipe and fittings above ground

uPVC pipes and fittings can be used for above ground installations.

For pipe sizes larger than 160 mm diameter uPVC class 6 pressure pipe to SANS 966 shall be used with prefabricated uPVC bends and junctions. Prefabrication shall be done by means of hot-air welding of fittings to be covered with three layers of fibreglass reinforced lining over welded sections. The resin to be used shall be as specified by the manufacturer for usage with PVC. Bends shall be manufactured out of 3 to 4 sections per bend. Pipe joints shall be done by means of couplings fixed with solvent cement for PVC piping. This joint shall be reinforced with a fibreglass lining of three layers.

Piping has to be supported and bracketed with properly sized and designed brackets consisting of two half sections clamped over the pipe and hanged with two hanger rods.

Pipes to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification.

(d) Prefabricated galvanized steel piping and fittings above ground

Prefabricated galvanized steel piping can be used for above ground rainwater drainage systems. The pipe to be used shall be plain ended medium gauge uncoated pipe to SANS 62 galvanized to SANS 763. All fittings are to be manufactured from the same material welded with flanged ends or rolled ends to fit clambon fittings. Fittings are only to be galvanized after manufacturing. All joints to be either flanged or equipped with clambon couplings. All fittings and junction to be 45° sections.

The pipe system shall be properly secured and bracketed at regular intervals with correctly sized and designed galvanized brackets.

Pipes are to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification.

(e) HDPE pipe and fittings

HDPE pipes and fittings can be used for underground and above ground installations where specified. Pipes shall be plain ended and only HDPE bends and fittings shall be used. Jointing of pipes and fittings shall be done by butt welding, electro-sleeve couplings and/or flanged joints. Pipes and fittings shall only be installed by approved installers and the Contractor shall furnish a certificate to this effect. Pipes and fittings shall be installed strictly according to the equipment application technique.

Pipes to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification.

(f) Roof outlets

Where waterproofing is installed, as for roof slabs, an adjustable roof outlet/drainage point to be used consisting of a cast-iron unit with cast-iron ring clamp to fit over waterproofing edge and an adjustable height outlet to fit in with the screed level. For surfaces such as paving and walkways a flat grating of brass or cast iron shall be used with a catch basket. Within paving blocks a square top frame shall be used. For roof outlets a domed grating is to be used. Where roofs are to be covered with stones, a mesh shall be installed to prevent any stones from entering the rainwater system.

Two-way side outlets shall be used in cases where required.

Floor and roof outlets to be fitted to cast-iron pipe by means of SSN couplings.

AA 09.03 SOIL AND WASTEWATER DRAINAGE SYSTEM**AA 09.03.01 General**

Repair work to the soil and wastewater drainage system shall be detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded above and underground pipework and fittings;
- (b) Replacement of damaged, broken and missing gully gratings, manhole covers and frames, cleaning eye covers, screws and bolts, inspection eye covers, end caps and vent cowls;
- (c) Repair work to damaged manholes, gullies, cleaning eyes, floor drains, etc, including builder's work and benching;

- (d) Initial unblocking and cleaning of all drainage pipework, traps, floor drains, gullies and sanitary ware equipment;
- (e) Video surveying of all underground drainage pipework to establish root ingress, damaged pipework, fat build-up, blockages, incorrect falls, sagging and as-built information. This survey shall be utilised to establish the extent of repair and upgrade work to be executed;
- (f) Repair and upgrading of soil and wastewater drainage systems where necessary;
- (g) Repair work to bracketing systems including fixing and repair of existing brackets and the introduction of additional brackets where required;
- (h) Repair, re-fix and bracket sanitary ware equipment to walls, floors, etc, where required;
- (i) Repair, replace and clean out sanitary ware and equipment traps;
- (j) Test pipe system, traps and equipment for leakage;
- (k) Empty, clean out separators, clean out strainers, and test for leak tightness, repair and recommission oil and grease separators. Check the conformance of the capacities of the oil and grease separators in relation to the facilities they serve; where necessary these shall be upgraded and where no separators have been provided, new separators shall be provided;
- (l) Reinstatement of walls, tiling, floors, concrete finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an approved acceptable level where any repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed;
- (m) Prepare, paint and repaint pipework and equipment where necessary, in accordance with Technical Specification BH: Fittings.

AA 09.03.02 Material and equipment specification for soil and wastewater drainage systems

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following:

(a) Vitrified clay pipe and fittings

Vitrified clay pipes shall only be used for underground installations. The pipes and fittings shall strictly conform to SANS 559. The pipes and fittings shall have a minimum crushing strength of 45 kN/m.

The jointing method to be used shall be polypropylene couplings with integral rubber seal similar or equal to Vitrosleeve according to SANS 974 allowing up to 2,5 ° angular movement per joint and 5 mm line displacement per joint. The joint shall retain an effective water seal with regard to the above conditions with a 6 meter water head.

Pipes shall be cut using an approved pipe cutter and the ends shall then be trimmed by means of a pipe trimmer to remove any sharp edges.

The installation shall be tested according to the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

(b) Supercast cast-iron pipe and fittings

Supercast cast-iron pipes can be used for underground and above ground installations. Plain-ended spun cast-iron pipes and fittings manufactured from 150 grade A grey iron in accordance with SANS 1034 shall be used. Fittings and pipes shall be free of pinholes, blowholes, blemishes, flash and foundry sand and to have a smooth bore. All pipes and fittings are to be sand-blasted and coated on the inside and outside by submersion in corrosion inhibited oxide primer or bitumen paint.

The pipes and fittings shall be joined by means of stainless steel neoprene couplings as supplied by the manufacturer of the pipe system. The coupling shall be installed according to the manufacturer's specification and be tightened with a torque wrench to a torque of 6,8 Nm.

Where cast-iron stub stack overflow gullies are used with pipe materials such as PVC a rubber O-ring shall be used to fit over the PVC pipe into the cast-iron fitting. The joint shall be grouted up afterwards.

Above ground piping shall be bracketed with properly sized and designed brackets according to the manufacturer's specification at correct intervals.

The piping system shall be tested in accordance with the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

(c) uPVC soil and waste pipe and fittings

UPVC soil, vent and waste pipe systems can be used for underground and above ground drainage installations. This piping shall conform in all respects to SANS 971 for underground systems and to SANS 967 for above ground systems.

All underground pipes, as well as soil pipes above ground, shall be joined by means of rubber ring seal couplings and fittings in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. All waste and vent pipes shall be joined by means of solvent weld fittings and couplings. The solvent weld glue to be used shall be as specified by the pipe manufacturer, allowing for thermal contraction and expansion.

The piping system shall be pressure tested in accordance with the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

(d) Structural wall uPVC pipes and fittings

Structural wall uPVC drainage pipe can be used for underground drainage systems. This piping system shall be used with standard underground uPVC pipe fittings, equipped with rubber ring joints. The pipe shall be equipped with z-lock type rubber ring joints.

The piping system shall be pressure tested in accordance with the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

(e) HDPE pipes and fittings

HDPE pipes and fittings can be used for underground and above ground installations. Pipes shall be plain ended and only HDPE bends and fittings shall be used. Jointing of pipes and fittings shall be done by butt welding, electro-sleeve couplings and/or flanged joints. Pipes and fittings may only be installed by approved installers and the

Contractor shall furnish a certificate to this effect. Pipes and fittings shall be installed strictly according to the equipment application technique.

The complete system shall be pressure tested in accordance with the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

(f) Stainless steel floor traps and floor channels

Stainless steel floor traps and channels shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel with a load capacity of 1 500 kg. The floor traps shall have a flow capacity of 3 litre/second.

The units shall be fitted with a double water seal, large sludge box and shall be easily dismantlable for cleaning purposes. Tiling keys and waterproofing flanges shall be provided where required. Side inlets with diameter of 50 mm shall be provided for waste connections to other equipment where required.

(g) Cast-iron floor traps

Cast-iron floor traps shall be manufactured from cast iron and shall be fitted with a water seal and a large sludge box and lid to be easy removable for maintenance purposes. The unit shall be designed such as to provide access to the drainage system and to be used as a cleaning point.

AA 09.04 DOMESTIC WATER DISTRIBUTION AND RETICULATION NETWORKS

AA 09.04.01 General

Repair work to the domestic water distribution and reticulation networks shall be detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include, but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded above and underground pipe work, fittings and equipment;
- (b) Repair, replace and service valves, which shall include new gaskets, gland packings, seals, bolts and nuts, etc;
- (c) Where valves do not close properly, all these valves shall be refurbished, descaled and replaced where necessary;
- (d) Repair, clean and service all strainers, including the replacement of strainer elements where corroded and installation of new gaskets;
- (e) Repair, service, test and readjust pressure-reducing valves. Pressure gauges are to be recalibrated and checked. Up and downstream pressures are to be logged. Downstream pressure has to be adjusted to an acceptable level, taking into account the allowable working pressure of the system and its components;
- (f) Repair, service and check the proper functioning of all non-return valves;
- (g) Repair, service, readjust and calibrate all safety and expansion relief valves;
- (h) Repair, service and clean out all air release valves and vacuum breakers;
- (i) Repair work to bracketing systems including fixing and repair of existing brackets and provision of additional brackets where required;

- (j) Hot-water pipe lagging and cladding shall be inspected, repaired, sealed and replaced where required;
- (k) Repair, service and log readings of water meters including cleaning of integral strainers;
- (l) Water storage tanks are to be emptied, cleaned out, repaired, sealed and put back into operation. Ball float and/or filling valves to these tanks are to be serviced and repaired where required;
- (m) Water pipes are to be sampled for corrosion and scaling. The Engineer will evaluate the actions to be taken if the results of this sampling indicate that attention is required;
- (n) Water supply has to be sampled and chemically analysed for the suitability to the systems and materials it serves;
- (o) Domestic geysers are to be repaired and serviced in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and shall include descaling, replacement of elements, testing for any leaks, checking of safety valve operation (replace if required), testing of the thermostat operation and set point (replace if necessary);
- (p) Pressure test and sterilise repaired new installation and equipment;
- (q) Reinstatement and making good of walls, tiling, floors, concrete, finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an acceptable level where repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed.

AA 09.04.02 Material and equipment specification for domestic water distribution and reticulation networks

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Copper pipe installation
 - (i) The installation of copper piping systems shall be done in accordance with the manufacturer's code of practice and all relevant codes, standards and regulations.
 - (ii) Copper pipes shall only be installed downstream of galvanized mild steel pipes when applicable.
 - (iii) Where dissimilar metals are joined, dielectric or isolating couplings shall be used. This is not required where copper and brass dezincified alloys join.
 - (iv) Copper pipes shall be of the hard drawn type Class 0 in accordance with SANS 460 and shall be joined by means of capillary soldered type fittings. No compression type fittings shall be allowed unless otherwise specified.
 - (v) Copper capillary soldered type fittings shall be used in accordance with ISO 2016, SANS 1067, DIN 2856 or BSS 864.
 - (vi) The soldering flux to be used shall be water based and easily flushed out, withstand temperatures above 240 °C and shall contain no ammonia. The flux shall be non-toxic when dissolved in water.

- (vii) The solder to be used shall be in accordance with SANS 24 and shall consist of a material containing 97 % tin and 3 % copper. Solders containing lead, resin core and acid core shall not be used.
- (viii) The heat source to be used shall be propane gas with induction air, at a temperature not higher than 240 °C. The pipe ends and fittings shall be cleaned and waxed with an approved solder flux, before soldering. The pipe and fittings shall then be fitted together and heated to the correct temperature before the solder is applied. Care must be taken not to add too much or too little solder to the joint. Immediately after setting of the solder the joint shall be wiped clean with a wet cloth. Pipes shall be washed out as soon as possible after jointing and all traces of flux shall be removed.
- (ix) All bronze or brass equipment and fittings shall be of the dezincified type.
- (x) Copper pipes and fitting shall be installed strictly to the manufacturer's specification and include the following:
 - (1) No labour bends;
 - (2) Provision for thermal contraction and expansion of pipes;
 - (3) Pipe brackets shall be installed at appropriate positions where pipes are installed on surface level;
 - (4) Pipes chased or built into walls or floors shall be wrapped with two layers of building paper or similar approved material. Hot and cold water pipes running next to each other shall be at least 50 mm apart;
 - (5) Equipment fixed to copper pipe outlets, where the pipes are surface mounted or built into walls, shall be done by means of copper wall plate fittings on the copper pipes, properly secured to the structure to prevent structural damage to soldered joints.
- (xi) Pipe hangers and brackets shall be of copper, copper alloy or non-conductive materials. No piece of copper pipe shall touch any other conductive surface. Brackets shall be designed to structurally support and fix the pipe system, and shall allow enough clearance from walls, soffits, etc, to insulate hot-water pipes and maintain equipment.
- (xii) Pipe hangers and brackets shall be installed according to the manufacturer's specification on the following maximum spacings:

PIPE DIAMETER (mm)	HORIZONTAL (metre)	VERTICAL (metre)
15	1,3	1,9
22 and 28	1,9	2,5
35 and 42	2,5	2,8
54	2,5	3,9
67 – 108	2,8	3,9

- (xiii) All copper pipes open to structural damage, shall be protected by steel sleeves or structurally designed cover.
- (xiv) All pipework shall be pressure tested and sterilised as specified.

- (xv) Where flanged fittings are used, cadmium-plated bolts, nuts and spring washer shall be used to joint these flanges.
- (xvi) All hot-water pipes shall be lagged as specified.
- (xvii) Shut-off valves shall be installed on all branch pipes and ball-o-stop valves shall be installed on all connectors to basin pillar cocks, sink mixers, cistern type WCs and other fittings.
- (xviii) All types shall be marked in accordance with SANS 10140 or as specified by the Engineer.
- (xix) Approved type expansion bellows shall be installed where required for expansion and contraction to prevent excessive strain on fittings and soldered joints.

(b) Galvanized steel pipe installations

- (i) All galvanized steel pipes shall be medium gauge mild steel screwed and socketed pipes to SANS 62 and shall be normalised and marked as such by the manufacturer. Pipes shall be hot-dip galvanized to SANS 763.
- (ii) All fittings shall be malleable cast-iron fittings to SANS 509 and galvanized to SANS 763.
- (iii) All 80 mm diameter and larger pipes shall be joined with Class 16 flanged couplings to SANS 1123/1600. The bolts, nuts and spring washers to be used on these joints shall be cadmium-plated.
- (iv) In pipe ducts and elsewhere pipes shall be fixed onto walls, soffits, etc, with approved type of supports, holderbats, clamps, etc. Brackets shall be designed to structurally support and fix the pipe system and shall have enough clearance from walls, soffits, etc, to insulate hot-water pipes and maintain equipment.
- (v) Pipes shall be supported according to the manufacturer's specifications with approved brackets at the following maximum intervals:

PIPE DIAMETER (mm)	HORIZONTAL (metre)	VERTICAL (metre)
15 dia to 20 dia	1,200	1,830
32 dia to 40 dia	1,830	2,450
50 dia to 150 dia	2,450	3,050

- (vi) Pipes shall be installed in such a manner as to prevent air locks. A minimum rise of 1:250 shall be maintained to high points, which shall be fitted with suitable air release valves.
- (vii) All pipes shall be marked according to SANS 10140 or as specified by the Engineer. All surface pipes shall be painted.
- (viii) Pipes shall be installed flush unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer.
- (ix) Provision shall be made for thermal contraction and expansion.

- (x) The type of pipe joint compound shall be approved by the Engineer and used sparingly with good quality hemp. For pipes larger than 80 mm diameter a jointing compound such as Epidermix 32 shall be used.
- (xi) Any pipe buried shall have at least 900 mm cover and be coated and wrapped to SANS 1117 and tested in the presence of the Engineer.
- (xii) All exposed hot-water pipes shall be lagged as specified.
- (xiii) All pipework and fittings shall be pressure tested and sterilised as specified.
- (xiv) Valves shall be installed on all branch pipes and ball-o-stop valves on all connectors to basin pillar cocks, sink mixers, cistern type WCs and other fittings.
- (xv) Approved type expansion bellows shall be installed where required for expansion and contraction to prevent excessive strain on fittings and pipe joints.

(c) uPVC underground pipe installations

- (i) uPVC piping shall conform to SANS 966 with rubber ring type joints.
- (ii) All bends shall be uPVC type fittings with rubber ring joints.
- (iii) All other fittings such as T-pieces, reducers, flanges, etc, shall be bitumen-dipped cast-iron rubber ring jointed fittings to SANS 546.
- (iv) No solvent weld type fittings will be allowed.
- (v) All cast-iron fittings shall be coated and wrapped to SANS 1117.
- (vi) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand-bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm sand before backfilling.
- (vii) All backfilling shall be in accordance with SANS 1200 DB and to the Engineer's and approval.
- (viii) Pipe trenching and bedding:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface Bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90 % of modified AASHTO density

- (ix) All thrust blocks shall be cast between the pipe and the undisturbed trench material.
- (x) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the UPVC pipe. At the thrust blocks the bend shall be wrapped with a Densopol 80 HT Tape or similar approved.

- (xi) HDPE pipe connections to uPVC pipes up to 50 mm can be done by means of SG Iron manufactured saddles with the appropriate gaskets and cadmium-plated bolts and nuts.
- (xii) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (xiii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered, to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (xiv) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

(d) HDPE underground pipe installations

- (i) HDPE piping shall be Type 4 HDPE pipe to SANS 533.
- (ii) All fittings shall be of Plasson compression type and shall conform to ISO/DIS 3458.
- (iii) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm of sand of selected material.
- (iv) All backfilling shall be in accordance with SANS 1200 DB and to the Engineer's and approval.
- (v) Pipe trenching and bedding:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90 % of modified AASHTO density

- (vi) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the HDPE pipe. At these points the fittings shall be wrapped with Densopol 80 HT tape or similar approved.
- (vii) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (viii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (ix) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

(e) Valves

- (i) Gate valves underground in valve chambers to connect to uPVC piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves are to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadiene rubber covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadiene rubber O-rings and seals, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valves shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665 and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valves shall be fitted with a square key spindle top to close the valves in clockwise direction and socket ends to SANS 665 to fit into uPVC Class 12 pipe and installed to detail.

(ii) Gate valves underground in valve chamber to connect to HDPE piping

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valves shall conform to SANS 776 Class 125. The valves shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa. The valve shall be fitted with a hand wheel on an extended spindle shaft of 700 mm to close in a clockwise direction and installed to detail.

(iii) Gate valves above ground for temperatures up to 40 °C to connect to steel piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves are to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadiene rubber covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadiene rubber O-rings and seals, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valves shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665 and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valves shall be fitted with flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16, hand wheel to close the valves in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90 ° from upright.

(iv) Gate valves above ground for temperatures above 40 °C to connect to steel piping (65 NB mm and larger)

Gate valves shall be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 963 Grade 42, cast-iron gate, gunmetal seat and gate rings, high-tensile bronze spindle, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valves shall conform to SANS 665 and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa and a temperature of 90 °C.

The valve shall be fitted with flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16, hand wheel to close the valve in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or side ways to a maximum 90° from upright.

(v) Gate valves above ground to fit to copper pipes (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves shall be equipped with non-rising spindle, gunmetal bronze or dezincified brass body, gunmetal or dezincified brass gate and graphite asbestos packing in the gland.

The valve shall be fitted with a hand wheel to close in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to maximum 90° from upright.

The valve shall be equipped with flanges to SANS 1123, table 16, hand wheel to close the valve in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90° from upright.

(vi) Gate valves above ground for temperatures up to 100 °C (up to 50 mm NB)

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valve shall conform to SANS 776, Class 125.

The valves shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valve shall be equipped with a hand wheel to close in a clockwise direction.

The valve shall be installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90° from upright and shall be so placed with other fittings to be removable without cutting the pipework.

(vii) Ball-O-Stop valves (15 mm diameter - 25 mm diameter)

These valves shall be full-way ballcock type with BSP threaded ends. The valves shall conform to SANS 1056, Part 3, shall be rated for a test pressure of 2 000 kPa, and shall be chrome-finished when exposed.

(viii) Angle regulating valves

These valves shall be 15 mm chromium-plated angle regulating valves with a 350 mm chromium-plated copper tube and cap nuts where required.

(f) Strainers

(i) Strainers for connection to steel or UPVC pipes (65 mm NB and larger)

These strainers shall be of the Y-type with cast-iron body, stainless steel or bronze strainer element and shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16. The hole sizes of the strainer element shall be maximum 1 mm diameter and be removable without dismantling of pipework. The strainer shall be suitable for a temperature of up to 90 °C at a 1 000 kPa pressure rating and installed with the element facing downwards or a maximum of 45° sideways.

(ii) Strainers for connection to copper pipes (65 mm NB and larger)

These strainers shall be of the Y-type with bronze or dezincified brass body, stainless steel strainer element and must be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16. The hole sizes of the strainer element shall be maximum 1 mm diameter. The strainer element shall be removable without dismantling of pipework. The strainer shall be suitable for a temperature of up to 90 °C at a 1 000 kPa pressure rating and installed with the element facing downwards or a maximum of 45° sideways.

(iii) Strainers for connection to steel and copper pipes (up to 50 mm NB)

These strainers shall be of the Y-type with bronze or dezincified brass body, stainless steel strainer element and must be equipped with BSP threaded socket ends. The hole sizes of the strainer element shall be maximum 0,8 mm diameter. The strainer shall be suitable for a temperature of up to 90 °C at a pressure rating of 1 000 kPa and installed with the element facing downwards or a maximum of 45° sideways.

(g) Non-return valves(i) Non-return valves for cold water (65 mm NB and larger)

The non-return valve shall be of the spring-loaded dual flap plate type fitted between two flanges (wafer).

The non-return valve shall be equipped with a cast-iron body, aluminium bronze plates, stainless steel springs and neoprene seals on the plates. The valves shall be suitable for a working pressure of 1 000 kPa.

(ii) Non-return valves for hot water (up to 100 mm NB) and cold water (up to 50 mm NB)

These non-return valves shall be of the spring-loaded piston type, with bronze or dezincified brass body, stainless steel spring and bronze disc with neoprene seal fitted with BSP threaded socket ends. The valve shall be suitable for a working pressure of 1 000 kPa and a temperature of up to 90 °C. All valves shall be installed as to be removable without extensive pipework removal.

(h) Air release valves and vacuum breakers(i) Double orifice double-acting air release valves with sizes from 50 mm NB to 200 mm NB

This air release valve shall be fitted with small and large orifice. The air release valve shall be fitted with a cast-iron body, stainless steel or fibreglass balls, integral shut-off valve and flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16.

The valve shall be suitable for maximum pressure of 1 600 kPa.

(ii) Single orifice air release valves for main water lines with sizes from 25 mm NB to 50 mm NB

This air release valve shall be fitted with a small orifice, cast-iron body, fibre glass or stainless steel ball float and BSP threaded inlet.

When the valve is installed a shut-off valve shall be installed on the inlet side.

The valve shall be suitable for maximum pressure of 1 600 kPa.

(iii) Single orifice double purpose air release valves for domestic water lines up to 15 mm NB

This air release valve shall be fitted with a stainless steel float, brass or cast steel body with an integral shut-off valve fitted.

The valve shall be capable to withstand a working pressure of 1 000 kPa at 110 °C.

(iv) Vacuum breaker up to 40 mm diameter

The vacuum breaker shall be fitted with neoprene seal, spring-loaded disc in a dezincified brass or bronze body. The valve shall seal watertight and shall be designed to withstand a working pressure of 1 000 kPa and a temperature of 90 °C.

(i) Pressure-reducing valves

(i) Combination pressure-reducing stations

Where a high peak flow as well as a small flow can occur and the small flow is out of the range of the large pressure-reducing valve, a small pressure-reducing valve is installed in parallel with the large pressure-reducing valve. The two pressure-reducing valves in parallel shall be set according to the manufacturer's specification.

(ii) Large pressure-reducing valves (65 mm NB and larger)

This pressure-reducing valve shall be equipped with a cast-iron body, neoprene nylon-reinforced diaphragm, bronze seal disc washer, stainless steel shaft and flanged ends. The valve shall be pilot operated and shall be designed to handle high flows at a minimum head loss.

The valve must be adjustable to handle a wide range of incoming pressures at a constant downstream pressure.

The valve shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123, table 16.

(iii) Small pressure-reducing valves (15 mm NB to 50 mm NB)

This pressure-reducing valve shall be equipped with brass body, balanced single seat and integral strainer. The valve shall be able to handle a wide range of incoming pressures while the downstream pressure stays constant with maximum inlet pressure of 1 000 kPa and a maximum water temperature of 40 °C.

The valve shall be equipped with BSP male threaded brass union couplings.

(j) Water meters

(i) Combination water meters

Where high peak flow, as well as a small flow, can occur and the small flow is out of the registration range of the large water meter, a small water meter shall be installed in parallel with the large water meter to cater for the small flows with integral automatic change-over valves. These valves shall be designed to have a minimum pressure drop at operating point.

(ii) Water meters (50 mm NB and larger)

These water meters shall be of the dry type with all gears and transmission and roller counters in a dry head, and shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123, cast-iron body with high quality corrosion-proof coating. The meter shall be protected from magnetic fields and sealed to prevent tampering with adjustments. The meter must be able to work up to a pressure of 1600 kPa under a maximum water temperature of 40 °C. The scale of meter must be in cubic metre (m³) and equipped with needle indicators reading in litres. Accuracy of meter shall be not less than 98 %.

The meters shall be installed with leading and trailing lengths of pipes to the manufacturer's specification.

(iii) Water meters (up to 50 mm NB)

The meter shall be of the volumetric rotary piston type with brass body equipped with union couplers. The meter reading must be in kilolitres. The meter shall have an accuracy of not less than 98 %. The meter must be able to operate up to a water pressure of 1000 kPa at a water temperature of 40 °C.

The meters shall be installed with leading and trailing lengths of pipes to the manufacturer's specification.

(k) Adjustable balancing valves

Adjustable balancing valves shall be supplied and installed as indicated on the applicable drawings. A portable differential pressure meter shall be used, with all the necessary pipes, shut-off valves and air release valves to set the balancing valves. A graph chart shall be supplied to indicate the flow units against the valve adjustment and as the pressure differential over the valve.

The pressure gauge shall be calibrated according to the current accepted SI units.

The calibrated adjustable balancing valves shall be of the angle valve type equipped with bronze valve body, bronze disc, internal seals with BSP threaded ends. The valve shall be fitted with stop-cock connection ends on inlet and outlet onto which the differential pressure gauge can be coupled. The valve shall be equipped with an indicator on the valve handle to show the position of the valve opening. The valve shall be suitable for operating at a temperature of 90 °C against a pressure of 1 000 kPa.

(l) Semi-conductive reheating tape for hot-water pipes

Semi-conductive reheating tape shall be strapped to the hot-water pipes under the thermal insulation. This reheating tape shall be installed strictly according to the manufacturer's specification.

The system shall be fitted with all the necessary end seals, tee splices, straps, etc, as required by the supplier.

The reheating tape shall be of the self-regulating type equipped with a parallel circuit, self-regulating conductive core, polyolefin jacket and tinned copper braid on the outside.

The reheating tape shall be sized to maintain an operating temperature of 60 °C of water inside the pipe.

(m) Expansion bellows

(i) Expansion bellows for pipes (50 mm NB and larger)

Expansion bellows shall be of the rubber-lined type fitted between flanges. These bellows shall be suitable for an operating temperature of -10 °C to 110 °C at an operating pressure of 1 500 kPa. The bellows shall be installed strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

(ii) Expansion bellows for copper pipes (up to 40 mm NB)

These expansion bellows shall have a copper body with corrugated stainless steel lining and soldered capillary type couplings. The bellows shall be capable to withstand a working pressure of 600 kPa at a temperature of 140 °C. Installation shall be strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

(n) Lagging of hot-water pipes

(i) Preformed closed cell flame retarded flexible insulation sections

Where pipes are installed in service ducts, ceiling voids and where specified the pipes shall be insulated with Thermaflex preformed pipe insulation sections. This insulation shall be used with pipe systems where the maximum temperature is 80 °C. For a temperature higher than 80 °C preformed fibreglass sections shall be used with galvanized sheet metal muffs.

All bends and T-pieces shall be cut in a 45° mitre box to form a neat joint. All joints shall be glued together with a contact adhesive supplied by the manufacturer. Pipe sizes larger than 50 mm diameter shall be insulated with preformed fibreglass sections with canvas covers glued together with cold wood glue.

Thermaflex thickness for various pipe sizes shall be as follows:

PIPE SIZE (STEEL)	PIPE SIZE (COPPER)	THERMAFLEX THICKNESS
50 mm dia	54 mm dia	20 mm
40 mm dia	42 mm dia	20 mm dia
32 mm dia	35 mm dia	15 mm dia
25 mm dia	28 mm dia	15 mm dia
20 mm dia	22 mm dia	15 mm dia
15 mm dia	15 mm dia	15 mm dia

(ii) Preformed fibreglass sections with galvanized sheet metal muffs

All hot-water pipes in service tunnels, service corridors and where exposed to damage and/or weather shall be insulated with preformed fibreglass sections covered with galvanized sheet metal muffs in a watertight manner. Sheet metal muffs shall be installed with the joints overlapping at least 50 mm and the longitudinal overlap pointing downwards to prevent ingress of water. The sheet metal muff shall be strapped with 10 mm galvanized straps by means of a strapping tool with a minimum of 2 straps/section. All pipe bends, T-

pieces, etc, shall be insulated with 25 mm diameter fibreglass rope covered with a 12 mm thick layer of self-setting fibre cement. A reinforcing gauge shall be wrapped over the fibre cement while wet and painted with mastic paint when dry.

Fibreglass section thickness for the various pipe sizes shall be as follows:

PIPE SIZE (STEEL)	PIPE SIZE (COPPER)	FIRBREGLASS THICKNESS
100 mm dia	108 mm dia	50 mm dia
80 mm dia	76 mm dia	40 mm dia
65 mm dia	67 mm dia	40 mm dia
40 mm dia	54 mm dia	25 mm dia
40 mm dia	42 mm dia	25 mm dia
32 mm dia	35 mm dia	25 mm dia
25 mm dia	28 mm dia	20 mm dia
20 mm dia	22 mm dia	20 mm dia
15 mm dia	15 mm dia	20 mm dia

AA 09.05 SANITARY AND BRASSWARE EQUIPMENT

Repair work to the sanitary and brassware equipment is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Damaged and/or broken irreparable sanitary and brassware equipment shall be replaced with equal specification equipment or approved alternative. These shall be installed strictly to the manufacturer's specifications.
- (b) Sanitary and brassware equipment that are unsuitable for the purpose and application they serve are to be replaced with suitable equipment.
- (c) The quantity of sanitary and brassware equipment for the number of people and application they serve, shall be investigated in accordance with the current SANS 10400 application regulations. If found to be insufficient these facilities shall be upgraded only if approved by the Engineer.
- (d) Loose sanitary ware shall be re-fixed and bracketed to structures in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- (e) Stained sanitary ware equipment shall be cleaned, where possible, with approved cleaning agent in accordance with the manufacturer's specification.
- (f) All cisterns are to be cleaned out and filling and flushing mechanisms shall be serviced and repaired. Where beyond repair status these items shall be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (g) All worn-out and leaking flush valves are to be repaired by utilising the manufacturer's replacement kits. Where flush valves are damaged beyond repair these shall be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (h) All pillar taps, mixers, sink taps and other taps are to be serviced, utilising repair kits. Where equipment is beyond repair these items shall be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives. Where equipment connections are loose these shall be properly secured to sanitary ware and other equipment.

- (i) Leaking, corroded or damaged chromium-plated flush pipes to water-closets and urinals are to be replaced where required.
- (j) Replace missing and/or damaged shower gratings with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (k) Service and repair water metering taps by utilising manufacturer's replacement kits where necessary. Where damaged beyond repair the complete item shall be replaced with equal specification or approved alternative.
- (l) Replace missing or damaged tap handles with matching handles from the manufacturer of the tap.
- (m) Readjust all timing mechanisms on flush valves and metering taps in accordance with repairs and services to the correct flushing and flow times.
- (n) Replace damaged or missing basin and/or sink mixer swivel arms with equal specification or approved alternative.
- (o) Replace missing or damaged toilet seats and covers with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (p) Repair and service urinal syphonic valves with replacement kits from manufacturer. Where no spares are available or equipment is damaged beyond repair, these items are to be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (q) Repair and clean out all bottle traps. Bottle traps that are damaged beyond repair are to be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives.
- (r) Repair and service bath taps and mixers by utilising manufacturer's replacement kits. Where damaged beyond repair, the taps and mixers shall be replaced with equal specification or approved alternatives.

AA 09.06 FIRE WATER PIPED RETICULATION NETWORKS

AA 09.06.01 General

Repair work to the fire water piped reticulation networks is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the work described below. This specification only covers the water piped reticulation for the fire water protection system, while the equipment to this installation, such as fire hydrants, hose reels and extinguishers, are covered and detailed in Technical Specification JC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment. This specification has to be read in conjunction with the afore-mentioned specification.

- (a) Replace damaged, broken, leaking, corroded above and underground pipework, fittings and equipment.
- (b) Repair, replace and service valves which shall include new gaskets, gland packings, seals, bolt and nuts, etc.
- (c) Where valves do not close properly, all these valves are to be refurbished, descaled and if necessary replaced.
- (d) Repair, service and check the proper functioning of all non-return valves and backflow preventers.

- (e) Repair, service, readjust and calibrate all pressure gauges.
- (f) Repair bracketing systems including fixing and repair of existing brackets and the provision of additional brackets where required.
- (g) Report all problems related to fire fighting equipment to the Engineer.
- (h) Water storage tanks are to be emptied, cleaned out, repaired, sealed and put back into operation. Ball float and/or filling valves to these tanks are to be serviced and repaired where required. All level control equipment needs to be installed in the correct levels.
- (i) Pressure test and sterilise repaired new installation and equipment.
- (j) Reinstate and make good walls, tiling, floors, concrete, finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an acceptable level where any repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed.
- (k) Record pressure readings on supply to installation.

AA 09.06.02 Material and equipment specification for fire water piped reticulation networks

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following:

- (a) Galvanized steel pipe installation
 - (i) All galvanized steel pipes shall be medium gauge mild steel screwed and socketed pipes to SANS 62 and shall be normalised and marked as such by the manufacturer. Pipes shall be hot-dip galvanized to SANS 763.
 - (ii) All fittings shall be malleable cast-iron fittings to SANS 509 and galvanized to SANS 763.
 - (iii) All 80 mm diameter and larger pipes shall be joined with Class 16 flanged couplings to SANS 1123/1600. The bolts, nuts and spring washers to be used on these joints shall be cadmium-plated.
 - (iv) In pipe ducts and elsewhere pipes shall be fixed onto walls, soffits, etc, with approved type of supports, holderbats, clamps, etc. Brackets shall be designed to structurally support and fix the pipe system and shall have enough clearance from walls, soffits, etc, to maintain equipment.
 - (v) Pipes shall be supported according to the manufacturer's specifications at the following maximum intervals:

NORMAL SIZE (mm)	HORIZONTAL (mm)	VERTICAL (mm)
15 dia to 20 dia	1 200	1 830
32 dia to 40 dia	1 830	2450
50 dia to 150 dia	2 450	3 050

- (vi) All pipes shall be marked according to SANS 10140 or as specified by the Engineer. All surface pipes shall be painted.
- (vii) Pipes shall be installed on the surface, unless otherwise specified.

- (viii) Provision shall be made for thermal contraction and expansion.
- (ix) The type of pipe joint compound shall be approved by the Engineer and used sparingly with good quality hemp. For pipes larger than 80 mm diameter a jointing compound such as Epidermix 32 shall be used.
- (x) Any buried pipe shall have at least 900 mm cover and be coated and wrapped to SANS 1117 and tested in the presence of the Engineer.
- (xi) All pipework and fittings shall be pressure tested as specified.

(b) uPVC underground pipe installations

- (i) uPVC piping shall conform to SANS 966 with rubber ring type joints.
- (ii) All bends shall be uPVC type fittings with rubber ring joints.
- (iii) All other fittings such as T-pieces, reducers, flanges, etc, shall be bitumen-dipped cast-iron rubber ring jointed fittings to SANS 546.
- (iv) No solvent weld type fittings will be allowed.
- (v) All cast-iron fittings shall be coated and wrapped to SANS 1117.
- (vi) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm sand before backfilling.
- (vii) Pipe trenching and bedding:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface Bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90 % of modified AASHTO density

- (viii) All thrust blocks shall be cast between the pipe and the undisturbed trench material.
- (ix) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the uPVC pipe. At the thrust blocks the bend shall be wrapped with Densopol 80 HT tape or similar approved.
- (x) HDPE pipe connections to uPVC pipes up to 40 mm diameter can be done by means of SG Iron manufactured saddles with the appropriate gaskets and cadmium-plated bolts and nuts.
- (xi) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (xii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (xiii) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

- (xiv) Duckfoot bends shall be used to all fire hydrants at the foot of fire hydrants. This to be cast into thrust blocks.

(c) HDPe underground pipe installations

- (i) All HDPe piping shall be Type 4 HDPe pipe to SANS 533.
- (ii) All fittings shall be of Plasson compression type and shall conform to ISO/DIS 3458.
- (iii) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm of sand or selected material.
- (iv) All backfilling shall be to the SANS 1200 DB and to the Engineer's approval.
- (v) Pipe trenching and bedding:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90 % of modified AASHTO density

- (vi) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the HDPe pipe. At these points the fittings shall be wrapped with Densopol 80 HT tape or similar approved.
- (vii) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (viii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (ix) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

(d) Valves

- (i) Gate valves underground in valve chambers to connect to uPVC piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves are to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadiene rubber covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadiene rubber O-rings and seals, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valves shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665 and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valves shall be fitted with a square key spindle top to close the valves in clockwise direction and socket ends to SANS 665 to fit into uPVC.

Valves are to be provided with locking devices to lock valves in open position.

(ii) Gate valves underground in valve chambers to connect to uPVC piping

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valves shall conform to SANS 776 Class 125. The valves shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa. The valve shall be fitted with a hand wheel on an extended spindle shaft of 700 mm to close in a clockwise direction and installed to detail.

(iii) Gate valves above ground to connect to steel (65 NB and larger)

Gate valves are to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadiene rubber covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadiene rubber O-rings and seals, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valves shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665, and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valves shall be fitted with flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600, hand wheel to close the valves in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to maximum 90° from upright.

These valves shall be equipped with locking devices to lock valves in open position.

(iv) Gate valves above ground (up to 50 mm NB)

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valves shall conform to SANS 776 Class 125.

The valves shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valve shall be equipped with a hand wheel to close in a clockwise direction.

The valves shall be installed in an upright position or sideways to maximum 90° from upright and shall be so placed with other fittings as to be removed without cutting the pipework.

The valves shall be equipped with locking devices to lock valves in open position.

AA 10 MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

AA 10.01 GENERAL

Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified, shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment for the maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work.

Maintenance responsibilities of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work, and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

This part of the Contract shall include routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance, and breakdown maintenance, as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, for the specified installations described under the section AA 01 of this document. The meaning of repair could also mean corrective maintenance.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in the Particular Specification and this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be instituted by the Contractor.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance Contract shall be furnished with prescribed manufacturer's guarantees.

The maintenance work and items are to be categorised for each maintenance activity under the following headings:

- (a) Rainwater disposal system
- (b) Soil and wastewater drainage systems
- (c) Domestic water distribution and reticulation systems
- (d) Sanitary and brassware equipment
- (e) Fire water piped reticulation networks.

AA 10.02 ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

This routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed in tables AA 10.02/1, AA 10.02/2, AA 10.02/3, AA 10.02/4 and AA 10.02/5 below under each heading.

These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

TABLE AA 10.02/1 - RAINWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEM

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Clean out and clear all rainwater gutters and full bores	Monthly
2	Clean out and clear all catch pits, channel drains and floor outlets	Monthly
3	Clean and unblock all drain pipes	Monthly
4	Check alignments of gutters	Six-monthly
5	Check and inspect all rainwater outlet gratings and replace if necessary	Six-monthly
6	Check gutter and pipe bracketing system and repair and replace if necessary	Four-monthly
7	Check and inspect manhole covers and frames for damages and replace if necessary	Six-monthly
8	Paint repairs to surface piping and equipment	Annually
9	Visually inspect and report on total system	Monthly

TABLE AA 10.02/2 - SOIL AND WASTEWATER DRAINAGE SYSTEM

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete installation	Monthly
2	Check, service and clean out grease traps	Monthly
3	Check, service and clean out oil separators	Monthly
4	Check, inspect and clean out all floor drains	Monthly
5	Check, inspect and clean out all gullies	Monthly
6	Replace broken or missing gully gratings	Four-monthly
7	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole covers and frames and builder's work to manholes	Four-monthly
8	Check, inspect and repair manhole benching.	Four-monthly
9	Check, inspect, repair or replace all inspection eyes, end caps and cleaning eye covers	Four-monthly
10	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly
11	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockage that occurs	Monthly
12	Check, inspect, repair/replace and clean out all equipment traps	Monthly
13	Paint repairs to surface piping and equipment	Annually
14	Rodding of all main sewer lines	At start of Contract
15	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all vacuum and two-way vents	Four-monthly

TABLE AA 10.02/3 - DOMESTIC WATER DISTRIBUTION AND RETICULATION SYSTEMS

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system	Monthly
2	Log all water meter readings	Monthly
3	Log all pressure gauge readings	Monthly
4	Check, inspect, report and repair leaks	Monthly
5	Replace all valve gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
6	Sample water supply and chemical analyses to be provided by approved company	Annually
7	Bulk Water storage tanks to be emptied, cleaned out, inspected, repaired and resealed where necessary	Annually
8	Check, inspect, service, repair and readjust all pressure-reducing valves	Six-monthly
9	Check, inspect and test operation of all valves on site	Monthly
10	Clean out all strainers	Monthly
11	Check, inspect, service test and repair/replace all safety and expansion release valves	Six-monthly
12	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Six-monthly
13	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all air release valves and vacuum breakers	Six-monthly
14	Check, service, repair or replace all ball float valves	Four-monthly
15	Check, inspect, test, service, repair/replace all geyser installations	Six-monthly
16	Check, inspect, test, service and repair/replace all non-return valves	Four-monthly
17	Paint repairs to piping, fittings and equipment	Annually

TABLE AA 10.02/4 - SANITARY AND BRASSWARE EQUIPMENT

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete installation	Monthly
2	Inspect, repair/replace WC seats and covers	Monthly
3	Replace all tap washers	Six-monthly
4	Replace all tap gland packings	Six-monthly
5	Check, inspect, repair, fix and where necessary replace sanitary ware mountings and brackets	Four-monthly
6	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all cistern flushing mechanisms	Monthly
7	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all brassware	Four-monthly
8	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all sanitary ware	Four-monthly
9	Check, inspect, service, repair, readjust all flushing valves	Four-monthly
10	Replace all flushing valve internal parts with replacement kits	Once per Contract
11	Stained equipment to be cleaned with approved manufacturer's cleaning agent	Six-monthly
12	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks	Monthly

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
13	Check, inspect, repair/replace all shower gratings	Four-monthly
14	Paint repairs to all equipment	Annually
15	Check, inspect, repair, service, replace all missing valves	Six-monthly
16	Replace missing tap handles	As occur
17	Replace missing bath, basin, sink, etc, plugs	As occur

TABLE AA 10.02/5 - FIRE WATER PIPED RETICULATION NETWORKS

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system	Monthly
2	Report any failures/breakage of fire fighting equipment to the Engineer	Monthly
3	Log all pressure gauge readings	Monthly
4	Replace all valve gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
5	Water storage tanks to be cleaned out resealed/repared if necessary	Annually
6	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all non-return valves and backflow preventers	Four-monthly
7	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks	Monthly
8	Inspect, service, readjust and calibrate all pressure gauges	Four-monthly
9	Paint repairs to piping, fittings and equipment	Annually
10	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly

AA 10.03 CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE

The corrective maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The Contractor shall inspect and check all equipment, materials, systems and installation for any pending breakdowns, maladjustments or anomalies of equipment.

The Contractor shall report and take actions to correct such deficiencies.

AA 10.04 BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE

Breakdown maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All breakdown problems experienced shall be acted upon within the time limitations allowed in the General Maintenance documents.

All breakdown maintenance shall be done in accordance with the related specifications, standards, regulations and codes.

The Contractor shall have access to the necessary spares, equipment and tools for the expected breakdowns.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

AB BUILDING ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

CONTENTS

AB 01	SCOPE
AB 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS
AB 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS AND ASBUILT INFORMATION
AB 04	TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
AB 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
AB 06	MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES
AB 07	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
AB 08	RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION
AB 09	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS
AB 10	INSTALLATION TECHNICAL DETAILS
AB 11	MAINTENANCE OF BUILDING ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

AB 01 SCOPE

AB 01.01 This specification comprises all aspects regarding the maintenance and servicing of building electrical systems. Building electrical systems comprise:

- (i) Distribution boards and low voltage cable
- (ii) Interior and exterior lighting of buildings
- (iii) Small power and fixed appliances
- (iv) Earthing and lightning protection system

AB 01.02 This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3, the Additional Specifications included with this document.

AB 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

AB 02.01 The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publication and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

AB 02.02 SANS Specifications

General	Distribution and meter boards	LV cables and conductors	Lighting system	Earthing and lightning protection system	Small power installation	
					Power outlets	Conduits, power skirting, cable trays and ducting
SANS 10142	SANS 152		SANS 10114	SANS 03	SANS 152	SANS 950
SANS 10140	SANS 156	SANS 10198	SANS 163	SANS 10199	SANS 164	SANS 1065
SANS 10400	SANS 172	SANS 1411	SANS 1012		SANS 1084	SANS 1085
SANS 10222		SANS 1507	SANS 1084		SANS 1239	
			SANS 1250			
			SANS 1279			
			SANS 1777			
			SANS 10114			

- AB 02.03** **Department of Public Works Specifications PW 774 and PW 343.**
- AB 02.04** **Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003.**
- AB 02.05** **Manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions.**
- AB 02.06** **Additional requirements**

Equipment and material installed shall be new and unused.

Luminaires, control gear, isolators and power outlets shall bear the SANS, IEC, ISO or DEKRA mark of quality. The Contractor shall ensure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during repair and maintenance work on cabling, wiring, distribution boards, luminaires, power points and fixed appliances.

AB 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS AND ASBUILT INFORMATION

- AB 03.01** No operating and maintenance manuals shall be developed for this section.
- The contractor shall use the maintenance control plan to schedule preventative maintenance actions.

AB 04 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

- AB 04.01** All systems are to be re-checked by the Contractor prior to commissioning. Copies of all checks and tests of each installation shall be presented to the Engineer for approval before re-commissioning takes place.
- AB 04.02** It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all labour, accessories and properly calibrated and certified measuring instruments necessary to record the following parameters:
- AB 04.02.01** Continuity of ring final circuit conductors
 - AB 04.02.02** Continuity of protective conductors, including main and supplementary equipotential bonding
 - AB 04.02.03** Earth electrode resistance
 - AB 04.02.04** Insulation resistance
 - AB 04.02.05** Polarity
 - AB 04.02.06** Earth fault loop impedance
 - AB 04.02.07** Operation of residual current devices
 - AB 04.02.08** Phase voltage
 - AB 04.02.09** Current per phase
 - AB 04.02.10** Illumination levels in lux
- AB 04.03** The Contractor is responsible for the arrangement of such tests. He shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer prior to the test date.

AB 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

- AB 05.01** The Contractor shall as part of this Contract institute a Recording system as part of his Maintenance Control Plan as defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance. This shall consist of a Record book which shall be utilised to log and record all faults, system checks, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections etc.
- AB 05.02** The logbook shall be stored in a safe place and shall only be utilised by the Contractor and Engineer. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report to the Engineer.

This logbook shall be structured to at least include the following:

- AB 05.02.01** Bi-annual inspection and testing of all systems.
- AB 05.02.02** Monthly lamp inspection and maintenance actions.
- AB 05.02.03** Annual earthing test report.
- AB 05.02.04** Bi-annual inspection and testing of distribution boards.

AB 06 MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES

- AB 06.01** On commencement of the Repair and Maintenance Contract, the Contractor shall supply and deliver certain Tools and Spares to the User Client. These tools and spares will be the property of the Department of Public Works. Any deficiencies or short fall or damaged Tools and Spares during the contract shall be replaced with new equipment / material.

- AB 06.02** The Tools and Spares shall be kept safe in a lockable store room on site. The Contractor shall provide his own lock for the designated store room. The inventory of the Tools and Spares shall be verified on a monthly basis. Any short fall shall be replaced by the Contractor as part of his responsibility under this contract.

- AB 06.03** The Tools and Spares shall at least include the following, but not limited to:

20 of 18W Compact fluorescent globes
 20 off PL 9W lamps
 20 off 21W lamps
 50 off 36W fluorescent lamps
 20 off 58W fluorescent lamps
 20 off 18W fluorescent lamps
 10 off 250W HPS lamps
 5 off 70W HPS lamps
 5 x 250W Metal Halide Lamps
 5 of 250W Mercury vapour lamps
 10 of Stove type fuses various types and sizes
 4 of 150mm Solid Stove Plate
 4 of 200mm Solid Stove Plate
 4 of Stove oven top elements
 4 of Stove oven bottom elements
 4 of Geyser elements
 4 of Geyser thermostats
 Distribution Kiosk keys: combination (2x square, triangular and round hole with stubs)

- AB 06.04** Tools and Spares: Measurement and payment

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

(a)	<u>Supply of Tools and Spares</u>	No
-----	--	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of Tools and Spares supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the Tools and Spares as specified.

AB 07 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

- AB 07.01** Following formal approval of his Quality Assurance system by the Engineer, the Contractor shall implement the approved QA system.

- AB 07.02** Records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the contract and shall be submitted to the Engineer as required by the Department.

AB 08 RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION

- AB 08.01** On practical completion of the repair work, the contractor shall re-check and put all systems into operation.
- AB 08.02** All commissioning shall be performed by the Contractor, to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The Contractor shall confirm in writing that all systems have been repaired according to specification and are fully operational.
- AB 08.03** All installations shall be energised for a minimum continuous period of 96 hours immediately prior to the Engineer's Practical Completion inspection to verify lamp stability and reliability of power reticulation

AB 09 REPAIR WORK TO LIGHTING INSTALLATIONS

- AB 09.01** The various electrical systems shall be repaired during the first phase of the repair and maintenance contract.
- AB 09.02** The scope of the repair work shall include, but shall not be limited to the activities listed below.
- AB 09.03** The Contractor shall record the repair actions in tabular format before the Contractor's responsibility for maintenance commences.
- AB 09.04** Repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs as new equipment and material shall be supplied with a guarantee confirming defects liability period of 12 months from the date of practical completion. These guarantees shall be in favour of the Department of Public Works.

AB 10 INSTALLATION TECHNICAL DETAILS**AB 10.01 Installation description**

Repair and maintenance work of the building's electrical systems shall be categorised under the following groups of installations:

- AB 10.01.1** Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry:
– See attached layout plans (Site Information Book 1)

No.	Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry:	Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:
1.	HOUSE A1 & GARAGE	HOUSE 1	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK
2.	HOUSE A2 & GARAGE	HOUSE 1 GARAGE	OFFICE
3.	HOUSE A3 & GARAGE	HOUSE 2	PUBLIC ABLUTION
4.	SINGLE QUARTERS 1	HOUSE 2 GARAGE	GENERATOR ROOM
5.	SINGLE QUARTERS 2	PUBLIC ABLUTION	CELL BLOCK OFFICES
6.	HOUSE B1	HOUSE 3	HOUSE A1 GARAGE
7.	HOUSE B2	HOUSE 4	HOUSE A1
8.	HOUSE B3	HOUSE 5	HOUSE A2
9.	PUBLIC ABLUTION B	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK GARAGE	HOUSE A2 GARAGE
10.	PUBLIC ABLUTION A	SINGLE QUARTERS	HOUSE B1
11.	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK	OLD GENERATOR STORE ROOM	HOUSE B2

No.	Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry:	Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:
12.	SAPS ADMINISTRATION OFFICE	DISABLED PUBLIC ABLUTION	HOUSE B3
13.	GYMNASIUM	GENERATOR ROOM	IT SERVER CONTAINER
14.	OIL STORE	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK	SAPS CONTAINER
15.	GENERATOR ROOM	GATE HOUSE	
16.	CELL BLOCK BUILDING	CARPORT	
17.	STOCK THEFT UNIT BUILDING	BULK DIESEL TANKS	
18.	STORE ROOM 1	SOLID WASTE SKIP	
19.	PUBLIC ABLUTION C		
20.	STORE ROOM BUILDING		
21.	STABLES STORE ROOMS		
22.	STABLES		
23.	CARPORT		
24.	CARPORT		
25.	IT SERVER ROOM		

AB 10.02 Scope of repair work

Note: All work quoted for shall include the necessary accessories and consumable items to complete the work.

AB 10.02.01 Distribution boards and cabling

- (a) Service distribution boards: inspect and clean the distribution boards treat the enclosure for moisture ingress and corrosion.
- (b) Check for rigidity and fastening of equipment trays, panels, doors and handling devices.
- (c) Check locking mechanism and fit padlock. All padlocks shall be of local manufacture with brass bodies and 75 mm chrome shackles. Three keys (with PVC labels) shall be provided for each lock.
- (d) Replace damaged or missing faceplates, doors, mounting frames, handles, thumb catches, etc.
- (e) Check operation of distribution board equipment and meters, replace if faulty or damaged with an approved type.
- (f) Remove all obsolete equipment and meters.
- (g) Check and fasten wiring and cable terminations.
- (h) Re-arrange wiring and equipment to give a neat installation.
- (i) Trace incoming and outgoing circuits and label the wires/cables. Label all wiring and cabling with markers similar to Grafoplast Trasp PVC
- (j) Fit labelling and legend cards – neatly typed - and blank face plate covers.

- (k) Replace the distribution boards if required and approved by Engineer. Check and measure earth bar and earth continuity connections
- (l) Test all earth leakage protectors and replace if dysfunctional.
- (m) Test all circuit breakers and replace if dysfunctional.
- (n) Replace all circuit breakers that are rated below 5 kA.
- (o) Ensure lightning arrestors are installed in all distribution boards and replace faulty units immediately.
- (p) Check earth bar and record

AB 10.02.02 Lighting system (Ensure that the circuits are switched off and dead before working on any electrical item)

- (a) Indoor luminaires
 - (i) Operational and complete luminaires
 - Remove lamps and wash luminaire body with detergent. Clean polycarbonate diffusers with detergent. Clean polished pure aluminium diffusers / reflectors with benzene.
 - Check condition of luminaire seal, entrance gland, lamp holder and internal wiring.
 - Ensure that earth stud and earth connection is sound.
 - Replace missing screws, catches, bolts and plugs.
 - Check condition of suspension cords of pendant luminaires.
 - Re-lamp.
 - Replace damaged pendant light fittings with ceiling mounted flat round light fittings with 2x 18W compact fluorescents or similar
 - (ii) Damaged or incomplete luminaires
 - Remove luminaire.
 - Replace luminaire and reconnect.
 - Fit new lamps.
 - (iii) Fluorescent luminaires 2400mm long
 - Remove luminaire.
 - Replace luminaire with 1500mm double fluorescent luminaire.
 - Fit new lamps.
- (b) Light switches

Note: All light switches shall have steel faceplates with permanent glued Multi-layered phenolic plastic labels similar to Traffolite

- Remove switch cover.
- Check continuity of earth connection.
- Fasten crews holding connected wires
- Check operation of switch and replace if suspect.
- Replace switch cover, fit new csk stainless steel screws if required.

(c) Photocells

- Wash translucent body with detergent.
- Cover photocell and verify operation.
- Check bypass manual switching circuit.
- Enclose all exposed wiring in 16 mm ø Sprague or tube.
- Install photocell in a dummy bulkhead to protect it from vandalism if necessary

(d) Floodlight and bulkhead luminaires

- Remove lens and lamp. Wash lens thoroughly.
- Wash luminaire body with detergent.
- Clean polished pure aluminium reflectors with benzene.
- Check condition of internal wiring, capacitor, ballasts and starters.
- Check condition of neoprene seal and replace if worn or damaged.
- Check condition of lamp holder.
- Seal conduit and wiring entry with silicone to eliminate water ingress.
- Fit new lamp.
- Check condition of earth stud and luminaire earth connection.
- Replace all missing screws, lens catches, bolts.
- Close cover securely, check stirrup bolts.

SCHEDULE OF LUMINAIRES

TYPE	DESCRIPTION
A	2 x 58W SABS OPEN CHANNEL FLUORESCENT LUNINAIRE – VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : R1/T-258 SS
B	2 x 36W SABS OPEN CHANNEL FLUORESCENT LUNINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : R1/T-236 SS
C	1 x 58W SABS OPEN CHANNEL FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : R1/T-158 SS
D	1 x 36W SABS OPEN CHANNEL FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : R1/T-136 SS
E	2 x 58W SABS IP 55 FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : C2-258SS WITH WATERTIGHT DIFFUSER

TYPE	DESCRIPTION
F	3X 36W RECESSED MOUNTED FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE WITH SINGLE PARABOLIC REFLECTOR
G	2X 36W RECESSED MOUNTED FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE WITH SINGLE PARABOLIC REFLECTOR
H	2X 18W RECESSED MOUNTED FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE WITH SINGLE PARABOLIC REFLECTOR
I	3X 18W RECESSED MOUNTED FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE WITH SINGLE PARABOLIC REFLECTOR
J	2X 58W SURFACE MOUNTED FLUORESCENT LUMINAIRE WITH SINGLE PARABOLIC REFLECTOR
K	70W HPS B40 BRITELITE WALL MOUNTED BULKHEAD LUMINAIRE : VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE B40-70W HPS
L	BULKHEAD LUMINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE: B10 WITH 2XPL9 LAMPS
M	BULKHEAD LUMINAIRE - VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE: B10 WITH 21 W DULUX EL ECO LAMP
N	DÉCORATIVE ROUND BULKHEAD – RADIANT TYPE: WT2A
O	DÉCORATIVE ROUND BULKHEAD WITH GRID – RADIANT TYPE: WT2G
P	250W HPS FLOODLIGHT LUMINAIRE : VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : L14ST-250 HPS
Q	250W MV LOWBAY DOWNLIGHTER BEKA TYPE: BEKATEC 250W HPS
R	400W MV SABS APPROVED HIGH BAY LUMINAIRE WITH AUTO LIGHT SIMILAR OR EQUAL TO BEKA BAY
S	BOWL TYPE IP55 BATHROOM FITTING WITH CERAMIC LAMP HOLDER WITH DULUX EL ECO 21W/E27 LAMP
T	DÉCOR ROUND CHEESE BULKHEAD 250 MM GLASS BOWL-ILM TYPE: DEC/RND/CHS/250 WITH 21 W DULUX EL ECO LAMP
U	WALL MOUNTED DÉCOR SPOT LIGHT ILM TYPE : ACC/SPT/100
V	CEILING MOUNTED 3 LIGHT DECORATIVE LUMINAIRE WITH GLASS CUPS AND DULUX EL ECO 21W/E27 LAMPS
W	CEILING MOUNTED 2 LIGHT DECORATIVE LUMINAIRE WITH GLASS CUPS AND DULUX EL ECO 21W/E27 LAMPS
X	CEILING MOUNTED SINGLE LIGHT DECORATIVE LUMINAIRE WITH GLASS CUPS AND DULUX EL ECO 21W/E27 LAMPS
Y	BULKHEAD LUMINAIRE - BEKA TYPE SERIES 30: WITH 2XPL9W CFL LAMPS
Z	CEILING FAN WITH 1 X GLASS CUPS AND 100W GLS LAMPS
AA	2XPL26W DOWN LIGHTER VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : CAS/S-2PL26
AB	21W DOWN LIGHTER VOLTEX LIGHTING TYPE : CAS/S-21W

AB 10.02.03 Power outlets and fixed appliances (Switch Socket outlets)

Note: All power outlets shall have steel faceplates with permanent glued Multi-layered phenolic - similar to. Traffolite - plastic labels.

- (a) Inspect all power outlets and verify earthing.
- (b) Check contact points and tighten screws.
- (c) Replace missing screws and covers for outlet and draw boxes.
- (d) Replace missing, faulty or damaged socket outlets and plugs.

- (e) Check conditions and operation of local isolators and control switches for fixed equipment and replace if faulty, damaged or missing.
- (f) Check earthing of fixed appliances and test for earth continuity.
- (g) Inspect cable and wireways.
- (h) Check for rigidity and fastening of the cable ducts, ladders, ducting, power skirting and surface conduiting, fasten or replace if loose or damaged, check earthing and test for earth continuity.

AB 10.02.04 Earthing, bonding and lightning protection of buildings and structures

- (a) Check earthing and bonding of outlet points, equipment, cable and wireways, fixed appliances, water and gas pipes, etc.
- (b) Check installation and termination of protective conductors and earth electrodes
- (c) Test for earth continuity.
- (d) Provide 6 mm² copper earth wire jumper between roof cladding and all gutter downpipes. Fasten with lugs and galvanized zinc bolts. Typically ten downpipes per housing unit. Earth at least two gutter downpipes by means of 16 mm² green insulated earth wire connected to 1,2 m earth electrode by means of cadwelding. Typically two downpipes per 25 m long housing unit.
- (e) Installation of 50 mm² aluminium roof conductor in galvanised conduit from the roof cladding against the building to the earth electrode.

AB 10.03 Repair work: measurement and payment**AB.01 Distribution boards and cabling**ItemUnit**AB.01.01 Service distribution board**

No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks or boards serviced as specified in Clause AB 10.02.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of the distribution board or kiosk, internal cleaning of the enclosure, cleaning of equipment and meters, removal of obsolete distribution board equipment, re-arrangement of equipment and wiring, treatment of the enclosure for moisture ingress and corrosion, vermin protection, fastening and / or replacement of wiring, tracing of outgoing circuits, labelling of outgoing wiring and MCB's and cable terminations and earth testing.

The tendered sum shall further include for replacement of damaged, missing or faulty distribution board switchgear, meters, face plates, mounting frames, handling devices, doors, labelling with engraved Multi-layered phenolic similar to Traffolite plastic labels, neutral bars, earth bars etc. All downstream circuit breakers shall be rated at 6 kA fault level.

ItemUnit**AB.01.02 Replace distribution board**

No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution boards removed and replaced if replacement is approved by Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the dismantling of the DB equipment, removal of the dilapidated enclosure, supply and installation of an **epoxy painted** new enclosure, mounting frames, plates, equipment, meters, tracing of outgoing circuits, labelling etc.

The tendered sum shall further include for re-wiring of the board, cable termination, cable labelling, remedial builders work and earth testing.

ItemUnit**AB.01.03 Replace cabling**

m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of cable supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing cabling; supply, handling, installation and termination of the specified type of cable. The second hand value of the cable shall be subtracted from the tendered price,

This rate shall further include for the supply of all cable ties, clamps and other material necessary to ensure that the installation conforms to the specification.

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.04	<u>Replace wiring</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductors supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing conductors, the supply, handling, installation, pulling in conduit and termination of the specified type of conductor. The second hand value of the cable shall be subtracted from the tendered price,	
	This rate shall further include for the supply of all cable ties, labelling, and other material necessary to ensure that the wiring conforms to the specification.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.05	<u>Jointing and termination of cables</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be number of cable joints or terminations.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the cost for providing joint kits, complete with compound, ferrules and cable lugs, the cost for cutting the cable, handling and fitting kits and the cost of testing the joints and terminations. Position of joints shall be indicated on as-built drawings, submitted to the engineer before payment will be made	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.06	<u>Supply and install padlocks</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be number of padlocks supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply and installation of the 75mm locally manufactured padlocks and locking devices as well as fitting each of the three keys with purpose-made PVC labels.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.07(a)	<u>Excavate in all materials for trenches, backfill, compact and dispose of surplus material</u>	m ³
	The unit of measurement shall be the volume in cubic meter of material excavated from trenches.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for clearing and grubbing the trench areas, for excavating the trench, preparing the bottom of the trench, separating material unsuitable for backfill and dealing with any surface or subsurface water.	
	The tendered rate shall furthermore cover the cost of installing the sand bed and sand cover, backfilling, compacting and disposing of the surplus material.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.07.(b)	<u>Removal and reinstating of paving</u>	m ²
	The unit of measurement shall be the area in square meter of material removed for trenching of paved areas.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal and re-instatement of paved areas.	

AB.01.08	<u>Supply and install UPVC cable sleeves</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear length in meter of the cable sleeves supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, handling and installing the specified sleeves including the all the required, couplings, steel draw wires and plugs.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.09	<u>Supply and install plastic warning tape</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear length in meter of the plastic warning tape supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, handling and laying of the plastic warning tape.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.10 (a)	<u>Supply and installation of low voltage cable</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the length of low voltage cable supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing the cable, the cost for handling, fitting and laying of the cable.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.10 (b)	<u>Termination of the low voltage cable</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of low voltage cable terminations.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing the cable glands and shrouds, the cost for handling, fitting and cutting the cable.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.10(c)	Jointing of low-voltage cable	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of LV-cables joints.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the cost of providing the joint kits, cutting of the cable, handling and fitting the kits and the cost of testing the joints.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.11	<u>Supply and install earth continuity conductor</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear length in meter of the earth continuity conductor supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and laying the specified earth continuity conductor.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>

AB.01.12	<u>Termination and connect earth continuity conductor</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of earth continuity conductors terminated and connected.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying all the material required to terminate and connect the earth continuity conductors and the connecting thereof to the earth bars, including label tags.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.13	<u>Supply and installation of circuit breakers</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of circuit breakers supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of circuit breaker, including printed PVC labelling.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.14	<u>Supply and installation of isolators</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified isolator, including printed PVC labelling.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.15	<u>Supply and install contactors</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of contactors supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of contactor, including engraved labelling on rear tray.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.16	<u>Supply and install switching timers</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of switching timers supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of switching timer, including labelling.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.17	<u>Supply and install earth leakage units</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of earth leakage units supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of earth leakage units, including labelling.</p>		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.18	<u>Supply and install fuses for lightning protection of electronic equipment</u>	No
<p>The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuses supplied and installed.</p> <p>The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of fuse, including engraved label indicating fuse rating.</p>		

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.19	<u>Supply and install surge arrestors</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of surge arrestors supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of surge arrestors, with visual indication.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.20	<u>Supply wire marker and labelling kit and mark all cables and electrical equipment</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of specified wire marker kits supplied.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the procurement and delivery of the cable marker kit as specified.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.01.21	<u>Supply and install DIN rail analogue kWh energy meters single phase and three phase</u>	No
	The meters shall comply to IEC 61036 80 A 230V and 415V Class 1	
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of meters installed and connected	
AB.02	<u>Lighting system</u>	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.01	<u>Re-lamp and clean luminaire</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of lamps replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified lamp according to the manufacturer's instructions.	
	<u>Replacement date must be written on lamp.</u>	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.02	<u>Service luminaire</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaires opened and serviced In accordance with Clause AB 10.02.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the luminaire, including washing, checking of seals, glands, lamp holders, cleaning of diffusers, tightening of fixing screws and bolts, corrosion protection and the checking of earthing continuity and aiming angle if applicable. All external luminaire conduit entries are to be sealed with silicone, which cost is included in this payment item.	
	The tendered rate shall further include for replacement of the luminaires internal wiring where applicable and the tightening of all connections	

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.03	<u>Repair luminaire</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaires replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing luminaire and for the repair and installation of the light fitting complete with lamp and control gear, according to manufacturer's instructions.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.04	<u>Replace light switch</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of light switches replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing light switch and for the supply and installation of the specified type of light switch to manufacturer's instructions. Light switch face plate shall be fitted with an engraved Multi-layered phenolic plastic label as per Nosa-standard, cost of, which is included in rate.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.05	<u>Replace photo-electric switch (photocell)</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be number of photocell units replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, connecting and testing of the switch.	
	The rate shall further include full compensation for the cost of providing and installing all hardware, screws, wall plugs, 16 mm ø Sprague/tube and other material required to install the photo electric light switch in accordance with the manufacturer's specification.	
	The tendered rate shall further compensate for the supply and installation of the photocell inside a dummy B10 bulkhead where required.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.06	<u>Replace luminaire diffuser</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be number of luminaire diffusers replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of diffuser, including fixing screws and clips.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.07	<u>Service light switch</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of light switches opened and serviced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the light switch, internal cleaning of the enclosure, spray painting of the cover plate, inspection of the wiring and connection points, earthing, etc.	
	The tendered sum shall further include for replacement of any missing covers and fixing screw and earth testing. Light switch face plate shall be fitted with an engraved Multi-layered phenolic plastic label, cost of, which is included in rate.	

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.08	<u>Strengthening the roof beam structure to carry the load of luminaires/fan lights</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaires fastened to the installed beams	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal, disconnect, cleaning, storage (4 weeks) reinstallation, reconnection and testing of the luminaire.	
	The rate shall further include full compensation for the installation of 2 x 700 mm supporting timber members above the ceiling (114 x 38 Par SA Pine) and the mounting of 63 mm ø round conduit outlet box complete with 2 x 4 x 60 mm galvanised screws.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.09	<u>Replace Lamp Holder</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of lamp holders replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing lamp holder and for the supply and installation of the specified type (ceramic) of lamp holder to the manufacturer's instructions.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.02.10	<u>Replace Luminaire internal components</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of SANS approved internal luminaire components replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective component and for the supply, installation and testing of the specified type of component to the manufacturer's instructions.	
AB.03	<u>Small power and fixed appliances</u>	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.01	<u>Replace socket outlet</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of socket outlets replaced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing socket outlet and the supply and installation of the specified type of socket outlet.	
	All socket outlets shall be supplied complete with cover plates and boxes where required. The tendered rate shall therefore include for the supply of the cover plates and fixing screws where applicable. Outlet face plate shall be fitted with an engraved, Multi-layered phenolic plastic label as per Nosa-standard, cost of, which is included in the rate.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.02	<u>Replace switch isolator</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators supplied.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of isolator or control unit.	

The tendered sum shall further include for the provision of 3 wire single phase or 4 wire, 3 phase connections to the fixed appliance as required. Isolator face plate shall be fitted with an engraved Multi-layered phenolic plastic label as per Nosa-standard, cost of, which is included in the rate.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.03	<u>Replace plug tops</u>	No
-----------------	---------------------------------	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plug tops replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the required type and colour of plug top.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.04	<u>Replace conduit (20mm and 25mm dia. galvanised steel)</u>	m
-----------------	---	---

The unit of measurement shall be the linear meter of conduit supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of conduit, including all fixing accessories.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.05	<u>Replace wiring channel</u>	m
-----------------	--------------------------------------	---

The unit of measurement shall be number of linear meter of wiring channel replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of wiring channel with 6 x 60 mm fasteners, including the cover and all the necessary accessories.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.06	<u>Replace connection from switch isolator to fixed appliance</u>	No
-----------------	--	----

The unit of measurement shall be number of connections made.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing old connection and the supply and installing of the connections to the fixed appliances.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.07	<u>Service socket outlet</u>	No
-----------------	-------------------------------------	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of socket outlets opened and serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the socket outlet internal cleaning of the enclosure, inspection of the wiring and contact points, fastening of the screws, switching mechanism, if applicable, earthing, etc. Outlet face plate shall be fitted with an engraved, Multi-layered phenolic plastic label as per Nosa-standard, cost of, which is included in the rate.

The tendered sum shall further include for replacement of any missing outlet covers and fixing screw and earth testing.

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.08	<u>Service isolator</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators opened and serviced.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the isolator, internal cleaning of the enclosure, inspection of the wiring and connection points, earthing and connections to the fixed appliance. Isolator face plate shall be fitted with an engraved Multi-layered phenolic plastic label as per Nosa-standard, cost of, which is included in the rate.	
	The tendered sum shall further include for replacement of any damaged or missing outlet covers and fixing screw, connections to appliances including earth continuity testing.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.09	<u>Replace power skirting</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of power skirting supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing power skirting, the supply and installation of the specified type and size of powerskirting including all accessories.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.10	<u>Supply and install Aluminium alloy cable junction box</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of Aluminium alloy cable junction box supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type of Pratley box.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.11	<u>Supply and install draw boxes</u> and bends	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of draw boxes supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying and installing the draw boxes including cover plates where no equipment is installed in the box.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.12	<u>Supply and install draw box cover plates</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of draw box cover plates supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of cover plates for draw boxes including the fixing screws.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.13	<u>Replace “stop-start” local control panel</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of “stop-start” local control panels supplied and replaced.	

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of “stop/start” local control panel including emergency stop button and 32A 3 pole contactor in an IP55 polycarbonate enclosure. The rate shall include an engraved Multi-layered phenolic plastic label indicating load and supply DB.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.14	<u>Test and service ceiling mounted fan</u>	No
-----------------	--	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of ceiling fans tested.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the fan, disconnection, testing, and inspection of the contact points, switching mechanism, earthing and re-connection of the ceiling fan.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.15	<u>Replace ceiling mounted fan</u>	No
-----------------	---	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of ceiling fans supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the disconnection of the damaged ceiling fan and for the supply, installation and connection of the new ceiling fan.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.16	<u>Service ceiling mounted fan control switch</u>	No
-----------------	--	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of control switches opened and serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the control switch, inspection of the contact points, switching mechanism, if applicable, earthing etc.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.17	<u>Replace ceiling mounted fan control switch</u>	No
-----------------	--	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of control switches replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the control switch.

The tendered sum shall further include for the provision of connection to the ceiling fan.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

AB.03.18	<u>Replace domestic stove components</u>	No
-----------------	---	----

The unit of measurement shall be the number of stove components.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified component.

The rate shall further include the disconnection and removal of the faulty component and the installation and testing of the new component.

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.19	<u>Replace geyser electrical components</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of geyser components.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified component.	
	The rate shall further include the disconnection and removal of the faulty component and the installation and testing of the new component.	
	The rate shall also include the draining of the water from the geyser and refilling before testing.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.20	<u>Supply and Install new stove</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of electrical four plate stoves with oven and warm drawer supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified stove including connection and testing after approval of the Engineer.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.03.21	<u>Provide Certificate of Compliance</u>	Lump sum
	The unit of measurement shall be a lump sum of Certificate of Compliance issued by an accredited electrician and issued to the Engineer for all the buildings and structures under the installation.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the testing and all associated equipment to complete the Certificate of Compliance and certification thereof.	
AB.04	<u>Earthing and bonding</u>	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.04.01	<u>Supply and install earthing and bonding for the installation</u>	Lump sum
	The tendered lump sum shall include full compensation for the provision of all material required for the earthing and bonding of the installation in accordance with the specification.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.04.02	<u>Testing of the earth installation by a specialist contractor</u>	Lump sum
	The unit measure shall be a lump sum for testing of the installation by a specialist contractor.	
	The tendered lump sum shall include full compensation for the testing of the earth installation by a specialist contractor approved by the Engineer.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>

AB.04.03	<u>Supply and install earth electrodes</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of earth electrodes supplied and installed.	
	The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of earth electrodes including termination by means of approved clamps.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.04.04	<u>Provide cadweld joint</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of cadweld joints provided.	
	The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of cadweld pyro joints.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.04.05	<u>Earth building roof structure</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of roof structures earthed.	
	The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified type and size of earthwire and the termination there off onto a 1,2 m Cu earth electrode driven into the soil 1,8 m deep.	
AB.05	<u>Inspection of Electrical Installation</u>	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
AB.05.01	<u>Inspection of building general electrical installation</u>	sum
	The unit of measurement shall be the sum for the building inspected prior to commencement of the repair work phase.	
	The tendered sum shall include the visual and functional inspection and testing of all lights, switches, small power points and fixed appliances, to determine the extent of repairs or replacements required.	
	The rate shall further include the preparation of a schedule of items (report) requiring repairs or replacement, for approval by the engineer.	
AB 11	<u>MAINTENANCE OF THE INSTALLATION</u>	
AB 11.01	Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified, shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment for the maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work. The contractor will as part of his maintenance obligations services all the equipment as part of his maintenance obligations at the start of the contract.	
	Maintenance responsibilities of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work, and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.	
AB 11.02	The following maintenance actions will be required under this contract:	
AB 11.02.01	routine preventative maintenance	
AB 11.02.02	corrective maintenance	
AB 11.02.03	breakdown maintenance	

These actions are defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

AB 11.03 The maintenance schedules and frequency of maintenance activities shall be developed under the maintenance control plan which will be instituted by the Contractor. The Contractor's responsibility in this regard is specified in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

AB 11.04 Scope of routine preventive maintenance

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed below. These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

AB 11.04.01 Monthly maintenance

- (a) Check operation of protective and monitoring devices.
- (b) Verify operation of switching elements and meters.
- (c) Check lamp operation
- (d) Measure phase voltages and currents in distribution boards and record values in Record book
- (e) Inspect and repair the following:
 - (i) any visible damage to the installation
 - (ii) setting of protective and monitoring devices
 - (iii) ensure presence of diagrams, instructions and similar information
 - (iv) ensure upkeep of the labelling of the distribution board, equipment, cabling and wiring
 - (v) ensure presence of Nosa-type engraved labelling on face plates or bodies of light switches, socket outlets and isolators.

AB 11.04.02 Annual maintenance

- (a) Service all luminaires, distribution boards, socket outlets, isolators, light switches, etc.
- (b) Carry out all tests listed under section AB 04.02 above and record values in the Record book
- (c) Witnessed testing of all earth leakage protection units on all socket outlet units.
- (d) Visually inspect the following and repair if required:
 - (i) connection of cables and conductors including earthing and bonding.
 - (ii) presence of appropriate devices for isolation and switching.
 - (iii) correct connection of socket outlets, light switches, isolators, lampholders, etc.

AB 11.05 Maintenance work : Measurement and payment

Refer to clause SA 06 of the ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION : SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BA ROOF COVERINGS

CONTENTS

BA 01	SCOPE
BA 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BA 03	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BA 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the removal of existing roof coverings and waterproofing and the supply, delivery and installation of new roof coverings and water-proofing to various types of buildings.

Roof coverings shall mean the scope of work related to the removal of existing roof coverings, water-proofing and ancillary items, the supply and installation of new roof sheeting, roofing screws, purlins, flashings, rainwater goods, water-proofing, fascias and barge boards. This specification also includes minor work related to trusses, purlins, paintwork, minor plumbing work and water-proofing to concrete roofs.

BA 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BA 02.1 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- PW 371 - Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
- SANS 1200HB - Cladding and Sheeting
- SANS 1783-4 - Softwood brandering and battens
- SANS 935 - Hot-dip (galvanised) zinc coatings
- SANS 1273 - Fasteners for sheet roof and wall coverings

BA 02.2 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BB: Carpentry and Joinery for Roofs and Ceilings
 Technical Specification BC: Waterproofing of Concrete Roofs

BA 02.3 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF PROFILED ROOF SHEETING (NON-CONCEALED FIXING AND CONCEALED FIXING)

BA 02.3.1 Roof sheeting

Existing roof sheeting shall either be replaced or to a small extent be repaired according to the Schedule of Quantities and as instructed by the Engineer. Where new sheeting is specified, the existing roof sheeting must be removed. Each day's removed sheeting shall be fully covered with new roof sheeting at the end of the day. Plastic sheeting or equivalent approved protection to minimize damage possibilities due to rain, etc. and to protect the personnel and occupied buildings. The new roof sheeting shall be 0,6 mm thick galvanised baked silicone polyester enamel paint (baked enamel) IBR or equivalent approved for roof slopes exceeding 15°. Concealed fixed type Galvanised baked enamel roof sheeting will in general be used to cover roofs with slopes not exceeding 15°. The sheeting must be laid in long lengths without end overlaps. The broad flutes must be turned up at the apex to form a dam, and turned down at the eaves to form a drip. Metal closers 0,8 mm thick galvanised (baked enamel), complete with polyclosers set in one run of silicone sealant, are required at apexes, ridges, side and head walls, etc. The Contractor shall take all necessary dimensions and measurements on site prior to manufacturing and installation. Z275 galvanising spelter shall be used and the Contractor shall provide SANS certificates of compliance to the Engineer. Various standard dark colours will be used for baked enamel finished roof sheeting, flashings, gutters and down pipes. In all cases the roofing must be laid strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

In certain cases, existing roof sheeting that is removed from buildings, will be re-used to repair similar types of structures.

Clause 7 in specification PW 371 must be read in conjunction with this technical specification.

BA 02.3.2 Main fasteners to timber purlins: Galvanised/baked enamel IBR or equivalent approved sheeting

90 mm x no. 14 hexagon head (H/H) carbon steel (C/S) cadmium plated Posidriv or equivalent approved roofing screws with 29 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers and poly-isobutyl grommet assembly must be used. Main fasteners for steel purlins are to be 65 mm long. Fasteners to be provided at alternating ribs and all side laps.

BA 02.3.3 Side lap fasteners: Galvanised/baked enamel IBR or equivalent approved sheeting

Stitching will be done with 25 mm x no. 14 H/H C/S posidriv or equivalent approved roofing screws @ 600 c/c maximum with 29 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers and poly-isobutyl grommet assembly. Provide 10 x 1,6 mm thick butyl rubber sealer strip between sheets.

BA 02.3.4 Flashings

0,8 mm thick baked enamel/galvanised flashings at ridge caps, side and head walls, drips, corners, etc., as described elsewhere. The minimum length of an overlap between flashings is 150 mm. Apply two runs of silicone sealant between flashings.

Flashings to be stitched together with 25 mm x no. 14 H/H C/S posidriv or equivalent approved roofing screws with 29 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers at

end laps and longitudinally @ 400 c/c maximum at ribs, etc. The Contractor shall take all necessary dimensions and measurements on site prior to manufacturing and installation.

BA 02.3.5 Sealant

Silicone sealant with an amine cure system with primer shall be used to waterproof all flashings and rainwater goods, viz. gutters and down pipes. Two runs of silicone shall be provided at end overlaps.

BA 02.3.6 Pipe flashings

EPDM/silicone pipe-through-roof flashings to diameter or equivalent approved pipe flashings shall be used to waterproof pipe protrusions through the roof sheeting. Installation shall be done strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and shall include the application of EPDM/silicone pipe through roof flashing and sealant and fastening of flashing to surface with TEKS or equivalent approved self-drilling fasteners.

BA 02.3.7 Insulation

No insulation repairs are required. In certain cases insulation may be necessary to reduce heat load, refer to clause 6 in specification PW 371.

Specification for non-visible roof insulation material:

Heavy grammage double sided reflective aluminium foil (heavy grade) laid on 1,6 mm diameter galvanised baked enamel straining wires at 300 mm centres to the manufacturer's specification. The insulation shall be laid longitudinally over the purlins and lapped 150 mm at joints.

Specification for visible roof insulation material:

White thermal insulation low density polyethylene bubble and Aluminium foil backing fire retardant grade laid on 1,6 mm diameter white plastic (PVC) coated straining wires at 383 mm centres to the manufacturer's specification. The insulation shall be laid longitudinally over the purlins and lapped at joints.

BA 02.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF PROFILED SIDE WALL CLADDING (NON-CONCEALED FIXING AND CONCEALED FIXING)

BA 02.4.1 Side wall cladding

Existing side wall cladding shall either be repaired or replaced in accordance with the Schedule of Quantities. Where new cladding is specified, the existing side wall cladding must be removed. Each day's removed cladding shall be fully covered with new cladding at the end of the day. The new side wall cladding shall be 0,6 mm thick galvanised (or baked enamel) IBR or equivalent approved. The cladding must be laid in long lengths without end overlaps. Metal closers 0,8 mm thick galvanised (or baked enamel), complete with polyclosers set in one run of silicone sealant, are required at gables, ridges, side and head walls, etc.

The Contractor shall take all necessary dimensions and measurements on site prior to manufacturing and installation. Z275 galvanising spelter shall be used and the Contractor shall provide SANS certificates of compliance to the Engineer. Heavy duty profiled polycarbonate

sheets shall be used for translucent sheeting. Various standard dark colours for baked enamel finished side wall cladding, flashings, gutters and down pipes will be used. In all cases the cladding must be laid strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

BA 02.4.2 Main fasteners to timber girts: Galvanised/Galvanised baked enamel IBR (or equivalent approved) and profiled translucent sheeting

90 mm x no. 14 hexagon head (H/H) carbon steel (C/S) cadmium plated posidriv or equivalent approved roofing screws with 29 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers and poly-isobutyl grommet assembly must be used. Main fasteners for steel girts are to be 65 mm long. Fasteners to be provided at alternating ribs.

BA 02.4.3 Side lap fasteners: Galvanised/Galvanised baked enamel IBR (or equivalent approved) sheeting

Stitching will be done with 25 mm x no. 14 H/H C/S posidriv or equivalent approved roofing screws @ 600 c/c with 29 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers and poly-isobutyl grommet assembly. Provide 10 x 1,6 mm butyl rubber sealer strip between sheets.

BA 02.4.4 End overlaps

If unavoidable, the end overlap shall be 300 mm minimum between sheeting and sealed with two rows of silicone sealant between the sheets. Bolt the ribs in the overlap region with the profiled (polycarbonate) translucent sheeting with galvanised baked enamel no. 14 gutter bolts, bonded washers and nuts through every alternative rib.

BA 02.4.5 Side overlaps: Vertical profiled translucent sheeting

Stitching will be done with 6 mm cadmium-plated cladding bolts and nuts x 25 mm long @ ± 300 c/c with 19 mm diameter x 1,0 mm thick galvanised baked enamel conical washers and poly-isobutyl grommet assembly.

BA 02.5 RAINWATER GOODS

BA 02.5.1 Gutters

Standard size for houses:

100 x 75 x 0,8 thick standard baked enamel/galvanised non-supporting beaded gutter. Galvanised brackets to be provided at every truss. Brackets to be painted to specification in the Schedule of Quantities.

Alternatively standard 140 x 127 x 83 x 0,6 mm thick concealed fix profile sheeting baked enamel/galvanised fascia gutter with galvanised gutter clips can be used.

Typical size for other buildings:

125 x 100 x 0,8 thick standard baked enamel self-supporting beaded gutter.

Dark colours to Consultant's specification.

Read clause 14 in specification PW 371 in conjunction with this technical specification.

The Contractor shall take all necessary dimensions and measurements on site prior to manufacturing and installation.

BA 02.5.2 Joints in gutters, valleys, etc.

150 mm overlap sealed with an approved silicone and riveted together with 2 rows of sealed pop rivets. Linings to valleys and secret gutters, etc., shall have an overlap of 225 mm.

BA 02.5.3 Gutter accessories and ancillary items

End stops:

0,8 mm thick baked enamel/galvanised finished end stops joined to gutter on site and sealed as for joints in gutters.

Outlets:

0,8 mm thick baked enamel/galvanised finished outlets fixed to gutter with pop rivets and sealed with an approved silicone. Outlet to slip into down pipe.

Fascia straps:

25 mm wide x 1,0 mm thick baked enamel/galvanised straps at +/- 686 mm c/c.

Corner joints:

Corner joints to be neatly mitred, pop riveted together and sealed with an approved silicone.

Sealant:

Clear silicone sealant with amine cured system and primer shall be used to waterproof gutters and down pipes.

BA 02.5.4 Down pipes

Standard sizes:

100 x 75 x 0,6 thick baked enamel/galvanised down pipes

100 x 100 x 0,8 thick baked enamel/galvanised down pipes

Dark colours to Consultant's specifications.

Down pipes to have double-seamed joints. Down pipes, shoes, offsets, etc., shall be joined together by means of 100 mm slip joints and pop riveted together.

The Contractor shall take all necessary dimensions and measurements on site prior to manufacturing and installation.

BA 02.5.5 Down pipe accessories

Brackets:

Standard baked enamel/galvanised brackets shall be spaced at centres not exceeding 2,4 metres.

Brackets to be primed and painted with 2 coats of high gloss enamel.

Shoes, offsets and spreaders:

Manufactured from 0,8 mm thick baked enamel/galvanised material, cut and mitred to suit. All joints to be sealed with an approved silicone sealant.

BA.02.5.6 General

The Contractor will be responsible for the stability of the supporting structure during and after removal of existing roof cladding and sheeting.

SANS 1200 HB "Cladding and Sheeting" will be applicable for the erection of all new roofs.

The Contractor must give a minimum 3 year guarantee for the watertight roof and workmanship. The manufacturer must carry out inspections at regular intervals during the construction period. He must issue a certificate of acceptance and compliance on completion to the client.

BA 03 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BA.03.1 DETAILS OF MATERIAL TO BE USED

For detail descriptions of materials, thicknesses, dimensions and ancillary items to be used, as specified in the various payment items of roof sheeting, cladding, flashings, etc.; refer to the scheduled list below:

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
Roof:	
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Ridge Flashing	462 mm girth (231 + 231), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone; 2 rows of broad flute polyclosers bedded in silicone, 2 rows x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closers. Bend up trough to form a dam.
0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked	Fix standard serrated narrow flute eaves closer to timber purlin. Patch plaster and touch up paint work.

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
enamel Eaves Closer	
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Apex Trim	462 mm girth (231 + 231 vertical), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of broad flute polycloser bedded in silicone, 2 rows x 0,6 mm thick galvanised broad flute metal closers. Bend up trough to form a dam.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Headwall Flashing	385 mm girth (231 + 154 vertical) headwall flashing, 2 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of broad flute polycloser bedded in silicone, 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer. Bend up trough to form a dam. 154 mm girth (114 + 25 + 15 lip @ 15°) Galvanised baked enamel counter flashing, 3 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Counter flashing to overlap with headwall flashing with at least 75 mm. Cut 6 mm wide groove into brick wall for counter flashing. Prime joint and seal with an approved 6 x 6 mm poly-urethane sealant.
Extra over for cutting into brick wall	6 mm wide groove x 30 mm deep into brick wall. Clean groove from dust and prime groove.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Hip Flashing	462 mm girth (231 + 231), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 2 rows of broad flute polyclosers bedded in silicone, 2 rows x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closers on rake. Bend up trough to form a dam.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Apron Flashing	462* mm girth (308 + 154* vertical, girt position determines final upstand length on site), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 2 rows of broad flute polyclosers bedded in silicone, 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer. Bend up trough to form a dam.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Eaves Flashing	462* mm girth (154 vertical + 308*, girt position determines final upstand length), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row each of broad and narrow flute polyclosers bedded in silicone, 1 row each x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad and narrow flute metal closers. Turn down trough to form a drip. Overhang length of roof sheeting to be determined on site.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Gable	308 mm girth (262 + 46 vertical), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. Flashing to be fitted

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
Flashing (residential type)	tightly over gable fascia board. Provide one row of continuous silicone on rib.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Gable Flashing (industrial type)	462 mm girth (262 +200 vertical), 3 x bends (2 are shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer on side wall cladding. Provide one row of continuous silicone on rib.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Side Wall Flashing	385 mm girth (231 + 154 vertical) side wall flashing, 2 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of broad flute polycloser bedded in silicone (only for vertical side wall cladding). 154 mm girth (114 + 25 + 15 lip @ 15°) Galvanised baked enamel counter flashing, 3 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Counter flashing (side wall is a brick wall) to overlap with side wall flashing with at least 75 mm. Cut 6 mm wide groove into brick wall parallel to roof sheeting for counter flashing. Prime joint and seal with an approved 6 x 6 mm poly-urethane sealant.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Roof Overhang Barge Flashing	616 mm girth (286 + 300 vertical + 20 + 10 vertical) standard Craft-Lock barge flashing, 4 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers, and to 250 x 25 wide x 2,5 thick with 25 mm lip galvanised bracket. The galvanised bracket to be screwed to rafter ends with 2 countersunk brass screws. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of broad flute polycloser bedded in silicone, 1 row x Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer bedded in a row of silicone. Bend up trough to form a dam.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Side Roof Overhang Flashing (carports)	616 mm girth (286 + 300 vertical + 20 + 10 vertical), 4 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws and washers, and to 250 x 25 wide x 2,5 thick with 25 mm lip galvanised bracket. The galvanised bracket to be screwed to timber rafter ends with 2 countersunk brass screws or to be site welded to steel purlins. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Valley Flashing	770 mm girth (308 + 27 vertical + 100 wide gutter + 27 vertical + 308), 6 x bends (2 x shallow bends). Fix valley gutter to top of valley rafters with posidriv screws and washers (seal with silicone). Cut and bend valley gutter at main gutter with 25 mm down lip. 225 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 2 rows of narrow flute polyclosers in ribs bedded in silicone.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Valley Side Wall Flashing	616 mm girth (308 + 27 vertical + 140 wide gutter + 141 vertical), 4 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Fix valley gutter to top of valley rafter with Posidriv screws and washers (seal with silicone) and impact nails (6 mm dia x 60 long @ 200 c/c) to brick wall. Cut and bend valley gutter at main gutter with

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
	25 mm down lip. 225 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of narrow flute polyclosers in ribs bedded in silicone. 154 mm girth (114 + 25 + 15 lip @ 15°) galvanised counter flashing, 3 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Counter flashing (side wall is a brick wall) to overlap with side wall flashing with at least 75 mm. Cut 6 mm wide groove into brick wall parallel to roof sheeting for counter flashing. Prime joint and seal with an approved 6 x 6 mm poly-urethane sealant.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Flat Back Flashing	1200* mm wide (25 mm lips on sides bend down to angle of rib) x 925 mm girth, * width of roof monitors determine the final width of flat back flashing. Flat back flashing for full length between monitor and ridge. Fix flashing to roof sheeting with posidriv screws or sealed type Aluminium blind pop rivets. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row of broad flute polycloser bedded in silicone at bottom end of flat back flashing.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Wall Gutter	616 mm girth (154 vertical x 462 at slope), 1 x bend. Fix boundary/side valley gutter to top of valley rafter with posidriv screws and washers (seal with silicone) and impact nails (6 mm dia. x 60 long @ 200 c/c) to brick wall. 225 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row x 0,6 mm thick galvanised narrow flute closers in ribs fixed to purlins with posidriv screws and washers; seal with silicone. 154 mm girth (114 + 25 + 15 lip @ 15°) Galvanised baked enamel counter flashing, 3 x bends (1 is a shallow bend). Counter flashing (side wall is a brick wall) to overlap with side wall flashing with at least 75 mm. Cut 6 mm wide groove into brick wall for counter flashing. Prime joint and seal with an approved 6 x 6 mm poly-urethane sealant.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Corner Piece Flashing (for monitors)	231 wide x 77 vertical x 462 long, shallow bend for horizontal portion. Fix flashing to roof sheeting with Posidriv screws or sealed type Aluminium blind pop rivets. Seal overlap with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. Provide broad flute polyclosers bedded in silicone in troughs.
Walls: (m)	
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel External Vertical Flashing	462 mm girth (231 + 231), 3 x bends (2 x shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with Posidriv screws and washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Internal Vertical Flashing	462 mm girth (231 + 231), 3 x bends (2 x shallow bends). Fix flashing to roof sheeting with Posidriv screws with washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Internal Vertical Flashing	462 mm girth (231 + 231), 3 x bends (2 x shallow bends), fix flashing to roof sheeting with Posidriv screws with washers. 150 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone.

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Drip Flashing	154 mm girth (64 vertical + 50 + 20 vertical + 20) standard drip flashing, 3 x bends. Fix flashing to girts or roof sheeting with sealed type Aluminium blind pop rivets or Posidriv screws with washers. 50 mm overlap sealed with one row of silicone and stitched together with sealed blind type pop rivets.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Window Flashings	154 mm girth 3 x bends. Different flashing details for sill, jamb and top of window. Contractor to provide details to Engineer for approval. One row of narrow flute polyclosers bedded in silicone above and below window frame. Fix flashings to girts or roof sheeting with Posidriv screws and washers or sealed type Aluminium blind pop rivets. 100 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. Seal around window frame with silicone to waterproof flashings. 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer for sill flashing.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Door Flashings	154 mm girth 3 x bends. Different flashing details for sill, jamb and top of window. Contractor to provide details to Engineer for approval. One row of narrow flute polyclosers bedded in silicone above and below window frame. Fix flashings to girts or roof sheeting with Posidriv screws and washers or sealed type Aluminium blind pop rivets. 100 mm overlap sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. Seal around window frame with silicone to waterproof flashings. 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer for sill flashing
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Bull Nose Flashing	462 mm girth (262 +200 vertical), 3 x bends excluding curving (2 are shallow bends), Fix flashing to roof sheeting with Posidriv screws and washers. 300 mm max. overlaps (run outs) sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. 1 row x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel broad flute metal closer on side wall cladding. Provide one row of continuous silicone on rib. Contractor to measure radius on site prior manufacturing.
Roof Insulation: (m²)	
White Bubble Foil on white straining wires (abattoirs only)	Lay insulation strictly to manufacturer's specifications. Use 1,6 mm diameter white PVC coated straining wires @ 300 mm c/c max. Refer to clause 2.3.7 of Technical Specification BA: Roof Coverings.
420 RSA heavy duty reinforced reflective Aluminium foil	Lay insulation strictly to manufacturer's specifications. Refer to clause 2.3.7 of Technical Specification BA: Roof Coverings.
Rainwater Goods:(m)	
100 x 75 x 0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel beaded non-	Provide 25 x 1 mm thick galvanised fascia straps @ 686 c/c to support fascia of gutters; fix with 6 mm galvanised gutter bolts, nuts and washers.

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
supporting box gutter	All accessories and ancillary items included. Roof sheeting troughs to be have drip bend.
100 x 75 x 0,6 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel down pipes; height < 5 m	Provide one down pipe for every 6 m of gutter length. For gutter length of 3 to 6 m, provide two down pipes. All accessories and ancillary items included.
125 x 100 x 0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel self-supporting box gutter	Gutter to be braced back to the roof sheeting with a 25 x 1 mm thick galvanised fascia straps @ 686 c/c. The detail can only be applied to sheeting with a max. cantilever of 450 mm from first purlin. Roof sheeting troughs to be have drip bend.
125 x 100 x 0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel down pipes	Provide one down pipe for every 6 m of gutter length. For gutter length of 4,5 to 6 m, provide two down pipes. All accessories and ancillary items included.
100 x 100 x 0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel down pipes	Provide one down pipe for every 6 m of gutter length. For gutter length of 4,5 to 6 m, provide two down pipes. All accessories and ancillary items included.
Pipe Flashings: (No. and Dia.)	
EPDM/silicone pipe-through-roof flashings to diameter pipe flashings to diameter	For all residential type of buildings, pipe protrusions through roof sheeting will be eliminated by re-routing existing pipe work. For all other pipe protrusions: Use EPDM/silicone pipe-through-roof flashings to diameter no. 2 for pipe diameters 40 - 80 mm and EPDM/silicone pipe-through-roof flashings to diameter no. 4 for pipe diameters 80 - 150 mm. EPDM/silicone pipe-through-roof flashings to diameter flashings are made of E.P.D.M. rubber compound of a carbon black colour.
0,8 mm thick Galvanised baked enamel Cravat and Cowl Flashing to diameter	Refer to roof and wall details no 1 and 2. (Bound into the back of this document).
Pipework: (No.)	

Flashings: Refer to Technical Specifications BA	
Re-route existing pipes; diameter and number	<p><u>Re-routing of roof void geyser pipework:</u></p> <p>Disconnect and remove existing overflow pipe from Latco - and or Safety Valve, supply and connect new 15-28mm dia polycop pipe to existing Latco - and or Safety Valve including all necessary fittings, adaptors, brackets, etc. and re-route pipework in ceiling or roof void to protrude through external wall, including making good of external wall, irrespective of finish. Allow approximately 7m horizontal and 3m vertical pipework to ground level per geyser, complete with standard primer, one undercoat and two coats of super acrylic paint to exposed pipework to match existing paint system and colour.</p> <p><u>Ventilation pipework:</u></p> <p>Remove existing 100mm dia ventilation pipe section protruding through roof covering. Install 90° bend below roof level and re-route ventilation pipe to clear overhang. Install 90° reducing 100 x 50 bend and rise with 50mm dia pipe to 600mm. Install standard sewer pipe ventilation cowl on top of ventilation pipework. Pipe material must adapt to existing material of ventilation pipework. The bracketing and supports of the ventilation pipework shall be as per manufactures specifications. Standard primer, one coat undercoat and two coats of super acrylic paint to exposed pipework to match existing paint system and colour.</p>

BA.03.01**DETAILS OF ROOF PAINT REPAIR WORK**

Specification of paint shall be an extremely durable weather and UV resistant coating system for Galvanised iron roofs or previously painted galvanised iron roofs.

A two coat system shall be used consisting of a two component re-coatable polyurethane acrylic finish.

The mixing ratio of the dual pack enamel system shall be as per the manufacturer's specifications. Both components shall be stirred with a power mixer until homogeneous. The dual pack enamel system shall always be applied over a suitable primer and/or intermediate coats within the manufacture's specified over-coating intervals.

Contractor must ensure that the work is done by a competent person and must be approved by the Engineer before work may commence

SURFACE PREPARATION – PREVIOUSLY PAINTED

Remove all peeling paint by sanding, scraping or water cooled grinders fitted with reversible knotted wire brush. Care must be taken not to remove any sound galvanizing. Any unsound paint will fail at a later stage. Wash roof with Aquasolv degreaser, scotch brite pads and rinse thoroughly with clean water to ensure soluble chloride content <75mg per m². Ensure that all degreaser is properly washed off.

SURFACE PREPARATION - UNPAINTED GALVANISED

Wash roof with degreaser, scotch brite pads and rinse thoroughly with clean water. Ensure that all degreaser is properly washed off, to ensure soluble chlorine content <75mg per m2.

APPLICATION

Apply one coat of a two component anti-corrosive strontium chromate epoxy primer by using airless spray. Allow 4 hours drying time. Apply a second coat if necessary to achieve the specified DFT of 25 – 35 microns.

Apply one coat of a dual pack polyurethane enamel system with acrylic finish by airless spray to achieve complete obliteration. Ensure that a single coat of wet film application of 88 – 135 microns is achieved. This will give a DFT of 50 – 75 microns. Application in high humidity environments (75% RH) may cause surface bloom.

GUARANTEE

The Contractor must give a written 5 year guarantee for the quality and workmanship of the paint work (fair wear and tear excepted). The Contractor shall be liable for any peeling or flaking paint applied by the Contractor and shall execute all such work of repair, rectification and making good of painted surfaces as may be ordered in writing by the Engineer. The manufacturer must carry out inspections at regular intervals during the construction period. He must issue a certificate of acceptance and compliance on completion to the client.

BA 03.2

SCHEDULED ITEMS

BA.01

Supply and install cladding and sheeting:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface of the finished building as specified in, Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB.

Separate items will be scheduled for roof sheeting and side cladding, subdivided for each type of sheeting, cladding and finish, each profile and straight or curved sheets.

The rate shall cover the cost of supplying, delivering, storing on Site, handling, moving, installing and fixing the sheeting or cladding (finished or pre-painted as scheduled) complete with all necessary fasteners (all sheeting, cladding and accessories are to be supplied by a South African based manufacturer and are subject to a three year written guarantee for water tightness and workmanship). The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching, waste, all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200HB).

BA.02

Forming cranks, bullnoses, etc.:Unit: m

Cranks, bullnoses, etc. will be measured by length, with bullnoses to a maximum of 600mm radius and bend to maximum of 90°.

Separate items for cranks, bullnoses, etc., will be scheduled for each different type of sheeting, profile and finish.

The rate shall cover the cost of supplying, delivery, storing on Site, handling, moving, installing and fixing of cranks, bullnoses, etc. and shall be measured as an extra over the specified roof sheeting. The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching, waste, all necessary scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.2 of SANS 1200 HB).

BA.03 Carefully remove existing cladding and sheeting:.....Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface of finished building (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

Separate items will be scheduled for roof covering and side cladding, without differentiating amongst different profiles, etc.

The rate shall cover the cost of removing of existing roof sheeting or side cladding inclusive of flashings and sundry items from timber or steel purlins, and the removal from site of all such material. The rate shall also cover the cost of any scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities etc. as well as credit for the redundant material becoming the property of the Contractor.

The rate shall also cover all temporary necessary dust screens, sheets, plastic linings, etc. laid horizontal or vertical inside existing roof spaces or voids on top of ceilings, trusses, etc. to protect all contents inside the buildings while replacing or repairing the roof coverings.

BA.04 Carefully remove and store existing cladding and sheeting:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface of finished building (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

Separate items will be scheduled for roof covering and side cladding without differentiating amongst different profiles etc.

The rate shall cover the cost of removing of existing roof sheeting or side cladding inclusive of flashings and sundry items from timber or steel purlins, the temporary storage of the removed sheeting or cladding at a store area (position of store area to be indicated on site). The rate shall also cover the cost of any scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities etc.

The rate shall also cover all temporary necessary dust screens, sheets, plastic linings, etc. laid horizontal or vertical inside existing roof spaces or voids on top of ceilings, trusses, etc. to protect all contents inside the buildings while replacing or repairing the roof coverings.

BA.05 Re-erect: Stockpiled cladding and sheeting:.....Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface off the finished building (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

Separate items will be scheduled for roof covering and side cladding without differentiating amongst different profiles, etc.

The rate shall cover the cost of preparing, re-erecting, handling, moving, installing existing stockpiled sheeting and cladding including new fixing fasteners, etc. complete. The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching, waste, all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200HB).

BA.06 Supply and install sundry items, etc.:Unit: m

Flashing, ridging, etc. will be measured by length.

Separate items will be scheduled for each type, finish and shape of sundry item.

The rate shall cover the cost of supplying, delivery, storing on Site, handling, moving, installing and fixing the relevant item complete with all fasteners and sundry items as stipulated in BA.02.3.4.

The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching, waste and of all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

BA.07 Supply and install roof insulation:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface, no deductions being made for openings left or cut for protrusions such as those specified in Sub clause 5.7 of SANS 1200 HB, or for ventilators and the like. Deductions will be made for windows and other openings of similar dimensions.

The rate shall cover the costs of supplying, delivery, storing on Site, handling, moving, installing and fixing complete with all necessary fasteners as specified in BA.02.3.7, and shall also cover cost of cutting, notching, waste and of all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

BA.08 Supply and install rainwater goods:Unit: m

Rainwater goods and similar lengths of constant profile will be measured by length.

Sundry items such as stop-ends, bends, shoes, etc. are deemed to be included in the tendered rate per metre.

Separate items will be scheduled for each type, finish, shape and when relevant, profile of rainwater goods. The rate shall cover the cost of supplying, delivery, storing on Site, handling, moving installing and fixing the relevant goods complete with all necessary fasteners, etc. as specified in BA.02.5 (all complete and subject to a three year written guarantee on watertightness and workmanship). The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching and waste, and of all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

BA.09 Carefully remove existing rainwater goods:Unit: m

The length measured will be that of the exposed length of finished building.

No separate items will be scheduled for size, thickness, material, profile, galvanised or baked enamel finished items.

The rate shall cover the cost of removing of existing rainwater goods inclusive of brackets and sundry items from timber or steel purlins and trusses, the cost of any scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities etc. and the allowance of credit for material to become the property of the Contractor and to be removed from the site.

BA.10 Miscellaneous items:(a) Measured by number:

- (i) (Description of item).....Unit: No
(ii) Etc.

(b) Measured by linear metre:

- (i) (Description of item).....Unit: m
(ii) Etc.

The unit of measurement shall be the number or metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing or providing and installing each item complete as per BA.03.1.

BA.11 Roof rehabilitation:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface of building as specified in Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB. Separate items will be scheduled for roof sheeting and side cladding, without differentiating between different profiles, finishings, fixing methods, etc.

The rate shall cover the cost for inspecting, removing existing and supplying and fixing new posidriv screws and mechanisms, sealants, sealer strips, etc. complete.

The rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, waste, all scaffolding, temporary supports, etc. all to the approval of the Engineer.

BA.12 Supply and install additional fixing screws, etc.:Unit: No

The unit of measurement will be the number of additional screws installed.

The rate shall cover the cost for removing defective fixing screws as indicated by the Engineer, and replacing aforesaid with new posidriv or equivalent approved fixing screws in similar previous positions.

No separate items will be scheduled for roof sheeting, side cladding or different profiles. Payment under this item shall not include the screws to be replaced under the roof rehabilitation item above.

BA.13 Carefully remove and re-erect ventilation units:Unit: No

The unit of measurement will be number of ventilation units removed, temporarily stored and resized to similar positions.

The rate shall cover the cost for carefully removing existing ventilation units approximately 2,5m² in area from existing roof structures, temporary storage, servicing of existing ventilation units, cleaning, re-erecting later onto new roof sheeting (irrespective of type or profile of sheeting), new ventilation flashings and counter flashings, sealants, fixing screws, fasteners, etc. complete.

The rate shall also cover the cost for cutting openings into new sheeting for ventilation units, waste, all necessary scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions (see Sub clause 8.1.1 of SANS 1200 HB).

BA.14 Carefully remove and re-erect bird proofing:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface to be covered with bird-proofing.

The rate shall cover the cost for carefully removing chicken wire bird-proofing stapled to each roof truss tie beam at roof overhang between beam-filling and fascia board, temporary storage, cleaning of bird-proofing, re-erecting later into similar previous position. The rate shall also cover the cost for cutting, fixing staples, waste, scaffolding, etc.

BA.15 Prepare existing roof sheeting and repaint:Unit: m²

The area measured will be that of the exposed surface of roof sheeting painted (measured on flat area as for roof coverings.)

The rate shall cover the cost for removing existing paint and cleaning surfaces with an approved degreaser and scotch brite pads and rinsing thoroughly by means of pressure washing to receive one new primer coat and one coat dual pack poly-urethane enamel system with acrylic finish roof paint, supplying, delivery and applying new primer and finishing coat, etc., without distinguishing between roof sheeting, side cladding, profile, finish, etc., as specified in BA 03.02

The rate shall also cover the cost of waste, all necessary scaffolding, etc.

BA.16 Replacement of existing roof tiles in patchwork:Unit: number

The unit of measurement will be number of roof tiles removed, installation of new roof tiles similar to existing roof tiles.

The rate shall cover the cost for carefully removing existing roof tiles approximately 350mm x 350mm in area from existing roof structures, installation of new roof tiles and ridge flashings, sealants, fixing screws, fasteners, etc. complete. The rate shall also cover the cost, waste, all necessary scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and safety precautions.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BB CARPENTRY AND JOINERY FOR ROOFS AND CEILINGS

CONTENTS

BB 01	SCOPE
BB 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BB 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BB 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BB 05	MAINTENANCE
BB 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BB 01 SCOPE

Carpentry and joinery shall mean the maintenance of materials and components such as removal of existing timber roof trusses, purlins, ceilings, etc., and the installation of new timber trusses and other timber roof members, structural beams, purlins, battens and ceilings. This specification does not include work related to roof coverings and paintwork, which are specified elsewhere.

This specification covers the corrective maintenance repairs of existing timber members in roof trusses, the removal and replacement of existing timber members from roof trusses and associated timber roof members and ceilings. This specification also covers the supply, delivery and installation of new timber trusses, purlins, battens and beams for various types of timber related structures and ceilings.

The complete scope of repair work shall be as described in BB 04: Detail of repair work.

Maintenance of this part of the installation shall be performed in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the specific requirements included in this Technical Specification.

BB 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BB 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	-	Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 & Dec 2015 respectively
SANS 10243	-	The design, manufacture and erection of timber trusses
SANS 266	-	Gypsum plasterboard
SANS 1783 - 2	-	Stress-graded softwood: general structural timber
SANS 1783 - 4	-	Softwood brandering and battens
SANS 803	-	Fibre-cement boards

BB 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BA: Roof coverings

Technical Specification BD: Walls

Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork

BB 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**BB 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF TIMBER ROOF STRUCTURES****BB 03.01.01 Timber trusses****(a) Replacing timber trusses**

The Engineer shall inspect timber trusses for defects and establish which timber trusses must be replaced.

Reasons for replacing trusses will include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Deflection exceeding acceptable limits;
- (ii) Inadequacy in design, e.g. structural strength, structural instability, load conditions;
- (iii) Decay of large portions of truss members (defective timber);
- (iv) Large portions of truss members having so many defects e.g. cracked timber, corroded connector nail plates, etc., that it will be uneconomical to repair the defects.

(b) Repair of timber trusses

Repair work shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Strengthening of truss members, connections, splices and anchorage at supports;
- (ii) Strengthening of truss members due to unforeseen loads, notching and cutting for services by other contractors;
- (iii) Repair of truss members where large knots and waness occur;
- (iv) Replacing metal plate connectors in cases of corrosion, incorrect application of connector plates, incorrect size of connector plates, unsymmetrically fitted connector plates, connector plates with teeth flattened, minimum bite of less than 65 mm of a connector plate on a truss member;
- (v) Replacing of decayed timber, particularly rafter ends at roof overhangs and at roofing screws. Timber subjected to insect attack and fungal decay should be treated with an appropriate preservative. Where there is a low risk of decay or insect attack, two coats of Creosote may be applied to the timber. Refer to clauses 8 in PW 371 for the preservation of wood in high-risk regions;
- (vi) Replacing and/or repair of cracked timber members. Galvanised connector plates and metal straps may be considered;

- (vii) Maximum slenderness ratio must be less than 180 for compression members that carry forces resulting from dead and live loads. Compression members 36 mm thick and longer than 1,8 m must have a continuous longitudinal runner centrally placed (or T-bracing) and properly connected and braced. For members that resist loads caused by wind, the slenderness ratio must be less than 250;
- (viii) Plumb of trusses should not exceed 100 mm or total span/20 whichever is the least;
- (ix) Exposed portions of the trusses shall be painted to match existing appearance.

The roof trusses shall be fully braced. The Engineer shall give instructions regarding the provision of bracing members to the roof system.

BB 03.01.02 Purlins (for sheeted roofs, battens for tiled roofs)

(a) Replacing timber purlins

The Engineer shall inspect timber purlins for defects and possible reuse. The Engineer shall establish which timber purlins need to be replaced.

Reasons for replacing purlins will include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Decayed timber, particularly at gable overhangs;
- (ii) Broken, warped and brittle timber;
- (iii) Worn-out roof screw holes;
- (iv) Inadequacy in design, e.g. structural strength and excessive deflection due to large spans;
- (v) Inappropriate spacing of purlins for the specific roof covering.

(b) Repair of timber purlins

Repair work shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) For roof pitches under 45° the purlins shall be erected on edge (narrow edge).
- (ii) All purlins shall be secured to rafters at each intersection in addition to nails. In roof voids a single 3,2 mm diameter galvanised wire tie bound twice with twisted ends or a galvanised bent plate connector shall be used for securing purlins to rafters. On roof overhangs only galvanised bent plate connectors shall be used for securing purlins to rafters.
- (iii) Splices shall be staggered. Splices that do not conform to the requirements of clause 4 of PW 371, or clauses 8.5.1 and 8.5.2 of SANS 10234, must be repaired. Nailed galvanised plate connectors on either side of purlins are also acceptable.
- (iv) Exposed portions of the purlins shall be painted to match existing appearance.

Skew nailing of purlins to trusses shall not be closer than 30 mm from the edge of the member.

BB 03.01.03 Structural timber**(a) Replacing structural timber**

The Engineer shall inspect members of structural timber, i.e. beams and columns, for defects and shall establish which of these members must be replaced. Reasons for replacement will include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Deflection exceeding acceptable limits;
- (ii) Inadequacy in design, e.g. structural strength, structural instability, load conditions;
- (iii) Decay of a large portion of the member (defective timber);
- (iv) Replacing of decayed timber, particularly at ends of beams.

(b) Repair of structural timber

Repair work shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Strengthening of members, connections, splices and anchorage at supports;
- (ii) Strengthening of members due to unforeseen loads, notching and cutting for services by other contractors;
- (iii) Exposed portions of structural timber shall be painted to match existing appearance;
- (iv) Bolt connections shall be in accordance with the requirements of SANS 10163.

BB 03.01.04 Ceilings

New ceilings shall be installed in accordance with clause 9 of PW 371.

(a) Branding to ceilings

Branding to ceilings shall be replaced where:

- (i) Ceiling boards are replaced;
- (ii) Branding is broken, rotten and beyond any further use.

New branding shall be provided in accordance with clause 9 of PW 371. The branding shall continue over at least three bays and shall be staggered to ensure that splices do not all occur in one line. Branding must be provided for light fitting support.

(b) Gypsum ceiling boards

Repairs to existing ceilings shall include the installation of new 6,4 mm thick gypsum ceiling boards with metal H-section jointing strips. The new ceiling boards shall be nailed to branding with galvanised or cadmium-plated clout-headed nails.

Gypsum ceiling boards shall not be used in wet areas such as in ablutions, abattoirs, kitchens and bathrooms.

Ceiling boards shall be in long lengths, symmetrically arranged with smaller panels, closely butted and secured at 150 mm centres to brandering as specified.

Where it is necessary to replace ceiling boards onto existing brandering, new boards shall be installed by first drilling through and then securing with cadmium-plated flat headed wood screws, or alternatively by shot nailing to suit, to avoid unnecessary vibration or impact damage to adjacent elements.

Gypsum cove cornices 76 mm wide shall be provided where existing cornices are to be replaced.

Existing trap doors in ceilings shall be reused. If required, new 650 x 650 mm trap doors shall be installed.

No ceiling insulation must be provided unless specified.

Painting of the ceiling shall be done in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

(c) Fibre cement ceiling boards

Fibre cement ceiling boards shall be installed in wet areas such as in ablutions, abattoirs, kitchens and bathrooms.

Fibre cement ceiling boards shall be 6 mm thick, complying with the requirements of SANS 803 and of the flat pressed type.

The boards shall be nailed to the brandering with 2 mm diameter galvanised or cadmium-plated clout-headed nails, spaced at 100 mm centres at edges of boards and 150 mm centres along the intermediate brandering. Ceiling boards shall be in long lengths, symmetrically arranged with smaller panels as required and closely butted.

Replacement of new ceiling boards onto existing brandering shall be done as described in BB 03.01.04(b) above.

Fibrous plasterboard cove cornices to ceilings shall be of 100 mm girth, provided by an approved manufacturer. Gypsum cove cornices 76 mm wide can be used in kitchens and bathrooms of houses. Powder-coated wall angles 25 mm wide shall be used for cornices in abattoirs.

Existing trap doors in ceilings shall be reused. If required, new 650 x 650 mm trap doors shall be installed.

Painting of the ceiling shall be done in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

(d) Exposed T-system suspended ceilings

Repairs to existing suspended ceilings will include but not be limited to the following:

- (i) Replace damaged panels with new ceiling boards;
- (ii) Replace sections of damaged T-strips or H-strips;
- (iii) Replace cornices;

- (iv) Tension, fix and realign existing hangers;
- (v) Install new hangers as required;
- (vi) Clean ceiling boards, including washing of the ceiling boards with a mixture of water and sugar soap and wiping dry, or painting the ceiling boards.

(e) External gable fibre cement boards for side cladding

External tongued and grooved boarding shall be removed and replaced with 6 mm thick flat pressed fibre cement boarding. The boarding shall be fixed to new brandering as specified in this section. Provide painted 25 x 25 mm meranti quarter rounds at edges as required.

The boarding shall be painted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

BB 03.01.05 Fascia and barge boards

Repairs to fascia and barge boards shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replace damaged and broken fibre cement fascia and barge boards.
- (b) Replace missing, corroded and damaged H-profile jointing strips.
- (c) Replace all nails with suitable length and diameter brass screws. Provide nylon plugs to timber where necessary.
- (d) Align and fix existing fascia and barge boards.
- (e) Paint fascia and barge boards in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork. All sides including the edges must be painted.
- (f) The roof covering shall cover the top edge of the fascia on gables.

BB 03.01.06 Timber trusses, purlins and battens

(a) Existing timber trusses and roof structure

(i) General

- (1) The Contractor shall establish proper access and install adequate lighting to the roof voids to enable detailed inspections of structural deficiencies by the Engineer. Temporary scaffold planks shall be laid across bottom chords to allow access to all critical areas. After inspection, the extent of repairs is to be agreed with the Engineer.
- (2) All completed work shall be inspected and approved by the Engineer.
- (3) All new timber work shall comply with SANS 10163.
- (4) Timber grade shall be S5 and replacement sizes are to match existing unless otherwise agreed.

- (5) Repair details on attached sheets R1 to R3 shall form the basis for repairs. Any deviations from or variations to these details are to be approved by the Engineer. Any types of failure not covered by these details shall be discussed with the Engineer who will then issue the necessary repair instructions.
- (ii) Procedures (watermarked and slightly rotten members)
- (1) Watermarked and slightly rotten members need not be replaced or repaired if the following test indicate these members to be satisfactorily:

Using a 3,5 mm nail, make scratch marks in all these members to expose good unaffected timber. If scratch depth is 2 mm or less, it is acceptable and these members need only to be treated as described in (2) below.
 - (2) The members shall be wire-brush cleaned, free of any loose or deleterious material, then treated with 1 coat of creosote, or similar approved. Apply by brush to affected areas and 200 mm beyond, all to the manufacturer's specifications. Safety precautions shall be taken against possible health or fire hazards as specified by manufacturer.
- (iii) Procedures (cracked and failed members)
- (1) All members that are cracked right through will be regarded as failed members. Members with minor longitudinal cracks shall be repaired, following procedure 5 on sheet R3.
 - (2) The Contractor must allow for propping and/or bracing at failed members to ensure complete structural stability during repairs.
 - (3) Failed members as indicated in details 1 to 4 on sheets R1 to R3 shall be realigned by means of clamping with temporary backing pieces, after which repairs can proceed.
 - (4) Members that are damaged too badly to effect repairs will have to be replaced or doubled up to suit the circumstances.
 - (5) Once all repair work has been completed the Contractor must clean out the ceiling void, free of all rubbish, excess building material and all other foreign matter and make good any damage caused to ceilings, etc.
 - (6) Any alternative repair proposal shall be submitted in writing to the Engineer.

BB 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

The detail of the work is described in the Schedule of Quantities.

BB 05 MAINTENANCE

This specification shall be read in conjunction with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All components forming part of this specification for carpentry and joinery for roofs and ceilings shall be maintained as part of the maintenance of installations as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, routine inspections, fixing of defects or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary to maintain the perfect functional condition of carpentry and joinery for roofs according to the operation and maintenance manuals and as specified in this specification.

All timber trusses and members of timber roofs shall be preserved in a good condition, i.e. failure free, free from insect attack and decay due to exposure to moisture.

Maintenance on the carpentry and joinery for roofs shall also include all other actions related to (or resulting from) maintenance, such as:

- Cleaning of the site and ceiling voids of rubbish and dirt;
- replacing any element that has failed;
- tightening, fixing or replacing of loose fasteners, premature corrosion of galvanised items like screws, nail plates, etc.

Remuneration for maintenance of the complete carpentry and joinery for roofs shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for maintenance of the applicable installation.

BB 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**BB 06.01 MEASUREMENT AND RATES****BB 06.01.01 General inclusion of costs****Notes:**

All material scheduled to be removed shall be deemed to be existing damaged materials in small or large sections. All such redundant material shall become the property of the Contractor and must be removed from site immediately.

All new material used for repair work shall be of approved equal quality, colours, profiles, thickness, etc. and shall in all cases match the existing materials and shall be fixed (internally or externally) to existing material or surfaces.

All replacement, removal and repair work shall be done carefully as to not damage any adjacent or other material or work. Any damage to other or adjacent materials or areas caused by the negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by him free of charge.

All work scheduled to be removed or taken out shall be deemed to include the cleaning and preparation of the remaining sections, areas, or work to receive the new material or work specified.

Repair work shall also include all cutting, grinding, cutting into, welding, bending, strengthening, drilling, etc. to repair or to improve the items or areas as new and to match the existing.

Work scheduled to be realigned and refixed shall be deemed to include all necessary new additional materials, brackets, connector plates, bolts, pip rivets, nails, screws, spacer blocks, clamps, timber, and labour, etc. to leave the items as new and totally functional.

All new work are measured net and shall include all cutting, lapping, waste, bending, fixing, corners, mitres, fixing screws, pip rivets, nails, adhesive, grout, putty, etc., as well as cleaning and preparation of surfaces not already prepared as part of removed items, etc.

Unless scheduled otherwise, new ceilings and ceilings in patchwork shall be fixed to existing branderings and the Contractor must take special care not to damage the existing branderings when removing damaged ceiling boards.

BB 06.02 SCHEDULED ITEMS

NEW WORK

BB.01 Structural timber:

- (a) Plates (sizes indicated) Unit: m
- (b) Beams (sizes indicated) Unit: m
- (c) Joists (sizes indicated) Unit: m
- (d) Rafters (sizes indicated) Unit: m
- (e) Purlins (sizes indicated) Unit: m
- (f) Roof trusses complete (drawing number indicated) Unit: number
- (g) Etc.

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of individual types of timber elements or number of complete trusses installed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply of all materials, manufacture, cutting, waste, jointing, scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and installation of the timber as specified, scheduled or shown on the Drawings.

BB.02 Ceilings:

- (a) Ceiling boards, trapdoors, cornices, cover strips, etc.
(type and/or thickness indicated):
 - (i) Thickness, shape and description of applications Unit: m², m, number
 - (ii) Etc. for other thicknesses, shapes, etc.

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of ceiling boards, trapdoors, cornices, etc. installed complete as specified and scheduled.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the construction of the ceilings, trapdoors, cornices, cover strips, etc. including jointing strips, insulation blankets and bandering as specified.

BB.03**Joinery:****(a) Items measured by number:**

- (i) Doors, etc. (type and size indicated)Unit: number
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by number

(b) Items measured by linear metre:

- (i) Skirtings, rails, cover strips, quadrant beads, etc. (size indicated) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by length

(c) Items measured by area:

- (i) Eaves covering, etc. (type and thickness indicated)Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by area

The units of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of each type and/or size of joinery item specified and installed complete.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply of all materials, manufacture, cutting, waste, fixing, scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and installation of the joinery items.

Ironmongery to be included in the rates tendered for doors shall be as specified in the Technical Specification BD: Walls.

New joinery, will except where otherwise specified, be fixed or hung to existing material or surfaces.

ALTERATION WORK**BB.04****Alterations and repairs to existing structures:****(a) Indicate if repairs, alterations, removal or sealing, etc.:**

- (i) Description of individual items to be repaired, replaced, altered, removed, sealed, etc. Unit: m³, m², m, number

The unit of measurement for items repaired, replaced, altered, removed, sealed, etc. shall be cubic metre, square metre, metre or number as scheduled. No distinction between sizes or profiles will be made for the removal of structural timber elements.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs to repair, refix, remove, cutting into, re-align, taking off, handling, temporary store, scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities and preparing existing remaining material or surfaces where applicable to receive new items as well as for credit for the redundant material becoming the property of the Contractor, etc. as specified in the Standard and Technical Specifications and shall allow for all necessary labour, plant and new material needed for the repairs, replacement or

alterations, etc. to leave the scheduled items as new and to the approval of the Engineer. Refer also to the general inclusion of costs in BB.06.01.01."

BB.05 **Repairs to watermarked and slightly rotten timber roof members:.....Unit: m**

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of timber roof members repaired as specified. No distinction will be made for size, type of member or position.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the complete repair work, wire brushing, creosote, etc. as specified by the Engineer.

BB.06 **Repairs to damaged masonry, plastering and surface finishes:**

(a) Items measured by number:

(i) Description of item.....Unit: No

(ii) Etc.....Unit: m

(b) Items measured by linear metre:

(i) Description of item.....Unit: No

(ii) Etc.....Unit: m

The unit of measurement shall be the number or metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the making good of masonry (stock or face bricks), beam-filling, plastering, painting, closing ends to troughs of sheet metal roof sheeting, repairs to structure at ends of rafters and purlins, protruding through brick walls, etc.

The tendered rate shall also cover the cost of cutting, notching and waste and of all scaffolding, temporary supports, etc.

BB.07 **Painting to top cords of timber trusses in roof voids:.....Unit: m**

The unit of measurement shall be the metre.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation to prepare existing top cords (where applicable) to receive one coat creosote. No distinction will be made for size, type, new or existing members. The rate shall also cover the cost for waste, all scaffolding, etc.

BB.08 **Painting of existing members in overhangs:.....Unit: m**

The unit of measurement shall be the metre.

Separate items will be listed for paint and/or creosote as specified.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation to prepare existing overhangs to receive paint or creosote as specified. No distinction will be made for size of existing members. The rate shall also cover the cost for waste, all scaffolding, etc.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BC WATERPROOFING OF CONCRETE ROOFS

CONTENTS

BC 01	SCOPE
BC 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BC 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BC 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BC 05	MAINTENANCE
BC 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BC 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the corrective maintenance repairs of existing cement screeds and waterproofing, including all sundries, the removal of waterproofing and the supply, delivery, installation of new cement screeds, waterproofing and sundries for various types of concrete roofs.

Waterproofing shall mean the work to be carried out to repair/replace and maintain waterproofing materials and components, such as the repair/removal and maintenance of existing cement screeds and waterproofing and the installation of new cement screeds and waterproofing. This specification does not include work related to concrete work, plastering, gutters and downpipes specified elsewhere.

The complete scope of the repair work shall be as described in BC 04: Detail of repair work.

Maintenance of this part of the installation shall be performed in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and the specific requirements included in this Technical Specification.

BC 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BC 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments to date of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice, shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed part to form part thereof:

- PW 371 - Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
- SANS 10021 - SANS code of practice: Waterproofing of buildings.

BC 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BE: Floors

Technical Specification BF: Structural concrete

BC 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**BC 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF WATERPROOFING ON CONCRETE ROOFS****BC 03.01.01 Introduction**

Clause 8 of PW 371 shall be adhered to when open concrete roofs are waterproofed. Existing waterproofing that leaks shall be replaced.

BC 03.01.02 General

Waterproofing materials shall be transported, handled and stored with care and laid strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. A clean, dry, smooth, firm and structurally adequate base with a fall of at least 1 in 50 (depending on the material selected) is required, with drainage to gutters and/or rainwater outlets on roof edges, as relevant. Attention shall be given to the detailed design of openings, projections, gutters, down pipes and finishes to make adequate provision for run-off water and to minimize blockages.

Corners and edges shall be covered or angle-rounded. Run-off over the edges of slabs shall be eliminated as this causes stains to the building. Fillets of 75 x 75 mm shall be provided at up stand corners.

The necessary gradient for waterproof membranes are normally provided on top of structures in low-density screeds and then finished, if necessary, with a cement/mortar topping. Screeds and toppings shall be of sufficient quality to provide a firm base. The following screed characteristics are suggested for waterproofing purposes:

- (a) Compressive strength of at least 25 MPa at 28 days;
- (b) Steel-trowel finish (light);
- (c) Drying shrinkage of less than 0,2 % when tested in accordance with the testing conditions specified in SANS 836;
- (d) Minimum screed thickness of 40 mm;
- (e) Maximum moisture content of screeds:
 - (i) Applications with a density of less than 500 kg/m³ : 10 %
 - (ii) Applications with a density exceeding 500 kg/m³ : 7 %.

The screed should be cast or sawn into panels that do not exceed 9 m² to cater for drying shrinkage and to control cracking.

BC 03.02 MATERIALS

The more commonly used waterproofing materials are listed below, as well as some general comments on these materials. It is suggested that the manufacturers be consulted with regard to specific products. The Engineer's approval of the selected product shall be obtained prior to ordering.

BC 03.02.01 Bituminous materials

- (a) Polymer modified bitumen membranes
- (b) Reinforced bitumen emulsions.

BC 03.02.02 Plastomeric membranes

Plastics such as polyvinyl chloride (PVC) are applied as single-layer systems and are loose-laid or fully bonded. A high degree of skill is required for the laying of these membranes.

BC 03.02.03 Reinforced liquid applied systems

Membranes based on acrylic polymer (or modified acrylic polymers) binders, reinforced with woven polyester or polypropylene fabrics, perform well as waterproofing membranes and are durable. These fully bonded systems require detailed specifications and strict supervision during application to prevent malpractice.

BC 04 DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK

The Schedule of Quantities indicates approximate quantities of work. Detailed instructions will be issued during construction.

BC 05 MAINTENANCE

Note: There will be no maintenance work required for water proofing of concrete roofs in this contract.

This specification shall be read in conjunction with Additional Specifications SA: General Maintenance.

All components that form part of the waterproofing of concrete roofs shall be maintained during the maintenance phase of the Contract.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, routine inspections, repairing of defects or other actions or rectifying measures required to maintain the perfect functional condition of waterproofing on concrete roofs in accordance with the operation and maintenance manuals and as specified. All roofs shall be kept leak-free and watertight.

Maintenance of the waterproofed concrete roofs shall include all related actions such as replacing/repairing loose and blistering waterproofing, including cracked waterproofing membranes, loose seams, painting of waterproofing membranes, and cleaning and removing rubbish from waterproofed concrete roofs.

Remuneration for maintenance of the complete waterproofing of concrete roofs shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for the maintenance thereof.

BC 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**BC.01 MEASUREMENT AND RATES****BC.01.01 General Inclusion of costs****Notes:**

New waterproofing material scheduled shall be deemed to include all preparation of existing concrete or waterproofed areas and jointing of new to existing material. Where new material is to join existing material, the new material shall be of the same type and system as the existing waterproofing system. All waterproofing shall come with a ten year written guarantee for water-tightness and the cost of such guarantee shall be deemed to be included in the applicable tendered rates.

BC.02 SCHEDULED ITEMSNEW WORK**BC.02.01 Approved waterproofing system to:**(a) Description of waterproofing system:

- (i) Area of application or description of detailed item.....Unit: m², m, number

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre, meter or number of areas or items waterproofed as specified and scheduled.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supplying, delivering, storing on site, handling, moving, applying or installing and fixing the waterproofing system complete with all necessary sundry items, such as forming turn-ups or turn-downs, any flashing strips, dressing waterproofing around pipes and into outlets and channels.

The tendered rates shall also cover the cost for cutting and waste and for scaffolding, hoisting facilities, etc. All turn-ups and turn-downs will be deemed to be included in the area measured for the waterproofing and will not be paid for separately.

ALTERATION WORK**BC.02.02 Remove existing waterproofing and sundry items:**

- (a) Description of waterproofing material to be removed and locationUnit: m²

- (b) Etc. for other material and locations

The unit of measurement shall be square metre of material removed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removing of existing waterproofing, flashing strips, sundry items, etc.

BC.02.03 Prepare existing surfaces:

- (a) Prepare existing concrete surface to receive new screed as specified Unit: m²
- (b) Prepare existing concrete or screeded surface to receive new waterproofing system Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of the exposed surface prepared to receive the new screed or waterproofing material.

The tendered rates shall cover the cost for preparing the existing surfaces as specified and scheduled in (a) and (b) to receive new screeds or waterproofing.

BC.02.04 Roof screeds: Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of exposed surfaces to be screeded.

The tendered rate shall include all costs for supplying, delivering, storing on site, handling, etc. of the materials necessary for the screed, including mixing and laying of screeds to currents and falls and forming of sundry items such as fillets, etc. complete. The tendered rate shall also cover the cost for forming of screeds around outlets, waste, and of all scaffolding, temporary supports, hoisting facilities, etc.

BC.02.05 Repair bituminous based waterproofing system Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of the horizontal and vertical surfaces of waterproofing repaired to the approval of the Engineer. All turn-ups and turn-downs will be deemed to be included in the area measured for the waterproofing and will not be paid for separately.

The tendered rate shall include all costs for supplying, delivering, storing on site, handling, moving, installing and fixing the waterproofing system complete with all necessary sundry items, such as flashing strips, dressing waterproofing around pipes and into outlets and channels. The tendered rate shall also cover the cost of cutting and waste and for scaffolding, hoisting facilities, etc.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BD WALLS

CONTENTS

BD 01	SCOPE
BD 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BD 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BD 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BD 05	MAINTENANCE
BD 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BD 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the corrective maintenance repairs of existing interior and exterior walls including all related building elements such as plastering, partitioning, wall tiling, windows, doors, etc, which form an integral part of an installation.

In determining the remedy for any repair work, the Engineer must take the climatic conditions in which all building elements have to function into consideration. Allowance should be made accordingly for the strength and durability of all components in relation to their purpose and application.

This specification does not include any work related to paintwork as this is specified elsewhere.

The complete scope of repair work shall be in accordance with the section: Detail of repair work.

BD 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BD 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof. All other relevant and applicable SANS regulations are also to be considered as minimum requirements, and in particular SANS 10400: The Application of the National Building Regulations.

PW 371	-	Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
SANS 22	-	Glazed ceramic wall tiles and fittings
SANS 227	-	Burnt clay masonry units
SANS 545	-	Wooden doors
SANS 622	-	Gypsum cove cornice
SANS 680	-	Glazing putty for wood and steel sashes
SANS 727	-	Windows and doors made from rolled mill steel sections
SANS 10107	-	The fixing of glazed wall tiles
SANS 1236	-	Silvered glass mirrors for general use
SANS 1263	-	Safety and security glazing materials for buildings

BD 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BG: Metalwork

Technical Specification BH: Fittings

Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork

BD 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**BD 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF PLASTERED AND UNPLASTERED WALL SURFACES****BD 03.01.01 Introduction**

A detailed survey of all existing building elements may reveal the necessity for remedial work of varying degree. The Engineer shall make an assessment of all aspects that need to be addressed.

BD 03.01.02 Plastering: General

All plaster shall comply with the requirements of clause 11 of PW 371. All plastering shall be painted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork, or tiled according to this specification BD.

The Engineer shall inspect the plaster surfaces and establish which wall plastering must be repaired. Reasons for replacing existing plastering will include, but not limited to the following:

- (a) Excessive plaster cracking
- (b) Loose (delaminated) and spalling plaster
- (c) Dusting
- (d) Scaling and flaking
- (e) Defective plaster mix.

All chases shall be marked out in straight lines and neatly cut on either side of the recess for the pipe/conduit with an angle grinder. The width of the removed plastering must extend at least 30 mm beyond the edge of the chasing. Pipes or conduits shall be fixed before commencing grouting and plastering.

After the pipe has been put in place, the void shall be filled with a non-shrink cement grout of 60 MPa compressive strength at 28 days. The chases shall then be covered by fixing with shot-fired nails a weld mesh strip (30 mm longway x 10 mm shortway x 0,5 mm thick expanded metal lath) before applying the final plaster.

BD 03.01.03 Plastering: Walls of wet areas

Where necessary, hack off and remove existing internal plaster to walls. The substrates must be prepared to be sound, free from cement, grout, laitance, loose or segregated materials, voids or flaws and substances that could interfere with bonding of the new plaster. This preparation work can be done by means of clipping away with a chisel, steel-wire brush and angle grinders to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Smooth concrete must be chipped mechanically to prepare for bonding of new plaster. Before plastering commences, the substrates must be well wetted with clean water.

Only approved ready-mixed or pre-mixed bagged plaster mortar with 10 MPa compressive strength or equivalent may be used for plastering. Mix a liquid waterproofing admixture in a dilution of one part by volume with ten parts by volume of clean water. The diluted admixture is added to the appropriate dry cement/sand mixture. The mortar shall be produced in such quantities that will be used within one hour after mixing. The finished plasterwork shall be of an even and smooth towel surface finish.

When dry, apply two coats of an approved water dispersed epoxy resin coating to the plastered surfaces of the walls that are to be painted.

BD 03.01.04 External plastering

The Engineer shall mark out areas that need to be renovated. The Contractor shall neatly cut with an angle grinder in straight lines the edges of the poor patches of plaster that must be removed.

The substrate of the brick walls must be prepared to be sound, free from cement grout, laitance, loose or segregated material, voids or flaws and substances that might interfere with the bonding of the new plaster.

The surface must not be powdery or crumbly, and must exhibit adequate tensile strength. The preparation work can be done by means of chipping away with a chisel, steel-wire brush and angle grinders to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Smooth surfaces must be chipped to provide mechanical bonding for new plaster. Before plastering commences the substrate must be well wetted with clean water.

Only approved ready-mixed or pre-mixed bagged plaster mortar with 5 MPa compressive strength or approved equivalent may be used for plastering. The Contractor shall submit the design mix with the volume of water to be added to the mortar mix for approval by the Engineer. An approved bonding agent must be added to the mortar mix.

The mortar shall be produced in quantities that will be used within one hour after mixing. Care shall be taken not to mix old mortar into any new batch.

The finished plasterwork shall be of an even and smooth wooden trowel (surface finish with rounded edges at sharp corners) to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The plasterwork shall be cured for seven days by any approved method to prevent loss of moisture.

Three (3) test cubes per sampling shall be taken at a frequency for every 15 m² plaster area. Cube moulds for nominal size 100 mm complying with the requirements of SANS Method 863 must be used. Final instructions for sampling, moulding, cutting and testing will be issued to the Contractor on site.

BD 03.01.05 Rough-cast plaster

Rough-cast plaster shall be applied in two coats. The undercoat shall be composed of one part cement and five parts sand finished with a wooden float. The finishing coat shall be composed of one part cement and three parts stone aggregate that will pass through a 4 mm sieve. The finishing coat shall be flicked on with a machine before the undercoat has set to obtain an even texture to match the existing rough-cast plaster.

Where the undercoat has already been plastered, the undercoat shall be prepared to receive the finishing coat. The surface of the undercoat plaster shall be chipped adequately to form a key and wetted before the finishing coat is applied.

BD 03.01.06 Fine rough-cast plaster

Fine rough-cast plaster shall be as for rough-cast plaster but the finishing coat shall be composed of one part cement and three parts coarse sand.

BD 03.01.07 Internal plastering

The surface of internal plaster shall be steel trowelled to a smooth, even and true finish. External plaster shall be finished to a true and even surface with a wood float. All plaster surfaces shall be free from blemishes, cracks, blisters or other defects. Plaster shall return into reveals and soffits of openings, and all angles shall be true and straight with salient angles slightly rounded.

Plastering of a surface shall be executed in one operation, as no joint marks will be allowed. Plaster on walls shall not be less than 12 mm or more than 20 mm thick and plaster on concrete shall be not less than 10 mm or more than 15 mm thick, except where specifically specified otherwise.

Only approved ready-mixed or pre-mixed bagged plaster mortar with 5 MPa compressive strength or approved equivalent may be used for plastering. The Contractor must submit the design mix with the volume of water that will be added to the mortar mix to the Engineer for approval.

BD 03.02 PARTITIONS

All internal non-load-bearing walls shall be inspected and the Engineer shall determine whether partitioning such as laminated plastic particleboard, polyester painted steel, vinyl clad gypsum panels or any other demountable partitioning should be replaced.

Where partitioning must be relocated or replaced, such new partitioning shall be non-combustible, provide acoustical privacy and comply with SANS 10400.

All new partitions shall assemble into a rigid structure and all units shall be readily removable from either side without disturbing adjacent units.

All exposed trims for doorframes, glazing and skirting are to be of aluminium, or alternatively be painted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

The type of boarding and jointing or cover strips shall be in accordance with the Schedule of Quantities.

BD 03.03 WALL CRACKS

Wall cracks shall be evaluated to determine the nature and severity of the occurrence of the cracks. The Engineer shall inspect all plastered and unplastered walls and identify the underlying factors causing cracks. Repairs shall be carried out in accordance with the Particular Specifications.

BD 03.04 FACE BRICKS

Face bricks shall be inspected for dirt, efflorescence, staining, oil, paint, lichens and mosses, water, smoke and soot, rust, or damage caused by chemical reaction.

Where efflorescence appears, light brushing and hosing down with clean water is recommended for most cases. The brickwork must be saturated with clean water before applying any chemical and washed down with clean water afterwards. Cleaning can also be achieved with scrubbing, water jetting with cleaning agents and soaps, etc. Staining caused by non-water-soluble salts, such as vanadium, manganese and iron, shall be treated as follows:

- (a) Remove vanadium staining by washing the wall with a solution of 100 g to 1 litre of water using caustic soda. (Use the corresponding secondary potassium salts where available, as these will be less likely to cause visible secondary efflorescence.) If secondary efflorescence occurs, wash it off with clean water.
- (b) Manganese stains must be removed using proprietary brand chemical compounds based on hydrochloric acid with modifiers and sodium fluoride. These solutions should be applied using full strength as recommended by the manufacturer.
- (c) Where rust/iron stains occur, wash the affected area with a solution of 50 g oxalic acid, 20 g sodium fluoride, 15 g citric acid in 1 litre of fresh, clean water. Apply the solution to a dry wall and leave it on the wall until the stain has dissolved. Wash down using a solution of 50 g bicarbonate of soda in one litre of water.

External environmental stains and smears caused by soot, smoke, industrial pollution and spillage of oil, paint and other compounds, including micro-organic growths such as fungi, lichens and mosses on brickwork, must be identified and dealt with in an appropriate and approved way.

Care shall be taken to test the effect of some of the chemicals and compounds for possible harmful effects on the colours of the brickwork and on adjacent materials, as well as for possible toxicity to human, animal and plant life. All cleaning procedures shall be carried out with full knowledge of all the potential dangers to human and animal health, and the appropriate safeguarding and precautionary measures shall be put in place.

BD03.04.01 Application of silane / siloxane based water repellent/ impregnation

The surface to be treated shall be clean, sound and dry. It should be free from dust, dirt, loose particles and oily or greasy deposits.

The surface shall be dry to allow maximum penetration. No application shall be made for at least four days after rain.

In order to remove any loose particles, the walls shall be pressure-cleaned with water before application of the silane / siloxane based water repellent. After pressure cleaning of the walls, the walls shall be left to dry in sunny conditions for at least 4 days, and where dagha (cement) has come loose in the joints and left a void, dagha (cement) joint filling shall be prepared to match the existing colour and shall be replaced to match the existing. The Contractor shall submit a mix design of the dagha (cement) joint filling for approval before application.

The contractor shall arrange for walls to be inspected by the Engineer's Representative before application of the water repellent, but after pressure cleaning of the walls.

The water repellent should be applied by brush or through a low pressure knapsack sprayer. Application should commence from the highest point of the surface and work down the surface. Some run-down of the coating is permissible but should not exceed 250-300 mm. A second coat may be given but only after at least two hours drying time between coats.

Avoid working in full sunshine to achieve maximum penetration. Confine activities to the shadow side of the structures.

Application temperature shall be +/- 5° to +30°, and shall not be applied if rain is imminent.

The penetrating silane / siloxane based water repellent shall be applied to cover 3 – 5 m² per litre per coat. The water repellent shall be applied in two coats.

The penetrating silane / siloxane based water repellent shall be applied in accordance with the instructions of the supplier.

BD 03.05 WALL TILING

BD 03.05.01 General

Tiling shall comply with the requirements of SANS Standard Specification 22 and section 12 of PW 371. The code of practice for the fixing of glazed wall tiles, SANS 10107 and the recommendations of the South African Ceramic Tile Manufacturer's Association (SACTMA) must be adhered to.

All tiled areas must be checked for damaged surfaces or to determine where tile adhesion to subsurface proves to be of non-satisfactory standard. In cases where tiled surfaces need to be redone, proper care shall be taken in removing all damaged tiles, as well as any adhesive remains on the subsurface.

Matching of existing size and colour should be pursued wherever possible.

BD 03.05.02 Glazed wall tiling

White glazed tiles 150 x 150 x 5 mm thick, first grade, must be laid in a cement-based powder adhesive, strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. Drying periods for backgrounds and substrates must be strictly adhered to. All tiles must be correctly bedded. This can be achieved by using a 6 mm square notched wall trowel to spread the fixative to the required thickness of 6 mm. Bed the tiles dry and move them firmly into position, ensuring that they are in proper overall contact with the bed and form an even surface.

A minimum of 2 mm grouting joints shall be allowed between tiles. Under no circumstances should the tiles be butt-jointed. Do not fill joints between tiles until at least 24 hours after the tiles have been bedded. Ensure that the joints are free of tile adhesive residue and any foreign matter. Fill joints with waterproofed white cement. Existing joints must be cleaned and refilled with new white cement.

BD 03.05.03 Ceramic wall tiling

Glazed ceramic wall tiles 230 x 115 x 11,5 mm thick, with grade 1 acid resisting quality finish are to be used. Apply an approved epoxy grout into the tile joints and finish off with a wetted nosing tool to a smooth glazed finish. Ceramic tiles include special tiles, such as bull nose and corner tiles. Repairs include replacing damaged tiles and pointing between tiles with an approved epoxy grout.

BD 03.05.04 Corner protectors

Install 75 x 75 x 5 mm thick aluminium angle corner protectors to external vertical wall corners for protection with 8 mm diameter impact nails x 80 mm long @ 300 mm c/c to a maximum height of 1,6 m. Seal the interface gap with approved silicone.

Install for abattoirs and dairies 75 x 75 x 3 mm thick stainless steel grade 304 angle corner protectors, polished to a No 2B finish with a grit 180, to external vertical wall corners. Fix the corner protectors with 8 mm diameter impact nails x 80 mm long @ 300 mm c/c to a height of 1,8 m. The interface gap must be sealed with an approved polyurethane sealant.

BD 03.05.05 Expansion joints

Expansion joints for glazed wall tiling shall be provided at 3,5 m centres maximum (vertically and horizontally). The joints shall be 5 mm wide. Prepare the joints by cleaning them thoroughly. The joints shall be primed and sealed with an approved one component 5 x 5 mm white polyurethane joint sealant.

Expansion joints for ceramic wall tiling shall be provided at 4 m centres maximum (vertically and horizontally). The joints shall be 10 mm wide maximum. Prepare the joints by cleaning them thoroughly. The joints shall be primed and sealed with approved one component 10 x 10 mm white polyurethane joint sealant.

BD 03.06 WINDOWS

BD 03.06.01 General

All windows shall be inspected to assess the level of workability, paying special attention to hinges, handles, stays, catches, etc. Should any window be found unsuitable due to damage to the frame, opening section or any other part thereof, such window shall be replaced.

The Engineer shall take great care to make sure that the appropriate waterproofing details are applied strictly to ensure adequate protection against any water penetration.

BD 03.06.02 Steel windows

The Engineer shall inspect for any deficiencies in residential and industrial type steel windows and cell windows. Where necessary, windows shall be serviced and repainted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

BD 03.06.03 Burglar bars to steel windows

Where manganese bars are incorporated in the fixed mullions of the windows, this shall be done in such a way that the bars are not wider apart than 150 cm/centre. The bars shall have at least a section of 30 x 16 mm, penetrating at least 100 mm in the lintels and sills. Heavy duty burglar bars shall be 15 mm diameter or 12 mm square. Loose burglar bars shall be site welded to the window frames.

BD 03.06.04 Timber windows

All wooden windows are to be inspected and treated according to the condition of the timber as stipulated in Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

BD 03.06.05 Aluminium windows

When working with mortar or plaster great care shall be taken to protect all aluminium sections from staining by applying a film protector or motor oil on the aluminium surface.

BD 03.07 GLAZING

BD 03.07.01 Glass

Cracked and broken glazing shall be replaced. The glazing and fixing of glass in buildings shall be carried out strictly in accordance with SANS Code of Practice 0137.

BD 03.07.02 Putty

Care shall be taken to remove all chipped, flaked or damaged putty. The Engineer shall indicate on site which putty must be replaced.

All new putty shall comply with the requirements of the SANS Standard Specification 680. The putty shall be delivered on the site in sealed containers marked with the SANS mark.

Type I putty as specified shall only be used for glazing in wood sashes and Type II only in steel sashes.

Paintwork on putty shall not commence until putty has properly dried out, which may necessitate the addition of an accelerating agent. The Contractor shall therefore take programming of trades in Port of Entry areas into consideration.

BD 03.08 DOORS

BD 03.08.01 General

All existing doors shall be inspected for the general condition and integrity of hinges, locking mechanisms, etc.

All steel doors shall comply with the requirements of SANS Standard Specifications 727 and 1129 and section 12 of PW 371.

All new external doors are to be fitted with 1½ pair heavy duty hinges.

Door signage, such as door numbers, etc, shall be in accordance with Technical Specification BH: Fittings, and the Schedule of Quantities.

Special attention shall be given to the condition of striker plates and hinges that need to be replaced, or properly secured where possible. Doors shall be painted to the requirements of Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

BD 03.08.02 Doors, sidelights and fanlights

All wooden stock doors shall comply with the requirements of SANS Standard Specification 545 and section 8, clause 10 of PW 371.

BD 03.08.03 Flush doors

The Contractor shall inspect all doors, internal and external. Where any door needs to be replaced, such door shall be a 40 mm thick solid laminated door as specified for interior or exterior use and shall be capable of withstanding the raking, deflection, puncture and moisture resistance tests for the desired application.

Unless otherwise specified, face veneer shall be rotary cut, and shall be of the timber specified, or where doors are to be painted, shall be of timber suitable for painting. Painting shall be done in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork, and the Schedule of Quantities.

Edge strips for concealing the vertical edges of doors shall be of the same timber as the face veneer and for single doors and hinge edges of double doors not be less than 10 mm thick, and for rebated meeting edges of double doors not less than 20 mm thick. The top and bottom edges of doors showing end grain shall be sealed with lacquer or other suitable material if the edges were disturbed in any way.

BD 03.08.04 Toilet doors in ablutions

Doors showing signs of erosion due to water penetration shall be either replaced or cut short 150 mm from finished floor level. If the existing semi-solid door panel is to be retained, it should be cut short 150 mm from the floor level. A 38 x 50 mm SAP insert must be glued and nailed in at the bottom edge. The steel frame must also be cut short and filled in with grout at the cut edges and fixed to the wall with 2 x 8 mm diameter heavy duty impact nails.

BD 03.09 IRONMONGERY

BD 03.09.01 General

All ironmongery shall comply with the requirements of SANS 2001-CS1. All ironmongery shall be approved by the agent/representative before fixing. Articles shall be fixed with screws of similar metal and shall be eased, oiled, adjusted and left in perfect working order on completion.

All ironmongery shall be inspected to assess the level of workability, paying special attention to door handles, locks, door closers, door stops, door catches, fixing of these fittings, etc. Should any of these fittings be found unsuitable due to damage, corrosion, etc, they shall be replaced. Where existing holes in wood are worn out, these holes must be plugged with wood to receive the screws.

Toilet doors in ablutions must be fitted with approved D-type natural anodised aluminium pull handles and 150 x 150 mm plate. Install 15 mm diameter concealed steel roller ball catch with chromium-plated striker plate with circular hole for roller ball catch. Fix this plate to door frame with two aluminium pop rivets.

BD 03.09.02 Door locks

Each lock shall be provided with two keys and no key shall pass a second lock. All mortice locks, mortice latches and night latches, rim and cylinder rim night latches, and escutcheon for locks shall comply with the requirements of the SANS. The Contractor shall supply all screws, etc, required for completion of the work.

BD 03.09.03 Cupboard doors

Where required according to the Schedule of Quantities, built-in cupboard doors in sleeping quarters are to be provided with 2 x angle iron sections of 35 x 80 x 3 mm thick x 10 mm diameter hole for a padlock that must be fixed to the inside of the cupboard door.

Locker doors shall be provided with a 50 x 50 x 5 mm thick mild steel angle x 10 mm diameter hole for a padlock site welded to the locker.

BD 04 **DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK**

The detail of the work is described in the Schedule of Quantities.

BD 05 **MAINTENANCE**

No maintenance will be required for walls under this contract.

BD 06 **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

BD 06.01 **MEASUREMENT AND RATES**

BD 06.01.01 **General inclusion of costs and specific specifications**

Notes:

Where applicable, standard SANS 1200 measurement and payment items shall be used for Earthworks (Small Works) (1200 DA), Site Clearance (1200 C) and Concrete (Structural) (1200 G).

All material scheduled to be removed shall be deemed to be existing damaged materials in small or large sections. All such redundant material shall become the property of the Contractor and must be removed from site immediately.

All new material shall be deemed to be in patchwork and shall be of approved equal quality, colours, profiles, thickness, etc and shall in all cases match the existing materials and shall be fixed (internally or externally) to existing material, frames or surfaces.

All replacement, removal and repair work shall be done carefully as to not damage any adjacent or other material or work. Any damage to other or adjacent materials or areas caused by the negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by him free of charge.

All work scheduled to be replaced shall be deemed to include for the careful removal of the damaged existing material as a whole or partly, as specified, for the cleaning and preparation of the remaining surface(s), frames, etc as well as for the new material scheduled or specified to replace the damaged material.

All work scheduled to be removed, hacked off, or taken out shall be deemed to include the cleaning and preparation of the remaining surfaces, areas where material were removed, or remaining work to receive new material or work specified.

Repair and service work shall also include all removing, cutting, grinding, cutting into, welding, bending, strengthening, drilling, tightening, fastening, oiling, greasing, adjusting and providing missing or damaged screws or bolts, etc to repair and service or to improve the items or areas as new and to match the existing. The servicing of windows will be measured in number irrespective of the type of window or the amount of opening sashes present in the overall window size. The rates tendered for servicing of windows or similar items shall be deemed to include for servicing all opening sashes and the total overall frame. The rates tendered for servicing of doors or gates shall include the service of all locks, handles etc.

Work scheduled to be realigned and refixed shall be deemed to include all necessary new additional materials, brackets, connector plates, bolts, pip rivets, nails, screws, spacer blocks, clamps, timber, and labour, etc to leave the items as new and totally functional.

All new work are measured net and shall include all cutting, lapping, waste, bending, fixing, corners, mitres, fixing screws, pip rivets, nails, adhesive, grout, putty, etc, as well as cleaning and preparation of surfaces not already prepared as part of removed items, etc. The supply and installation of new window handles, pegs, stays, etc as well as the service of windows shall include for sealing all bolts and screws of handles, stays, etc with epoxy after fixing or tightening into positions.

The removal of doors, gates or windows shall include for the removal of all existing locks, handles, striking plates, etc but exclude the hinges, etc, which shall be used for the new replaced items. All repair work (excluding paintwork) around and in the thresholds of new door frames, gates or windows build into existing brickwork in new or existing positions shall be deemed to be included in either the rates tendered for the new replacement item or the removal payment item of the frame, window, etc.

The new doors to toilets and wet areas as specified shall be fitted with rubber door stops, D-profiled pull handle and backplate sets, 15 mm roller ball catches with striking plates and all other ironmongery needed to install the doors complete. All new ironmongery shall be measured and paid for separately.

The new doors to offices, etc, as specified shall be fitted with rubber door stops, 4 lever mortice locksets with handle sets to match existing, striking plates and all other ironmongery needed to install the doors complete. All new ironmongery shall be measured and paid for separately.

All ironmongery installed on the project shall bear the SANS approved trademark and codes. Samples of all ironmongery scheduled must be according to the samples of the Department of Public Works and samples must be handed to the engineer for approval before ordering the material.

All brickwork shall include for damp proofing membranes, galvanized brickwork reinforcement to every third course, wire ties and wall anchors as needed.

Tile work to walls shall include all cutting, spacers, waste, jointing, mitres, corners, epoxy grout and joint filler.

Ordering of certain specified material ie NCI industrial type wall tiles needs special and urgent attendance and should be ordered timeously as to prevent any construction delays.

All new glass mirrors shall be silvered float glass copper backed mirrors with polished edges all round and shall, unless otherwise scheduled, be fixed to walls with chromium plated dome capped mirror screws with rubber buffers.

Specific specification : Repairs to galvanised IBR roofs

Repairs to the workshops and store room roofs will include the following work and all work must be carried out in accordance with the Technical Specification BA: Roof Coverings.

- (a) Inspect the roof for defects.
- (b) Fasten loose nuts on hook bolts.
- (c) Replace damaged and/or severely corroded washers (allow for $\pm 30\%$ of all washers to be replaced). The remainder of the existing washers must be painted with an approved rust converter and a grey colour pure acrylic paint system.
- (d) Insert sealer strips on all loose side laps.

- (e) Stitch side laps together with Leak Plugs for IBR roof cladding (2 between every hook bolt; purlins are spaced at approximately 1,86 m c/c).
- (f) Install new 0,8 mm thick apex trim at the workshops for the length of each bay size 616 mm girth (286 + 300 vertical + 20 + 10 vertical) with Craft-Lock type apex trim fixing brackets. The apex trim 4 x bend (1 is a shallow bend) and fixed to roof sheeting with stitching screws and washers, and to 260 mm vertical x 140 mm (at slope) x 25 mm wide x 2,5 mm thick with 25 mm lip galvanised bracket. The galvanised bracket to be screwed and fixed to roof cladding in trough with 2 galvanised gutter bolts. The spacing of the brackets is 1029 mm. 150 mm overlap fixed and sealed with 2 rows of pop rivets and 2 rows of silicone. Bend up trough to form dam.
- (g) Side wall flashings: Inspect existing flashings. All loose flashings must be sealed with two rows of silicone and stitched together with no.10 stitching screws. Counter flashing to be sealed with silicone in brick wall. Existing sealant to be removed. Prepare groove to manufacturer's specifications to receive new joint sealant.
- (h) Ridge flashings: Inspect existing flashings. All loose flashings must be sealed with two rows of silicone and stitched together with no.10 stitching screws.
- (i) Holes (small diameter) in cladding to be sealed with Leak King plugs.
- (j) Replace existing galvanised gutters and down pipes with new 125 x 100 x 0,8 mm thick baked enamel gutters with 100 x 100 x 0,8 mm thick galvanised baked enamel rainwater down pipes spaced at approximately 6 to 7 m intervals.

Specific specification : Repairs to concrete gutter at workshops

- (a) The existing ± 305 mm x 400 mm deep concrete box gutters must be waterproofed with a fully bonded waterproofing system to Technical Specification BC: Waterproofing. Prepare the existing cement screed surface by cleaning it and replacing decayed cement screed with new screed. The waterproofing membrane must be dressed over the top ends of the concrete upstand beams of the gutters and down into down pipes. All sharp concrete corners must be chamfered adequately to suit waterproofing membrane requirements.
- (b) The existing expansion joints in the box gutter must be cleaned and prepared to receive joint sealant. The edges of the concrete must be chamfered to comply with waterproofing manufacturer's requirements. Insert 35 mm diameter low density, non-cross-linked, closed cell, expanded poly-ethylene foam backing cord for 25 mm wide joint. Prime joint and seal joints with 25 mm wide x 15 mm thick approved poly-urethane joint sealant applied strictly according to manufacturer's specifications. The top surface of the joint sealant must be recessed adequately into joint to allow for a closed cell polyethylene foam strip that will accommodate movement of the waterproofing membrane.

Dressing to expansion joint will comprise of additional strips of reinforced waterproofing membranes that are lapped and sealed to manufacturer's specifications. The Contractor must submit detail for approval to the Engineer prior installation.

Specific specification : Repairs to roller shutter doors at workshops

- (a) Replace the whole bottom T-bar including the bottom ± 17 galvanised slats of the existing roller shutter doors with a new galvanised T-bar (bottom rail) with neoprene weather strip.

The Contractor must measure the width of the door (approximately 3000 mm) and the opening width of the wicket door prior ordering the new bottom T-bar and new galvanised slats (± 76 mm high x 1,2 mm thick). When the new bottom T-bar has arrived on site, the Contractor must remove the existing bottom T-bar and slats and slide in the new T-bar and slats.

- (b) Provide and insert end locks on the ends of door curtains.
- (c) Repairing shall include fixing of missing bracket bolts, screws and pins, brackets, fittings such as locks, loose ratchet and pawls, and brackets. Loose bracket bolts that have broken out of walls shall be replaced with 175 mm long x 12 mm diameter threaded rods that must be anchored to the walls with an approved epoxy grout.
- (d) Repairing bent and fixing of damaged steel plates of canopy covers.
- (e) Repairing gearbox, gear handle, drive shaft, pinions and bevel gears.

Specific specification: Servicing and adjustments to roller shutter doors

- (a) All other door components shall be serviced, adjusted, repaired and replaced, but not restricted to, for the full repair of the complete door installation to a smooth working condition. The door sizes is approximately 3000 mm wide x 3500 mm high. The existing interlocking slats are 76 mm wide.
- (b) Servicing shall include cleaning and oiling of hinges, rollers, bearings, gears, channel guides and locks. Interlocking slats of the roller shutter curtains shall only be washed with a high-pressure water jet and detergent to remove all dirt, grease, etc.
- (c) Adjusting, fixing and realigning of door guides. The existing channel guides, approximately 76 mm wide shall be bent straight to allow free and smooth movement of the roller shutter door slats. The Engineer shall give the necessary instructions where severely damaged channel guides must be replaced.
- (d) Adjusting and balancing torsion springs, barrel collar and counter balance.

Specific specification : Welding of thin steel plates

Thin steel plates covering the external side of doors must be welded to the door frame members. The existing paint must be removed from the welding areas prior to site welding. A coded or experienced welder must submit the proposed welding procedure to the Engineer for approval. The aim of the site welding is two fold, viz to fix the steel plate to the frame and secondly, to prevent water ingress into the inside of the door. The perimeter of the individual plate sections of the door must be sealed with continuous impervious welds.

Specific specification : Repairs and replacements to agricultural kraals

Replace diamond mesh fence:

Existing diamond mesh shall, where indicated by the Engineer, be removed and replaced with new diamond mesh fence. The new galvanized diamond mesh shall be stretched and properly tied to the fencing wire. The diamond mesh or wire netting shall be secured by means of soft binding wire at 1,2 m centres along the top and bottom straining wires and at 3 m centres along each of the other fencing wires unless otherwise specified.

Diamond mesh

- (a) Diamond mesh (chain-link) fencing shall comply with the requirements of SANS 1373. The edge-finish shall be both sides clinched or barbed.
- (b) The nominal diameter of the wire shall be 2,5 mm and the mesh size shall be 40 mm x 40 mm.
- (c) The wire shall be fully galvanized

Tensioning fence wires:

All fencing wire shall be carefully strained and hung without sag, and with true alignment, care being exercised not to strain the wire so tightly that it will break, or that end, corner, straining or gate posts will be pulled up. Each strand of fencing wire shall be securely fastened in the correct position to each post with soft galvanised binding wire.

Smooth wire:

- (a) Smooth wire shall comply with the requirements of SANS 675 and shall be of the types specified below:
- (b) Straining wire shall be 4,0 mm diameter and fully galvanized.
- (c) Fencing wire shall be high tensile grade, 2,24 mm diameter wire fully galvanized.
- (d) Tying wire shall be 2,5 mm diameter, mild steel, galvanized wire for tying fencing wire to standards and droppers, and 1,6 mm diameter, mild steel, galvanized wire for tying netting and mesh wire to fencing wire.

BD 06.02 SCHEDULED ITEMSNEW WORK**BD.01 Doors and windows:**

- (a) Type of doors, windows, locks, etc and material indicated:

- (i) Description of item Unit : number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of doors, windows, locks, etc installed complete as specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the manufacturing and installation of the steel or natural anodised aluminium doors, windows, locks, frames, etc complete with hinges, handles, locks, barrel bolts, retaining devices, door stops, stays and any other work necessary to complete the work as specified, scheduled or as shown on the Drawings. The tendered rates for windows shall also include full compensation for glazing, window sills and damp-proof sheeting as specified or to match existing.

BD.02 Wall panelling:

- (a) Description of material to be used:

- (i) Description of item and/or position to be fixed Unit m, m², number

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre, etc for each item as scheduled.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs of material, waste, labour, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, etc to install the material as specified and to match the existing to the Engineer's approval.

BD.03**Joinery:**(a) Items measured by number:

- (i) Doors, etc. (type and size indicated)Unit: number
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by number

(b) Items measured by linear metre:

- (i) Skirtings, etc. (type and size indicated) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by length

(c) Items measured by area:

- (i) Eaves covering, etc. (type and thickness indicated) Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by area

The units of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of each type and/or size of joinery item specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply of all materials, manufacture, cutting, waste, fixing and installation of the joinery items.

BD.04**Ironmongery, steelwork, glass, wall finishings, etc:**(a) Measured by number:

- (i) (Description of item)Unit: number
- (ii) Etc.

(b) Measured by linear metre:

- (i) (Description of item) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc.

(c) Measured by area:

- (i) (Description of item) Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc.

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and installing each item to new or existing steel, wood or plaster complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, waste, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, etc. To the Engineer's approval.

ALTERATION WORK

BD.05

Alterations and repairs to existing structures:

(a) Indicate if repairs, replace, alterations, removal or sealing, etc:

- (i) Description of individual items to be repaired,
altered, removed, sealed, etcUnit: m³, m², m, number

The unit of measurement for items repaired, replaced, altered, removed, sealed, etc shall be the cubic metre, square metre, metre or number for each item as scheduled.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs to repair, replace, refix, remove, cutting into, re-align, taking off, temporary store, etc as specified in the Standard and Technical Specifications and shall allow for all necessary labour, plant and new material needed to do the specified work and to leave the scheduled items as new and to the approval of the Engineer. Refer also to the general inclusion of costs in BD 06.01.01.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BE FLOORS

CONTENTS

BE 01	SCOPE
BE 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BE 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BE 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BE 05	MAINTENANCE
BE 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BE 01 SCOPE

Floors shall mean the scope of work to maintain materials and components such as removal of existing floors and installation of new floor coverings, skirtings, screeds, concrete floors and paving. This specification does not include work related to metalwork and paintwork, which are specified elsewhere.

This specification covers the removal of existing floor coverings, screeds and concrete surface beds, the repair of existing floor coverings, screeds and concrete surface beds. This specification also covers the supply, delivery and installation of new floor coverings, screeds and concrete surface beds for various types of buildings.

The complete scope of repair work shall as described in BE 04: Detail of repair work.

BE 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BE 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	- Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
SANS 281	- Hardwood block and strip flooring
SANS 581	- Semi-flexible vinyl floor tiles
SANS 786	- Flexible vinyl flooring
SANS 978	- Wood mosaic flooring
SANS 10070	- The laying of thermoplastic and similar types of flooring
SANS 10043	- The laying of wood floors
SANS 10186	- The laying of textile floor coverings
SANS 1449	- Ceramic wall and floor tiles

BE 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BF: Structural concrete
Technical Specification BG: Metalwork

BE 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**BE 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF FLOORS****BE 03.01.01 Floor coverings**

Existing floors shall be inspected to determine the extent of any damaged floor areas. The existing floors and other building elements shall be protected from damage during the progress of any repair work and on completion shall be cleaned and handed over in a perfect condition. Only skilled workmen experienced in laying any type of floor finishes shall carry out the work.

BE 03.01.02 Preparation of floor slab and surface beds for new floor screeds

The existing concrete screed shall be removed in patches designated by the Engineer.

All laitance on the surface of the existing surface bed must be removed completely. Mechanised plant such as scabblers or abrasive blasters must be used. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to keep dust pollution to a minimum inside the building during the breaking out and removing of existing concrete screeds, as well as during the preparation of the existing concrete surface bed.

After the mechanical cleaning of the slab surface to expose the coarse aggregate, all dust and debris must be removed, and the surface must be thoroughly wetted and kept wet for at least 12 hours before application of the new concrete screed.

BE 03.01.03 Surface preparation of existing floor screeds for new floor coverings

The following procedure is suggested where vinyl tiles were laid with bitumen adhesive:

- (a) The Engineer will specify the where existing vinyl tiles are to be removed.
- (b) The bitumen must be removed mechanically and/or chemically. Remove as much bitumen and other contamination as possible by scraping. Bitumen can be heated to soften it.
- (c) Sweep or vacuum sub-floor thoroughly to remove dust and grit.
- (d) An approved solvent based degreasing and cleaning compound can be used to remove the bitumen chemically. The Contractor shall ensure the safety of the workers and the building against possible fire.
- (e) The concrete surface must be smoothened. Even the surface with Pavelite or approved equivalent before laying the new vinyl tiles. The Pavelite must be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- (f) Vacuum clean the floor surface again before the adhesive is applied to lay the vinyl tiles.

BE 03.01.04 Cement screed

Cement screed shall be carried out in accordance with clause 11 of PW 371. The Engineer shall determine which existing cement screeds are to be replaced. The cement screed shall have a maximum thickness of 30 mm. Where required the cement screed shall be modified with an approved alkali compatible acrylic emulsion by preparing the cement screed with a mixture of the latex and water in the required ratio.

Before the new screed is applied, remove all surface water from the slab. Apply a bond coat to the slab/surface bed, consisting of a 1:1 mix of cement and clean fine sand with just enough water to provide the consistency of slurry. Mix in equal parts an approved alkali compatible acrylic emulsion specially modified for use in cement mortars with water, and add Portland cement to form the slurry. Spread the bond coat evenly using a stiff fibre brush. Do not leave standing pools. Place screed in good time (before the bond coat dries out). The screed must be laid and compacted in one layer.

Curing should commence as soon as the finishing operations have been completed and should be continued for at least 7 days. The Engineer must approve the method of curing.

Joints must be formed in the screed at all existing contraction and expansion positions, as well as at intermediate positions at 3 m spacing maximum.

BE 03.01.05 Concrete screeds

(a) General

Concrete screeds shall have a minimum thickness of at least 50 mm. The Engineer shall determine the areas of which the concrete screeds need to be replaced.

Only ordinary Portland cement, CEM 1 42,5 in accordance with SANS ENV 197-1, shall be used.

Coarse aggregate maximum size:	10 mm
28-day cube strength:	35 MPa.

The use of an approved plasticizer is recommended to reduce the water content of the mix to the absolute workable minimum.

The mix design must be submitted to the Engineer in advance for approval.

Four sets of six test cube samples shall be taken for every factory for the testing of the compressive strength of the concrete.

(b) Concrete floor hardener

Concrete natural non-ferrous aggregate floor hardeners shall strictly be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and under his supervision. Note: The Contractor shall furnish a certificate of compliance, together with a written guarantee after completion.

(c) Compressive strength

At 7 days:	50 MPa
At 28 days:	70 MPa

All other aspects of the construction of new concrete screeds shall be adhered to as specified in Technical Specification BF: Structural concrete.

BE 03.01.06 Laying of material (ceramic excluded)

The laying of vinyl and similar flooring material in tile and sheet form and the fixing of plastic skirtings, nosings, etc, shall be carried out in accordance with SANS 1043 and clause 13 of PW 371.

The laying of wood block and wood mosaic flooring shall be carried out in accordance with SANS 1043 and clause 13 of PW 371.

The laying of textile floor coverings shall be done in accordance with SANS 10186.

Vinyl floor tiles shall be laid with continuous joints in both directions. Tiles shall be cut with a "jointer" at saw and expansion joints. Tiles laid over these types of joints will not be permitted. Only latex-resin type adhesive shall be allowed to glue tiles to the concrete screed or surface bed.

BE 03.01.07 Granolithic screed finish

Granolithic screed finish to floors, treads of steps, thresholds and similar surfaces, unless otherwise specified, shall not be less than 25 mm thick. The granolithic screed shall be composed of three parts granite, or other approved hard stone chips, or approved hard, coarse sharp washed granitic or quartzite sand, half part clean sand and one part of cement, hand or mechanically trowelled to a true and smooth surface. No dry cement powder, grout or wet slurry mix shall be applied to the surface.

New granolithic screed shall be laid before the concrete surface bed or floor matures in order to allow for proper binding. If this is not possible, then the top of the surface bed or floor shall be hammered, chipped and then cleaned with a wire brush and a coat of neat cement grout applied immediately before the granolithic is laid.

The granolithic shall be laid in panels not exceeding 6 m² in area and jointed to lines of panels with V-joints. The joints between the panels shall coincide with joints in the concrete surface bed or floor.

Granolithic finish to stair risers, sides of curbs and other vertical surfaces shall, unless otherwise specified, not be less than 12 mm thick.

All granolithic work shall be done by experienced workmen only and shall be protected from damage caused by rain or other extreme weather for 12 hours after being laid. Protection shall be provided against too rapid drying whilst hardening by means of covering with wet sacks or other suitable material. The screed shall also be protected from damage and discoloration during the progress of the remaining work.

Edges of granolithic floor butting against different floor finishes and edges of margins, etc, shall be true and sharp, and shall be protected by fixing temporary wood strips which shall remain in position until the laying of the adjoining floor has commenced.

Where a non-slip granolithic floor finish is required, the granolithic shall be laid as specified above. Alundum grit shall then be sprinkled over the surface at the rate of 1 kilogram per square meter, lightly tamped in and allowed to set.

BE 03.01.08 Vinyl floor finishes

Existing floors should be inspected and where vinyl tiles need to be replaced, such tiles shall comply with the requirements of SANS 786, and be 300 x 300 x 2 mm thick unless otherwise specified. The flooring shall be of marbled pattern and of an approved colour (to be specified by the Engineer).

Vinyl floor tiles or sheets shall be laid with an adhesive recommended by the manufacturer. All the preparation and work in connection with the laying and fixing of the specified flooring and vinyl skirtings shall be done in accordance with SANS 1070 and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

The flooring shall, where necessary, be cut and neatly fitted against adjoining floors, thresholds, etc. Where required the Contractor shall carefully remove existing timber floor skirtings and/or quarter rounds for re-use where vinyl tiles are laid against walls. Reinstate skirtings and/or quarter rounds.

Vinyl floor tiles shall, unless otherwise specified, be laid with continuous joints in both directions and vinyl floors shall, unless otherwise specified, be in standard widths with cut sheets at sides of floors as necessary, all to the entire satisfaction of the Engineer.

The vinyl flooring and skirtings shall be covered up and protected from damage during the progress of remaining work and on completion be cleaned and, unless otherwise specified, polished with the type of polish recommended by the manufacturer of the vinyl flooring.

BE 03.01.09 Skirtings

Loosened hardwood skirtings must be cleaned and where necessary removed and/or replaced by 76 x 19 (or 25 mm) mm thick hardwood skirting with one rounded top edge plugged to the wall. Painting shall be in accordance with Technical Specification BJ: Painting.

In selected areas skirtings shall be 100 mm high x 6 mm thick unglazed ceramic tiles glued to walls with an approved cement grout. The Engineer shall specify these areas.

Vinyl cove skirtings shall be of approved manufacture and colour and, unless otherwise specified, be 70 mm high.

BE 03.01.10 Sealing of vinyl flooring

The newly laid tiles shall, after four days, be scrubbed with a diluted neutral detergent/stripper complying with SANS 825 and rinsed thoroughly. After the floor has dried, apply two coats polymer/acrylic sealer combination containing a minimum of 22 % solids using an applicator pad. Ensure that the surface has set hard before allowing traffic on the floors.

BE 03.01.11 Wood block floors

(a) Replacement of wood block floors

Where required, wood blocks that must be replaced shall, unless otherwise specified, be Clear Grade, Class H with nominal sizes of 75 mm wide, 225 mm long and 20 mm thick, and shall comply with the requirements of SANS 281. Wood blocks that are loose must be re-laid using an approved hot or cold adhesive after the old bitumen has been removed and the surface prepared.

The moisture content of the blocks shall be as specified in the above-mentioned specification, and the blocks shall be treated with timber preservative as specified. The blocks shall, unless otherwise specified, be laid to a basket pattern with an approved hot or cold adhesive and shall be sanded on completion all in accordance with the SANS Code of Practice, SANS 1043 and to the satisfaction of the Engineer

Wood block floors shall be covered up and protected from damage during the progress of the remaining work, and unless otherwise specified, a sealer shall be applied to the final sanded surface and then polished all in accordance with the above-mentioned Code of Practice.

(b) Partial repairs to parquet floors

Only severely loose wood blocks identified by the Engineer shall be repaired. The Contractor shall carefully remove the wood blocks for re-use. Scraping and any other suitable means shall be used to remove the old bitumen. The concrete surface bed or cement screed shall be cleaned from dust and bitumen residue as specified in BE 03.01.02. If the concrete or cement screed is in a poor condition, the poor patches shall be removed according to BE 03.01.04. The Contractor will be allowed to use rapid hardening cement grouts to reduce drying time of concrete and cement screeds in order to suit the working programme. The screeds must be laid at such a level as to enable the workmen to lay the cleaned wood blocks at the same level as the surrounding wood flooring blocks. The cleaned blocks shall be laid in a basket pattern (or the same existing pattern) with approved hot or cold bitumen at the same level as the surrounding blocks. Missing blocks must be replaced.

BE 03.01.12 Sealing of timber floors

Existing timber floors must be mechanically belt-sanded to remove all traces of existing sealer in strict compliance with SANS 1043. Where necessary, existing flooring, skirtings and quarter rounds should be temporarily removed. Before applying the new wooden floor sealer, ensure that the surfaces are dry, sanded smooth and free from varnish or oil. Vacuum the dust from the prepared floor surfaces.

Apply three coats of clear, lead free wooden floor sealer with preservative and anti-fungicidal properties according to the manufacturer's specification.

Apply the first coat until an even glossy, wet surface is achieved. Leave to dry thoroughly. Apply at least two other coats in the same way, and finally a fourth and final coat. It is proposed that the Contractor first do a trial section to satisfy himself that he can handle this procedure. The final appearance of the wooden floor must be smooth and have a uniform non-gloss finish.

Reinstate skirtings and quarter rounds.

BE 03.01.13 Tiling (general)

Tiles shall be solidly bedded and jointed in cement mortar and, unless otherwise specified, joints shall be 6 mm wide.

The joints in all tiling are to be continuous in both directions. The pointing is to be carried out by well pressing in half-dry cement mortar. Under no circumstances may liquid cement grout be used for pointing.

All tiling shall be properly covered and shall be protected against any possibility of staining, discolouring or any other damage.

At completion, all tiling is to be exposed, checked for damage, repaired where necessary and cleaned off with soft soap and cold water and left in a perfect condition. The application of oil on tiling is not allowed.

BE 03.01.14 Ceramic and quarry floor tiles(a) General requirements

The Engineer shall determine which tiles need replacement. The existing floor screed and floor tiles must be removed in patches and/or areas as determined by the Engineer.

Ensure that the base for floor tiling is rigid, stable and level unless required to have a fall in one or more direction(s). The surface preparation and cement screed (if required) are described in BE 03.01.03 and BE 03.01.04 respectively. When proprietary brand adhesives are being used for fixing ceramic floor tiles it is essential that the surface to which the tiles are to be fixed is clean, dry, flat and true.

Lay approved unglazed ceramic split floor tiles (230 x 115 x 11,5 mm thick and of a selected or matching colour) in professional floor grouting with 8 - 10 mm wide joints. The floor grout must be applied with a 10 mm square notched floor trowel evenly over an area not exceeding 1 metre at a time. Coved skirting tiles including external and internal skirting corners must be laid against walls in abattoirs. Setting out must be done correctly. The finished installation must be level plumb and true unless specified otherwise. In abattoirs the floor tiles must be laid to specified falls.

Mortar beds for dust-pressed tiles and quarry tiles shall be formed with a slurry of 1:1 cement and clean fine sand to a thickness of about 3 mm on an area not exceeding 1 metre at a time. The joints will be 6 - 8 mm wide depending on the size of the tile.

The tiles must be laid in professional cement-based powder adhesive, strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. The Code of Practice for the fixing of tiles in accordance with SANS 1449 and the recommendations of the South African Ceramic Tile Manufacturer's Association (SACTMA) shall be followed. Important points to be taken into consideration is are summarised below:

- (i) Sufficient time must be allowed between building operations.
- (ii) Drying periods for backgrounds and substrates must be strictly adhered to.
- (iii) No tiling may commence prior to the prescribed time.
- (iv) All tiles must be correctly bedded. The tiles must be properly bedded into a fixative that is spread evenly to the required thickness using a square notched rubber mallet (10 mm for ceramic tiles). Bed the tiles dry and move firmly into position, ensuring that they are in proper overall contact with the bed, and form an even surface.
- (v) A minimum of 6 - 10 mm grouting joints must be allowed between extruded and split tiles (3 mm minimum for pressed tiles). Ensure that the joints are free of tile adhesive and any foreign matter.
- (vi) Tiling installation: Setting out and finished installation must be done correctly.

(b) Filling of joints

Do not fill joints between tiles until at least 24 hours after the tiles have been bedded. Before applying the joint epoxy grout ensure that the joints are free of tile adhesive residue and any foreign matter. Apply the approved epoxy grout into the tile joints. The finishing-off must be completed with a wetted nosing tool or spatula so that a smooth glazed surface finish can be achieved. Application of the epoxy grout must be done strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. Finally, the tiles must be thoroughly cleaned.

BE 03.01.15 Movement joints in tiling**(a) General requirements**

Movement joints are to be provided in tile work due to moisture expansion, thermal expansion and contraction, and crack control at existing expansion joints in the surface bed.

- (i) Provide movement joints in the tile work, screed and bedding down to the concrete surface bed or slab. The spacing of these joints depends on the position of existing joints, column and wall layouts and slab thickness. The maximum spacing of joints should be limited to 30 times the slab (surface bed) thickness or 4,5 m, whichever is the lesser. The length-to-width ratio of tile panels should be limited to between 1,0 and 1,5.
- (ii) Provide isolation joints around the perimeter of the floor, around columns, walls and other fixed structural elements.
- (iii) Joints shall be aligned with no offsets. Irregular shape tile panels must be avoided. Where included angles are unavoidable, it should be less than 60 degrees.
- (iv) The width of the joint shall be 6 mm minimum and 10 mm maximum. Provide an approved closed-cell expanded polyethylene foam joint filler with a hinged temporary blocking piece in the movement joints. The size of the blocking piece must be the same as the joint width.

(b) Joint sealing

The joints shall be prepared and primed prior the application of the joint sealant.

The liquid sealant in joints shall be an approved one part grey polyurethane sealant with a shore hardness of A45 and an elongation of 400 %. The manufacturer's specifications must be strictly followed.

BE 02.02 PAVING

Repairs to paving shall include the improvement of existing paving, drainage channels and the replacement of paving that can not be repaired. Different paving types exist, e.g. concrete, precast paving segmental and regular blocks, bricks and slasto. This specification only covers pedestrian paving around buildings.

The Engineer shall identify the paving areas that are to be repaired. Defects to paving will include but not be limited to the following aspects:

- (a) Failure of sub-base material and subsidence of sub-soil due to excessive water erosion;
- (b) Broken and severely damaged paving;
- (c) Distorted and disturbed paving;
- (d) Drainage problems, e.g. ponding of water on the paving and in drainage channels, incorrect falls, etc.;
- (e) The omission of edge restraint;

- (f) Intrusion of weed or hostile root penetration.

BE 03.02.01 Preparing foundation

If the sub-base and/or sub-grade have failed, this soft and unstable material shall be replaced. Existing paving must be carefully removed and stock for re-use. The new earth filling shall be of inert material, having a maximum plasticity of 10, free from large stones, etc, spread, leveled, watered and compacted in layers not exceeding 150 mm thick to a density of 95% of modified AASHTO density. Cement stabilization to improve the existing sub-grade may be considered to improve the characteristics of the material. The blocks shall be laid true to line, levels and grade on a 25 mm thick layer of approved bedding sand. The bedding sand must not be used to fill hollows in an uneven sub-grade or sub-base surface. Where specified, plastic sheeting must be provided below the bedding sand layer. Refer also to BE 03.02.06.

The Contractor shall be responsible for carrying out all necessary process control tests on the density and moisture content of the completed sub-grade, sub-base, etc, to ensure that the required compaction is being attained.

BE 03.02.02 Laying of segmental block paving

The existing blocks shall be preselected for re-use. Broken and severely damaged paving blocks shall be replaced. New paving blocks shall comply with SANS 1058 Class 30 compressive strength. All blocks shall be laid true to line and level. Care shall be taken to ensure that joint lines are straight and square. The blocks shall have a minimum thickness of 60 mm.

After laying the blocks, the paving shall be compacted by means of vibrating plate compactor with joints between the blocks filled in, after compaction, by sweeping in fine sand. The jointing sand shall have a pass of 1,18 mm sieve and contain 10-50 % material passing the 75 micron sieve. The sand shall be free of all soluble salts or contaminants likely to cause efflorescence or staining.

Areas against curbs, manholes, etc., that require infilling and which exceed 25 % of a full block unit shall be filled with units cut to size using a mechanical or hydraulic guillotine, bolster or angle grinder. Infill areas constituting less than 25 % of a full block area and are of 25 mm minimum dimension shall be filled with 25 MPa concrete. Smaller areas shall be filled with 1:4 cement mortar.

BE 03.02.03 Laying face brick pavers, precast concrete blocks and slasto

The existing blocks shall be preselected for re-use. Broken and severely damaged paving blocks shall be replaced. All blocks shall be laid true to line and level. Care shall be taken that joint lines are straight and square. Slasto shall be laid in the same pattern to match existing.

After laying the blocks, the paving shall be compacted by means of vibrating plate compactor. Clean the top of the blocks before and after compaction. Thoroughly wet compacted area after compaction and leave 24 hours to dry. The joints between the blocks must be filled in, after compaction, with a 1:4 cement mortar. The joints shall be pointed with a steel tool to a smooth surface finish.

BE 03.02.04 Laying of cast in-situ concrete paving and drainage channels

Severely cracked and/or damaged concrete paving and drainage channels shall be replaced. The Engineer shall indicate which panels and sections of drainage channels are to be removed. Cutting out will be done with an angle grinder or saw cutting machine.

Concrete panels must be removed in sizes where the ratio of the sides does not exceed 1:1,5. The foundation material must be improved as specified in BE 03.02.01.

New concrete panels and drainage channels must be cast with a compressive strength of 25 MPa. Concrete paving to the specified thickness must be finished off with a smooth wood trowel surface finish or must match the existing surface finish. Edges must be finished off with a steel nosing tool with a radius of 5 mm. Expansion joints must be provided where specified. Drainage channels must be cast in lengths not exceeding 1 metre. Channels must be finished off to have a smooth steel trowel finish.

BE 03.02.05 Precast concrete edge beams, curbs and channels

Edge restraints shall be installed before paving commences. Edge restraints may be cast in-situ, or consist of precast units. Precast edge blocks shall have dimensions of 75 mm wide x 300 mm deep. Cast in-situ beams with 25 MPa concrete shall have dimensions of 300 x 300 mm and cast in lengths on exceeding 1 metre.

Precast concrete curbs and channels shall comply with SANS 927, generally in 1 meter lengths and finished smooth from the mould on exposed surfaces. Curbs and channels shall be bedded on and jointed in 1:3 cement mortar and pointed with keyed joints. Bases to curbs shall be Class B prescribed mix of unreinforced concrete.

BE 03.02.06 Weed control

Two types of weed killing shall be carried out:

- (a) Mixing weed killer to sub-base for rehabilitated paving;
- (b) Spraying existing paving excluding concrete paving.

After the base course has been approved and the curbing completed, the prepared base must be treated with a soil applied herbicide with long residual action for the control of broad leaf weeds and grasses, containing active ingredient Bromacil, at a rate of 4 kg/m². Plastic sheeting with a thickness of 375 micron shall be laid to prevent the penetration of grass underneath the segmental paving.

BE 03.02.07 Site clearance

Excess sand and all other debris shall be removed before the pavement is opened to traffic. The site shall be left in a tidy condition.

BE 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

The detail of the scope of work is described in the Schedule of Quantities.

BE 05 MAINTENANCE

No maintenance will be required for floors under this contract.

BE 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**BE 06.01 MEASUREMENT AND RATES****BE 06.01.01 General inclusion of costs and specific specifications****Notes:**

Where applicable, standard SANS 1200 measurement and payment items shall be used for Earthworks (Small Works) (1200 DA), Site Clearance (1200 C) and Concrete (Structural) (1200 G).

All material scheduled to be removed shall be deemed to be existing damaged materials in small or large sections. All such redundant material shall become the property of the Contractor and must be removed from site immediately.

All new material shall be deemed to be in patchwork and shall be of approved equal quality, colours, profiles, thickness, etc. and shall in all cases match the existing materials and shall be fixed (internally or externally) to existing material or surfaces.

All replacement, removal and repair work shall be done carefully as to not damage any adjacent or other material or work. Any damage to other or adjacent materials or areas caused by the negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by him free of charge.

All work scheduled to be removed, hacked off or taken out shall be deemed to include the cleaning, removing of contact glue or bitumen and preparation of the remaining surfaces, areas where material were removed, or remaining work to receive new material or work specified.

Repair work shall also include all cutting, grinding, cutting into, welding, bending, strengthening, drilling, etc. to repair or to improve the items or areas as new and to match the existing.

Work scheduled to be realigned and re-fixed shall be deemed to include all necessary new additional materials, brackets, connector plates, bolts, pip rivets, nails, screws, spacer blocks, clamps, timber, and labour, etc. to leave the items as new and totally functional.

All floor surfaces scheduled to be cleaned and sealed shall include for stripping the floors from any fats, grime, dirt, oil and other deposits. Replacement of grout to ceramic and clay floor tiles shall also be included where necessary as per the tendered rate. Sealing of vinyl floor tiles shall be done in accordance with Technical Specification BE 03.01.10.

All new work are measured net and shall include all cutting, lapping, waste, bending, fixing, corners, mitres, fixing screws, pip rivets, nails, adhesive, grout, putty, etc, as well as cleaning and preparation of surfaces not already prepared as part of removed items, etc.

Tile work to floors shall include all cutting, spacers, waste, jointing, mitres, corners, epoxy grout and joint filler.

Ordering of certain specified materials i.e. industrial type extruded/split ceramic floor tiles needs special and urgent attendance and should be ordered timeously as to prevent any construction delays.

BE 06.02 SCHEDULED ITEMSNEW WORK**BUILDING WORK****BE.01 Floor screeds:**

- (a) (Thickness indicated) Unit: m²
- (b) Etc. for other thicknesses

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of floor screed laid, as specified, on floors, steps or areas shown on the Drawings or as designated by the Engineer.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the construction of the floor screeds, including the supply of all materials, mixing, laying, finishing, the forming of nosings, readings, skirtings, etc.

BE.02 Joinery:

- (a) Items measured by number:
- (i) Doors (type and size indicated) Unit: number
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by number
- (b) Items measured by linear metre:
- (i) Skirtings (size indicated) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by length
- (c) Items measured by area:
- (i) Eaves covering (type and thickness indicated) Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by area

The units of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of each type and/or size of joinery item specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply of all materials, manufacture, cutting, waste, fixing and installation of the joinery items.

BE.03 Floor tiling and finishes, etc:

- (a) Measured by number:
- (i) (Description of item) Unit: number
- (b) Measured by linear metre:
- (i) (Description of item) Unit: m
- (c) Measured by area:

- (i) (Description of item) Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and installing each item complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, waste, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, etc. to the Engineer's approval.

ALTERATION WORK

BE.04

Alterations and repairs to existing structures:

- (a) Indicate if repairs, alterations, removal, cleaning or sealing, etc:

- (i) Description of individual items to be repaired,
altered, removed, sealed, etc Unit: m³, m², m, number

The unit of measurement for items repaired, altered, removed, sealed, etc. shall be cubic metre, square metre, metre or number as scheduled.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs to repair, refix, remove, clean and seal, cutting into, realign, taking off, temporary store, etc. as specified in the Standard and Technical Specifications and shall allow for all necessary labour, plant and new material needed to leave the scheduled items as new and to the approval of the Engineer. Refer also to the general inclusion of costs in BE 06.01.01.

SUPPLEMENTARY SERVICES SPECIFICATION

BF PEST CONTROL

CONTENTS

BF 01	SCOPE
BF 02	STANDARDS
BF 03	SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
BF 04	INITIAL PEST CONTROL PROCEDURE
BF 05	MONITORING AND REPORTING OF PEST CONTROL STATUS
BF 06	PREVENTATIVE PEST CONTROL
BF 07	TRAINING OF EMPLOYER'S PERSONNEL
BF 08	LOGGING AND RECORDING
BF 09	NOTIFICATION OF INTENTION TO ADMINISTER PEST CONTROL
BF 10	PREPARATION OF THE AREA AFFECTED BY PEST CONTROL
BF 11	CLEARANCE AFTER PEST CONTROL
BF 12	PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT
BF 13	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BF 01 SCOPE

This Specification covers the application of pesticides and herbicides in the facility(ies) set out in the Project Specification for the purpose of pest control. Pest control, in this instance, shall imply the eradication of pests which cause structural and other damage to buildings and installations at the facility in question.

Structural damage shall include:

- Damage to the structural elements of buildings.
- Damage to finishes of buildings.
- Damage to building electrical installation.
- Damage to building wet services (plumbing and drainage)

BF 02 STANDARDS

The following standards and publications contain provisions, which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this specification. The most recent editions of the standards indicated below shall be used:

CODE	DESCRIPTION
SANS 10072	Code of practice for the safe use of household insecticides and agricultural remedies.
SANS 10124	Code of practice for the application of certain soil insecticides for the protection of buildings.
SANS 10133	Code of practice for the application of pesticides in food handling, food processing, and catering establishments.

CODE	DESCRIPTION
SANS 10080	Code of practice for the rodent proofing of buildings.
SANS 10005	Code of practice for the preservation treatment of timber.
SANS 10206	Code of practice for safety procedures for the disposal of surplus pesticides and associated toxic waste.
SANS 10204	Code of practice for the application of fumigants.
National Departments of Agriculture Publication	A guide to the control of household and industrial pests.

BF 03 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

No pesticide shall be used for any purpose other than that recommended on the manufacturer's label of the pesticide container. All warnings and precautions set out on the manufacturer's label shall be adhered to. The manufacturer's label shall never be removed from the container.

A Pest Control Operator shall be appointed by the Contractor and the relevant certification, as specified in sub clause BE 08.03 below, shall be submitted to the Engineer before the first pesticide application.

The Pest Control Operator (PCO) will at all times ensure that pesticides are kept secure and out of reach of the general public. The PCO shall be responsible for the safe disposal of surplus pesticides as well as all empty pesticide containers.

The PCO will further ensure that no member of the general public is at any time in danger of being contaminated with the pesticide. Should a member of the general public be contaminated the PCO will immediately follow the first-aid and emergency treatment outlined in the standards.

BF 04 INITIAL PEST CONTROL PROCEDURE

BF 04.01 COMPILING OF A PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME

Before any pest control is to be administered the Contractor shall inspect the various buildings and installations at each facility and subsequently compile and submit a report, to the Engineer, detailing the comprehensive preventative pest control programme to be implemented.

The report submitted to the Engineer shall include but shall not be limited to the following:

- (a) The status of the pest infestation of the various buildings and installations at each facility.
- (b) The initial "clean up" procedure to be implemented.
- (c) The procedures of how to close off all entry points for rodents.
- (d) The routine monitoring and reporting procedures.

- (e) Estimated costs for the above.

BF 04.02 INITIAL “CLEAN UP” AND RODENT PROOFING

The Contractor shall implement the initial "clean up" procedure and the rodent proofing of the various installations, as described in the pest control programme, buildings and only after instructions from the Engineer have been obtained.

BF 05 MONITORING AND REPORTING OF PEST CONTROL STATUS

The status of pest infestation shall be monitored. The Contractor shall compile a report on the condition as well as recommendations at the intervals specified in the Particular Specifications. The report shall include but shall not be limited to the following details:

- (a) Report on the type and status of damage caused by pests.
- (b) Report on the visual observation of the presence of pests.
- (c) Report on the pest control monitoring results.
- (d) Report on the standing of the preventative pest control.
- (e) The recommended pest control procedure.

This report is to be submitted to the Engineer. Only upon instruction from the Engineer shall the recommended pest control procedures be implemented.

If, at any intermediate period, the need for pest control should arise the Contractor shall submit a report and recommendations to the Engineer and await his instructions.

BF 06 PREVENTATIVE PEST CONTROL

The Contractor shall administer preventative pest control as often as required but in accordance with the intervals specified by the manufacturer of the pesticide.

The Contractor shall report on the standing of pest activity and damage caused by the pests after each inspection as outlined in clauses PFE 02, PFE 03, PFE 04 and PFE 05 of Particular Specification PFE. The report is to be submitted to the Engineer (as in clause BF 05 above). The Contractor shall obtain the permission of the Engineer before any additional preventative pest control is to commence.

BF 07 TRAINING OF EMPLOYER'S PERSONNEL

Pests are attracted to areas where food and water are in abundance. Good housekeeping techniques can improve the likelihood of keeping an area pest free. It is therefore essential to train the Employer's relevant personnel in the essential housekeeping techniques. The objectives of the training shall be to ensure that the following be achieved:

- (a) The identification of possible attractions for pests.
- (b) The elimination of waste disposal situations which may attract pests.
- (c) Reducing the overall cost of pest control by keeping the areas as clean and pest

free as achievable.

The training course shall be in accordance to the Additional Specification SD: General Training and shall furthermore include at least the following:

- (a) The effective methods of waste disposal in order not to attract pests.
- (b) The effective methods of storing foodstuffs in order not to promote the nesting and infestation of pests.
- (c) Cleaning of facilities to avoid attracting pests.

The Contractor is to develop a training syllabus in accordance with Additional Specification SD: General Training. The training syllabus shall include but shall not be limited to the following information:

- (a) The effective methods of waste disposal in order not to attract pests.
- (b) The effective methods of storing foodstuffs in order not to promote the nesting and infestation of pests.
- (c) Cleaning of facilities to avoid attracting pests.
- (d) General information about the various pests which may be found at the facility.

BF 08 LOGGING AND RECORDING

The Contractor shall institute a logging and recording system as part of his management control plan. This shall consist of a file containing the particulars as described in detail below:

BF 08.01 PESTICIDE QUALITY

A sample of each batch of each type of pesticide used shall be taken and stored in a sealed clean glass container. The container shall be clearly marked. These samples are to be kept in safe and appropriate storage by the Contractor in case of a dispute arising from insufficient control of vermin or contamination of any sort.

BF 08.02 LOGGING OF PESTICIDE APPLICATIONS

After each application of pesticides a Pesticide Application Log Sheet (Form PC-1, that forms part of this specification) is to be completed and submitted to the Engineer. The Pesticide Application Log Sheet (Form PC-1) includes the following details:

- Name of the pest control operator
- Name and address where the pesticide application was administered
- Date of the pesticide application
- Manufacturer of the pesticide
- Pesticide name and active ingredient
- Batch identification of the pesticide
- Formulation and concentration of the pesticide
- The pest and type of control aimed at
- Type of application i.e. residual spray, fumigant, bait etc
- Area of application
- Quantity of product used

BE 08.03 RECORDS OF PEST CONTROL OPERATORS

All pest control operators shall be in possession of the National Certificate in pest control, as approved by the Department of National Education. The Pest Control Operator (PCO) shall be in possession of a Registration Certificate issued by the Department of Agriculture in accordance with Act 36 of 1947.

The Pest Control Operator's details and certifications shall be made available for inspection by the Engineer prior to the application of pesticides.

A copy of the Pest Control Operator's details and certifications shall be submitted together with the Pesticide Application Log Sheet (Form PC-1) completed for each pesticide application.

BF 09 NOTIFICATION OF INTENTION TO ADMINISTER PEST CONTROL

Before pest control procedures may commence a notification shall be submitted to the Employer's representative responsible for the facility. The Notification of Intent to Administer Pest Control (Form PC-2, that forms part of this specification) shall include the following details:

- The name and address of the person being notified
- The pest control procedure to be employed and the purpose of the pest control
- The pesticide to be employed
- The date and time of commencement

The pest control operator is to sign the notification to acknowledge responsibility for the precautions to be taken before, during and after operations.

The Employer's representative responsible for the facility is to sign the notification to acknowledge receipt of the notice.

Pest control procedures may only be implemented once the notification has been completed and signed by all relevant parties.

BF 10 PREPARATION OF THE AREA AFFECTED BY PEST CONTROL

The PCO shall arrange, with the Engineer via the Contractor, a suitable time for the pest control area to be vacated and provide an approximate time for the completion of pest control.

The PCO shall provide the Employer's representative responsible for the facility with a written list of all materials and articles that must be removed from the facility before the administering of pesticides may commence.

After the PCO is satisfied that all materials, which might be damaged or contaminated during the application of pesticides, have been removed he will conduct a thorough inspection of the area before pest control application may commence.

BF 11 CLEARANCE AFTER PEST CONTROL

Upon completion of the application of pesticides the PCO shall ensure that the area is well ventilated and that the levels of harmful gases are safe for re-occupancy.

The area shall be checked for any damage or contamination caused by the application of the pesticides and all dead rodents shall be removed from the area.

The PCO shall deliver a written Clearance Notification (Form PC-3, that forms part of this technical specification), declaring the area safe for re- occupancy, to the Employer's representative responsible for the facility.

BF 12 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT

The Contractor's performance shall be evaluated as follows:

BF12 .01 SCORE-CARD

The Engineer shall inspect each facility monthly after the commencement date of the Contract. The Engineer shall use a score-card to measure the quality of pest control service rendered by the Contractor during the preceding month. The score-card shall serve to evaluate ten performance indicators each month in the manner set out below.

BF12 .02 PERFORMANCE INDICATORS

The Contractor and the Engineer shall each have the opportunity to select five (5) performance indicators each month which shall focus on the measurement of the quality of pest control service rendered, against the relevant clauses of this specification for the month ahead. All ten (10) performance indicators are known to both the Engineer and the Contractor. The Contractor shall aim to perform satisfactorily on all ten performance indicators. All indicators shall be selected from the scope of his normal routine activities based on the pest control programme as specified in sub-clause BF 04.01. The work shall either be satisfactory or unsatisfactory and the Contractor shall score one (1) or zero (0) respectively per indicator.

BF12 .03 SATISFACTORY PERFORMANCE

The Engineer shall inspect the Site on an arbitrary day to measure the quality of the pest control against the 10 selected performance indicators. Should the Contractor score the maximum points (10) he shall receive his full payment that month under pay item BF.05 for providing a good-quality pest control service during the previous month. Should the quality of the service provided by him be unsatisfactory according to the score-card, the Contractor will not receive full payment that month due to a reduced service level. In this manner the Employer will be protected against a reduced or unsatisfactory service level.

A copy of the score-card including a guideline for the use thereof is included in this specification.

BF 13 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BF .01 Compiling Of The Pest Control Programme For Each Location

Unit: Sum

The unit of measurement shall be the number of comprehensive pest control programmes compiled for the different locations in each facility. Each programme shall include initial steps to be taken as well preventative pest control procedures.

The programme shall be subject to revision by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for ascertaining the status of the pest infestation, for all testing; including re-testing where applicable as well as for the cost of providing all instrumentation, tools, equipment and labour that may be required.

BF .02 Initial “Clean Up” And Rodent Proofing Unit: Sum

The unit of measurement shall be a lump sum.

The sums tendered for the different locations in each facility shall include full compensation for the preparation of the area affected by the pest control procedure, for notifications as in clauses BE 09, BE 10 & BE 11 for the supply, preparation, delivery and the application of the pesticides, for the safe disposal of empty pesticide containers and for storage, transport and handling.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the cost of all materials required for the rodent proofing of the facility as well as for the supply, delivery, storage, handling, transport and installation of such materials.

The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for all testing, including re-testing where applicable for all instrumentation, tools, equipment and labour that may be required as well as for the logging and recording of all required data as described this specification.

BF .03 Monitoring And Reporting Of Pest Control Status Unit: Number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of reports with recommendations compiled and submitted for each location in each facility.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for monitoring the pest control status, for the supply of all equipment used during monitoring, for delivery of relevant equipment, and for the cost of compiling the reports with recommendations.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for all testing, including re-testing where applicable, for all instrumentation, tools, equipment and labour that may be required as well as for the logging and recording of all required data as described in this specification.

BF .04 Preventative Pest Control Unit: Sum

The unit of measurement for the preventative pest control at each location in each facility for the period between inspections and for reporting as outlined in clauses PBF 02, PBF 03, PBF 04 and PBF 05, shall be a lump sum.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the preparation of the area affected by the pest control procedure, for notifications as in clauses BF 09, BF 10 & BF 11, for the preparation, supply, delivery, and the application of the pesticides, for the safe disposal of empty pesticide containers and for storage, transport and handling.

The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for all testing, including re-testing where applicable, for all instrumentation, tools, equipment and labour that may be required as well as for the logging and recording of all required data as described this specification.

BF .05 Maintaining Quality Of Pest Control Service Unit: Point

The unit of measurement shall be a point. Each month shall represent a maximum of 10 points and a minimum of zero points, depending on the performance of the contractor in providing quality service.

Ten points per month, determined by using the rate tendered per point, shall include full compensation for executing the work as specified and for all risks, liabilities and obligations described or implied in the Conditions of Contractor, this specification, Portion 1 of the Project Specifications and in Particular Specifications SABS 1200A and 1200AB as amended in Portion 2 of the Project Specifications.

The combined tendered rate for 10 points shall also include full compensation for quality control, for all taxes, levies and insurances that may be applicable and for all other incidentals necessary to provide the service and for which no provision for payment has been made under other payment items.

The rate tendered for this item shall not be less than ten per cent (10%) of the total price tendered for the pest control service.



NATIONAL DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS
PESTICIDE APPLICATION LOG SHEET

Name of Pest Control Company: _____

Name of Pest Control Operator: _____

Name and location of pesticide application: _____

Date: _____

Pesticide Manufacturer: _____

Name of applied pesticide: _____

Active Ingredient: _____

Batch identification: _____

Formulation and Concentration of
pesticide applied: _____

Type of application: _____

Area of pesticide application (description
and dimensions): _____

Quantity of products applied (verified by
Engineer): _____

Engineer's name and signature: _____

Pest and type of control aimed at: _____



**NATIONAL DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS
NOTIFICATION OF INTENT TO ADMINISTER PEST CONTROL**

TO: _____

LOCATION OF PEST CONTROL: _____

DATE: _____

DATE OF PEST CONTROL APPLICATION: _____

TIME: _____

PURPOSE OF PEST CONTROL: _____

TYPE OF PEST CONTROL: _____

PESTICIDE TO BE EMPLOYED: _____

The undersigned takes full responsibility for the precautions to be taken before, during and after the pest control application.

DATE: _____

SIGNED (Pest Control Operator): _____

The undersigned acknowledges receipt of this notice.

DATE: _____

SIGNED (Employer's Representative
responsible for facility): _____



**NATIONAL DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS
CLEARANCE NOTIFICATIONS**

TO:

LOCATION OF PEST CONTROL:

DATE:

DATE OF COMMENCEMENT OF PEST
CONTROL:

DATE OF COMPLETION OF PEST
CONTROL:

PURPOSE OF PEST CONTROL:

TYPE OF PEST CONTROL:

PESTICIDE EMPLOYED:

The undersigned confirms that the area in which pest control was conducted is safe for re-occupancy and that all relevant checks and test have been conducted.

DATE:

SIGNED (Pest Control Operator):

The undersigned acknowledges receipt of this notice of clearance

DATE:

SIGNED (Employer's Representative
responsible for facility):

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BH FITTINGS

CONTENTS

BH 01	SCOPE
BH 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BH 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BH 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BH 05	MAINTENANCE
BH 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BH 01 SCOPE

Fittings shall mean the scope of work to perform corrective maintenance repairs to materials and components related to cupboards, shelving, signage and counters.

The complete scope of repair work shall be as described in BH 04: Detail of repair work.

BH 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BH 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- | | | |
|-------------|---|--|
| PW 371 | - | Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively |
| SANS 929 | - | Plywood and composite board |
| SANS 1099 | - | Hardwood furniture timber |
| SANS 1783-3 | - | Softwood timber for industrial use |
| SANS 1385 | - | Kitchen cupboards of steel, composite board and timber |

BH 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BD: Walls
 Technical Specification BG: Metalwork
 Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork

BH 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BH 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF FITTINGS

BH 03.01.01 Built-in cupboards

The Engineer shall inspect all cupboards for defects and shall establish which components are to be replaced or repaired. Reasons for replacement will include, but not be limited to:

- (a) Severely chipped or damaged block board;
- (b) Severely chipped or damaged decorative laminates;
- (c) Inadequacy of design, e.g. strength of hinges, failure of door furniture, etc.;
- (d) Corroded steel elements.

Fixing of defects will include repairing or replacing damaged, corroded and worn-out fittings, e.g. door handles, knobs and hinges, door catches and holders, door locks, cupboard door vents, drawer slide rails, drawer handles, knobs and locks. Moving parts shall be serviced by cleaning, oiling, tightening loose screws, reinstating missing screws or aluminium pop rivets, etc. Refer to BD 03.08 and BD 03.09 of Technical Specification BD: Walls, for repairs or replacements of cupboard doors and ironmongery.

BH 03.01.02 Kitchen cupboards

Kitchen cupboards shall be inspected for defects. Defects will include repairing or replacing damaged, corroded and worn-out fittings, e.g. door handles, knobs and hinges, door catches and holders, door locks, cupboard door vents, drawer slide rails, drawer handles, knobs and locks. Moving parts shall be serviced by cleaning, oiling, tightening loose screws, reinstating missing screws or aluminium pop rivets, etc. Where the baked enamel of steel cupboards is scratched and worn off, the steel surface shall be sanded and painted with an approved gloss epoxy paint to match the existing colour. Severely corroded or damaged steel cupboards shall be replaced with approved new steel cupboards complying with SANS 1385, with the baked enamel complying with SANS 783 Type II.

Damaged kitchen cupboards manufactured from composite board with laminated plastic covering shall be repaired where possible by gluing loose laminated plastic covering or replacing components with new similar matching finished elements.

Damaged kitchen cupboards manufactured from timber shall be repaired by replacing cracked and broken timber components. Painted surfaces shall be varnished with water-resistant varnish (with matching stain) or painted with approved polyurethane paint. Refer to Technical Specification BJ: Paintwork.

All cupboards shall be properly screwed and fixed to walls and floors with suitable corrosion resistant screws and plastic plugs, washers, etc.

Work tops and sinks against walls shall be sealed with an approved white one part polyurethane sealant. The sealant shall be applied strictly according to the manufacturer's specifications. Old worn-out and damaged sealant shall also be replaced. Drop-in sink bowls shall also be sealed with this approved polyurethane sealant. Where the possibility exists that water can penetrate composite board, these joints in the worktops shall also be sealed.

BH 03.01.03 Shelving

The stability of shelves must be checked to determine the occurrence of sagging. Where required, provide adequate support for the specific application, e.g. steel tubing struts, additional timber bearers, steel brackets, etc.

Broken timber shelving shall be replaced with approved wrought hardwood or solid laminated pine varnished or painted to specification. Composite board will not be permitted. Shelves shall be in single lengths. Heads of nails and brass countersunk screws in exposed faces of joinery shall be sunk and pelleted.

BH 03.01.04 Signage

Safety signs shall comply with the requirements of SANS 1186 (1997).

The Engineer shall survey all signage and list those items that prove to be illegible. Signs that need to be replaced shall be done in the same fashion and material as to match similar signs in the same application. The size of the signs shall be as shown on the schedules.

Where required proper and appropriate signage must be provided for door numbers, room size and room description. The size, colour, position on the door, wall, etc., height above floor level of the lettering shall be instructed by the Engineer on site or shown on the schedules. The lettering must be stencilled on to the doors and walls.

All other fire protection signage will be provided for hydrants, hose reels, etc., shall be provided under separate contract.

BH 03.01.05 Counters

The Engineer shall inspect all counters and counter tops for defects and shall establish which components are to be replaced or repaired. Special attention shall be given to the condition of hinges at service hatches.

All joinery liable to be damaged shall be covered with temporary coverings to the satisfaction of the Engineer and special care shall be taken to protect surfaces that are to be varnished.

Where necessary, timber counters shall be sanded down, uneven surface spots filled with an approved wood filler, all blemishes removed and then finished off in order to restore the wood to its original state.

Steel tops that have been damaged excessively shall be replaced.

BH 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

The detail of the scope of work is described in the Schedule of Quantities.

BH 05 MAINTENANCE

No maintenance will be required for fittings under this contract.

BH 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BH 06.01 MEASUREMENT AND RATES

BH 06.01.01 General inclusion of costs

Notes:

All material scheduled to be removed shall be deemed to be existing damaged materials in small or large sections. All such redundant material shall become the property of the Contractor and must be removed from site immediately.

All new material shall be deemed to be in patchwork and shall be of approved equal quality, colours, profiles, thickness, etc. and shall in all cases match the existing materials and shall be fixed (internally or externally) to existing material or surfaces.

All replacement, removal and repair work shall be done carefully as to not damage any adjacent or other material or work. Any damage to other or adjacent materials or areas caused by the negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by him free of charge.

All work scheduled to be removed or taken out shall be deemed to include the cleaning and preparation of the remaining sections, areas, or work to receive the new material or work specified.

Repair and service work shall also include all removing, cutting, grinding, cutting into, welding, bending, strengthening, drilling, tightening, fastening, oiling, greasing, adjusting, and providing missing or damaged screws or bolts, etc. to repair or to improve the items or areas as new and to match the existing. The service of cupboard doors and drawers shall be deemed to include for servicing all locks, hinges, glides, tracks, etc.

Work scheduled to be realigned and refixed shall be deemed to include all necessary new additional materials, brackets, connector plates, bolts, pip rivets, nails, screws, spacer blocks, clamps, timber, and labour, etc. to leave the items as new and totally functional.

All new work are measured net and shall include all cutting, lapping, waste, bending, fixing, corners, mitres, fixing screws, pip rivets, nails, adhesive, grout, putty, etc., as well as cleaning and preparation of surfaces not already prepared as part of removed items, etc.

The removal of doors, gates or windows shall include for the removal of all existing locks, handles, striking plates, etc. but exclude the hinges, etc., which shall be used for the new replaced items. All repair work (excluding paintwork) around and in the thresholds of new door frames, gates or windows build into existing brickwork in new or existing positions shall be deemed to be included in either the rates tendered for the new replacement item or the removal payment item of the frame, window, etc.

The new doors to toilets and wet areas as specified shall be fitted with rubber door stops, D-profiled pull handle and backplate sets, 15 mm roller ball catches with striking plates and all other ironmongery needed to install the doors complete. All new ironmongery shall be measured and paid for separately.

The new doors to offices, etc., as specified shall be fitted with rubber door stops, 4 lever mortice locksets with handle sets to match existing, striking plates and all other ironmongery needed to install the doors complete. All new ironmongery shall be measured and paid for separately.

All ironmongery installed on the project shall bear the SANS approved trademark and codes. Samples of all ironmongery scheduled must be according to the samples of the Department of Public Works and samples must be handed to the engineer for approval before ordering the material.

BH 06.02 SCHEDULED ITEMS**NEW WORK****BH.01 Joinery:****(a) Items measured by number:**

- (i) Timber cupboard doors, shelves, complete cupboards, etc. (type and size indicated) Unit: number
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by number

(b) Items measured by linear metre:

- (i) Timber rails, planks, frames, shelves, etc. (size indicated) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by length

(c) Items measured by area:

- (i) Pinning boards, shelves, work tops, etc. (type and thickness indicated) Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by area

The units of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of each type and/or size of joinery item specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the manufacturing and supplying of all materials, for transport, labour, cutting, waste, fixing, screws, bolts, clamps, etc. and installation of the joinery items.

BH.02 Steelwork:**(a) Items measured by number:**

- (i) Steel cupboard or locker doors, shelves, complete cupboards, etc. (type and size indicated) Unit: number or units
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by number

(b) Items measured by linear metre:

- (i) Steel rails, shelves, frames, etc. (size indicated) Unit: m
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by length

(c) Items measured by area:

- (i) Shelves, plates, etc. (type and thickness indicated) Unit: m²
- (ii) Etc. for other items measured by area

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre of each type and/or size of steelwork item specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the manufacturing, supplying of all materials and transport, and for all labour, cutting, welding, waste, fixing and installation of the steelwork items complete with a red oxide or equal approved steelwork primer or baked enamel paint finishing as specified.

ALTERATION WORK

BH.03

Alterations and repairs to existing fittings:

(a) Indicate if repairs, alterations, removal or sealing, etc.:

- (i) Description of individual items to be repaired,
altered, removed, sealed, etc. Unit: m³, m², m, number

The unit of measurement for items repaired, altered, removed, sealed, etc. shall be cubic metre, square metre, metre or number as scheduled.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs to repair, refix, remove, cutting into, realign, taking off, temporary store, etc. as specified in the Standard and Technical Specifications and shall allow for all necessary labour, plant and new material needed to leave the scheduled items as new and to the approval of the Engineer. Refer also to the general inclusion of costs in BH 06.01.01.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

BJ PAINTWORK

CONTENTS

BJ 01	SCOPE
BJ 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BJ 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BJ 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
BJ 05	MAINTENANCE
BJ 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

BJ 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the painting/repainting and maintenance of new and existing building components and maintenance thereafter for various types of buildings and structures.

Paintwork shall mean the scope of work related to the preparation, painting and maintenance of new and existing building components. This specification does not include work related to galvanising of steelwork, which is specified elsewhere.

The complete scope of paintwork shall be as described in BJ 04: Detail of repair work.

BJ 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

BJ 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	- Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
SANS 515	- Decorative paint with a non-aqueous solvent base for interior use
SANS 630	- Decorative high gloss enamel for interior and exterior
SANS 631	- Decorative oil gloss paint for interior and exterior use
SANS 633	- Emulsion paints for interior decorative purposes
SANS 634	- Emulsion paints for exterior use
SANS 678	- Primers for wood for interior and exterior use
SANS 681	- Undercoats for paints
SANS 683	- Roof paints (relevant sections)
SANS 723	- Wash primer (metal etch primer)
SANS 801	- Epoxy-tar paints
SANS 887	- Varnish for interior use
SANS 926	- Two-pack zinc-rich epoxy primer
SANS 1227	- Textured wall coatings, emulsion base, for interior and exterior use
SANS 1319	- Zinc phosphate primers for steel
SANS 10064	- Preparation of steel surfaces for coating

BJ 02.02 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS

Technical Specification BG: Metalwork

Paint manufacturers' specifications. These specifications shall take precedence over all others.

BJ 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**BJ 03.01 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PAINTWORK****BJ 03.01.01 General**a) Quality control

- i) Application of all paints must be supported by the relevant paint manufacturer's technical quality control systems with regard to preparation, application, film thickness, colour/pigmentation, mixing, etc.
- ii) The Contractor must submit his programme to the Engineer well in advance, particularly where high-risk surface applications (sheet metal roofs, etc.) are concerned, in order to keep the manufacturer's technical personnel informed. Paint application may not commence until the manufacturer has inspected the surface preparation and given written approval thereof to the Engineer.

b) Paint systems

- i) All paint shall be delivered to the site in the unopened containers on which the manufacturer's name and trademark appear.
- ii) All materials for paintwork shall comply with the requirements for standards from the country from which it originated and shall be approved by the Engineer.
- iii) The Contractor shall submit copies of the paint manufacturer's specifications, recommendations and datasheets to the Engineer for approval.
- iv) The coating system shall be from one manufacturer unless otherwise specified. The paint manufacturer's instructions shall be strictly adhered to.
- v) Paints, etc, shall be suitable for application on the surfaces on which they are to be applied and various coats must be compatible with each other. Those paints used externally shall be of exterior quality or suitable for exterior use.

c) Guarantee

- i) The Contractor must give a 3 year written guarantee for the quality and workmanship of the paint work (fair wear and tear excepted). The Contractor shall be liable for any peeling or flaking paint applied by the Contractor and shall execute all such work of repair, rectification and making good of painted surfaces as may be ordered in writing by the Engineer. The manufacturer must carry out inspections at regular intervals during the construction period. The Manufacturer must issue a certificate of acceptance and compliance on completion to the client.

BJ 03.01.02 General preparation of new and existing work

All walls and ceilings, etc, shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to commencement of painting and the premises kept clean and free from dust during painting operations. Protect all surfaces not to be painted against spotting and spilling. Clean down and make good as necessary. Locks, door handles and similar fittings or fixtures shall be removed (or masked) and refitted on completion of painting.

a) Plaster

- (i) All surfaces, sills, ceilings, etc, shall be thoroughly dry before painting operations are started. Porous surfaces must be sealed with the appropriate sealer, thinned if necessary, before applying the paint system.
- (ii) Exterior surfaces: Any cracks shall be scraped out and filled with an approved filler or patching plaster and rubbed down flush; the whole surface shall be well brushed down to remove all loose dust and powdery material before applying the first coat of the specified paint system.
- (iii) Interior surfaces: All cracks, blow holes, etc, shall be filled with suitable stopping and rubbed down flush. The whole surface shall be smoothed to an even finish and dusted down. Any grease marks, crayon marks, etc, shall be cleaned off with sugar soap and thoroughly rinsed with clean water. The surface shall be thoroughly dry before painting operations are started.
- (iv) Ceilings: Ceilings shall be brushed down and free of all dust and powdery materials. Cover strips and cornices shall be stopped where necessary and rubbed down smooth. All nail heads shall be primed, stopped and rubbed down flush. The surface shall then be wiped or brushed free of all loose or powdery materials before applying the recommended paint system.
- (v) Fibre cement: Fibre cement surfaces shall be cleaned down and primed with an approved sealer and undercoat.

b) Metalwork

- (i) Iron and steel: New iron and steel metalwork shall be cleaned with an approved degreaser and the most effective method available (shot or sand blasting, mechanical wire brushing, hand wire brushing) used to remove all rust and millscale. Any salt deposits resulting from a marine or industrial environment shall be removed by washing with water prior to priming.
- (ii) Galvanised surfaces: New galvanised surfaces shall be well cleaned to remove all traces of oil and dirt with galvanised iron cleaner and rinsed with clean water.

c) Woodwork

- (i) New woodwork shall be brushed down and the surface prepared as follows:
- (ii) Knots shall be given a coat of an approved patented knotting. The surface shall be primed overall and all holes shall be filled. The surface shall then be rubbed down with glass paper until smooth and even. Woodwork that needs to be oiled, stained or varnished shall be free of all stains, pencil marks and other surface discolourations and blemishes and shall be stopped with tinted stopping and rubbed down.

d) General

- (i) Colours: All colours and tints are to be submitted to the Engineer for approval. Sample colours are to be prepared in all cases for the final coat and all work must be finished to colour approved by the Engineer. Where necessary, universal undercoat must be tinted to a shade lighter than the finishing coat.
- (ii) Doors and windows: All doors and opening sections of windows must be left ajar after painting or varnishing until the paint is perfectly dry.
- (iii) Protection and cleaning off: All necessary precautions are to be taken for the protection of all finished work and other trades during painting, and all ironmongery shall be removed where possible prior to the commencement of painting and re-fixed after completion. All paint spots, stains, etc, are to be cleaned off floors, walls, glass, etc, after completion.

BJ 03.01.03 Paint specifications for various components(a) Fibre cement (ceilings)(i) New work(1) InteriorCeilings to wet areas (ablutions, kitchens and laundries):

- Polyurethane alkyd enamel:

Prepare and apply one coat synthetic copolymer primer. Stop with interior crack filler, seal crack filler with above primer. Apply two coats of polyurethane alkyd enamel interior quality paint.

- Universal fungicidal additive:

To be added to above in proportions specified by the manufacturer. This additive will only be required in specific cases.

(2) Exterior

Preparation: Clean down to remove all dirt and grease, etc, fill nail-heads with exterior crack filler and sand down to a smooth and even surface.

Finishing coat (emulsion): Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA emulsion or polyurethane alkyd enamel.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work(1) InteriorCeilings previously painted, in good condition:

Preparation: Clean down to remove all dirt and grease, etc, fill nail-heads, cracks and defects with interior crack filler and sand down to a smooth and even surface.

Finishing coat (emulsion): Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA emulsion or polyurethane alkyd enamel.

Ceilings previously painted, in poor condition (to be finished in an emulsion system):

Preparation: Remove all loose and flaking paint, clean down to remove all dirt, grease, etc, prime nail-heads with zinc phosphate primer for steel. Apply one coat of primer to existing ceiling boards diluted with 20 % turpentine. Fill nail-heads, cracks and defects with interior crack filler and sand down to a smooth and even surface. Seal all repaired areas with above-mentioned primer.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.

Ceilings to wet areas:

Preparation as above, but to be followed by one coat synthetic copolymer primer and two final coats polyurethane alkyd enamel interior quality paint (with fungicidal additive, only if specified).

In cases where fungicidal attack is prevalent the prepared surface must be washed down with antiseptic solution, followed by sodium hyperchlorite and allowed to react for 15 minutes before washing down with water. Once dry, primer and finishing coats may be applied.

(2) Exterior

Not applicable.

(b) Woodwork truss/rafters (overhangs)

(i) New work

(1) Interior

Not applicable.

(2) Exterior

- Egg-shell/High-gloss enamel:

Prepare and touch up knots with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Apply one coat of primer for wood. Stop with wood filler where necessary. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of enamel.

- Creosote coating:

Prepare surface to be clean, dry and sound Apply on coat of creosote wood treatment coating.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Not applicable.

(2) Exterior

Woodwork truss/rafters (overhangs) previously painted, in good condition (to be painted in egg-shell/high-gloss enamel):

Preparation: Clean down and sand to a smooth finish. Spot prime where necessary with primer for wood. Allow 24 hours drying. Stop with wood filler.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow 24 hours drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of enamel paint.

Woodwork truss/rafters (overhangs) previously painted, in poor condition (to be finished in egg-shell/high-gloss enamel):

Preparation: Remove existing paint and sand down thoroughly. Touch up knots and resinous areas with knotting.

Primer: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow 24 hours drying. Stop with wood filler and sand to a smooth finish.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow 24 hours drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of enamel paint.

Creosote coating:

Preparation: Prepare surface. Apply two coats creosote wood treatment coating.

(c) Metalwork - steelwork and miscellaneous metal work (including general pipework)

(i) New work

(1) Interior

Unpainted:

Prepare and apply one coat zinc phosphate primer for steel. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high gloss enamel paint.

Shop-primed:

Touch up damaged primer with zinc phosphate primer for steel. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel paint.

Cast-iron waste pipes:

Prepare and remove as much bitumen as possible. Apply one coat of aluminium paint. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel paint.

(2) ExteriorUnpainted:

Prepare and apply one coat zinc phosphate primer for steel. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel or oleoresinous aluminium paint (where applicable).

Shop-primed:

Touch up damaged primer with zinc phosphate primer for steel. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel or oleoresinous aluminium paint (where applicable).

Cast-iron waste pipes:

Prepare and remove as much bitumen as possible. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high gloss enamel or oleoresinous aluminium paint (where applicable).

(ii) Renovation (existing) work(1) InteriorPreviously painted metalwork, in good condition (steel windows, door frames, miscellaneous steelwork, etc):

Preparation: Wash down with sugar soap and rise with clean water. Sand lightly and apply one coat universal undercoat.

Finishing: Apply two coats high-gloss enamel.

Previously painted metalwork, in poor condition:

Preparation: Remove all existing paint by means of scraping or wire brushing and sanding. Tightly adhering paint that cannot be removed may remain and be overcoated. Remove all signs of rust back to bright metal by sanding with emery cloth. Wash down with an approved degreaser, rinse with clean water to remove all traces thereof and allow to dry. Treat rusted areas with a water-based rust converter.

Primer: Apply one coat of zinc phosphate primer for steel. Allow overnight drying.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow overnight drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats high-gloss enamel. Allow overnight drying between coats.

Previously painted metalwork, to remove all previous paint to original surface:

Preparation: Remove all existing paint by means of scraping or wire Brushing, grinding and sanding Remove all signs of rust back to bright metal by sanding with emery cloth. Wash down with an approved degreaser, rinse with clean water to remove all traces thereof and allow to dry. Treat rusted areas with a water-based rust converter.

Primer: Apply one coat of zinc phosphate primer for steel. Allow overnight drying.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow overnight drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats high-gloss enamel. Allow overnight drying between coats.

(2) Exterior

Previously painted metalwork, in good condition:

Preparation: Wash down with sugar soap, followed by light sand-papering. Rinse with clean water.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow 24 hours for drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel or oleoresinous aluminium paint (where applicable).

Previously painted metalwork, in poor condition:

Preparation: Remove all existing paint by means of scraping or wire brushing and sanding. Tightly adhering paint that cannot be removed may remain and be overcoated. Remove all signs of rust back to bright metal by sanding with emery cloth. Wash down with an approved degreaser, rinse with clean water to remove all traces thereof and allow to dry. Treat rusted areas with a water-based rust converter.

Primer: Apply one coat of zinc phosphate primer for steel. Allow for 24 hours drying.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow for 24 hours drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of high-gloss enamel or oleoresinous aluminium paint (where applicable).

Previously painted metalwork, to remove all previous paint to original surface:

Preparation: Remove all existing paint by means of scraping or wire Brushing, grinding and sanding. Remove all signs of rust back to bright metal by sanding with emery cloth. Wash down with an approved degreaser, rinse with clean water to remove all traces thereof and allow to dry. Treat rusted areas with a water-based rust converter.

Primer: Apply one coat of zinc phosphate primer for steel. Allow overnight drying.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow overnight drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats high-gloss enamel. Allow overnight drying between coats.

(3) Aggressive environments

Not applicable.

(d) Gypsum board (ceilings, etc)

(i) New work

(1) Interior (dry areas)

- Super acrylic PVA:

Prepare and apply one coat synthetic copolymer primer for gypsum board diluted with 20 % turpentine. Stop with interior crack filler, seal crack filler with above-mentioned primer. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

(2) Exterior (dry areas)

- Super acrylic PVA:

Prepare and supply one coat of synthetic copolymer primer for gypsum board diluted with 20 % turpentine. Stop with interior crack filler, seal crack filler with above-mentioned primer. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Previously painted gypsum board with PVA in good condition:

Preparation: Wash down with sugar soap to remove all dirt, grease, etc, and rinse off with clean water. When dry, make good all cracks and defects with interior crack filler and sand to a smooth and even surface.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats super acrylic copolymer PVA.

Previously painted gypsum board, in poor condition:

Preparation: Clean down. Remove all paint by sanding and scraping.

Primer: Allow overnight drying. Make good cracks and holes with crack filler. Seal crack filler with above primer and allow to dry.

Finishing coat (emulsion): Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.

(2) Exterior

Not applicable.

(e) Cement plaster (walls) and concrete surfaces

(i) New work

(1) Interior

- Polyurethane alkyd enamel (in wet areas, kitchens, etc.):
Prepare and apply one coat bonding liquid, followed by one coat of synthetic copolymer primer for new plaster. Apply one coat of polyurethane alkyd enamel paint.
- Acrylic emulsion:
Same as above, but apply acrylic emulsion with smooth velvet sheen interior quality paint.
- Gloss enamel:
Same as for polyurethane alkyd enamel, but apply two coats high-gloss enamel.
- Super acrylic PVA:
Prepare and apply one coat of synthetic copolymer primer. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.
- Semi-gloss pure acrylic finish:
Prepare and apply one coat of synthetic copolymer primer. Apply one coat of pure acrylic paint.

(2) Exterior

- Pure acrylic:
Prepare and apply one coat of alkali resistant synthetic resins bonding liquid. Stop with exterior crack filler. Apply one coat of copolymer primer. Apply one final coat of pure acrylic paint.
- Pure acrylic with Teflon:
Preparation, priming and application as above.
- Super acrylic PVA:
Prepare and apply one coat of synthetic copolymer primer. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.
- Acrylic emulsion (external textured):
Preparation as above, followed by two coats textured exterior acrylic emulsion, allowing one hour drying time between coats.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Previously distempered:

Preparation: Remove all distemper with a peeling agent. Rinse with clean water. Allow 48 hours to dry. Fill cracks and defects with interior crack filler. Sand down to a smooth and even surface.

Primer: Apply one coat of bonding liquid, allow a minimum of 24 hours and maximum of 72 hours for drying. Final primers as specified in BJ 03.01.03(e)(i).

Finishing coat: Apply similar paints to suit as specified in BJ 03.01.03(e)(i).

(2) Exterior

Previously painted cement plaster (walls) and surfaces, in good condition:

Preparation: Wash down thoroughly with sugar soap. Rinse with clean water. Fill with suitable exterior crack filler. Sand smooth.
Prime with one coat bonding liquid

Finishing coat: Apply similar paints to suit as specified in BJ 03.01.03(e)(i).

Previously painted cement plaster (walls) and surfaces, in poor condition (ie peeling, crazing, etc, not previously limewashed):

Preparation: Remove all paint and fill with suitable exterior crack filler.

Priming coat: Prime with one coat bonding liquid, allow to dry for a minimum of 24 hours and a maximum of 72 hours.

Finishing coat: Apply similar paints to suit as specified in BJ 03.01.03(e)(i).

(f) Fibre cement board (fascias and ceilings)

(i) New work

(1) Interior

New and wet asbestos sheets shall be allowed to dry out before painting is commenced.

Ceiling boards must be well primed on both sides with an approved sealer/undercoat before fixing.

- Super acrylic PVA:
Prepare and apply one coat of sealer/undercoat. Prime nail heads with metal primer. Stop with filler. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.

(2) Exterior

New and wet asbestos sheets shall be allowed to dry out before painting is commenced.

Fascia boards and barge boards shall be well primed on both sides and edges painted with sealer/undercoat before fixing.

All sides of fascia boards must receive final coatings.

- Super acrylic PVA:
Prepare and apply one coat sealer/undercoat. Prime nail heads with zinc phosphate metal primer. Stop with filler. Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Previously painted fibre cement board with emulsion paint, in good condition:

Preparation: Clean down thoroughly to remove any signs of dirt or grease. Fill all screw heads with a flexible resistant filler after screw heads have been primed.

Finishing: Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

Previously painted fibre cement board in poor condition:

Preparation: Remove previous paint coatings with super paint stripper. Thoroughly wash down with sugar soap and rinse with clean water. Prime nail and screw heads with zinc phosphate metal primer. Allow to dry.

Primer: Apply one coat of synthetic copolymer primer to all surfaces including back and edges, allow to dry. Fill all screw heads with weather resistant filler, allow to dry, sandpaper smooth and touch up with primer.

Finishing: Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

(2) Exterior

Previously painted fibre cement board with emulsion paint in good condition:

Preparation: Clean down thoroughly to remove any signs of dirt or grease. Fill all screw heads with a flexible weather resistant filler after screw heads have been primed.

Finishing: Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

Previously painted fibre cement board, in poor condition:

Preparation: Remove previous paint coatings with super paint stripper. Thoroughly wash down with sugar soap and rinse with clean water. Prime nail and screw heads with zinc phosphate metal primer. Allow to dry.

Primer: Apply one coat of sealer/undercoat to all surfaces including back and edges, allow to dry. Fill all screw heads with weather resistant filler. Allow to dry and sandpaper smooth. Touch up with primer.

Finishing: Apply two coats of super acrylic copolymer PVA paint.

(g) Galvanised iron roof (also gutters and rainwater pipes)

(i) New work

(1) Interior

Not applicable.

(2) Exterior

Galvanised iron - roofs: Water-based pure acrylic emulsion paint:

Scrub down thoroughly with degreaser, followed by a cleaner for galvanised iron. Rinse off thoroughly and ensure that all traces of cleaner have been removed and that the surfaces are free of any grease and oil. Apply one coat of galvanised metal primer. Allow to dry for 5 hours. (Must be overcoated within 24 hours maximum.) Apply one coat of water-based pure acrylic emulsion paint with non-fading pigment.

Galvanised iron - roofs: Mat acrylic roof paint:

Scrub down thoroughly with degreaser, followed by a cleaner for galvanised iron. Rinse off thoroughly and ensure that all traces of cleaner have been removed and that the surface is free of any grease and oil. Apply two coats of mat acrylic roof paint.

Galvanised iron - gutters and rainwater pipes: Gloss enamel:

Scrub down thoroughly with degreaser, followed by a cleaner for galvanised iron. Rinse off thoroughly and ensure that all traces of cleaner have been removed and that the surface is free of any grease and oil. Apply one coat of primer for galvanised iron. Allow to dry for 5 hours. (Must be overcoated within 24 hours maximum.) Apply two coats of gloss enamel paint with non-fading pigment.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Not applicable.

(2) Exterior

Previously painted galvanised iron, in good condition:

Preparation: Thoroughly scrub down with fibre scrubbing brushes and sugar soap and rinse with clean water.

Finishing coat: Apply one coat water-based pure acrylic emulsion paint with non-fading pigment.

Unpainted or previously painted galvanised iron, in poor condition (ie flaking, peeling and rusting):

Preparation: Remove all previous paint coatings with steel wire brushes, plumber's egg-shaped lead scrapers, and coarse floor sandpaper. Remove all traces of rust with emery cloth back to bright metal and apply approved rust converter. Thoroughly scrub down using galvanised iron cleaner and rinse with clean water.

Primer: Apply one coat of galvanised metal primer. Allow a minimum of 5 hours and a maximum of 72 hours for drying.

Finishing coat: Apply one coat of water-based pure acrylic emulsion paint with non-fading pigment.

(h) Timber (doors, cornices, window frames, counters, skirtings, etc)

(i) New work

(1) Interior

- Polyurethane alkyd enamel (wet areas, kitchens, etc):
Prepare knots with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Prime with primer (sanding sealer) for wood. Fill imperfections where necessary with wood filler. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of polyurethane alkyd enamel.
- High-gloss/egg-shell enamel:
Prepare knots with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Prime with primer (sanding sealer) for wood. Fill imperfections where necessary with wood filler. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of enamel.
- Gloss/suede varnish (interior quality solvent based):
Prepare knots with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Fill imperfections with wood filler. Sand surfaces to a smooth finish in grain direction and dust off.
Thin first coat down in a ratio of 3 parts varnish to 1 part mineral turpentine and apply. Allow to dry for 24 hours. Apply two full-strength final coats with 24 hours drying time between applications.

(2) Exterior

- High-gloss/egg-shell enamel:
Prepare with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Apply one coat of primer for wood. Fill where necessary with wood filler. Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Apply two coats of high gloss enamel.
- Gloss/suede varnish (exterior quality ultraviolet resistant solvent based):
Prepare knots with spirit soluble resin type knotting. Fill imperfections with wood filler. Sand surfaces to a smooth finish in grain direction and dust off.
Thin first coat down in a ratio of 3 parts varnish to 1 part mineral turpentine and apply. Allow to dry for 24 hours. Apply two full-strength final coats with 24 hours drying time between applications.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

(1) Interior

Previously painted woodwork, in good condition (to be finished in polyurethane alkyd enamel):

Preparation: Wash sown with sugar soap to remove all dirt, grease, etc, then rinse off with clean water. Sand down to a smooth and mat surface. Make good cracks and defects with wood filler and after 24 hours drying, sand down again.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of polyurethane alkyd enamel. Allow 24 hours for drying between coats.

Previously varnished woodwork in good condition (to be finished with interior quality varnish):

Repair defects with wood filler. Sand surfaces to a mat finish and apply two final coats varnish with 24 hours drying time between applications.

Previously painted woodwork in poor condition (to be finished with high-gloss/egg-shell enamel):

Preparation: Remove all paint, varnish and stain with super paint stripper. Wash down thoroughly with sugar soap and rinse with clean water. When surface is completely dry, sand down and apply one coat of spirit soluble resin type knotting to all knots. Fill all cracks and defects with wood filler and after 24 hours of drying, sand down to a smooth and even surface. Apply one coat oleoresinous wood primer. Apply one coat universal undercoat.

Finishing coat: Apply two final coats enamel.

Previously stained and varnished or painted woodwork in poor condition (to be finished in polyurethane alkyd enamel):

Preparation: Remove all paint, varnish and stain with super paint stripper. Wash down thoroughly with sugar soap and rinse with clean water. When surface is completely dry, sand down and apply one coat of spirit soluble resin type knotting to all knots. Fill all cracks and defects with wood filler and after 24 hours of drying, sand down to a smooth and even surface. Apply one coat oleoresinous wood primer.

Finishing coat: Apply one coat polyurethane alkyd enamel.

Previously varnished woodwork in poor condition (to be finished with interior quality varnish):

Remove all varnish with paint stripper. Wash down to dry completely. Further preparation and applications as for BJ 03.01.03(h)(i): New work - interior.

(2) Exterior

Previously painted woodwork, in good condition (to be repainted with high-gloss/egg-shell enamel):

Preparation: Clean down and sand to a smooth finish. Spot prime where necessary with oleoresinous wood primer. Allow 24 hours for drying. Stop defects with a flexible weather resistant wood filler.

Undercoat: Apply one coat of universal undercoat. Allow 24 hours drying.

Finishing coat: Apply two coats of enamel.

Previously varnished woodwork in good condition (to be finished with exterior quality ultraviolet resistant solvent based varnish):

Preparation and application as for similar interior item above.

Previously stained and varnished or painted woodwork, in poor condition (to be finished in high-gloss/egg-shell enamel):

Preparation: Remove all paint, varnish and stain with super paint stripper. Wash down thoroughly with sugar soap and rinse with clean water. When surface is completely dry, sand down and apply one coat of spirit soluble resin type knotting to all knots. Fill all cracks and defects with wood filler and after 24 hours drying, sand down to a smooth and even surface. Apply one coat oleoresinous wood primer. Apply one coat universal undercoat.

Finishing coat: Apply two final coats of enamel.

Previously stained and varnished or painted woodwork, in poor condition (to be finished in polyurethane alkyd enamel):

As for similar interior item above.

Previously varnished woodwork in poor condition (to be finished with exterior quality ultraviolet resistant solvent based varnish):

Preparation and application as for similar interior item above.

(i) Concrete and cement surfaces - floor paint

(i) New work

Exterior and interior

Preparation: Remove laitance, residual cement spillage, etc, by means of carborundum grinding and vacuum clean to remove all dust. Remove oil, grease or any other surface contaminants with degreaser and wash off with clean water. Allow to dry. The floor must have less than 5 % moisture content before painting may be done.

Finishing coats: Apply two coats of an alkali resistant solvent based stoep (modified alkyd) paint. The first coat may be thinned with 25 % mineral turpentine. Sixteen hours drying time must be allowed between coats.

(ii) Renovation (existing) work

Exterior and interior

Previously painted concrete and cement surfaces, in good condition:

Preparation: Remove any loose and flaking paint by means of carborundum grinding, back to firm feathered edges. Remove any polish, grease, oil and other contaminants with degreaser, wash clean and allow to dry. Sand old paint to a mat finish and vacuum clean to remove all dust.

Finishing coats: Apply two coats as for new work above.

Previously painted concrete and cement surfaces, in poor condition:

Strip completely by suitable means and treat as for new work above.

- (j) Cement plaster or facebrick walls and concrete surfaces where damp penetration is evident

- (i) Renovation

Exterior and interior

Preparation: Remove all damaged paintwork, efflorescence, loose friable material, etc, back to bare and sound substrate. Repair all damaged surfaces with suitable approved materials to match original surface.

Surfaces may remain damp and in some cases will require additional wetting, depending on the particular coating used.

Damp sealing coats: Apply two coats approved synthetic polymer modified water barrier coating in strict accordance with the particular product manufacturer's specifications. Allow 24 hours between coats unless otherwise specified.

Finishing coats: Apply decorative finishing coats to suit, as in BJ 03.01.03(e).

BJ 04 **DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK**

The detail of the scope of work is described in the Schedule of Quantities.

BJ 05 **MAINTENANCE**

No maintenance will be required for paintwork under this contract.

BJ 06 **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

BJ 06.01 **MEASUREMENT AND RATES**

BJ 06.01.01 **General inclusion of costs and specific specifications**

Notes:

All material scheduled to be removed shall be deemed to be existing damaged material. All such redundant material shall become the property of the Contractor and must be removed from site immediately.

All new material shall be deemed to be in patchwork and shall be of approved equal quality, colours, profiles, thickness, etc and shall in all cases match the existing materials and shall be applied (internally or externally) to existing material or surfaces.

All removal and repair work shall be done carefully as to not damage any adjacent or other material or work. Any damage to other or adjacent materials or areas caused by the negligence of the Contractor shall be repaired by him free of charge.

All work scheduled to be removed or taken out shall be deemed to include the cleaning and preparation of the remaining sections, areas, or work to receive the new material or work specified.

Repair work shall also include all cutting, grinding, cutting into, welding, bending, strengthening, drilling, etc to repair or to improve the items or areas as new and to match the existing.

Work scheduled to be realigned and refixed shall be deemed to include all necessary new additional materials, brackets, connector plates, bolts, pip rivets, nails, screws, spacer blocks, clamps, timber, and labour, etc to leave the items as new and totally functional.

All new work are measured net and shall include all cutting, lapping, waste, bending, fixing, corners, mitres, fixing screws, pip rivets, nails, adhesive, grout, putty, etc, as well as cleaning and preparation of surfaces not already prepared as part of removed items, etc.

All paintwork shall include for surface preparation, cleaning, primer(s), undercoat(s) and final coat(s) as specified by the manufacturers and in the Technical Specifications. Scheduled items in the Schedule of Quantities are mainly brief descriptions of the final coat(s) to identify the paint system as specified in the Specifications.

Most steel surfaces such as gratings, screens, gates, doors, mesh, louvres, burglar proofing, windows, etc are measured both sides on the net flat overall area of the item. Paint to roof covering and side cladding, etc are measured wet on the flat overall area of the items and not along the girth of the sheeting. All final re-measurements for payment purposes will be done on the same principles.

Rates tendered for paintwork shall be deemed to include for all "line cutting" between different colours of paint specified by the Engineer in dados, skirtings, etc.

Rates tendered for paintwork on ceilings and cornices shall be deemed to include for paint on cover and jointing strips.

Rates tendered for paintwork on ceilings, wall panelling, divisions, etc shall be deemed to include for timber door frames, jointing and cover strips, skirtings, cornices, quadrant beads, etc if painted with the same specified paint material and in the same colour schemes.

Where specified to be painted in contrasting colours, varnished or with a different paint material the paintwork on the door frames, skirtings, cornices, beads, cover strips, etc will be measured and paid for separately per linear metre.

Specific specification for floor paint

Preparation:

The concrete floor must have less than 3% moisture before painting is attempted. Remove laitance, residual cement spillage, etc by Carborandum grinding. Vacuum clean to remove all dust. Remove oil, grease, or any other surface contaminants with degreaser. Allow to dry thoroughly before painting.

Paint system:

Apply one coat of an alkali resistant solvent based stoep (modified alkyd) paint. The first coat may be thinned with approximately 25% mineral turpentine to aid penetration.

Apply one finishing coat of an alkali resistant solvent based stoep (modified alkyd) paint.

Protection of existing furniture, carpets, finishings, cupboards, etc. during paint procedures

Protection, sheets and screens:

All existing finishings, carpets, floors, furniture, etc shall be carefully handled, moved when instructed within the specific room, building or area to be painted, covered with sheets, screens or other approved methods to protect the items or finishings against damage or spilled paint spots or stains. Any damage caused to the mentioned existing items shall be rectified or replaced by the Contractor without additional payment.

The costs of sheets, covers, screens and all labour to address the above shall be deemed to be included in the tendered rates for the individual payment items or in the general preliminary cost items. No claims by the Contractor in this regard will be entertained.

BJ 06.02**SCHEDULED ITEMS**NEW UNPAINTED SURFACES:**BJ.01****Paint to new unpainted surfaces:**(a) Description of surface:

(i) Brief description of final paint type:

(a) Description of application area or item
to be paintedUnit: m², m, number

(b) Etc. for other areas or items

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and applying each item complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, preparation work, waste, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, miscellaneous items and material, etc to the Engineer's approval.

PREVIOUSLY PAINTED SURFACES:**BJ.02****Paint to previously painted surfaces:**(a) Description of surface:

(i) Brief description of final paint type:

(a) Description of application area or item
to be painted.....Unit: m², m, number

(b) Etc. for other areas or items

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and applying each item complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, preparation work, waste, plant, transport,

delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, miscellaneous items and material, etc to the Engineer's approval.

PREVIOUSLY PAINTED SURFACES IN POOR CONDITION:

BJ.03

Paint to previously painted surfaces in poor condition:

(a) Description of surface:

(i) Brief description of final paint type:

(a) Description of application area or item
to be paintedUnit: m², m, number

(b) Et. for other areas or items

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and applying each item complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, preparation work, waste, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, miscellaneous items and material, etc. to the Engineer's approval.

PREVIOUSLY PAINTED SURFACES TO REMOVE ALL PREVIOUS PAINT TO ORIGINAL SURFACE:

BJ.04

Paint to previously painted surfaces to remove all previous paint to original surface

(a) Description of surface:

(i) Brief description of final paint type:

(a) Description of application area or item
to be paintedUnit: m², m, number

(c) Etc. for other areas or items

The unit of measurement shall be the number, metre or square metre as applicable to each item.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for manufacturing, providing and applying each item complete as per specifications, drawings, descriptions as scheduled or as the existing and shall include for all labour, material, preparation work, waste, plant, transport, delivery, access, scaffolding, fuel, miscellaneous items and material, etc. to the Engineer's approval.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION FOR CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION

BK STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

BK 01	SCOPE
BK 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
BK 03	PROJECT SPECIFICATION
BK 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

BK 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the repair of existing structural concrete elements and the supply, delivery and implementation of the repair procedures for the various types of structures.

Structural concrete shall mean the scope of work to repair all structural concrete components such as walls, columns, stairs and suspended slabs and floors. Joint repairs also form part of this specification. This specification does not include work related to metalwork and paintwork that are specified elsewhere.

BK 02 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	-	Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 & Dec 2015 respectively
SABS 1200 G	-	Concrete (structural)
SABS 1200 GA	-	Concrete (small works)
SABS 1200 GB	-	Concrete (ordinary buildings)
SABS 1200 GE	-	Precast concrete (structural)
SABS 1200 GF	-	Prestressed concrete
SABS 0100	-	Structural use of concrete
SABS 110	-	Sealing compounds for the building industry, two-component, polysulphide base
SABS 1077	-	Sealing compound for the building and construction industry, two-component, polyurethane-base
SABS 1254	-	Sealing compounds for the building industry, oleo-resinous base, for interior and exterior use
SABS 1305	-	Sealing compounds for the building industry, one-component, siliconed-rubber-base

BK 02 PROJECT SPECIFICATION

This Project Specification takes precedence over the Standard Specification, except in the case where an aspect is not covered by the Project Specification, in which case the Standard Specification will apply.

BK 02.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS

SANS standards: All concrete materials shall comply with the relevant SANS standards.

BK 02.01.01 Concrete mix designs

All mix designs for 20MPa and higher grades of concrete shall be tabled and approved by the Engineer in writing, before these mix designs may be used. Each mix design shall clearly state the type, origin and quantity per cubic metre of concrete for each constituent material. The mix design and constituent materials shall be such so as to produce **low shrinkage, crack-free concrete**.

BK 02.01.02 Cement types

Only cements of type CEM I and CEM IIA as per SANS 50197-1 may be used. In addition, only cements of strength class 42,5MPa and higher may be used. Cement shall not be stored for more than 4 weeks before it is used.

BK 02.01.03 Cement extenders

Cement extenders such as fly-ash and slag may not be used in conjunction with CEM IIA. Should the Contractor wish to use cement extenders with CEM I, then he shall obtain the Engineer's prior approval. The Engineer might approve cement extenders of up to 15% in the warmer months of the year, but excluding May, June, July and August.

BK 02.01.04 Minimum cement content

The minimum cement content of CEM I or CEM IIA cements are: 280 kg/m³ for 25MPa, 300 kg/m³ for exposed 25MPa, 310 kg/m³ for 30MPa and 330 kg/m³ for 35MPa concrete.

BK 02.01.05 Water

The maximum water / cement ratio is as follows: 0,67 for 25MPa, 0,60 for 30MPa and 0,53 for 35MPa concrete. Admixtures such as water-reducing agents or plasticizers may be used, but then only strictly according to the manufacturer's instructions.

BK 02.01.06 Aggregates

The coarse aggregate (stone) shall be 19mm natural stone unless otherwise specified. The total mass of coarse aggregate (stone) shall exceed the total mass of fine aggregate (sand) per cubic metre of concrete. Aggregates used in concrete for sewage treatment works, channels and tunnels shall be dolomitic aggregate. A non-dolomitic filler sand may be used.

BK 02.02 REINFORCING STEEL MATERIALS

SANS standards: All reinforcing steel shall comply with the relevant SANS standards.

BK 02.02.01 Steel types

Mild steel (R-steel) shall not be replaced by high tensile steel (Y-steel).

BK 02.02.02 Steel bar dimensions

Steel bars shall be cut and bent strictly to the dimensions and radii stipulated on the project's bending schedules.

BK 02.03 FORMWORK CONSTRUCTION**BK 02.03.01 Formwork design**

- a) All formwork shall be designed by a competent person or a competent company, and the requirements for continuous propping and / or multi-level propping shall be calculated to a theoretical model acceptable to the Engineer. Design loads will be supplied by the Engineer on request. The Contractor shall make provision for the continued support of slabs and beams while the formwork pans / panels are being removed. No back-propping is allowed.
- b) Wall formwork ferrules: The lay-out and positioning of ferrules shall be approved by the Architect / Engineer. In the case of water-retaining structures ferrules shall be of a type which does not leave holes through the walls.
- c) Formwork quality: All formwork shall be sturdy, leak-proof and lightly oiled.
- d) Formwork finish: All formwork finishes shall be at least of class SMOOTH to Degree of Accuracy II, or class SPECIAL to Degree of Accuracy I when so specified on the concrete drawings. Top surfaces of wood- and steel-trowelled concrete floors are to be class SPECIAL.
- e) Upward cambers: All beams, bands and slabs shall have the following upward cambers, unless otherwise indicated on the concrete drawings: Cantilever spans: $\text{span} \div 200$ and other spans: $\text{span} \div 500$.
- f) Construction joints: Positions of construction joints in beams and slabs shall be discussed with, and approved by the Engineer, and shall be formed using planks or well-supported chicken wire.
- g) Cast-in items: The Contractor shall ensure that all cast-in items, e.g. conduits, sleeves, pockets, etc, of all the various building disciplines are accurately placed and secured before concrete is cast.

BK 02.03.02 Removal of formwork

Formwork and props may only be removed after "n" 24h days:

Walls and columns:	2 (hot / normal)	3 (cold)
Slabs with props left underneath:	4	7
Beams with props left underneath:	7	12
Slab props:	10	17
Beam props:	14	21

BK 02.04 REINFORCING STEEL FIXING

- a) Steel shall be fixed using the specific project's fixing plans and bending schedules.
- b) Steel must be inspected and approved in writing by the Engineer before concrete may be cast. The Contractor shall give the Engineer at least 2 days' notice of inspections.
- c) Steel must be properly fixed in position, and purpose-made plastic or concrete spacer blocks must be in position before inspections.

- d) The concrete cover to reinforcing bars shall be as specified on the plans and schedules, but under no circumstances shall the cover be less than: 20mm for plastered and internal slabs and beams; 30mm for exposed concrete surfaces and concrete columns; 40mm in the case of water-retaining structures; 75mm for concrete cast against soil.
- e) No welding of reinforcing steel bars is allowed.

BK 02.04 CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION

- a) Concrete shall be discharged in the position needed and not moved sideways with vibrators.
- b) Concrete shall be properly vibrated using an adequate number of mechanical vibrators.
- c) Concrete may only be cast when the ambient temperature is between 5°C and above 32°C. No concrete may be cast during rain and hail, or shortly before a rain storm.
- d) All concrete elements shall be cured with either, tight wrapping with plastic, or a 50mm layer of wet sand, whichever appropriate, for the following durations: 5 days when hot / normal and 7 days when cold.
- e) Other curing methods must be approved.

BK 02.05 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- a) All concrete shall at least be constructed to Degree of Accuracy II (SMOOTH finish), and Degree of Accuracy I (SPECIAL finish) when so specified on the concrete drawings, as well as in the case of precast concrete elements.
- b) Each permissible deviation is binding in itself, no cumulative effect will be allowed.
- c) Permissible deviation (PD) of dimensions. Some selected values are:

<u>PD:</u>	<u>DoA II:</u>	<u>DoA I:</u>
Cross-section dimensions	-5 / +15 mm	-5 / +5 mm
Flatness of a plane surface	5 mm	3 mm
Abrupt change in continuous surface	5 mm	2 mm
Linear dimension (not cross-sections)	-20 / +20 mm	-10 / +10 mm
Verticality (per metre height)	5 mm	2 mm
Wood- / steel-trowelled top surfaces	-3 / + 3 mm	-3 / +3 mm

BK 02.06 CONCRETE TESTING

- a) A set of concrete test cubes shall be made for every 50m³ of concrete produced, and at least one set of each day's concrete produced. Cubes shall be made strictly according to the SABS prescribed method, and shall be cured and tested by an independent laboratory.
- b) A set of test cubes comprises 6 cubes, 3 to be tested on 7 days, and 3 on 28 days.
- c) When ready-mixed concrete is used, the Contractor must still make cubes on site. Process cube results from a ready-mix plant are not acceptable.
- d) A set of 3 cubes tested at 28 days passes when the average strength is at least 2MPa higher than the specified strength, and when no single cube tests lower than 3MPa below the specified strength.

BK 02.07**CONCRETE SCREEDS****(a) General**

Concrete screeds shall have a minimum thickness of at least 50 mm. The Engineer shall determine the areas of which the concrete screeds need to be replaced.

Only cements of type CEM I and CEM IIA as per SANS 50197-1 may be used. In addition, only cements of strength class 42,5MPa and higher may be used. Cement shall not be stored for more than 4 weeks before it is used.

Coarse aggregate maximum size:	10 mm
28-day cube strength:	30 MPa OR 35 MPa. (as specified)

The use of an approved plasticizer is recommended to reduce the water content of the mix to the absolute workable minimum.

The mix design must be submitted to the Engineer in advance for approval.

Refer to BK 02.06 for the testing requirements of concrete.

(b) Preparation

All laitance on the surface of the slabs must be removed, using mechanical equipment such as scabblers, so as to expose the coarse aggregate of the concrete.

Before commencement of the screed, remove all loose material and dust, and keep the slabs thoroughly wet for eight hours, before placement of the screed.

(c) Placement of the screed

Remove all surface water from the slab. Apply a grout to the slab surface, which consists of a 1:1 mix of cement and clean fine sand, with just enough water to provide the consistency of a slurry. Vigorously brush the grout into the scabbled surface of the slabs using brooms. Strike off all surplus grout, leaving a thin layer of grout.

Place the screed concrete in one layer, in a checker board pattern, while the grout layer is still visibly wet. Compact the concrete very well using small mechanical vibrators.

(d) Finishing

The surface finish shall be SPECIAL as per SABS 1200G attained by steel trowelling.

Power floating should not commence until such time as the concrete surface, has lost its sheen and barely shows footprints.

All laitance on the surface of the fresh concrete screed resulting from the compaction of concrete, must be struck off prior to mechanical trowelling. Over-trowelling, causing excessive cement-water paste to come to the surface, must be strictly avoided.

(e) Joints

The screed shall have construction joints and expansion joints, in all the exact same positions as the underlying concrete slab.

In addition the screed shall be divided into panels of no larger than 3 x 3m. The length to width ratio of these panels shall not exceed 1.5.

All joints shall be formed with side formwork. An expansion joint former specifically developed for the intended applications must be used as specified by the Engineer.

Joints must be sealed with an approved 1-part polyurethane joint sealer for the intended purpose according to the Engineer's specification.

(f) Curing

Curing of the screed concrete shall commence directly after the finishing operation stops, and shall continue for 7 days. The method of curing shall be by means of well held down plastic sheeting and with the daily adding of water.

BK 03 MOVEMENT JOINTS

BK 03.01 Joint Former

Ensure all concrete surfaces are free from base grit and dust. Apply glue in vertical strips \pm 100 mm wide and 25 mm from the top to avoid the tear-off strip from sticking to the concrete face.

Allow the glue to dry (according to manufacturer's instructions) and then stick the joint former onto the glued concrete face.

Cast the next section of concrete as required. Take care not to let the wet concrete get behind joint former as this will result in a wavy joint.

When the joint sealant is about to be applied, simply peel the tear-off strip out of the formed joint, leaving an even groove of uniform depth for filling with sealant.

BK 03.02 Joint Sealant

Joints < 10 mm are normally designed for crack control and therefore they are not movement / expansion joints. The joint width to depth ratio is important at the time of the application of the sealant (guide value of +10°C).

BK 03.03 Application Method /Tools

After suitable joint and substrate preparation, insert Backing Rod to required depth and apply primer if necessary. Insert cartridge into sealant gun and firmly extrude joint sealant into joint, making sure that it is full contact with the side of the joint. Fill the joint, avoiding air entrapment. The joint sealant must be tooled firmly against joint sides to ensure good adhesion.

Masking tape must be used where sharp exact joint lines or exceptionally neat lines are required. Remove the tape whilst the sealant is still soft. Slick joint with smoothing liquid for a perfect sealant surface.

BK 03.04 REQUIREMENTS FOR REPAIR OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE**BK 03.04.01 Concrete repair**

All existing structural concrete to be inspected to determine the extent of damage and repair work required. All remedial concrete work to be classified into the following categories by the Engineer/Department's representative:

- Surface concrete repair

Cosmetic repair of concrete surfaces where no reinforcing is exposed, where cover to reinforcement is not a problem (non-aggressive environment) and for non-structural repairs.

- Mild to moderate concrete repair

When the reinforcing is exposed and the extent thereof is small compared to the size of the element under consideration.

- Severe concrete repair

Where the front of the reinforcing is exposed in large areas or reinforcing is exposed totally. Generally when the defective areas have adverse structural implications.

The above categories do not apply to off-shutter concrete, which will be treated on merit.

Any structural concrete elements that are damaged to such an extent that they cannot be classified under severe concrete repair, will be treated on merit. Detailed instructions will be issued during repair for the rehabilitation of such structural concrete elements.

BK 03.04.02 Surface concrete repair procedure

The following procedure, or similar approved by the Engineer/Department's representative to be used:

- Remove all loose and defective material and clean around affected area to expose aggregate.
- Saw-cut 10 mm vertically around edges of repair area and break out concrete within to avoid tapered feathering.
- Wet area well, approximately 30 minutes before commencement of repair.
- Apply an approved shrinkage compensated pre-mixed ready to use single-component polymer modified, cementitious repair mortar in strict accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- The repaired surface to be cured by covering with plastic sheeting and keeping wet for 48 hours or as otherwise specified.

BK 03.04.03 Mild to moderate concrete repair procedure

The following procedure, or similar approved by the Engineer/Department's representative to be used:

- Remove all loose and defective material and break out to a minimum depth of 10 mm.
- Saw-cut 10 mm vertically around edges of repair area and break out concrete within, to avoid tapered feathering.
- Ensure that concrete is free from laitance, oil, grease, etc., and is sound, firm and clean.
- Exposed reinforcing to be wire brushed clean and free of all rust and then coated with an approved single component epoxy zinc primer.
- The concrete to be thoroughly wetted and kept wet for a minimum of 12 hours before applying remedial product, loose standing water to be removed prior to application of repair mortar.
- Apply an approved shrinkage compensated pre-mixed ready to use single-component polymer modified, cementitious repair mortar in strict accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- The repaired surface to be cured by covering with plastic sheeting and keeping wet for 48 hours or as otherwise specified.

BK 03.04.04 Severe concrete repair procedure

The following procedure or similar approved by the Engineer/Department's representative to be used:

- Propping of structure may be necessary during repair period.
- Chop around defective area removing all loose and suspect material taking care not to damage the existing reinforcing.
- Exposed reinforcing to be wire brushed clean and free of all rust and then coated with an approved single component epoxy zinc primer.
- The damaged area to be chopped rectangular in shape to expose the sound aggregate, and feathered edges to be saw-cut vertically and broken out to a minimum depth of 10 mm.
- Ensure that the cavity is clean, dry and free of any debris.
- Apply an approved epoxy resin repair compound strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- Apply an approved shrinkage compensated pre-mixed ready to use single-component polymer modified, cementitious repair mortar in strict accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

BK 03.05 EXPANSION JOINT REMEDIAL PROCEDURE

The following procedure to be used for remedial work to expansion joints.

- Remove all damaged sealant from expansion joint.
- Joint former/filler must be removed.
- Remove all loose materials mechanically to ensure a sound, clean and dry concrete surface.
- Where required, the sides of the concrete joint to be cut smooth and straight with an angle grinder or diamond saw.
- Where required, the edges of the expansion joints to be provided with a fillet. Engineer/Department's representative to determine on site.
- Install a non-bituminous, non-extruding resilient joint filler where existing joint former/filler was removed.
- Install a closed cell resilient foam cord or release film or bond breaking tape before applying sealant.
- A primer coat to be applied to all surfaces, brushed well into the faces of the joint.
- Install a single component fast curing polyurethane joint sealer strictly according to the manufacturers specifications.
- All materials to be submitted to the Engineer/Department's representative for approval prior to installation.

BK 03.06. CONCRETE CRACKS

All existing concrete to be inspected to determine the extent and damage due to cracking of concrete. The cause of cracking is to be established to determine the correct remedial action to be taken. The Engineer/Department's representative will determine the extent of repair work required, which will in most cases, require individual specifications to suit.

BK 03.06.01 Concrete crack repair procedure

(Generally used where cracking could adversely affect the structure)

The following procedure, or similar approved by the Engineer/Department's representative to be used:

- The surface over the entire length of the crack should be wire brushed to remove laitance or any other deleterious materials from the concrete.
- If the surface of the concrete is unsound, chase/grind a vee cut into the crack.
- All debris to be removed.
- Drill holes into the crack. The size, depth and centres etc. as specified for the crack injection product to be used. Blow out holes free of drill dust.

- Install injection nipples into the holes as specified. Allow for air release holes.
- Seal the face/s with an approved epoxy.
- Pump in approved epoxy liquid to suit crack size/width.
- The above repair system to be done strictly in accordance with the manufacturers specifications and requirements, and must be carried out by approved specialists or suitably trained persons.

BK 03.06.01 Concrete crack repair procedure
(Generally used for small cracks and where cracking could cause leaking through the concrete)

The following procedure, or similar approved by the Engineer/Department's representative to be used:

- The surface over the entire length of the crack should be wire brushed to remove laitance or any other deleterious materials from the concrete.
- If the surface of the concrete is unsound, chase/grind a vee cut into the crack.
- All debris to be removed.
- Inject in an approved polyurethane 1-part joint sealant to suit crack size/width. The width of the crack must be 1.25 times the depth of the crack or in accordance with the manufacturer's specification.
- The above repair system to be done strictly in accordance with the manufacturers specifications and requirements, and must be carried out by approved specialists or suitably trained persons.

BK 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

The Schedule of Quantities shows approximate quantities of work. Detailed instructions will be issued during construction.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CA ROADS

CONTENTS

CA 01	SCOPE
CA 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CA 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CA 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CA 05	MAINTENANCE
CA 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CA 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the materials, equipment, methods, testing and work required for the repair and maintenance of existing roadways, parking areas, miscellaneous areas subjected to vehicular traffic and other miscellaneous paved areas. It covers both surfaced and unsurfaced roadways and includes appurtenant works such as kerbing, road markings and road signs.

This specification shall form an integral part of the repair and maintenance contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

The Contractor shall at all times adhere to this specification, unless otherwise specified in the Particular Specification.

CA 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CA 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	- Specification of Materials and Methods to be used, edition, Aug 2014 and Dec 2015 respectively
SANS 1200 D	- Earthworks
SANS 1200 DM	- Earthworks (roads, subgrade)
SANS 1200 M	- Roads (general)
SANS 1200 ME	- Subbase
SANS 1200 MF	- Base
SANS 1200 MG	- Bituminous surface treatment
SANS 1200 MH	- Asphalt base and surfacing
SANS 1200 MJ	- Segmented paving
SANS 1200 MK	- Kerbing and channelling

SANS 1200 MM - Ancillary roadworks
COLTO Standard specifications for road and bridge works for state road authorities
SADC Road & Traffic Manual (latest edition)

CA 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2014 as promulgated in the Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

CA 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, applied, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CA 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CA 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CA 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

CA 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include, but not be limited to, the details specified in the Particular Specification.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of twelve (12) months from date of completion of repair work.

These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repair work items for the existing roadways, parking areas, miscellaneous areas subject to vehicular traffic and other paved areas shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Repair of gravel wearing course and shoulders
- (b) Surface repairs of concrete pavements
- (c) Pavement layers and surface repairs
- (d) Surface patching of surfaced roads
- (e) Construction of thin bituminous surfacing
- (f) Repair of segmented paving
- (g) Repair of kerbing
- (h) Erection and repair of road traffic signs
- (i) Road markings
- (j) Chemical control of vegetation and eradication of undesirable vegetation.

CA 04.02 REPAIR OF GRAVEL WEARING COURSE AND SHOULDERS

This section covers the reprocessing or replacement of an existing gravel wearing course or road shoulder over part of or over the full road width or parking area.

CA 04.02.01 Construction

The Engineer will demarcate any areas to be repaired, and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

The reshaped wearing course shall be constructed true to line, level and cross-section as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

The reshaping process shall in general be carried out using the existing wearing course. This material shall be graded to form the correct road profile. If necessary, the Engineer shall instruct the Contractor to rip, redistribute and recompact the wearing course in order to achieve the correct road profile.

Unsuitable or excess material from the road prism shall be removed from the site to spoil. Any shortfall in material shall be made up by importing suitable material.

Material which is ripped or imported shall be placed, watered, mixed and compacted to a minimum of 93% of modified AASHTO density.

The Contractor's attention is specifically drawn to the requirement that only material approved by the Engineer may be imported.

During the reshaping process, the roadside drains and cut and fill slopes shall be trimmed and finished true to line, level and cross-section. No additional payment will be made for trimming and finishing of cut and fill slopes.

CA 04.02.02 Quality standard

The gravel wearing course shall be constructed true to line, level and cross-section as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

CA 04.02.03 Materials

The materials shall comply with SANS 1200 ME and the additional requirements detailed below:

Additional material requirements for wearing course - natural gravel

Maximum size	37,5 mm
Oversize index (I_o) ^a	$\leq 5\%$
Shrinkage product (S_p) ^b	100 - 365 (maximum of 240 preferable)
Grading coefficient (G_c) ^c	16 – 34
CBR: $\geq 35 \geq$ at 95 per cent modified AASHTO compaction and OMC ^d	

- a) I_o = Oversize index (percentage retained on 37,5 mm sieve)
- b) S_p = Linear shrinkage x percentage passing 0,425 mm sieve
- c) G_c = (Percentage passing 26,5 mm - percentage passing 2,0 mm) x percentage passing 4,75 mm/100
- d) Tested immediately after compaction

CA 04.03 SURFACE REPAIRS OF CONCRETE PAVEMENTS

This section covers the repair of spalled concrete at joints, the forming and sealing of new joints and the sealing or resealing of existing joints and random cracks in existing concrete pavements, and the patching of existing concrete.

Repairs to concrete are regarded as specialist work and shall be undertaken by approved subcontractors with relevant experience.

CA 04.03.01 Construction

Patching, resealing of joints and sealing of cracks in concrete pavements shall be done at the positions indicated by the Engineer.

(a) Resealing of joints and cracks

(i) Preparation of joints for resealing

The old deteriorated sealant in the top of the joint to be resealed shall be cut or scraped loose from each joint face with equipment that will not damage joint edges or the concrete surface. Care shall be taken not to damage, spall or bevel the joint edges.

The joints shall be initially cleaned to the full depth of the old sealant plus its backing material, as well as of all foreign material in the joints.

A vacuum process, and not compressed air, shall be used to remove all loosened material from the joints. The Contractor shall continuously remove debris from the road surface and keep the surface clean. After the removal of the old material has been completed, refacing of the joint planes shall be done with an abrasive wheel or a power-driven concrete saw to widen each face of the sealant reservoir portion of the joint by a minimum of 2,0 mm and a maximum of 5,0 mm. No sealant may be applied to other than freshly cut concrete faces. The freshly cut concrete faces shall be degreased to such extent that adhesion of the sealant to the concrete in every respect satisfies the sealant manufacturer's guarantee.

Immediately after the sawing operation, the joint grooves shall be thoroughly vacuumed and washed out with a jet of clean water to remove all remaining loose material resulting from the sawing operation. Any slurry resulting from the wet sawing shall be removed from the road surface.

Sweeping up old joint material and other debris with hand brooms shall be a continuous process during joint preparation. The joints shall be finally cleaned again prior to resealing, but in no case shall the cleaning precede the sealant by more than 30 m of joint length.

(ii) Preparation of cracks for sealing:

Sealing shall be considered only for cracks that are open wide enough to permit entry of joint sealant or mechanical routing tools. The decision of whether a crack is to be sealed or not shall rest with the Engineer. Sealant in previously sealed cracks shall be removed as described in subclause CA 04.03.01(a)(i) above.

A groove of at least 12 mm wide by 18 mm deep shall be made along the crack with a machine capable of closely following the path of the crack without causing excessive spalling or other damage to the adjacent concrete. Cleaning of the cracks after the grooving operation shall be done as described in subclause CA 04.03.01(a)(i) above.

(b) Patching of concrete

Patching of concrete shall be done where indicated by the Engineer.

Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer, the patching shall have a neat rectangular shape with sides parallel to existing joints. The concrete within the area to be patched shall be broken up and removed to its full depth. The vertical face of the existing concrete adjacent to the patch shall be planed with an abrasive wheel or power-driven concrete saw, if necessary, to provide a smooth face.

Immediately prior to the placing of new concrete, the surface of the underlying pavement layer shall be compacted with either hand or mechanical equipment, depending on the space available, to ensure a firm foundation surface.

An isolation joint shall be constructed between all interfaces of existing and new concrete. The isolation joint shall consist of a joint filler, a bond breaking strip and a polysulphide sealant. The isolation joint shall only be sealed between 21 and 28 days after the casting of the concrete, at which time the uppermost portion of the joint filler shall be raked out, the bond breaking strip inserted and the polysulphide sealant applied.

As the patching of concrete will generally occur in trafficked areas, the Contractor shall allow fully in the relevant rates for accommodation of traffic to enable safe construction conditions. No additional payment will be made over and above the tendered rates for the work.

No traffic shall be allowed over concrete patches for a period of seven (7) days after casting.

CA 04.03.02 Materials

(a) Polysulphide sealant

The polysulphide sealant shall be a two-component material that complies with the requirements of SANS 110.

(b) Additional materials for polysulphide sealant

The sealant shall be supported by a bond breaker backing strip, and, unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer, the faces of the joint groove shall first be treated with a primer.

Supporting and priming materials shall be compatible with adjacent materials or surfaces in contact with the materials and shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and subject to approval by the Engineer.

Primers, bond breakers and back-up material shall comply with instructions and recommendations issued by the manufacturer of the approved liquid sealant used.

CA 04.03.03 Quality standard

Surface repairs shall be executed and finished strictly in accordance with the prescribed requirements.

Repair work shall be carried out in such a manner as to blend in colour, texture and finish with adjacent concrete surfaces as far as possible.

CA 04.04 PAVEMENT LAYERS AND SURFACE REPAIRS

CA 04.04.01 General

This section covers the work in connection with the repair of localised failures of the pavement layers.

The work comprises excavating the deformed areas and reconstructing the pavement and surfacing layers, including treatment of the floor of the excavation prior to backfilling.

CA 04.04.02 Execution of work

(a) Removal of distressed pavement layers

The Engineer will demarcate any failed areas to be repaired, and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done. The Contractor shall provide assistance and temporary traffic control facilities for marking out failed sections of the road.

Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer, the patching shall have a neat rectangular shape, at right angles to the direction of traffic. The existing material shall be excavated and removed to the specified depth. Asphalt layers and surfacing shall be cut with approved cutting equipment.

Excavation for patching shall be cut with sideslopes of approximately 60° to the horizontal.

Excavated material from each pavement layer shall be placed in separate stockpiles adjacent to the patch. The stockpiled material shall be reused or removed from the site in accordance with the Engineer's instructions.

After completion of the excavation to the specified depth, the Engineer shall be afforded the opportunity to examine the excavation. Where required, the floor of the excavation shall be compacted to the specified density for the layer concerned. These densities as percentages of modified AASHTO density are as follows:

Subbase	(150 - 300 mm below final base course level)	95%
Selected	(300 - 600 mm below final base course level)	93%
Fill	(Lower than 600 mm below final base course level)	90%

Materials excavated from the various pavement layers shall not be contaminated if the reuse of excavated material for backfilling is instructed by the Engineer.

Excavated material shall be removed from the site, unless re-use of material is instructed by the Engineer. Under no circumstances shall excess material be dumped in side drains or side banks.

(b) Backfilling

Prior to backfilling, the base and sides of the excavation shall be cleaned of all loose material. The top 150 mm of all excavations shall be regarded as base and all other backfill up to 500 mm below the final road level shall be regarded as subbase. Deeper excavations shall be backfilled with approved gravel to a density of 90% modified AASHTO density.

Backfilling of the excavation shall be done as follows:

- (i) The Engineer may instruct the Contractor to use cement-stabilized material excavated from the existing pavement as backfilling, either for subbase layers only or for both subbase and base course layers.

Material shall be broken down and 60 kg/m³ of Portland composite cement (Cem II:32,5) shall be added. Water shall be uniformly mixed into the material. The material shall then be returned to the road and compacted to at least 95% of modified AASHTO density for the subbase layers and to 97% of modified AASHTO density for the base layers.

- (ii) Where required by the Engineer, backfilling for the base course layer shall be done with imported material of G3 or better quality, treated with bitumen emulsion. Portland composite cement (Cem II:32,5) shall be added at a rate of 25 kg/m³ and mixed off the road by means of a concrete mixer or hand labour if approved by the Engineer. All mixing shall result in a homogenous mixture of additives and parent material which is to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Thereafter the material shall be treated with a 60% anionic stable-grade bitumen emulsion diluted with five parts water to one part emulsion and added at a rate of 70 litres/m³ of crushed stone. All mixing shall result in a homogeneous mixture of additives and parent material which is to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

The mixed material shall then be transported to the excavated area, placed and compacted, all within five hours of the commencement of the mixing process. Thereafter 0,6 litres/m² of the diluted 60% bitumen emulsion shall be applied to the base or layer to ensure a sealed surface.

The density of the backfilling of the base layer shall be at least 100% of modified AASHTO density.

- (iii) Where required by the Engineer the backfilling of the base layer shall be done with continuously graded asphalt base compacted to at least 94% of Marshall density.

The excavated areas shall be tacked at a spray rate of 0,40 litre/m² using 60% cationic emulsion. The asphalt base material shall be spread and compacted so that the final surface is neat and uniform.

- (iv) All the backfilling shall be completed in geometric patterns of squares or rectangles and in each case it shall be finished off neatly to 40 mm \pm 10 mm below the levels of the surrounding sound road surface.

(c) Surfacing

A tack coat of 60% cationic bitumen emulsion shall be applied to the floor at top of base layer level at a rate of 0,55 litre/m² before backfilling is commenced or as otherwise instructed by the Engineer.

A layer of hot continuously graded medium asphalt shall be applied, compacted to 94% of Marshall density to bring the level of the patch up to final road level.

(d) Alternatives for application of surfacing layer for limited localised repair work

- (i) Where instructed by the Engineer, a cold premixed bituminous mixture may be used for application of the surfacing layer for minor repair works. The mixture shall either be an approved cold mix from commercial sources, or can be prepared and mixed in a suitable concrete or other type of mixer, and shall have the following mix proportions:
 - (i) 9,5 mm nominal sized aggregate: 1 part
 - (ii) 6,7 mm nominal sized aggregate: 1 part
 - (iii) Crusher sand (fine grade): 1 part
 - (iv) 60% stable mix-grade emulsion (prepared from 80/100 penetration grade: between 75 and 90 litre/m³ aggregate mix bitumen).

Before spreading the mixture, the surface shall be prepared by painting it with one layer of bituminous emulsion at a rate of 0,6 litre/m², which must be allowed to dry. The mixture shall then be placed on the areas to be sealed and screeded off in a layer of uniform thickness.

After the emulsion has broken and the layer has attained sufficient stability, it shall be rolled with a small steel-wheeled roller to obtain compaction. The thickness of the layer shall be the same as that of the adjacent seal.

- (ii) Where instructed by the engineer, a commercially available pre-fabricated stone seal with a bitumen rubber binder may be used as final surfacing on minor repair works. The material shall consist of precoated stone chippings of the nominal size as directed by the engineer, held together by a layer of bitumen rubber binder on a workable surface, e.g. treated paper.

Backfilling of the underlying layer works shall be as described in CA 04.05.02 and the top of the base shall be repaired to such a level that the road surface shall be flush with the surrounding surface after repairs have been completed. The top of the base shall be prepared by painting it with one layer of bituminous emulsion at a rate of 0,6 litre/m², which must be allowed to dry (or alternatively according to the supplier's prescriptions).

The surfacing material shall be handled and placed according to the supplier's prescriptions.

(e) Production limitations

As far as it is practically possible the size of the area to be repaired shall be limited to that which can be excavated, backfilled and opened to traffic within a single working day. Where this is impractical the Contractor shall consult with the Engineer regarding the signs requirements for controlling the traffic during night time. No area that is to be prepared, shall be left exposed if rain is imminent.

The asphalt base material shall be placed in layers not exceeding 80 mm and crushed stone material be placed in layers not exceeding 100 mm measured in the loose. The surfacing material shall be placed in one layer at a thickness of 40 mm \pm 10 mm.

(f) Testing

Modified AASHTO densities shall be determined using TMH1 Method A16T (Preparation of Material) and Method A7 (Compaction of Material).

CA 04.04.03 Quality standard

The repaired area shall be rectangular in shape.

The edges of the completed surfacing shall not be more than 3 mm above the existing surface. Nowhere shall the edges be below the surrounding road surface.

The thickness of the asphalt surfacing at any point shall be 40 mm \pm 10 mm.

The cross-fall of the completed area shall be equal to that of the adjacent surface to within a tolerance of \pm 0,5% cross-fall.

When tested with a 3 metre straight edge laid parallel to or at right angles to the road centre line the surface of the area shall not deviate from the bottom of the straight edge by more than 7 mm.

The reconstruction of the pavement layers shall require a standard of workmanship to produce a patch that will not deteriorate within the contract period.

CA 04.04.04 Plant and equipment

All equipment shall be suitable for the specified use and size of working areas and shall be capable of obtaining the specified results.

Only approved cutting or sawing equipment may be used for cutting or sawing asphalt layers. The equipment must be capable of cutting asphalt layers to depths of 200 mm in one operation without fragmenting the material, and in straight lines within the required tolerances.

The following items of plant and equipment shall also be available and in good working order:

- (a) A vibratory roller having a mass approximately equal to that of a Bomag 90 or similar vibratory roller, with an adjustable amplitude and frequency of vibration
- (b) A mobile compressor capable of producing at least 3 m³/minute compressed air at 750 kPa
- (c) Appropriate paving breakers
- (d) Manually-operated pneumatic compactors as required, and
- (e) Appropriate concrete mixers.

CA 04.04.05 Materials

- (a) Crushed stone

Crushed stone for use as backfill in patches shall be of G3 or better quality, from an approved commercial source, and shall comply with SANS 1083 in general and the following in particular:

- (i) Plasticity index (maximum) = 6
- (ii) Maximum flakiness index of the -26,5 mm, + 13,2 mm material = 35
- (iii) Maximum aggregate crushing value = 29
- (iv) The grading shall comply with the following grading envelope:

<u>Sieve size</u>	<u>Percentage passing (mass)</u>
37,50	100
26,50	100
19,00	85 - 95
13,20	71 - 84
4,750	42 - 60
2,000	27 - 45
0,425	13 - 27
0,075	5 - 12

(b) Stabilising agent

The stabilising agent shall be Portland composite cement (Cem II:32,5) or Portland blast furnace cement (PBFC complying with SANS 626) and shall comply with requirements of category ENV 197-1.

(c) Hot-mix asphalt base and surfacing mix requirements

The mix shall be a continuously graded asphalt and shall have the properties specified in table CA 04.04.05/1 below:

TABLE CA 04.04.05/1: PROPERTIES FOR CONTINUOUSLY GRADED ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACING	
PROPERTY	RANGE
Marshall stability (kN)	8 - 16
Marshall flow (mm)	2 - 4
Stability/Flow (kN/mm)	3 minimum
Static creep modulus (MPa)	60 minimum
Indirect tensile strength @ 25 °C (kPa)	1 000 minimum
Dynamic creep modulus (MPa)	16 minimum
% Air voids	3 - 6
Immersion index%	75 minimum

A 60/70 penetration grade bitumen shall be used and the binder type shall comply with the requirements of SANS 307.

Grading limits and mix proportions are given in table CA 04.04.05/2.

TABLE CA 04.04.05/2: GRADING LIMITS AND MIX PROPORTIONS FOR CONTINUOUSLY GRADED ASPHALT BASE AND SURFACINGS

PERCENTAGE PASSING THROUGH SIEVE BY MASS					
SIEVE SIZE (mm)	ASPHALT BASE		ASPHALT SURFACING		
	37,5 mm maximum	26,5 mm maximum	COARSE	MEDIUM	FINE
53,000	-	-	-	-	-
37,500	100	-	-	-	-
26,500	84 - 94	100	100	-	-
19,000	71 - 84	85 - 95	85 - 100	-	-
13,200		71 - 86	71 - 84	100	
9,500	50 - 67	62 - 78	62 - 76	82 - 100	100
6,700			-	-	-
4,750	36 - 53	42 - 60	42 - 60	54 - 75	64 - 88
2,360	25 - 42	30 - 48	30 - 48	-	-
1,180	17 - 34	22 - 38	22 - 38	27 - 42	35 - 54
0,600		16 - 28	16 - 28	18 - 32	24 - 40
0,300	10 - 22	12 - 20	12 - 20	11 - 23	16 - 28
0,150		8 - 15	8 - 15	7 - 16	10 - 20
0,075	5 - 12	5 - 10	4 - 10	4 - 10	4 - 12
NOMINAL MIX PROPORTIONS (BY MASS)					
Aggregate	94,5%		93,5%	93,0%	93,0%
Bitumen	5%		5,5%	6,0%	6,0%
Active filler	0,5%		1,0%	1,0%	1,0%

(d) Tack coat

The tack coat shall be 60% cationic emulsion complying with SANS 548.

CA 04.04.06 Variation from specified nominal rates of applications or nominal mix proportions

The various sections of these specifications specify nominal rates of applications or nominal mix proportions for materials such as bituminous materials, aggregates, fillers, stabilizing agents, paint and other relevant materials. Tenderers shall base their tenders on these nominal rates of applications and mix proportions.

Where such nominal rates of applications or mix proportions are specified, provision is made for deviations in the quantities of material in consequence of the rates of application or mix proportions prescribed by the Engineer in each particular case in consideration of the available materials and the site.

Where the actual rates of applications or mix proportions used in the works vary from the specified nominal rates and mix proportions, adjustment to compensation will be made as:

- (a) payment to the Contractor in respect of any authorised increase in quantities which exceed those specified and where such increase has been ordered in writing by the Engineer;

or

- (b) a refund to the Employer in respect of the decrease in quantities that are less than those specified, irrespective of whether such decrease results from an authorised decrease in the rates of applications or mix proportions, or from unauthorised reductions on the part of the Contractor.

Payment for a prescribed rate of application or mix proportion shall be based on the actual rate of application or mix proportion used, provided that this does not exceed the prescribed rate of application or mix proportion, plus any tolerance in the rate of application or mix proportion allowed. If the actual rate of application or mix proportion exceeds the prescribed rate or proportion, payment shall be based on the prescribed rate of application or mix proportion plus any tolerance allowed. If the actual rate of application or mix proportion is below the prescribed rate of application or mix proportion specified or instructed by the Engineer, payment shall be based on the actual rate of application or mix proportion regardless of any tolerance allowed. Notwithstanding the above, the Engineer shall be entitled to reject work which has not been constructed in accordance with the specifications or the rates of applications or mix proportions prescribed by him.

The Employer shall be refunded for any decrease in the specified rates of application or mix proportions at the same rate per unit of measurement as that tendered by the Contractor for additional materials required by an increase in the rates of applications or mix proportions.

CA 04.05 SURFACE PATCHING OF SURFACED ROADS**CA 04.05.01 General**

This section covers the repair of potholes and edge breaks that have developed in the surface of surfaced roads, where there is no evidence of base failure. Potholes are local failures covering an area of less than 1 m². The repair of larger areas will be defined as surface repair. Edge break treatment is necessary for finishing off and/or repairing the edges of the paved road, and also for repairing the edges of the road so that they line up with the true edge of the original road or with other edges as may be required. Pay items CA.04.01 and CA.04.04 shall only apply to

edge break widths of 200 mm or less. Edge breaks wider than 200 mm shall be classified as surface repair and paid for under items CA.04.02 and CA.04.03.

CA 04.05.02 Execution of work

Pothole and edge break repairs shall consist of trimming away ravelled edges and loose material to the full depth of the pothole or edge break and the backfilling thereof with asphalt.

(a) Excavation

Potholes: The existing material shall be removed in a neat rectangle to sound base, with a minimum dimension of 200 mm x 200 mm. All sides shall be at right angles or parallel to the direction of traffic. The minimum depth of excavation (layer thickness) is 30 mm and the maximum thickness of each layer shall be 50 mm.

Edge breaks: Loose and cracked edges shall be trimmed back in a neat rectangular shape as demarcated by the Engineer, parallel and at right angles to the centre line of the road to sound surrounding surfacing or base and excavated down to sound base. All edges shall be saw cut to a minimum depth of 30 mm below the road surface and the maximum thickness of each layer shall be 50 mm.

(b) Backfilling

After completion of the excavation the Engineer shall be afforded the opportunity to inspect it. The exposed layer shall be trimmed of all undulations to ensure a firm flat base and sides and shall be tacked with 60% cationic stable-grade bitumen emulsion at a rate of 0,6 litre/m². Continuously graded medium asphalt shall be placed and compacted to the level of the existing surrounding surface. The asphalt shall be placed and well compacted in layers not exceeding 40 mm after compaction. The Contractor shall use suitable compaction equipment and shall ensure that 94% of Marshall density is obtained for the mix used, to produce a dense asphalt layer.

Where the excavation ends up deeper than 100 mm below the existing surface the Engineer may order the reinstatement to be executed in accordance with Section CA 04.04: Pavement layers and surface repairs.

Where instructed by the Engineer, a cold premixed bituminous mixture shall be used for limited localised surface patching, compacted level with the surface of the existing surrounding surface.

The mixture shall either be obtained from approved commercial sources or prepared and mixed in a suitable concrete or other approved type of mixer in the following proportions:

(i) 9,5 mm nominal sized aggregate:	1 part
(ii) 6,7 mm nominal sized aggregate:	1 part
(iii) Crusher sand (fine grade):	1 part
(iv) 60% stable mix-grade emulsion (prepared from 80/100 penetration grade bitumen):	Between 75 and 90 litre/m ³ aggregate mix

Before spreading the mixture, the surface shall be prepared by painting it with one layer of bituminous emulsion at a rate of 0,6 litre/m², which shall be allowed to dry. The mixture shall then be placed on the areas to be sealed and screeded off in a layer of uniform thickness. After the emulsion has broken and the layer has attained sufficient stability, it shall be compacted with a steel wheeled roller. The thickness of the layer shall be the same as that of the adjacent seal.

CA 04.05.03 Quality standard

The repaired area shall be rectangular in shape.

The edges of the completed surfacing shall not be more than 3 mm higher than the existing surface. Nowhere shall the edges be below the surrounding road surface.

The thickness of the asphalt surfacing at any point shall be 40 mm \pm 10 mm.

The cross-fall of the completed area shall be equal to that of the adjacent surface to within a tolerance of \pm 0,5% cross-fall.

When tested with a 3 metre straight edge laid parallel to or at right angles to the road centre line the surface of the area shall not deviate from the bottom of the straight edge by more than 7 mm.

The reconstruction of the pavement layers shall require a standard of workmanship such that a patch will not deteriorate within the contract period.

CA 04.05.04

Material

(a) Tack coat

The tack coat shall be 60% cationic emulsion complying with the requirements of SANS 548 and shall be applied at a rate of 0,6 litre/m².

(b) Surfacing material

The asphalt shall be a continuously graded medium asphalt either mixed on site or obtained from commercial sources. The asphalt mix to be used shall have the mix properties as specified in table CA 04.04.05/1.

A 60/70 penetration grade bitumen shall be used and the binder type shall comply with the requirements of SANS 307.

Grading limits and mix proportions for continuously graded asphalt applying to asphalt surfacing as stated in table CA 04.04.05/2 shall apply to asphalt used for surface patching.

CA 04.06 THIN BITUMINOUS SURFACINGS - SINGLE SEAL

CA 04.06.01 General

This section covers the construction of a bituminous seal consisting of the application of a bituminous tack coat and the spreading and rolling of aggregate as specified, including the required preparation of the existing road surface.

The information contained in this section deals with matters relating to COLTO Section 4300 : Seals : Materials and general requirements, and Section 4400 : Single seals. This section also

contains information relevant to where reference is made in the relevant sections of the COLTO specifications to the project specifications, i.e. where a choice of materials or application rates are allowed. Also included in this section are additional requirements applicable to this contract.

The nominal rates of application are for tendering purposes only and will not necessarily be used in construction. The actual rates of application to be used on the site shall in all cases be as instructed by the engineer.

CA 04.06.02 Materials (COLTO B4302)

(a) Bituminous binders

The binder used in the construction of the single seal under this contract shall be a conventional 80/100 penetration grade bitumen complying with SANS 307.

The binder used in the application of a diluted bitumen emulsion shall be an anionic spray grade bitumen emulsion containing 30% by mass of bitumen.

The binder used in the texture correction slurry shall be an anionic stable grade bitumen emulsion containing 60% by mass of bitumen.

(b) Aggregates for seals

The aggregate used for construction of the single stone seal shall be a 9,5 mm nominal size (Grade 1).

CA 04.06.03 Rates of application (COLTO 4308)

(a) Tack coat

The nominal rate of application of the conventional bitumen as tack coat for the single seal shall be taken as 1,0 l/m² for tendering purposes.

(b) Stone chips

The nominal rate of application of the 9,5 mm stone chips shall be 140 m²/m³ for tendering purposes.

(c) Texture correction slurry

The application of the texture correction slurry shall be taken as 500 m²/m³ for tendering purposes.

(d) Diluted bitumen emulsion

The nominal rate of application of the diluted bitumen emulsion shall be taken as 0,6 l/m² for tendering purposes.

CA 04.06.04 Precoating of aggregate (COLTO 4403)

All chippings used in the construction of single seals shall be precoated with an approved bitumen-based precoating fluid. The precoating shall be executed as described in clause 4302(d) of the standard specifications and at the rates as specified by the supplier. Precoating of aggregate shall be undertaken adequate time ahead of sealing operations to allow the aggregates to dry out properly before application. No free precoating fluid shall be observed when the aggregate is inspected by hand.

CA 04.07 REPAIR OF SEGMENTED PAVING

This section covers the replacement of an existing area of segmented paving as well as the reprocessing and/or replacement of the underlying pavement layers.

CA 04.07.01 Construction

The Engineer will demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

The demarcated area shall be repaired true to line, level and cross-section as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

The demarcated area of damaged segmented paving shall be removed. Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer the pavement layers shall be reinstated as follows:

- (i) Selected layers shall be of at least a G5 quality and shall be compacted to at least 93% of modified AASHTO density.
- (ii) Material for the subbase layers shall be stabilized with 3% cement and compacted to 95% of modified AASHTO density, and shall be of at least a G5 quality.
- (iii) The material for the base layer shall be stabilized with 5% cement and compacted to at least 97% of modified AASHTO density, and shall be at least a G3 quality.

Pavement layers of segmented paved areas under pedestrian traffic only, shall be excavated and replaced by natural gravel compacted to 93% modified AASHTO density. Damaged concrete edge beams and intermediate beams shall be replaced with class 30 concrete edge beams and intermediate beams similar in dimension to existing undamaged edge beams and intermediate beams in accordance with the relevant SANS specifications or as directed by the Engineer. After the repair of the underlying pavement layers and when the concrete edge beams and intermediate beams have reached sufficient strength, segmented paving blocks, similar to the existing undamaged segmented paving blocks shall be replaced in accordance with the relevant SANS specifications or as directed by the Engineer.

Unsuitable or excess material shall be removed from the site or to spoil. Any shortfall in material shall be made up by importing suitable material.

The Contractor's attention is specifically drawn to the requirement that only material approved by the Engineer may be imported.

CA 04.07.02 Quality standard

The repaired segmented paving shall be constructed true to line, level and cross-section as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

CA 04.08 REPAIR OF KERBING

This section covers the patching and replacing of damaged kerbs

CA 04.08.01 Construction

Where the damage to kerbs can be repaired satisfactorily by surface patching of the kerb units, the Engineer will authorize such work to be done. The contractor shall use products and

material approved by the Engineer to repair the authorized kerbs to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Where kerbs or channel units are severely damaged or have been moved out of position, such units will be replaced with similar undamaged units. Precast units and its installation will comply with the relevant SANS specifications and cast in situ concrete work will be done in accordance with the relevant SANS specifications.

CA 04.08.02 Quality standard

The repaired kerbing shall be constructed true to line, level and cross-section as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

CA 04.09 ERECTION AND REPAIR OF ROAD TRAFFIC SIGNS AND TRAFFIC-CONTROL DEVICES

CA 04.09.01 General

This section covers the erection of permanent road traffic signs. It includes the repair and replacement of faded, damaged or not clearly visible existing signboards and reference marker boards.

Specifications relating to manufacturing of road signs are not included in this document, as relevant specifications regarding manufacturing will be issued to a nominated subcontractor who shall be a recognised manufacturer of road signs.

The signs shall be the standard regulatory, guidance, warning and information signs and fabricated in accordance with the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual (July 1993) except where otherwise specified, indicated on drawings or directed by the Engineer.

The erection and placement of any signs, whether temporary or permanent, shall be in accordance with the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual (June 1999).

CA 04.09.02 Storage and handling

All road signs or parts of road signs shall be transported, handled and stored in a weather-proof storeroom in such a manner as to prevent any damage and deformation.

Sign boards shall be stored on blocks in the vertical position so that the signs are not in contact with the ground. There shall be sufficient space between the finished road sign boards to permit free air circulation and moisture evaporation. Contact of road sign boards with treated timber and diesel, or storage where road sign boards come into contact with dirt or water will not be permitted.

When required, existing or newly erected road signs shall be fully or partially covered with burlap or other approved adequately ventilated material to obscure destinations that are temporarily inapplicable or irrelevant. The covers shall be neatly and firmly fixed in position so that they will be able to withstand strong gusts of wind or eddies caused by passing traffic. The fixing shall be done in a way that will not cause any damage to the road sign face.

CA 04.09.03 Execution of the work

(a) Position

Road signs shall be erected in the positions shown on the drawings or indicated by the Engineer.

(b) Excavation and backfilling

Excavations for the erection of road signs shall be made according to the dimensions shown on the drawings. Where the excavations are to be backfilled with soil, a 1:12 cement/soil mixture (soilcrete) shall be prepared if instructed by the Engineer. The soil or soil-cement mixture shall then be placed at optimum moisture content in 100 mm thick layers in the excavation and shall be compacted to a minimum of 90% of modified AASHTO density.

Where posts or structures are to be fixed in concrete, or where concrete footings are to be cast, the concrete, formwork and reinforcement shall comply with the relevant requirements. The holes shall be completely filled with concrete up to the level shown on the drawings or indicated by the Engineer. The upper surface of the concrete shall be neatly finished with sufficient fall to ensure proper drainage.

This subclause shall apply to ground-mounted signs only. Excavating and backfilling for the foundations of overhead steel structures are specified and regarded as specialised structural work.

Excavation in rock shall be paid for under item CA.07.05.

Where material from the excavations is not suitable for backfilling or for the preparation of soilcrete, suitable material shall be obtained as instructed by the Engineer.

(c) Erection

Road sign boards must be inspected by the Engineer and approved in writing before the boards are taken from the camp site to the erection site. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer at least one (1) week before the said inspections are required.

Road signs shall be erected strictly in accordance with the details and instructions on the drawings and as directed by the Engineer.

During erection the structural steelwork shall be firmly bolted and protected to prevent buckling or damage being caused during erection, or by the equipment used for erection.

Posts to which road signs are to be fixed shall be vertical and the undersides of road signs shall be horizontal after having been erected.

Where timber posts are used for erecting the signs, all holes that are drilled in the timber shall be retreated with the approved preservative. A road sign identification number (as indicated on the layout drawings) shall be painted with white enamel paint on the reverse side of the road sign board, above the month and year of manufacture, in 50 mm high letters and numbers on the side closest to the road shoulder as directed by the Engineer.

Any sign damaged during transit to the erection site or during the erection process shall be replaced or repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer at no extra cost to the Employer.

(d) Field welding

All welding done during erection shall comply with the requirements for welding during manufacture.

(e) On-site painting

All painting done after the road signs have been erected shall comply with the requirements for painting during manufacture.

All places where the paintwork has been damaged during erection shall be repaired by the Contractor at his own cost to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

(f) Time of erection

Road signs shall be erected immediately prior to the road being opened to public traffic, unless otherwise decided by the Engineer.

(g) Attachment of overlays

The type of overlay to be used will be specified by the Engineer and will consist either of 1 mm thick Chromadek plate, "pop-riveted" onto the existing sign plate, or System 5 overlay or similar approved.

Before the application of the overlay to any structure, the existing sign board shall be thoroughly cleaned.

(h) Repair of signs

The Engineer may require that certain existing signs be dismantled for repair work or storage and later re-erected. The signs shall be repainted or repaired by replacing the 200 mm profiles or straightening the sheet metal as specified during the manufacturing process. New materials shall be used for part or all of the supporting structure. This work shall be done with as little damage as possible to the signs.

CA 04.09.04 Materials

(a) Timber posts for road sign supports

Timber posts for road sign supports shall conform to the requirements of SANS 754, shall be equal to or better than strength group B timber posts and shall be stamped with the SANS mark. The exposed surface of the cut shall be given two coats of creosote. Any holes drilled in the timber posts after treatment with creosote shall be retreated.

(b) Corrosion-protection tape

Corrosion-protection tape used between aluminium and steel shall be black PVC tape not less than 0,25 mm in thickness, shall be resistant to ultra-violet rays, and shall have an adhesive backing. The breaking strength of the material shall be not less than 3,5 kN/m.

CA 04.09.05 Protection and maintenance

The Contractor shall protect the completed road signs against damage until they have been finally accepted by the Employer, and he shall maintain the road signs until the maintenance certificate has been issued. Damage or defects caused by negligence or faulty workmanship shall be rectified by the Contractor at his own cost to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

CA 04.09.06 Dismantling, storing and re-erecting existing road signs

Where instructed by the Engineer, the Contractor shall dismantle existing road signs, store them, and re-erect them at new positions indicated. This work shall be done taking care to cause as little damage as possible to the signs.

The method applied for dismantling the existing signs and transporting and storing the signs shall be subject to the Engineer's approval. No additional payment shall be made for any equipment or handling methods necessary to prevent damage to existing signs which are suitable for re-use, as instructed by the Engineer.

Where required by the Engineer, the signs shall be repainted or repaired and new materials shall be used for part or all of the supporting structure.

CA 04.10 ROAD MARKINGS**CA 04.10.01 General**

This section covers the permanent marking and maintenance of white, yellow or red painted lines or symbols on the road surface by specialist contractors.

CA 04.10.02 Materials**(a) Plant****(i) Road-marking paint**

Road-marking paint shall comply with the requirements of SANS 731 for type 1, type 2 or type 4 paint.

The paint shall be delivered at the site in sealed containers bearing the name of the manufacturer and the type of paint. Marking shall be in accordance with SANS 731.

The viscosity of the paint shall be such that it can be applied without being thinned down.

(ii) Retro-reflective road-marking paint

Retro-reflective road-marking paint shall comply with the requirements of CKS 192 and SANS 731.

(iii) Colour

The colours to be used shall be bright white, yellow or red.

The colour of the yellow and red paint shall be as specified in SANS 731.

(iv) Retro-reflective beads

The retro-reflective beads shall be glass beads that comply with the requirements for glass beads specified in CKS 192.

The beads shall be delivered at the site in sealed bags, marked with the name of the manufacturer, the batch number and an inspection seal of the South African Bureau of Standards (SANS), confirming that the beads form

part of a lot that has been tested by the SANS and complies with the requirements of CKS 192. If not, the Contractor shall at all times have an SANS certificate on the site, with details of the batches that make up a lot that has been tested by the SANS, complies with CKS 192 and to which the inspection seal applies.

CA 04.10.03 Weather limitations

Road-marking paint shall not be applied to a damp surface or at temperatures lower than 10 °C, or when, in the opinion of the Engineer, the wind strength is such that it may adversely affect the painting operations.

No road-marking paint may be applied when visibility is dangerously impeded by mist, smoke or smog.

CA 04.10.04 Mechanical equipment for painting

The equipment shall consist of an apparatus for cleaning the surfaces, a mechanical road-painting machine and all additional hand-operated equipment necessary for completing the work. The mechanical road-marking machine shall be capable of painting at least two lines simultaneously and shall apply the paint to a uniform film thickness at the rates of application specified hereinafter. The machine shall be so designed that it will be capable of painting the road markings everywhere to a uniform width with sides within the tolerances specified hereinafter, without the paint running or splashing. The machine shall further be capable of painting lines of different widths by adjusting the spray jets on the machine or by means of additional equipment attached to the machine.

The machine shall be provided with clearly visible amber warning flashing lights which shall always be in operation when the machine is on the road.

CA 04.10.05 Surface preparation

Road markings shall be applied to bituminous surfaces only after sufficient time has elapsed to ensure that damage will not be caused to the painted surface by volatiles evaporating from the seal. After completion of the seal no less than two weeks or such longer period as may be directed by the Engineer shall elapse before any road markings shall be applied. However, the Engineer may, in certain cases, require road markings to be painted without waiting for the seal to harden, in which case it shall be done as soon as possible after the instruction has been given.

Before the paint is applied, the surface shall be clean and dry and completely free from any soil, grease, oil, acid or any other material that will be detrimental to the bond between the paint and the surface. The surface where the paint is to be applied shall be properly cleaned by means of watering, brooming or compressed air if required.

Particular care shall be taken to ensure that the surface shall be clean, where roadstuds are to be fixed.

The Contractor shall take note of conditions which he is unable to rectify by himself and may affect the durability of the paint, and he shall point out these conditions to the Engineer in writing. Disputes arising from such conditions shall be referred to the relevant Regional Engineer for arbitration before road marking commences.

The Contractor shall protect the retro-reflective surfaces of roadstuds when paint is applied and remove the protection immediately after the paint has been applied.

On concrete and bituminous surfaces where polished aggregate is exposed, a tack coat shall be used. On new concrete surfaces any laitance and/or curing compound shall be removed before the markings are applied.

The material shall not be laid over loose debris, mud or similar extraneous matter or over old flaking markings of paint or thermoplastic material. If the road surface is at a temperature of less than 5 °C, or if it is wet, it shall be warmed carefully by a road heater so that, when the material is laid, the surface temperature is above 5 °C and the surface dry.

CA 04.10.06 Setting out the road markings

The lines, symbols, figures or marks shall be premarked by means of paint spots of the same colour as that of the final lines and marks. These paint spots shall be at such intervals as will ensure that the traffic-markings can be accurately applied, and in no case shall they be more than 1,5 m apart. Normally spots of approximately 10 mm in diameter should be sufficient.

The dimensions and positions of road-markings shall be as indicated by the Engineer, specified in the appropriate statutory provisions and the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual.

The repainting of a roadway after the application of a fogspray shall only be done once if it is possible to determine the beginning and positions of individual broken line segments. Premarking of such a roadway shall entail the searching for and marking of such broken line segments. Painting shall thereafter be done to the same tolerances as prescribed in CA 04.10.10.

After spotting, the positions of the proposed road markings such as broken lines and the starting and finishing points of barrier lines shall be indicated on the road. These premarkings shall be approved by the Engineer prior to commencement of any painting operations.

The position and outlines of special markings shall be produced on the finished road in chalk and shall be approved by the Engineer before the markings are painted. Approved templates may be used on condition that the positioning of the marking is approved by the Engineer before painting is commenced.

The positions for the beginning and end of all barrier-line road-markings must be suitably indicated by the Engineer before the marking of the road commences.

CA 04.10.07 Applying the paint

The figures, letters, signs, symbols, broken or unbroken lines or other marks shall be painted as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

Where the paint is applied by machine, it shall be applied in one layer. Before the road-marking machine is used on the permanent works, the satisfactory operation of the machine shall be demonstrated on a suitable site which is not part of the permanent works. Adjustments to the machine shall be followed by further testing. Only when the machine has been correctly adjusted and its use has been approved by the Engineer after testing, may the machine be used on the permanent work. The operator shall be experienced in the use of the machine.

After the machine has been satisfactorily adjusted, the rate of application shall be checked and adjusted if necessary before application on a large scale is commenced.

Where two or three lines are required next to each other, the lines shall be applied simultaneously by the same machine. The paint shall be stirred before application in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Paint shall be applied without the addition of thinners.

Where, under special circumstances, painting is done by hand, it shall be applied in two layers, and the second layer shall not be applied before the first layer has dried out sufficiently. As most road-marking paint reacts with the bitumen surface of the road, the paint shall be applied with one stroke only of the brush or roller.

Ordinary road-marking paint shall be applied at a rate not less than 0,42 litre/m².

Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer, the road-marking shall be completed before a particular section of the road is opened to traffic. Each layer of paint shall be continuous over the entire area being painted.

Control sheets with details of the order number, work dates, quantities of paint used and surface areas painted shall be completed by the Contractor for every section of road included in an order. One set of copies of these sheets shall be handed to the Engineer on completion of every individual order.

CA 04.10.09 Applying the retro-reflective beads

Where retro-reflective paint is required, the retro-reflective beads shall be applied by means of a suitable machine in one continuous operation, immediately after the paint has been applied. The rate of application of the beads shall be at least 0,8 kg/litre of paint or such other rate as may be directed by the Engineer. Machines that apply the beads by means of gravity only shall not be used. The beads shall be sprayed onto the paint layer by means of a pressure sprayer.

If specified or instructed by the Engineer, additional surface reflectorization of plastic road-markings shall be applied at a rate and according to the methods specified in BS 3262, 1987, part 3.

CA 04.10.10 Tolerances

Road-markings shall be constructed to an accuracy within the tolerances given below:

(a) Width

The width of lines and other markings shall not be less than the specified width, nor shall it exceed the specified width by more than 10 mm.

(b) Position

The position of lines, letters, figures, arrows, retro-reflective roadstuds and other markings shall not deviate from the true position by more than 100 mm in the longitudinal and 20 mm in the transverse direction.

When an unbroken line and a broken line are painted alongside each other, the beginning and/or the end of the adjacent lines shall coincide.

When existing lines are repainted, the new marking shall not deviate more than 100 mm in the longitudinal direction and 10 mm in the transverse direction from the existing marking.

(c) Alignment of markings

The alignment of the edges of longitudinal lines shall not deviate from the true alignment by more than 10 mm in 15 m.

(d) Broken lines

The length of segments of broken longitudinal lines shall not be shorter than the specified length or deviate by more than 150 mm from the specified length.

CA 04.10.11 General

In broken lines the length of segments and the gap between segments shall be as indicated on the drawings. If these lengths are altered by the Engineer, the ratio of the lengths of the painted section to the length of the gap between painted sections shall remain the same.

Lines on curves, whether broken or unbroken, shall not consist of chords but shall follow the correct radius.

The Contractor shall provide temporary traffic control facilities at his own cost in accordance with specifications to ensure traffic safety where work is being executed.

Property and/or road signs damaged by the Contractor, his personnel or his agents shall be repaired or restored at his own cost to their condition as before the damage.

Only materials intended for use on this Contract may be stored on the site.

CA 04.10.12 Faulty workmanship or materials

If any material that does not comply with the requirements is delivered to the site, or is used in the works, or if any work of an unacceptable quality is carried out, such material or work shall be removed, replaced or repaired as required by the Engineer at the Contractor's own cost.

While work is in progress, tests shall be carried out on materials and/or the quality of work to ensure compliance with the specified requirements. The sampling methods are specified under the appropriate sampling and testing methods. The sampling methods described in TMH5 shall be followed where applicable. (TMH5 is published for the Committee of State Road Authorities by the National Institute for Transport and Road Research - presently the Division of Road and Transport Technology - as part of the series Technical Methods for Highways.)

CA 04.10.13 Protection

After the paint has been applied, the road markings shall be protected against damage by traffic or other causes. The Contractor shall be responsible for erecting, placing and removing all warning boards, flags, cones, barricades and other protective measures that may be necessary in terms of any statutory provisions and/or as may be recommended in the South African Road Traffic Signs Manual and specified in Road Note 13.

CA 04.11 CHEMICAL CONTROL OF VEGETATION AND ERADICATION OF UNDESIRABLE VEGETATION**CA 04.11.01 General**

This section covers the eradication of declared and undesirable vegetation, as well as the chemical control of vegetation growth through the application of herbicide.

CA 04.11.02 Execution of work

The eradication of undesired vegetation and chemical control of vegetation growth shall be executed where directed by the written instruction of the Engineer.

Herbicide shall normally only be applied in the spring or summer during the period when the vegetation to be killed is growing strongly.

The Contractor's attention is drawn to the requirement that herbicides may only be applied by duly registered, competent contractors in possession of an AVCASA certificate. Proof of such registration shall be furnished on demand to the Engineer.

The Contractor shall ensure that no damage is caused to other plants inside or adjacent to the treated areas as a consequence of the application of herbicides.

Application shall not be carried out in high winds or wet weather.

The following herbicides may not be used:

- Agents of an explosive, flammable, volatile or corrosive nature
- Sodium chlorate
- Volatile low hormone type herbicides
- Agents which are not registered in the Republic of South Africa.

The Contractor shall state the brand name of the herbicide on which the tendered rate is based, which shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer, prior to the application thereof.

The agent shall be guaranteed to kill at least 90% of the unwanted growth with one application and shall have a residual effect which controls the growth of such vegetation effectively for one growing season.

The herbicide should be strictly applied at the rate recommended by the manufacturer.

(a) Chemical control of vegetation growth

The type of herbicide to be used, the correct spray rate, the method of application and when applied, shall be as specified in the Particular Specifications.

(b) The eradication of weeds

The eradication of declared and undesirable vegetation shall take place during the contract period and may include localised patches of noxious weeds, invader plants and other undesired vegetation.

Subject to the Engineer's approval, certain aspects, such as the treatment of the stumps of felled trees, may be carried out by the Contractor.

The Contractor shall ensure that no damage whatsoever is caused to any plants inside or adjacent to the areas treated as a consequence of the application of the herbicides, either during or after application. This also includes areas outside the road reserve.

The type of weedkiller to be used, the correct application rates and when applied, shall be as specified and according to the manufacturer's instructions.

CA 04.11.03 Quality standard

Eradication of undesired vegetation shall be carried out as specified and to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The herbicide shall be applied at the correct rate to prevent regrowth and the application confined to the undesired vegetation.

Areas shall be left neat and tidy and all vegetation cuttings removed where instructed.

CA 04.11.04 Plant and equipment

Vegetation shall be eradicated using knapsacks or portable weedspray machines.

It is important that the equipment be in good working condition. The equipment shall distribute the herbicide evenly without spilling. The nozzle shall be able to move close to the ground in order to prevent mist spray blowing away and killing plants which have to remain. The equipment shall also be safe for the workers, as well as for the travelling public.

CA 05 MAINTENANCE

This specification must be read in conjunction with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All components of the roadway infrastructure, which includes the road surface, underlying layer works, kerbing, road markings, road signs, sidewalks and gravel shoulders, shall be maintained during the Contract.

The scope of the maintenance work for the road infrastructure includes the following:

- (i) Maintenance of approximately 3200 m² of concrete block paving in roadways.

This description of the road and paved areas to be maintained is not necessarily complete and shall not limit the maintenance work to be carried out by the Contractor under this contract.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing of defects, or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete and safe functioning of the road infrastructure.

Maintenance of the road infrastructure shall also include all other actions related to maintenance, such as temporary accommodation of traffic through and around work areas, and provision of temporary accesses to properties.

Remuneration for maintenance of the complete roadway infrastructure shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for maintenance thereof, and shall be paid as detailed in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

CA 05.01 ROAD INFRASTRUCTURE

Routine maintenance on the road infrastructure shall be carried out as described in table CA 05.01/1.

TABLE CA 05.01/1

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete installation	Monthly
1	Broom, clean and inspect for pavement failures	Monthly
2	Check, inspect, repair all surface and kerb failures	Two monthly
3	Check, inspect, repair all pavement failures	Six-monthly
4	Blade all gravel roads and parking areas	Six-monthly
5	Inspect and repair gravel shoulders	Six monthly
6	Check, inspect, repair, replace road signs	Six monthly
7	Check, inspect, repair, repaint, replace road markings	Annually
8	Remove loose material from the surface of parking areas by means of mechanical brooming	Six monthly
9	Remove loose material from the road surfaces of by means of mechanical brooming	Six monthly

CA 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**CA.01 REPAIR OF GRAVEL WEARING COURSE AND GRAVEL SHOULDERS****CA.01.01 Reshaping the wearing course by:**

- (a) Grading only Unit: square metre (m²)
- (b) Ripping, redistributing and compacting Unit: square metre (m²)
- (c) Importing, placing and compacting material from commercial sources Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement for CA.01.01 (a) and (b) shall be the square metre surface area graded or ripped and recompact to a depth of 150 mm, as instructed by the Engineer.

The unit of measurement for CA.01.01 (c) shall be the cubic metre of compacted material imported from commercial sources as instructed by the Engineer and measured in place.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for providing all plant, labour, equipment and materials required and for reshaping and/or constructing the wearing course as instructed by the Engineer. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the cost of testing to ensure the finished wearing course complies with the specified requirements, and for disposing of surplus material.

CA.01.02 Gravel shoulders constructed from gravel taken from cut or borrow, including free-haul up to 1,0 km:

- (a) Compacted to 93% of modified AASHTO density
 (150 mm compacted layer thickness)..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of compacted material and the quantity shall be calculated from the authorized dimensions of the completed layer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, as if from soft excavation or pits, breaking down, placing and compacting the material, including transporting the material for a distance of 1,0 km and its removal, disposal and transporting for a distance of 1,0 km, of up to 5% by volume of oversize material, and the protection and maintenance of the layer and the conducting of control tests, all as specified.

CA.01.03 Overhaul on surplus material Unit: cubic metre kilometre (m³.km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material hauled in excess of 1,0 km, the volume determined from the rated capacity of the truck multiplied by the overhaul distance. All trucks shall be fully loaded to their rated capacity.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material in excess of the free-haul distance.

CA.02 SURFACE REPAIRS OF CONCRETE PAVEMENTS

CA.02.01 Preparation and sealing or resealing of old joints and cracks in existing concrete pavements:

- (a) Expansion joints Unit: metre (m)
- (b) Construction joints and weakened plane joints:
- (i) (Width stated) Unit: metre (m)
- (ii) Etc. for other widths Unit: metre (m)
- (c) Cracks:
- (i) (Width stated) Unit: metre (m)
- (ii) Etc. for other widths Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of joint or crack prepared and sealed or resealed. No distinction will be made between joints or cracks through areas where the concrete has been repaired and other joints or cracks.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour plant, equipment, tools and materials, removing old sealant, backing material and any foreign material, refacing or enlarging the faces by sawing, routing of cracks to the specified dimensions, disposing of all debris, all cleaning work involved, installing back-up material where required, installing the bond breaker, applying the primer and mixing and applying the sealant, ensuring acceptable bond with existing work, and for any other operation needed to complete the work as specified and shown on the drawings.

CA.02.02 Patching of concrete:

- (a) (Thickness stated) Unit: square metre (m²)
 (b) Etc. for other thicknesses Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of new concrete installed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all the necessary labour, plant, equipment, tools and materials required for breaking out the existing concrete, disposing of the debris, saw cutting existing old concrete, compacting the exposed pavement layer, supplying, placing and finishing off the new concrete, texturing and curing, and constructing isolation joints. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for providing adequate accommodation of traffic where necessary.

CA.03 PAVEMENT LAYERS AND ASPHALT SURFACE REPAIR**CA.03.01 Excavation in existing pavements for patching Unit: cubic metre (m³)**

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated from the existing pavement irrespective of the type of material. The quantity shall be computed in accordance with the authorised dimensions of the excavation.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for demarcating the excavation and excavating and disposing and/or stockpiling of the material, including haul over a free-haul distance of 1,0 km.

Payment will not distinguish between the different types of pavement material excavated.

CA.03.02 Backfilling of excavations for patching with:

- (a) Cement-stabilized gravel excavated from the existing pavement:
- (i) Areas up to and including 10 m² Unit: cubic metre (m³)
 - (ii) Areas larger than 10 m² up to and including 50 m² Unit: cubic metre (m³)
 - (iii) Areas larger than 50 m² Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of chemically stabilized gravel placed in accordance with the specified requirements. The quantity will be computed in accordance with the authorised dimensions of the layer. No payment shall be made for wasted material.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for providing all the material, irrespective of its origin, for all mixing, placing, compacting, including the floor, and finishing as specified in this section and other sections of the appropriate specifications, for all transport, work in restricted areas, and also for all machinery, equipment, labour, tack coat, supervision and other incidentals for executing the work as specified.

The tendered rates for chemically stabilized gravel shall also include full compensation for stabilizing and providing the cement.

(b) Asphalt surfacing (continuously graded medium)

Unit: ton (t)

The unit of measurement shall be the ton of asphalt placed in accordance with the specified requirements. The quantity shall be computed in accordance with the certified weighbridge tickets issued in the case of asphalt. No payment shall be made for wasted material.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for providing all the material, placing, compacting and finishing as specified, for work in restricted areas, and also for all machinery, equipment, labour, priming (if specified), tack coat, supervision and other incidentals for executing the work as specified. Unless specified, transportation cost will be included in the rate.

CA.03.03 Supply and apply proprietary brand bitumen rubber 9 mm single seal surface patches (Roadpatch or similar approved material)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of surface repaired in accordance with the specified requirements. No payment will be made for wasted materials.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing all material, preparation, placing and finishing as specified in this section and other sections of the appropriate specifications, for all transport, work in restricted areas, and also for all equipment, labour, tack coat, supervision and other incidentals for executing the work as specified.

CA.04 SURFACE TREATMENT OF SURFACED ROADS

CA.04.01 Trimming the edges and edge breaks of the existing surfacing.....Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement for trimming the edges shall be a metre of pavement edge cut back and trimmed as specified measured along the centre line of the road.

The tendered rate for trimming the edges shall include full compensation for cutting back the edges in accordance with instructions, excavating the material to the specified depth and removing all excavated and loose material. Payment for the backfilling of the edge breaks with hot-mix continuously graded asphalt will be made under item CA.04.04.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all transport, handling, labour, material and all incidentals necessary for completing all the work in accordance with the specifications, and also for work in restricted areas.

CA.04.02 Pothole repair using hot-mix continuously graded asphalt Unit: ton (t)

The unit of measurement for repairing surfacing shall be the ton of asphalt applied for the repair of the surfacing, irrespective of the thickness or number of layers.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing, and storing of all materials, providing and transporting all plant, labour and equipment necessary for cutting back the edges, excavation, removing excavated and loose material and disposal thereof, priming, backfilling with the approved product, compaction and trimming as specified in this section.

The quantity shall be calculated by measuring the volume of material used, multiplied by the density of the compacted material.

CA.04.03 Pothole repair using cold mix asphalt surfacing from the following sources:

- (a) Commercial sources Unit: ton (t)
- (b) Mixed on site as specified Unit: ton (t)

The unit of measurement for surfacing repair shall be the ton of cold mix asphalt applied for the repair of surfacing, irrespective of the thickness or number of layers.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing, and storing of all materials, providing and transporting all plant, labour and equipment necessary for cutting back the edges, excavation, removing excavated and loose material and disposal thereof, priming, backfilling with the approved product, compaction and trimming as specified in this section.

The quantity shall be calculated by measuring the volume of material used, multiplied by the density of the compacted material.

CA.04.04 Repairing edge breaks using hot-mix continuously graded asphalt - medium grade Unit: ton (t)

The unit of measurement for repairing edge breaks shall be the ton of asphalt applied for the repair of edge breaks, irrespective of the thickness or number of layers.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for compacting the surface on which the new edge is to be constructed, procuring, furnishing, and mixing all materials and compacting and trimming the asphalt to the required lines and levels. It shall also include full compensation for applying a tack coat of emulsion to the surface to be treated.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all transport, handling, labour, material and all incidentals necessary to complete all the work as specified.

The quantity shall be calculated by measuring the volume of material used, multiplied by the density of the compacted material. No extra payment will be made in regard to this item for producing small quantities of asphalt.

CA.04.05 Mechanical brooming of road surfaces Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement for the mechanical brooming of the road surface shall be the area of road swept, measured in square metres.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of all equipment, use and maintenance thereof and all labour costs.

CA.04.06 Cleaning of cracks with compressed air Unit: kilometre (km)

The unit of measurement for cleaning the cracks with compressed air shall be the kilometre of road along which all cracks have been blown clean.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of all equipment, labour, supervision and incidentals for blowing clean the cracks over the full width of the road.

CA.04.07 Applying bituminous binders and herbicides for sealing cracks

- (a) Herbicide Unit: litre (ℓ)
- (b) MSP/1 or similar prime Unit: litre (ℓ)

- (c) Anionic stable-grade emulsion mixed with synthetic modifiers..... Unit: litre (ℓ)
- (d) Hot bitumen rubber Unit: litre (ℓ)
- (e) Other specified agents (type indicated) Unit: litre (ℓ)

The unit of measurement shall be the litre of material applied as specified or instructed by the engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing, mixing, heating (where required) and applying all materials as specified, and for all equipment, labour, supervision and incidentals for completing the work. No additional payment will be made for multiple applications of material, and payment will not distinguish between the various types, widths or lengths of cracks.

CA.05 REPAIR OF SEGMENTED PAVING

CA.05.01 Remove concrete paving blocks:

- (a) Discard paving blocks..... Unit: square metre (m²)
- (b) Stockpile and re-use paving blocks Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of paving blocks removed from the existing pavement, including the bedding sand. The quantity shall be computed in accordance with the authorised dimensions of the affected area.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for demarcating the affected area and excavating and disposing and/or stockpiling of the material, including haul over a free-haul distance of 1,0 km.

CA.05.02 Excavation for repair of segmented paving:

- (a) Discard paving blocks..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (b) Stockpile and re-use paving blocks Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated from the existing pavement irrespective of the type of material and excluding the volume of the removed paving blocks and bedding material. The quantity shall be computed in accordance with the authorised dimensions of the excavation.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for demarcating the excavation and excavating and disposing and/or stockpiling of the material, including haul over a free-haul distance of 1,0 km.

CA.05.03 Backfilling and reinstatement of pavement layers:

- (a) Selected layers compacted to 93% of modified AASHTO density..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (b) Cement stabilized subbase layers compacted to 95% of modified AASHTO density..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (c) Cement stabilized base layers compacted to 97% of modified AASHTO density..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement for CA.05.02(a) shall be the cubic metre of gravel material placed and compacted according to authorised dimensions on drawings or as specified by the Engineer.

The unit of measurement for CA.05.02 (b) and (c) shall be the cubic metre of stabilized material placed and compacted according to authorised dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing, placing, compaction and finishing of materials including stabilizing agent and irrespective of the compaction method, labour, tools and equipment for executing the work to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

CA.05.04 Cast *in situ* concrete and formwork in edge beams, intermediate beams and kerbing:

(a) Class 20 concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(b) Class 30 concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete in place. Quantities shall be calculated from the dimensions shown on the drawings or as authorised.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all the materials, storing the materials, providing all plant, excavation, mixing, transporting, providing and preparing all formwork, placing and compacting the concrete, forming the inserts, construction joints and contraction joints, curing and protecting the concrete, repairing defective surfaces and finishing the concrete surface as specified.

CA.05.05 Breaking up and removing concrete edge beams, intermediate beams, etc. Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete removed. Quantities shall be calculated from the dimensions shown on the drawings or as authorised.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for providing all plant, breaking up and excavating the existing concrete, including free-haul of the excavated material up to and including 2 km.

CA.05.06 Steel reinforcement in edge beams, intermediate beams and kerbing:

(a) Mild steel bars Unit: ton (t)

(b) High-tensile steel bars Unit: ton (t)

(c) Welded steel mesh Unit: kilogram (kg)

The unit of measurement for steel bars shall be the ton of reinforcing, and kilogram of welded steel in place in accordance with the drawings or as authorised. Ties, stools and other steel used for positioning the reinforcing steel shall be measured as steel reinforcement.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying, delivering, cutting, bending, welding, trial weld joints, placing and fixing the steel reinforcement including all tying wire, spacers and waste.

CA.05.07 Concrete block paving:

- (a) class, type and thickness similar to existing pavement for areas carrying vehicular traffic Unit: square metre (m²)
- (b) class, type and thickness similar to existing pavement for areas carrying pedestrian traffic Unit: square metre (m²)
- (c) re-use stockpiled paving blocks (80 mm interlocking on 20 mm bedding sand) Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of completed concrete block paving. The quantity shall be calculated from the dimensions shown on the drawings or authorized by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying, transporting, delivering and placing of all materials, including spreading and levelling of bedding sand, spreading of jointing sand and brooming into joints, compacting using a plate compactor as specified and removal of excess sand from the pavement. The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for all labour, transport, incidentals and equipment required to perform the work according to the specifications.

CA.05.08 Replacement of jointing sand Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement for the replacement of jointing sand shall be square metre of existing paving area treated.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying, delivering, placing, and spreading of jointing sand, brooming into joints, compacting using a plate compactor as specified and removal of excess sand from the pavement. The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for all labour, transport, incidentals and equipment required to perform the work according to the specifications.

CA.06 REPAIR OF KERBING**CA.06.01 Patching of kerbs Unit: metre (m)**

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of patched concrete kerbing where patched by an approved product. The quantity shall be calculated from the product of the number of kerb units patched and the length of each unit. Only units authorized by the Engineer will be paid for.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for furnishing all material and for all work necessary to repair the kerbing as specified.

CA.06.02 Reinstalling pre-cast kerbs Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of precast kerbing complete as constructed, measured along the face of the kerb.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for preparing of bedding, furnishing and installing all materials and reinstalling existing kerbing irrespective of the type of kerb, all complete as specified.

CA.06.03 Replacing of kerbing

- (a) Barrier kerbs similar to existing undamaged barrier kerbs..... Unit: metre (m)
- (b) Semi-mountable kerbs similar to existing undamaged semi mountable kerbs..... Unit: metre (m)
- (c) Mountable kerbs similar to existing undamaged mountable kerbs Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of replaced precast concrete kerbing. The quantity shall be calculated from the product of the number of kerb units replaced and the length of each unit. Only units authorized by the Engineer will be paid for.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for removing and carting away the damaged kerb units over a free-haul distance of 1 km and furnishing all material and for all work necessary to replace the kerbing as specified.

The replacing of kerbs by casting *in situ* concrete will be paid for under items CA.05.04 and CA.05.05.

CA.07 ERECTION AND REPAIR OF ROAD TRAFFIC SIGNS AND TRAFFIC-CONTROL DEVICES**CA.07.01 Erection or reinstatement of road sign boards**

- (a) Area not exceeding 2 m² Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of completed road sign erected as required in the Project Specification, instructions or drawings issued by the Engineer.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for attaching the road signboard to a road sign support structure, or to an overhead road sign support structure or to an overbridged and for all equipment, labour, supervision, nuts, bolts, transport, handling, etc., necessary for the installation of the road sign board.

CA.07.02 Road sign supports (overhead road sign structures excluded)

- (a) Steel tubing of 76 mm diameter and 3 mm wall thickness Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of steel tubing used. Bolts and other accessories shall not be measured.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for erecting the road sign supports, including all bolts, screws, rivets, welding and accessories, together with the painting and galvanizing required and the provision and treatment of breakaway holes in timber supports. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for tying up, clearing, trimming, disposing of material at approved dumping sites provided by the Contractor, and finishing the area around each sign footing.

Overhead road sign supporting structures shall not be measured and paid for under this item, but shall be considered as specialised structural work.

- CA.07.03 Excavation and backfilling for road sign supports Unit: cubic metre (m³)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of excavation measured in place according to the neat dimensions of the footings or excavations as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer. In the case of timber posts not in concrete, the plan area of the excavated hole shall be taken as 0,15 m², irrespective of the actual size of the excavated hole.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for excavating, backfilling and compacting the backfill material, for the disposal of all surplus excavated material, and for providing the backfill material.
- CA.07.04 Extra over item CA.07.03 for cement-treated soil backfill Unit: cubic metre (m³)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the additional cost of providing and mixing in cement.
- CA.07.05 Extra over item CA.07.03 for rock excavation Unit: cubic metre (m³)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the additional cost of excavating in rock.
- CA.07.06 Gravel drainage layer below road sign footings Unit: cubic metre (m³)**
- The unit of measurement is the cubic metre of compacted gravel placed below road sign footings in accordance with the details on the drawings. The quantity will be calculated from the authorised dimensions, and gravel placed outside the authorised dimensions will not be measured for payment.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and placing the gravel.
- CA.07.07 Hazard plates (600 x 150 mm) Unit: number**
- The unit of measurement is the number of each size of hazard plate erected complete in accordance with the details on the drawings.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for excavating, disposing of excavated material (including all haul), erecting and for placing and compacting the soilcrete backfilling.
- CA.07.08 Repair of road sign faces Unit: square metre (m²)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of sign face repaired on the instruction of the Engineer. Only the portion of the sign face actually repaired shall be measured for payment.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all the necessary material, labour and equipment and for repairing as specified.
- CA.07.09 Movable New Jersey type barriers Unit: metre (m)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the metre of movable New Jersey type barriers provided and shall include the cost of erection.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply and initial erection complete with all materials as may be required, for cleaning and maintenance. Units which become unserviceable or are damaged by vehicles shall be replaced upon the instruction of the Engineer.

CA.07.10 Supply and install Sign boards Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement is the number of each sign erected or installed complete in accordance with the details on the drawings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for erecting the signs, including all bolts, screws, rivets, welding and accessories, together with the painting and galvanizing required and the provision and treatment of breakaway holes in timber supports.

CA.08 ROAD MARKINGS

CA.08.01 Retro-reflective road-marking paint

(a) Longitudinal lines:

- (i) 100 mm wide broken or unbroken lines, white, yellow or red..... Unit: metre (m)
- (ii) 150 mm wide broken or unbroken lines, white, yellow or red..... Unit: metre (m)
- (iii) Broken or unbroken lines, white or yellow, other widths..... Unit: metre (m)

(b) Transverse lines and other markings:

- (i) Broken or unbroken lines, white or yellow Unit: square metre (m²)
- (ii) Lettering and symbols, white or yellow, repainting existing markings Unit: square metre (m²)
- (iii) Traffic island markings, white or yellow repainting existing markings Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement for subitem CA.08.01 (a) shall be the metre length of actual painted line at the specified width and in accordance with the instruction by the Engineer.

The unit of measurement for subitem CA.08.01 (b) shall be the square metre of the actual surface area of the lettering, symbols, traffic island markings or lines completed in terms of an official order, measured to the nearest tenth of a square metre.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and providing all the necessary labour, constructional plant, tools, equipment and materials, including the retro-reflective beads. The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for surface preparation, for painting the road markings and applying the retro-reflective beads, for protection and temporary traffic control facilities and its maintenance, and for all incidentals necessary to complete the road markings in accordance with the provisions of the contract, including the setting-out of lettering, symbols and traffic island markings, but excluding setting out and premarking the lines.

CA.08.02 Setting out and premarking of lines (excluding traffic island markings, lettering and symbols) Unit: kilometre (km)

The unit of measurement for setting out and premarking lines shall be a kilometre of line set out and premarked. If two or more parallel lines lie in a strip with a maximum width of 1,0 m the setting out and premarking of the lines will be measured once only as if it is a single line.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for setting out and premarking the lines in accordance with an official order, including all materials, and measured to the nearest tenth of a kilometre.

CA.08.03 Removal of road markings:

(a) Removal of markings by means of grit-blasting Unit: square metre (m²)

(b) Removal of markings by other mechanical methods
(The tenderer shall state the method he intends to use) Unit: square metre (m²)

(c) Removal of markings by chemical methods
(The tenderer shall state the method he intends to use) Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement for the removal of road markings shall be a square metre and the quantity paid for is the actual surface area of the markings removed in terms of an official order, measured to the nearest tenth of a square metre.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for removing the markings, including all material.

CA.09 CHEMICAL CONTROL OF VEGETATION AND ERADICATION OF UNDESIRABLE VEGETATION

CA.09.01 Chemical control of vegetation
(The tenderer shall state the method he intends to use): Unit: square metre (m²)

CA.09.02 Eradiation of undesirable vegetation
(The tenderer shall state the method he intends to use): Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement for item CA.09.01 and CA.09.02 above shall be the square metre of the area treated as described in these specifications.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of chemicals, plant, equipment and labour for the spraying of the chemical liquids in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

The tendered rates shall be fully inclusive of any costs arising from restricted working conditions due to the nature of the site or traffic flow.

Payment will be made as follows:

- (a) 60% will be payable after application
- (b) The remaining 40% will be payable once 90% of the vegetation has been controlled to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CB STORMWATER DRAINAGE

CONTENTS

CB 01	SCOPE
CB 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CB 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CB 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CB 05	MAINTENANCE
CB 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CB 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the materials, equipment, methods, testing and work required for the corrective maintenance and servicing of existing stormwater drainage systems. It covers both surface and underground drainage systems.

CB 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CB 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

PW 371	-	Specification of Materials and Methods to be used
SANS 1200 DB	-	Earthworks (pipe trenches)
SANS 1200 DK	-	Gabions and pitching
SANS 1200 G	-	Concrete (structural)
SANS 1200 LB	-	Bedding (pipes)
SANS 1200 LE	-	Stormwater drainage
SANS 1200 MK	-	Kerbing and channelling

CB 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2014 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

CB 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CB 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CB 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CB 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

CB 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter indicate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance contract all the systems and installations shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the details specified in the Particular Specification.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

All new, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of twelve (12) months from date of completion of repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repair work items for the stormwater drainage systems shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Prefabricated culvert installation and repair of existing culverts and structures;
- (b) Cleaning of prefabricated culverts;
- (c) Concrete channel construction and repair of existing channels;
- (d) Cleaning of concrete drains and channels;
- (e) Cleaning of earth channels;

- (f) Construction and repair of brickwork inlet structures;
- (g) Provision of lockable storm water grid inlets;
- (h) Cleaning of pipelines.

CB 04.02 PREFABRICATED CULVERT INSTALLATION AND REPAIR OF EXISTING CULVERTS AND STRUCTURES

This section covers the work in connection with the construction of prefabricated pipe and portal culverts and stormwater structures such as manholes, grid inlets and the like.

It also covers the removal and replacement of damaged and broken prefabricated culverts, as well as repairs to existing culverts and stormwater structures.

CB 04.02.01 Construction

Prefabricated culverts shall be constructed or replaced in accordance with the specifications at the locations indicated by the Engineer.

(a) Excavation

The width of the excavation shall be sufficient to allow the proper laying, bedding and backfilling of culverts. The widths of the excavation for each type and size of culvert shall be as set out in SANS 1200 DB.

The depth of the excavation for each type and size of culvert shall depend on site conditions and the amount by which the excavation is to exceed the proposed level of the invert of the culvert and shall be sufficient to allow the type and thickness of bedding material instructed by the Engineer.

Where excavation is to be carried out through asphalt premix or concrete, the asphalt/concrete shall be cut neatly and vertically with approved sawing equipment before the asphalt/concrete is removed.

Excavations shall commence from the outlet end of culverts to be installed.

(b) Classification of excavation

All excavations shall be classified as follows for payment purposes:

(i) Hard material

Material which cannot be excavated except by drilling and blasting, or with the use of pneumatic tools or mechanical breakers, and boulders exceeding 0,10 m³ shall be classified as hard material.

Where more than 40 % of any material (by volume) consists of boulders each exceeding 0,10 m³ in size, the material shall be classified as hard material.

(ii) Soft material

All material not classified as hard material shall be classified as soft material.

Notwithstanding the above classification, all material excavated from previously constructed fills, subgrades and subbases shall be classified as soft material.

(c) Disposal of excavated material

Where excavated material does not comply with the requirements for backfilling material as specified or is surplus to backfilling requirements, such excavated material shall be removed from the site and disposed of.

Material suitable for use in the works, however, shall be used as prescribed.

(d) Removal of damaged culverts

Where indicated by the Engineer damaged sections of prefabricated culverts shall be completely removed and replaced with new units.

Excavation shall be carried out as described for new culvert installation and the excavated material shall be, if suitable, preserved for backfilling. The damaged culvert units shall be disposed of.

(e) Laying of concrete pipe culverts

Concrete pipe culverts shall be laid on class A or B bedding as directed by the Engineer. The inside of the culverts shall be smooth and without any displacement and all pipes shall be laid true to line and level with a minimum slope of 2 % or as directed by the Engineer.

(i) Class A bedding - see SANS 1200 LB

(ii) Class B bedding - see SANS 1200 LB

(iii) Rock foundation

Where rock, shale or hard material is encountered on the bottom of excavations a bed of fine material as required for class B bedding shall be placed before laying the pipe.

(iv) Concrete casing

Where ordered by the Engineer a pipe shall be encased in concrete according to the Engineer's instructions.

(f) Laying of concrete portal culverts

Portal culverts shall be laid on prefabricated floor slabs. A layer of fine-grained material of at least 75 mm thick shall be placed on the bottom of the excavation, levelled, compacted and trimmed to line and grade to form a bed to receive the precast slabs.

The portal portions of portal culverts shall be placed accurately and symmetrically on the floor slabs with a thin layer of mortar of one part of cement and six parts of sand between the contact surfaces to ensure a firm and uniform support.

(g) Extension of existing culverts

Where existing culverts require extension or where damaged sections are replaced the new sections shall be placed at the same grade and, where it joins the existing structure, at the same level as the existing structure.

Any sections of existing wing walls, approach slabs and head walls which may obstruct any new work shall be demolished and removed. The demolition and reconstruction of new inlet and outlet structures shall be paid for under the relevant sections in the specification.

(h) Construction of culverts in half widths in existing roads

To allow the free flow of traffic at all times the culverts shall be constructed in half widths. The downstream section shall be constructed first and the end of the excavation adjoining the traffic lane shall be properly supported to prevent displacement from occurring.

(i) Repairing of cracks and joints

Where instructed by the Engineer cracks in existing culverts and culvert joints which have opened shall be caulked with material specified in the Particular Specification.

(j) Backfilling of prefabricated culverts

The backfill material shall be material selected from the excavation mixed with 80 kg Portland cement with every cubic metre of excavated material.

Generally the backfill material shall be a sandy material, but may contain larger particles up to 38 mm and shall have a plasticity index not exceeding 12.

In the case of concrete pipe culverts on class B bedding the backfilling material shall be tamped in under the flanks of the culverts to provide a uniform bedding, all to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Backfilling alongside and over the culverts to the underside of the pavement layers shall be placed at optimum moisture content and compacted to a minimum of 90 % of modified AASHTO density in layers not exceeding 150 mm after compaction. Where approved by the Engineer, testing may be done with a dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP). The average penetration rate recorded after every 5 blows for each layer shall not exceed 50. The full depth of a layer shall be tested.

Backfilling shall be carried out simultaneously and equally on both sides of a culvert to prevent unequal lateral forces from occurring and the ends of culverts shall be protected to prevent the backfill material from spilling beyond the required levels.

(k) Reinstatement of pavement layers

Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer the pavement layers shall be reinstated as follows:

- (i) Selected layers shall be of at least a G5 quality and shall be compacted to at least 93 % of modified AASHTO density.
- (ii) Material for the subbase layers shall be stabilized with 3 % cement and compacted to 95 % of modified AASHTO density, and shall be at least a G5 quality.
- (iii) The material for the base layer shall be stabilized with 5 % cement and compacted to at least 97 % of modified AASHTO density, and shall be at least a G3 quality.

- (iv) The surfacing layer shall consist of a medium continuously graded asphalt compacted to 94 % of Marshall density. The thickness of the surfacing layer shall be at least 25 mm. A 60 % cationic emulsion shall be applied at 0,4 litre/m² to the top of the base layer before the surfacing layer is placed.

The soil cement shall be mixed on site with suitable concrete mixers and the water and cement contents shall be carefully controlled.

- (l) Repair of stormwater manholes, grid inlets and the like

Repair work will be undertaken on the structures indicated on the drawings, or as directed by the Engineer. All repair work will comply with the construction and quality requirements of SANS 1200 LE.

CB 04.02.02 Quality standard

Culverts shall be constructed true to lines and levels with the inside smooth and without any displaced joints.

CB 04.02.03 Materials

The prefabricated culvert units shall be factory produced by a reputable manufacturer of these units and shall comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Prefabricated concrete pipe culvert units

Prefabricated concrete pipe culvert units shall comply with the requirements of SANS 677. Pipes with ogee joints shall be provided, unless otherwise specified. Pipes subjected to traffic loadings shall be class 100 D; all other pipes shall be class 50 D.

- (b) Portal prefabricated concrete culvert units

Portal prefabricated concrete culvert units shall comply with the requirements of SANS 986.

- (c) Other types of prefabricated culverts

If required, other types of prefabricated culverts will be specified in the Particular Specification.

- (d) Manhole covers, grid inlets, etc

Manholes, grid inlets, etc, shall have covers and frames complying with SANS 558.

CB 04.03 CLEANING OF PREFABRICATED CULVERTS

The work involved under this section is the removal of silt and debris from prefabricated culverts including the cleaning of inlet and outlet structures.

CB 04.03.01 Construction

Prior to cleaning any prefabricated culverts, the Contractor shall arrange with the Engineer for an inspection of the stormwater network. The Contractor shall provide adequate equipment, such as torches, lights, mirrors, etc, to enable a basic visual inspection of all the culverts. Based on this inspection, the Engineer will instruct the Contractor as to which sections of the network require cleaning.

Material removed from the culverts shall be disposed of where instructed by the Engineer. Rubble and waste material shall be disposed of at the nearest appropriate solid waste disposal site, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

The Contractor must ensure that all material being removed is removed before or at the nearest accessible downstream structure. No additional payment will be made for the removal of material which, as a result of cleaning operations, find its way into a previously clean section of the culvert network.

CB 04.03.02 Quality standard

Prefabricated culverts shall be cleaned of all silt and debris such that all surfaces are clearly visible and accessible for inspection.

All spoil material shall be spread neatly and shall not wash back into drainage trenches.

The size of the culverts for the different categories will be determined as follows:

- (a) For pipe culverts - diameter
- (b) For portal culverts - width.

CB 04.04 CONCRETE CHANNEL CONSTRUCTION AND REPAIR OF EXISTING CHANNELS

This section covers the construction of new concrete lined drains where required and the maintenance of existing concrete drains. It includes the construction of kerb and channel combinations and repairs where required.

CB 04.04.01 Construction

The Engineer will indicate the locations where new drains are to be constructed to improve drainage and shall instruct where repairs to existing drains are to be carried out.

Construction of the following type of concrete drains may be required:

- (a) Concrete lining to open drains
- (b) Concrete pipes
- (c) Kerbing channeling combination.

Concrete drains shall be constructed in accordance with the details shown on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

(a) Excavation and preparation of bedding

The excavations shall be neatly trimmed to lines and levels so as to permit the accurate construction of the concrete linings. All loose material shall be well rammed at the optimum moisture content for the material used.

Where excavations are in hard material, overbreak shall be backfilled with concrete of the same class as specified for the lining.

In the case of kerbs and channels the trenches shall be excavated to the required depths and the bedding material shall be well rammed before placing the concrete.

Where wash-aways have occurred, any cavities or voids in the foundation material must

be backfilled in layers not exceeding 150 mm in thickness and compacted to 90 % of modified AASHTO density.

(b) Concrete linings

Concrete lining of open drains shall be cast in situ only and the exposed surfaces shall be given a class U2 (wood-floated) surface finish.

Sealed joints in concrete shall be in accordance with the details indicated on the drawings and joints shall be painted with a coat of approved bituminous emulsion containing 60 % of pure bitumen by mass.

Expansion joints shall be made in accordance with the drawings.

(c) Half-round channels

Cast in situ half-round channels shall be constructed in accordance with the drawings, or to fit existing sections.

(d) Kerbing and channeling

Kerbing shall include barrier kerbs, mountable and semi-mountable types. All the elements shall be prefabricated units with cast in situ channeling unless otherwise specified by the Engineer.

Kerbing and channeling shall be laid on the approved bedding with close joints filled with 3:1 sand: cement mortar not exceeding 10 mm in thickness and neatly pointed with a pointing trowel. Kerbing shall be propped with class 15/19 in-situ concrete at each joint (size: 300 mm long x 200 mm wide x 80 % of kerb height).

(e) Concrete cast against existing surfaced edges

Where concrete lining or concrete channeling in kerb and channel combinations is to be cast against existing surfacing the edge shall first be cut, before excavation, with approved sawing equipment to provide a neat straight edge. Care shall be taken during the placing of the concrete not to spill concrete onto the adjacent surfacing. Any concrete stains shall be removed by the Contractor at his own expense.

(f) Reinstatement of damaged existing structures

Damaged existing structures shall be demolished to the extent directed by the Engineer on site and the resulting debris shall be spoiled.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be carried out to the same standards prescribed for new construction and shall be paid for under the relevant items scheduled for new structures.

Provision shall be made for the reinstatement of existing damaged prefabricated concrete half round channels.

(g) Inlet and outlet structures

The structures shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements specified in the relevant section in this specification.

CB 04.04.02 Quality standard

The drains shall be constructed neatly to the dimensions shown on the drawings and within the specified dimensional and alignment tolerances.

Repairs to drains shall be in uniformity with existing structures.

CB 04.04.03 Materials

(a) Concrete

Concrete for the various structural components shall comply with the class detailed on the drawings. Concrete in channel linings shall be class 20/19.

(b) Steel reinforcement

(i) Steel bars

Steel reinforcing bars shall comply with the requirements of SANS 920.

(ii) Welded steel mesh

Welded steel mesh shall comply with the requirements of SANS 1024.

CB 04.05 CLEARING OF CONCRETE DRAINS AND CHANNELS

This section covers the work in connection with the removal of silt, debris and vegetation causing obstruction to flow in drains and channels constructed from any type of material excluding earth drains and channels.

CB 04.05.01 Construction

Concrete channels shall be cleaned where instructed by the Engineer. Generally, channels shall be cleaned when depth of silt in invert exceeds 100 mm, or when other foreign matter is present.

Material removed from channels shall either be loaded and removed from the site or disposed of adjacent to channels where it cannot be washed back into the channel as directed by the Engineer.

Where material is spoiled adjacent to channels the Contractor shall ensure that the material is spread neatly and well clear of the top of the channels where it will not wash back. Material removed from kerb and channel combinations, side drains or from other channels where directed by the Engineer shall be transported to spoil.

Vegetation growing in channel joints and cracks shall be removed with roots to prevent regrowth.

Vegetation growing over channels from the edges shall be slashed at the concrete edges and disposed of. Undesirable vegetation shall be removed with roots and spoiled where directed by the Engineer.

CB 04.05.02 Quality standard

Concrete drainage channels shall be clear of any obstruction such that the concrete surfaces are clearly visible.

CB 04.06 CLEANING OF EARTH CHANNELS

This section covers the work involved in cleaning of all earth drains and channels, repairs to damaged earth drains and channels, as well as construction and repairs of banks and dykes.

CB 04.06.01 Execution of work**(a) Drains**

Earth side drains and channels shall be cleaned of all debris, silt and vegetation when instructed by the Engineer.

Silt and debris excavated from the drains shall be deposited and spread neatly in close proximity of the drains where it will not wash back.

Scoured and eroded sections of drains shall be backfilled with suitable material obtained from the side of the road or from suitable sources indicated by the Engineer. The backfill material shall be compacted at the optimum uniform moisture content in layers not exceeding 100 mm after compaction. The Contractor shall use suitable compaction equipment to produce repairs that will not erode or scour again.

If in the opinion of the Engineer drains require protective covering against scouring and erosion, such work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant section of this specification.

(b) Construction and repair of banks and dykes

Material for the construction and repair of banks and dykes shall be an approved soil or gravel obtained from sources approved by the Engineer. It shall be positioned in such a way that water will flow on the natural ground and against the bank.

Banks and dykes shall be properly compacted in layers not exceeding 150 mm in thickness. If approved by the Engineer, mitre banks may also be constructed of hand-packed stone, provided that the interstices are filled with an approved cohesive soil.

CB 04.06.02 Quality standard

Drainage channels shall be clear of any obstructions and no scouring, erosion or pooling shall be evident.

Existing fill and cut slopes and invert grades of drains shall be maintained.

CB 04.07 CONSTRUCTION AND REPAIR OF BRICKWORK INLET STRUCTURES**CB 04.07.01 Reinstatement of damaged existing structures**

Damaged existing structures shall be demolished to the extent indicated by the Engineer on site and the resulting debris spoiled.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be carried out to the same standards prescribed for new construction and shall be paid for under the relevant items scheduled for new structures.

CB 04.07.02 Lowering of inlet structures

Existing structures which are not functional due to the inlet being above the surrounding pavement level or ground level shall be demolished to the extent indicated by the Engineer and reinstated at the correct level to the same standard prescribed for new construction.

CB 04.08 PROVISION OF LOCKABLE STORMWATER GRID INLETS

Stormwater inlet structures within the Port of Entry fence shall be provided with lockable grids. These shall be in the form of a steel bar secured to the base of the catch pit and long enough to just protrude through the inlet grid. There shall be a hole in the end of the bar to allow a padlock to be positioned such that the grid will be immovable.

The steel bar shall be treated to avoid corrosion.

Padlocks shall be provided for all grid inlets. They shall be of a type suitable for outdoor use, or as specified in the Project Specifications.

CB 04.09 CLEANING OF PIPELINES

The work under this section involves the removal of silt and debris from pipelines, including the cleaning of inlet and outlet structures.

CB 04.09.01 Construction

Before cleaning any pipelines, the Contractor shall arrange with the Engineer for an inspection of the stormwater network. The Contractor shall provide adequate equipment such as torches, lights, mirrors and TV surveillance equipment, etc, to enable a basic visual inspection of all pipes. Based on this inspection, the Engineer will instruct the Contractor as to which sections of the network require cleaning and where detailed inspections are required.

Material removed from the pipes shall be disposed of where instructed by the Engineer. Rubble and waste material shall be disposed of at the nearest appropriate solid waste disposal site, unless directed otherwise by the Engineer.

The Contractor shall ensure that all material is removed at the nearest accessible structure. No additional payment will be made for the removal of material from previously cleaned sections of the network.

CB 04.09.02 Quality standard

Pipes shall be cleaned of all silt and debris.

All spoil material shall be spread neatly to ensure that it will not return to the drainage trenches.

The pipe sizes for the different categories will be determined by diameter.

CB 05 MAINTENANCE

This specification must be read in conjunction with Additional Specification: General Maintenance.

All components of the stormwater drainage infrastructure, including surface as well as underground components, shall be maintained during the maintenance phase of the Contract.

The scope of the maintenance work for the stormwater drainage infrastructure comprises the following:

- (i) Maintenance of approximately 4 m of concrete-lined channels of varying sizes.
- (ii) Maintenance of approximately 9 m of concrete-lined channel 2m deep with a 2m base width and sloping sides outside the perimeter fence.
- (iii) Maintenance of approximately 6 m of rectangular precast concrete culverts of varying sizes.
- (iv) Maintenance of approximately 4 m of concrete storm water pipes of varying sizes.

The above description of the stormwater drainage infrastructure to be maintained is not necessarily complete and shall not limit the maintenance work to be carried out by the Contractor under this contract.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing of defects, cleaning, or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete and safe functioning of the stormwater drainage infrastructure.

Maintenance on the stormwater drainage infrastructure shall also include all other actions related to maintenance, such as temporary drainage features and temporary accommodation of traffic.

Remuneration for maintenance of the stormwater drainage infrastructure shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for maintenance thereof and shall be paid as detailed in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

CB 05.01

STORMWATER DRAINAGE SYSTEM

Routine maintenance on the storm water drainage system shall be done as described in table CB 05.01/1.

TABLE CB 05.01/1

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete installation.	Monthly
2	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole or inlet covers, grids and frames and builder's work to manholes.	Four-monthly
3	Check, inspect and repair manhole and inlet benching.	Four-monthly
4	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockage that occurs.	Monthly

CB 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**CB.01 PREFABRICATED CULVERT INSTALLATION AND REPAIR OF EXISTING CULVERTS AND STRUCTURES****CB.01.01 Excavation:**

- (a) Excavation of soft material within the following depth ranges below the surface level:
- (i) 0 m up to and including 1,5 m Unit: cubic metre (m³)
 - (ii) Exceeding 1,5 m up to and including 3,0 m Unit: cubic metre (m³)
 - (iii) Exceeding 3,0 m up to and including 4,5 m Unit: cubic metre (m³)
 - (iv) Etc in increments of 1,5 m
- (b) Excavating hard material irrespective of depth Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated within the specified dimensions, authorised by the Engineer in each case. Excavation in excess of widths specified or authorised shall not be measured for payment.

Irrespective of the total depth of the excavation, the quantity of material in each depth range shall be measured separately.

When measuring excavation for the removal of existing culverts, the volume occupied by the culvert shall not be subtracted from the calculated volume of excavation.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all excavation (including around structures), levelling, temporary timbering, shoring and strutting, for preparing the bottom of the excavation for the culvert beds, the disposal of unstable material unsuitable for backfilling, keeping the excavation safe, dealing with any surface or subsurface water and for any other operations necessary for completing the work as specified.

Payment shall distinguish between soft and hard material.

CB.01.02 Backfilling and reinstatement of pavement layers:

- (a) In situ fill or cut material compacted to 90 % of modified AASHTO density Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (b) Selected layers compacted to 93 % of modified AASHTO density Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (c) Cement stabilized subbase layers compacted to 95 % of modified AASHTO density Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (d) Cement stabilized base layers compacted to 97 % of modified AASHTO density Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement for CB.01.02(a) and (b) shall be the cubic metre of gravel material placed and compacted according to authorised dimensions on drawings.

The unit of measurement for CB.01.02(c) and (d) shall be the cubic metre of stabilized material placed and compacted according to authorised dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing, placing, compaction and finishing of materials, labour, tools and equipment for executing the work to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

CB.01.03 Prefabricated culverts:

- (a) On class A bedding (type and diameter indicated) Unit: metre (m)
- (b) On class B bedding (type and diameter indicated) Unit: metre (m)
- (c) Portal culverts with prefabricated floor slabs.....
(type and size indicated) Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement for prefabricated culverts shall be the metre of culvert laid. The length shall be measured along the soffit of the culvert.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for providing, testing, loading, transporting and unloading the culverts, for providing and placing the bedding material where required, and for the installation, laying and jointing of the culverts as specified including cutting them on the site and removing any waste.

CB.01.04 Cast in situ concrete and formwork in stormwater structures:

- (a) Class 20 concrete.....Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (b) Class 25 concrete.....Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete in place. Quantities shall be calculated from the dimensions shown on the drawings or as authorized.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all the materials, storing the materials, providing all plant, mixing, transporting, placing and compacting the concrete, forming the inserts, construction joints and contraction joints, curing and protecting the concrete, repairing defective surfaces and finishing the concrete surface as specified.

CB.01.05 Replacement of manhole covers, grid inlets, etc

- (a) SANS 558 Type 4 - covers, grids, etc:
 - (i) Maximum dimension up to and including 300 mm Unit: number
 - (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm to 600 mm Unit: number
 - (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm to 900 mm Unit: number
 - (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm Unit: number
- (b) SANS 558 Type 4 - frames only for covers, grids, etc:
 - (i) Maximum dimension up to and including 300 mm Unit: number
 - (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm to 600 mm Unit: number

- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm to 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number
- (c) SANS 558 Type 2A - covers, grids, etc:
 - (i) Maximum dimension up to and including 300 mm Unit: number
 - (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm to 600 mm Unit: number
 - (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm to 900 mm Unit: number
 - (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number
- (d) SANS 558 Type 2A - frames only for covers, grids, etc:
 - (i) Maximum dimension up to and including 300 mm Unit: number
 - (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm to 600 mm Unit: number
 - (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm to 900 mm Unit: number
 - (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of covers or frames installed. The classification of the size of each cover or frame will be based on the nominal dimensions of the unit and not on the actual dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and placing the new covers, grids and/or frames. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for removing and disposing of the damaged covers, grids and/or frames.

CB.02 CLEANING OF PREFABRICATED CULVERTS

CB.02.01 Cleaning of prefabricated culverts and inlet structures (average depth of material removed not more than 100 mm):

- (a) Prefabricated concrete pipes and portal culverts with maximum cross sectional dimension of:
 - (i) Up to and including 500 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
 - (ii) 501 mm to 750 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
 - (iii) 751 mm to 950 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
 - (iv) 951 mm to 1250 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
 - (v) 1251 mm to 1500 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
 - (vi) 1501 mm to 2100 mm..... Unit: metre (m)

(b) Prefabricated corrugated metal culverts
with maximum cross sectional dimension of:

- (i) Up to and including 500 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
- (ii) 501 mm to 750 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
- (iii) 751 mm to 950 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
- (iv) 951 mm to 1250 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
- (v) 1251 mm to 1500 mm..... Unit: metre (m)
- (vi) 1501 mm to 2100 mm..... Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of culvert cleaned (depth of material removed is on average not more than 100 mm), measured once along the soffit of the culvert. For multiple culverts each individual culvert shall be measured separately.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for removing the material, for disposing of the material in an appropriate manner and ensuring that the material will not wash into drainage trenches.

CB.02.02

Cleaning of prefabricated culvert and inlet and outlet structures (average depth of material removed is more than 100 mm):

(a) Prefabricated concrete pipes and portal culverts
with maximum cross sectional dimension of:

- (i) Up to and including 500 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (ii) 501 mm to 750 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (iii) 751 mm to 950 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (iv) 951 mm to 1250 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (v) 1251 mm to 1500 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (vi) 1501 mm to 2100 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)

(b) Prefabricated corrugated metal culverts
with maximum cross sectional dimension of:

- (i) Up to and including 500 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (ii) 501 mm to 750 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (iii) 751 mm to 950 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (iv) 951 mm to 1250 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (v) 1251 mm to 1500 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)
- (vi) 1501 mm to 2100 mm..... Unit: metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material removed (depth of material removed is on average more than 100 mm). The quantity of material to be removed shall be measured in place for each individual culvert.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for removing the material from the culvert, for loading the material onto trucks, for transporting the material within a free-haul distance of 1,0 km and for spoiling the material as specified.

CB.02.03 Provision of equipment for visual inspection of underground culvert network Unit: lump sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the provision of suitable equipment, such as torches, lights and mirrors, etc, to enable a basic visual inspection of the culvert network.

CB.02.04 Visual inspection of underground culvert network Unit: metre (m)

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all processes necessary to complete a thorough check of the culvert network, including lifting and replacing manhole covers, using relevant equipment and any clearing necessary to allow the visual inspection to proceed.

CB.03 CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION AND REPAIR

CB.03.01 Excavation:

(a) Soft material Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(b) Hard material Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated in accordance with the authorised dimensions measured in place.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all plant, labour and tools necessary for excavating the material to the required dimensions, including trimming the excavation before placing concrete, disposing of the material from the site.

CB.03.02 Cast in situ concrete:

(a) Class 20 concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(b) Class 30 concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete placed in situ. The quantity shall be calculated in accordance with the authorised dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all material and for all work necessary for mixing, placing and finishing the concrete to the authorised dimensions, including providing and erecting of formwork, for sawing of asphalt layers and for providing expansion and contraction joints as included on drawings or as instructed by the Engineer.

CB.03.03 Backfill below channels Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of backfill as may be instructed by the Engineer to be placed below channels.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for furnishing, procuring, placing and compacting concrete.

CB.03.04 Precast concrete kerbing:

(a) Supply and install (type indicated) Unit: metre (m)

(b) Install only (type indicated) Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of precast kerbing complete as constructed, measured along the face of the kerb.

The tendered rate for CB.03.04(a) shall include full compensation for preparing of bedding, furnishing and installing all materials and supporting the kerb with in situ concrete, for backfilling behind kerbs, all complete as specified.

The tendered rate for CB.03.04(b) shall include full compensation for preparing of bedding, furnishing and installing all materials and reinstalling existing kerbing, all complete as specified.

CB.03.05 Steel reinforcement:

(a) Mild steel bars Unit: ton (t)

(b) High-tensile steel bars Unit: ton (t)

(c) Welded steel mesh Unit: kilogram (kg)

The unit of measurement for steel bars shall be the ton of reinforcing, and kilogram of welded steel in place in accordance with the drawings or as authorised. Ties, stools and other steel used for positioning the reinforcing steel shall be measured as steel reinforcement.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying, delivering, cutting, bending, welding, trial weld joints, placing and fixing the steel reinforcement including all tying wire, spacers and waste.

**CB.03.06 Sealed joints in concrete lining open drains
(type indicated)..... Unit: metre (m)**

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of completed joint of each size and type.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying all material and for all labour, tools, formwork and incidentals necessary for sealing the joint as shown on the drawings or specified in the Project Specifications.

CB.03.07 Demolition and removal of damaged existing structures:

(a) Plain concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(b) Reinforced concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement for CB.03.07(a) and (b) shall be the cubic metre of existing material demolished, determined from 70 % of the rated cubic metre capacity of the truck used to remove the material.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools for removal of the damaged sections, trimming the bedding and for loading, transporting and disposing of the material from the site.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be paid for under the relevant items for constructing new structures.

CB.03.08 Concrete side beams.....Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete in side beams constructed as instructed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for furnishing all material and labour including formwork as necessary, placing concrete and shaping all surfaces and all excavations required.

CB.03.09 Overhaul on material for haul in excess of 1,0 km:

(a) Excavated material to spoil Unit: cubic metre kilometer (m³-km)

(b) Existing structures demolished Unit: cubic metre kilometer (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of loose material hauled in excess of 1,0 km, measured according to the rated capacity of the truck used, multiplied by the average overhaul distance.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material in excess of the free-haul distance.

CB.04 CLEANING OF CONCRETE DRAINS AND CHANNELS

CB.04.01 Removal and dispose of material from:

(a) Drains and channels within the following invert width ranges:

(i) Less than 1,0 m Unit: metre (m)

(ii) 1,0 m up to and including 2,0 m Unit: metre (m)

(iii) Exceeding 2,0 m up to and including 3,0 m Unit: metre (m)

(iv) Exceeding 3,0 m Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of channel cleaned, measured once along the invert of the channel.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour and equipment required for removing the material from channels irrespective of the depth of silt and debris and for loading, off-loading and spreading when material removed is intended for spoiling at designated spoil sites. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the removal of vegetation in channels and growing over the edges of channels.

The tendered rates shall also include for transporting the excavated material to spoil sites.

Where material is disposed of adjacent to the channels, the tendered rate shall include full compensation for removing the material from the channels, irrespective of the depth of silt and debris, spoiling and spreading the material adjacent to the channel where it cannot be washed back in to the channel.

CB.04.02 Overhaul of material hauled in excess of the free-haul distance of 1,0 km..... Unit: cubic metre kilometer (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material hauled to spoil, the volume to be determined from the rated capacity of the truck multiplied by the average overhaul distance. All trucks shall be fully loaded to their rated capacity.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material the average overhaul distance to the designated spoil site.

CB.05 CLEANING AND MAINTENANCE OF EXISTING EARTH CHANNELS

CB.05.01 Cleaning earth drains and channels Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material cleaned out of the drain.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour and equipment required for removing the obstruction from drains, irrespective of depth of silt and debris and disposal of the excavated material as described.

CB.05.02 Repairing of earth drains and channels Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of compacted material calculated from the dimensions measured in place.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for trimming the eroded area to firm surrounding material, for procuring, transporting placing and compacting the backfill material.

CB.05.03 Banks and dykes Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of in place in banks or dykes, calculated in accordance with authorised dimensions.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, transporting furnishing, placing, watering, compacting, shaping and trimming of material in the banks and dykes.

CB.05.04 Cleaning of vegetation at inlet and outlet structures (5 m x 5 m) Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the area measured in square metres, cleared of all vegetation blocking the inlet and outlet structures.

The tendered rate shall include for labour, clearing of vegetation, removing to spoil of vegetation and tools to complete the work to the approval of the Engineer.

CB.05.05 Overhaul of material in excess of the free-haul distance of 1,0 km Unit: cubic metre kilometre (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of imported material, nett volume of material compacted in place, multiplied by the average overhaul distance in excess of 1,0 km.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material the distance from the designated source in excess of 1,0 km.

CB.06 REPAIR AND CONSTRUCTION TO EXISTING BRICKWORK INLETS

CB.06.01 Demolition and removal of existing structuresUnit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of existing material demolished. The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and slabs for the removal of the section, trimming the bedding and for loading, transporting and disposing of the material from the site.

CB 06.02 Repair of brickwork inlet structures Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of inlet structures repaired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for furnishing all material and labour necessary for restoring the inlet structure to an as new state.

CB.06.03 Reconstruction of brickwork inlet structures Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of inlet structures completely rebuilt.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for furnishing all material and labour necessary for rebuilding the inlet structure to a complete state.

CB.07 LOCKABLE GRID INLETS

CB.07.01 Provision of lockable grid inlets Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of grid inlets fitted with a steel bar suitable for locking the inlet cover down.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools, rust protection and any other function necessary for the secure installation of the bar.

CB.07.02 Provision of padlocks Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of padlocks provided for lockable grid inlets.

The tendered rate shall include purchasing and installation of all padlocks, as well as providing a full set of labelled keys to the User Client.

CB.08 CLEANING OF PIPELINES

The cleaning of pipelines will be measured and paid for under the payment items listed under CB.02 cleaning of prefabricated culverts. Pipelines and related structures will be regarded as pre-fabricated culverts and related structures for this purpose.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CC FENCING AND GATES

CONTENTS

CC 01	SCOPE
CC 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CC 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CC 04	EXECUTION OF WORK
CC 05	QUALITY STANDARD
CC 06	MATERIALS
CC 07	MAINTENANCE
CC 08	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CC 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the repair and maintenance of fencing and gates.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

Where a particular specification has been included in the documents to supplement Technical Specification CC: Fencing and gates, this technical specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence. The Contractor shall at all times adhere to this technical specification, unless otherwise specified in the applicable Particular Specification.

CC 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CC 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- SANS 935 - Hot-dip (galvanised) zinc coatings (other than on continuously zinc-coated sheet and wire) (1988)
- SANS 675 - Zinc-coated fencing wires (plain and barbed) (1993)
- SANS 1373 - Chain-link fencing and its wire accessories (1983)

CC 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

CC 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CC 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CC 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The Contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CC 04 EXECUTION OF WORK

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

Any fencing work identified either by the Contractor or during inspection by the Engineer shall be carried out on the instruction of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall ensure that the necessary materials, skilled personnel, tools and equipment are available at all times to maintain the fences in a state of good repair.

The Engineer shall indicate where existing fences are to be moved to new locations, where new fences are to be erected, or where other repairs are necessary.

Whenever a part of the fence is taken down to repair/replace it, it will be replaced on the same day it has been taken down.

Unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer, similar type fencing material to that in the existing fence line shall be used where fences are to be repaired.

CC 04.01 SCOPE OF WORK

The scope of work has been divided into the following sections:

- (a) Perimeter fences at the various sites;
- (b) Residential fences of the residential areas;
- (c) Installation of a new security perimeter fence at the Port of Entry;
- (d) Other internal fences at the various sites.

CC 04.02 CLEARING THE FENCE ROUTE

The fence route shall be cleared over a width of at least 0,5 m on each side of the centre line of the fence and surface irregularities shall be levelled so that the fence will follow the general contour of the ground.

The bottom of the fence shall be located at a uniform distance above the ground line, but no more than 50 mm.

CC 04.03 INSTALLATION OF POSTS AND STANDARDS

Posts shall be accurately set in holes and be provided with concrete bases to the dimensions specified.

Holes shall be dug to their full specified depth.

Posts shall be firmly planted into the ground at the same spacing as the existing posts or as instructed by the Engineer. The spacing of posts between any two straining posts shall be uniform.

CC 04.04 ERECTING FENCE WIRES

All fencing wire shall be wired to the sides of posts in order to prevent the wires from being displaced or becoming loose. The wire shall be carefully strained and hung without sag, and with true alignment, care being exercised not to strain the wire so tightly that it will break or that end, corner, straining or gate posts will be pulled up.

Each strand of fencing wire shall be securely fastened in the correct position to each post with soft galvanised binding wire.

Splices in the fencing wire shall be permitted if made in the following manner using a splice tool. The end of each wire at the splice shall be carried at least 75 mm past the splice tool and wrapped snugly around the other wire for not less than six complete turns, the two separate wire ends being turned in opposite directions. After the splice tool is removed, the space left by it in the splice wire shall be closed by pulling the wire ends together. The unused ends of wire shall be cut close so as to leave a neat splice.

CC 04.05 ERECTING DIAMOND MESH OR WIRE NETTING

Wire netting or diamond mesh shall be stretched against the fence and properly secured to the fencing wire. The diamond mesh or wire netting shall be secured by means of soft binding wire at 1,2 m centres along the top and bottom wires and at 3 m centres along each of the other fencing wires unless otherwise specified.

CC 04.06 CLOSING OPENINGS UNDER FENCES

At ditches, drainage channels or other hollows where it is not possible to erect the fence so that it follows the general contour of the ground, the Contractor shall cover the openings with wire netting or diamond mesh fixed to the fence.

CC 04.07 EXISTING FENCES

Where a new fence joins an existing fence, whether in line or at an angle, the new fence shall be erected with a new straining post positioned at the terminal of the existing fence.

Existing fences that require to be taken down or moved to a new location shall be dismantled. Material not required for re-erection or declared unsuitable for re-use shall be neatly stacked at approved locations in accordance with the Engineer's instructions.

CC 04.08 GATES

Gates shall be hung on gate fittings in accordance with the requirements specified. The gates shall be so erected that they swing in a horizontal plane at right angles to the gateposts, clear of the ground in all positions.

Double swing gates shall not leave a gap of more than 25 mm between them when closed and other gates shall not be further than 25 mm from the gatepost when closed. The clearance below the gates shall not exceed 75 mm with the gates closed.

CC 04.09 REPAIRS TO FENCES

In the case of fences that require repairing, the Contractor shall use new material as may be required to re-erect the fence to the standard specified.

CC 04.10 ERECTING NEW FENCING MATERIAL

All new material used to replace old material shall be similar to the old material replaced unless new material is specified by the Engineer.

CC 05 QUALITY STANDARD

The completed fences shall be plumb, taut, true to line and ground contour, with all posts, standard and stays firmly set.

The Contractor shall, on completion of each section of fence, remove all cut-offs and other loose wire or netting so as not to create a hazard to grazing animals or a nuisance to the owners of the ground.

CC 06 MATERIALS

CC 06.01 POSTS

CC 06.01.01 Steel posts

New posts or posts that need to be replaced shall be of the same type and size as the existing posts. Tubular posts shall be galvanised in accordance with SANS 763 for Class B1 articles.

Tubular stays shall have a minimal bore of at least 60 mm and a wall thickness of at least 2,95 mm. These stays shall be galvanised as specified In SANS 763.

CC 06.01.02 Wooden posts

New posts or posts that need to be replaced shall be of the same type and size as the existing posts. Wooden posts shall be treated in accordance with SANS 457 (Hazard class H4 articles), or as specified and shall have a minimum diameter of 50 mm.

CC 06.02 WIRE**CC 06.02.01 Barbed wire**

Barbed wire shall comply with the requirements of SANS 675 and shall be one or more of the following types:

- (a) High-tensile grade, oval shaped, single-strand wire, 3,15 mm x 2,50 mm (2,81 mm equivalent diameter), and fully galvanised;
- (b) High-tensile grade, oval shaped, single-strand wire, 2.80 mm x 1.90 mm (2,31 mm equivalent diameter), fully galvanised (first class coating). This wire shall not be used less than 500 mm above ground where there is danger of grass fires;
- (c) Mild-steel grade, double strand, unidirectional twist wire, each strand 2.50 mm diameter, for use at any height above ground. The wire shall be fully galvanised;
- (d) Barbs shall be manufactured from 2.0 mm galvanised wire and shall be spaced at not more than 152 mm.

CC 06.02.02 Barbed tape coil

The product shall be fully galvanised and of high-tensile grade.

CC 06.02.03 Smooth wire

Smooth wire shall comply with the requirements of SANS 675 and shall be of the types specified below:

- (a) Straining wire shall be 4.0 mm diameter and fully galvanised.
- (b) Fencing wire shall be high-tensile grade, 2.24 mm diameter wire fully galvanised.
- (c) Tying wire shall be 2,50 mm diameter, mild steel, galvanised wire for tying fencing wire to standards and droppers, and 1,60 mm diameter, mild steel, galvanised wire for tying netting and mesh wire to fencing wire.

CC 06.03 DIAMOND MESH

- (a) Diamond mesh (chain-link) fencing shall comply with the requirements of SANS 1373. The edge finish shall be both sides clinched or barbed.
- (b) The nominal diameter of the wire shall be 2.5 mm and the mesh size shall be 64 x 64 mm or 50 x 50 mm.
- (c) The wire shall be fully galvanised.

CC 06.04 WELDED MESH

Wire netting shall be fully galvanised with mild steel wire with a minimum diameter of 1,8 mm and 75 mm mesh.

CC 06.05 RAZOR MESH

Razor mesh shall be welded with reinforcing shoulders and blade strips 8 mm wide galvanised steel, on 2.5 mm dia. galvanised wire.

Standard diamond aperture size shall be 150 mm x 300 mm centre to centre.

High density diamond aperture size shall be 75 mm x 150 mm centre to centre.

Standard panel length shall be 6 m.

CC 06.06 MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES FOR WIRE

The actual diameter of wire supplied shall nowhere be less than the specified diameter by more than the following tolerances:

Specified diameter	Tolerance
1,00 - 1,8 mm	0,05 mm
2,00 - 2,8 mm	0,08 mm
3,15 - 4,0 mm	0,10 mm

CC 06.07 GATES

New gates or gates that need to be replaced shall be the same type and size as existing gates. Gates shall be galvanised in accordance with SANS 763 for class B1 articles.

CC 07 MAINTENANCE

This specification must be read in conjunction with Additional Specification: General Maintenance.

All components of the fencing and gates infrastructure shall be maintained during the maintenance phase of the Contract.

The scope of the maintenance work for the fencing and gates infrastructure comprises the following:

Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry:

- a) Maintenance of approximately 600 m of perimeter fence and gates around the operational area consisting of 1.8 m high (100 X 50mm wide) welded mesh with Y type tubular posts and a 700mm Ø barb tape coil, with a 2.5m wide fire break on both sides;
- b) Maintenance of approximately 200 m of perimeter fence and gates within the operational area consisting of 3,0 m high (100 X 50mm wide) welded mesh with Y type tubular posts and a 700mm Ø barb tape coil;

- c) Maintenance of approximately 5100 m of perimeter fence and gates for the pedestrian walk way of 3,0 m high (100 X 50mm wide) welded mesh with Y type tubular posts and a 700mm Ø barb tape coil;
- d) Maintenance of approximately 460 m of perimeter fence and gates for the waste water treatment works of 1.8 m high razor wire with 45o single overhang tubular posts and a 700mm flat wrap;
- e) Maintenance of approximately 1 200 m of perimeter fence and gates consisting of 1,8 m high diamond mesh with 45o angle barbed wire around residential area;
- f) Maintenance of approximately 1 200 m of perimeter fence and gates consisting of 1,2 m high diamond mesh around residential buildings.

The above description of the fencing and gates infrastructure to be maintained is not necessarily complete and shall not limit the maintenance work to be carried out by the Contractor under this contract.

Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation, including all units and components as specified, shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment for the maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work.

Maintenance responsibilities of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

Maintenance implies and shall include monthly routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance, as well as breakdown maintenance on all components of the specified installation. Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing defects or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete operation of the fencing installation, keeping the installation free of litter and any growth or any other element interfering with the function or integrity of the system.

Remuneration for maintenance of fencing will be deemed included in the monthly remuneration based on the point system, as tendered for maintenance of Installation: Fencing and Gates.

The following maintenance actions will be required under this contract:

- routine preventative maintenance
- corrective maintenance
- breakdown maintenance

These actions are defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

The maintenance schedules and frequency of maintenance activities shall be developed under the maintenance control plan which will be instituted by the Contractor. The Contractor's responsibility in this regard is specified in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

SCOPE OF ROUTINE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed below. These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

Monthly maintenance

- (a) Clearing the 2.5 m wide fence route.
- (b) Cleaning the 5 m wide fire break areas.
- (c) Inspect and report on the installation.
- (d) Inspect and repair any visible damages to the installation.
- (e) Corrosion protection on fencing, gates and tubular posts.
- (f) Inspect fence for tightness to straining wire and redress or repair if necessary.
- (g) Inspect tension of straining wires and repair if necessary.
- (h) Inspect gate hinges and repair or replace if necessary.

Annual maintenance

- (a) Paint all previously painted posts, stays, gates, and mesh fences
- (b) Tighten all straining wires
- (c) Tighten all straining bolts
- (d) Ensure alignment of all gates

CC 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**CC.01 CLEARING THE FENCE ROUTE:**

CC.01.01 2.5 m wide strip Unit: metre (m)

CC.01.01 5 m wide strip Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement for the clearing of the fence route shall be the metre of fence line measured along each fence line.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the clearing of the fence line as specified, including the removal of trees, stones, growth in the fences itself and other obstructions in the fence route and the disposal as directed of all material resulting from clearing operations.

CC.01.02 Extra over CC.01.01 for cleaning the area between double fences and road shoulders in residential areas (up to 2.5 m wide) Unit: square metre (m²)

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of the area cleared between the two parallel fences of a double fence line, or between the edge of the road and the fence in residential areas. The measured area shall not include the 0,5m strips on the inside of each fence line of the double fence measured as part of CC.01.01

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the clearing of the area as specified, including the removal of trees, stones and other obstructions and the disposal as directed of all material resulting from the clearing operations.

CC.02

**SUPPLY AND ERECTION OF NEW FENCING MATERIAL
TO REPLACE OLD MATERIAL:**

- (a) Barbed wire Unit: metre (m)
- (b) Smooth wire Unit: metre (m)
- (c) Diamond mesh..... Unit: square metre (m²)
- (d) Barbed tape coil Unit: metre (m)
- (e) Posts Unit: number
- (f) Gates Unit: number
- (g) Y-standards..... Unit: number

The quantity of material used shall be determined by measuring the quantities of individual items of material installed in the completed fence. No linear measure of completed fence shall be applicable. Clearing of the fence line will be paid for under item CC.01.

The payment for the installation of the fencing material shall include for the removal of the existing fencing material including removal of concrete footings for fence posts.

The applicable units of measurement are as follows:

- (a) Fencing wire

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of fencing wire measured in place and between end posts. Binding wire and wire used for bracing and anchoring of posts shall not be measured for payment.

- (b) Diamond mesh

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of diamond mesh replaced and the quantity shall be calculated using the prescribed length between straining posts or gate posts, or the length of strips for covering openings under fences, or the length used for the covering of gates.

- (c) Posts

The unit of measurement shall be the number of posts, as follows:

All straining posts erected in accordance with the maximum specified spacing or such lesser spacing as authorised by the Engineer, all corner and gateposts authorised by the Engineer and all end posts. Gateposts for new gates shall not be measured for payment.

- (d) Gates

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each type of gate repaired or replaced.

CC.03 REPAIR OF FENCES Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of existing fence repaired as instructed by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all overheads and transporting all labour, tools and materials from the Contractor's base to the point of repair.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for all labour, tools, binding and tying wire for repairing the fence.

The cost for procurement of materials needed shall be paid for under item CC.02.

CC.04 REDRESS, TREAT AND PAINTING OF FENCE Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement for the redressing, treating and painting the fence line shall be the metre of fence line measured along each fence line.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for performing minor repairs, treating the existing fence with an approved rust remover/inhibitor and then applying cold galvanising as specified by the Engineer.

CC.05 TREATING AND PAINTING OF POSTS AND STANDARDS Unit: Number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of posts and standards treated and painted along the fence line.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for predetermining minor repairs, including sanding, treating the existing posts and standards with an approved rust remover/inhibited and then applying cold galvanising as specified by the Engineer.

CC.06 REPAIR, RE-FIXING AND ALIGNING OF GATES Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each type of existing gate repaired as instructed by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all overheads and transporting all labour, tools and materials from the Contractor's base to the point of repair.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for all labour, tools, binding and tying wire for repairing the fence.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation replacement of hinges, bolts, catches, wheels and all other fixtures necessary to repair and refix gates into the original position including aligning the gate to ensure proper opening and closing of the gate.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CE WATER DISTRIBUTION NETWORKS

CONTENTS

CE 01	SCOPE
CE 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CE 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CE 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CE 05	TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
CE 06	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
CE 07	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND REPAIR WORK
CE 08	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CE 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the materials, equipment, methods, testing and work required for the repair and maintenance of existing water distribution networks. Such distribution networks may comprise:

- (a) Primary and secondary distribution pipelines
- (b) Irrigation pipe networks and sprinklers
- (c) Valves
- (d) Bulk water meters
- (e) Domestic water meters
- (f) Chambers
- (g) Pumping stations
- (h) Borehole installations
- (i) Reservoirs.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

The Contractor shall at all times adhere to this specification, unless otherwise specified in the Particular Specification.

CE 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CE 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

SANS 1200 D	-	Earthworks
SANS 1200 DB	-	Earthworks (pipe trenches)
SANS 1200 G	-	Concrete (structural)
SANS 1200 L	-	Medium-pressure pipelines
SANS 1200 LB	-	Bedding (pipes)

CE 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

CE 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CE 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CE 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CE 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

CE 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance Contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the specified Particular Specification details.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of 12 months from date of completion of repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over if the satisfaction of the Engineer has been obtained.

Repair work items for the water distribution systems shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Repair of existing pipelines
- (b) Cleaning of existing pipelines
- (c) Repair of fittings
- (d) Repair of existing structures.

CE 04.02 REPAIR OF EXISTING PIPELINES

This section covers the requirements for the repair of the water distribution pipelines for defects such as pipe breaks and leakage for distribution pipelines.

CE 04.02.01 General

Repair work to the water distribution system is detailed in the Particular Specification and may include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded surface and underground pipework and fittings;
- (b) Replacement of damaged, broken and missing manhole covers and frames;
- (c) Repair work to damaged manholes;
- (d) Initial unblocking and clearing of all water distribution pipes and manholes;
- (e) Repair and upgrading of the water distribution system where necessary;
- (f) Introduction of additional connections to the water distribution system;
- (g) Removal of unauthorised connections;
- (h) Reinstatement and making good of walls, concrete, road surfaces, etc, to an approved acceptable level where any repair, upgrade and/or service work has been executed;
- (i) Video surveying of all underground drainage pipework to establish root ingress, damaged pipework, fat build-up, blockages, incorrect falls, sagging and as-built information. This survey shall be utilised to establish the extent of repair and upgrade work to be executed;
- (j) Test pipe system for leakage;
- (k) Repair, replace and service valves, which shall include new gaskets, gland packings, seals, bolt and nuts, etc;
- (l) Where valves do not close properly, all these valves shall be refurbished, descaled and if necessary replaced;

- (m) Repair, clean and service all strainers, including the replacement of strainer elements where corroded and installation of new gaskets;
- (n) Repair, service, test and readjust pressure-reducing valves. Pressure gauges are to be recalibrated and checked. Up and downstream pressures are to be logged. Downstream pressure has to be adjusted to an acceptable level, taking into account the allowable working pressure of the system and its components;
- (o) Repair, service and check the proper functioning of all non-return valves;
- (p) Repair, service, readjust and calibrate all safety and expansion relief valves;
- (q) Repair, service and clean out all air release valves and vacuum breakers;
- (r) Repair, service and log readings of water meters including cleaning of integral strainers;
- (s) Water storage tanks are to be emptied, cleaned out, repaired, sealed and put back into operation. Ball float and/or filling valves to these tanks are to be serviced and repaired where required;
- (t) Water pipes are to be sampled for corrosion and scaling. The Engineer will evaluate the actions to be followed if the outcome of this sampling requires attention;
- (u) Water supply has to be sampled and chemically analysed for the suitability to the systems and materials it serves;
- (v) Pressure test and sterilise repaired new installation and equipment;
- (w) Reinstatement and making good of walls, tiling, floors, concrete, finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an acceptable level where repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed.

CE 04.02.02 Construction

The Engineer will indicate the pipeline sections in need of repair and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

(a) Excavation

The width of the excavation shall be sufficient to allow the proper laying, bedding and backfilling of the pipelines. The width of the excavation for each type and size of pipeline shall be as set out in SANS 1200 DB.

The depth of the excavation for each type and size of pipeline shall depend on site conditions and the amount by which the excavation is to exceed the proposed level of the invert of the pipeline and shall be sufficient to allow the type and thickness of bedding material instructed by the Engineer.

Where excavation is to be carried out through asphalt premix or concrete, the asphalt/concrete shall be cut neatly and vertically with approved sawing equipment before the asphalt/concrete is removed.

Cutting, breaking out and replacing of concrete pavements will be paid under Subclause CA.02.

Excavations shall extend such that, where possible cut in may be reduced by lifting adjacent pipes.

(b) Classification of excavation

All excavations shall be classified as follows for payment purposes:

(i) Hard material

Material which cannot be excavated except by drilling and blasting or with the use of pneumatic tools or mechanical breakers and boulders exceeding 0,10 m³ shall be classified as hard material.

Where more than 40 % of any material (by volume) consists of boulders each exceeding 0,10 m³ in size, the material shall be classified as hard material.

(ii) Soft material

All material not classified as hard material shall be classified as soft material.

Notwithstanding the above classification, all material excavated from previously constructed fills, subgrades and subbases shall be classified as soft material.

(c) Disposal of excavated material

Where excavated material does not comply with the requirements for backfilling material as specified or is surplus to backfilling requirements, such excavated material shall be removed from the site.

Material suitable for use in the works, however, shall be used as prescribed.

(d) Removal of damaged pipelines

Where indicated by the Engineer damaged sections of pipelines shall be completely removed and replaced.

(e) Pipe couplings

Repair sections will be joined, utilising existing pipe sockets and collars where possible.

Repair couplings shall be used with the approval of the Engineer.

(f) Laying of uPVC pipelines

New sections of uPVC pipelines shall be laid on a granular bed suitable for flexible pipelines as directed by the Engineer. The inside of the pipes shall be smooth and without any displacement and all pipes shall be laid true to line and level with a minimum slope of 2 % or as directed by the Engineer.

Refer to SANS 1200 LB: Bedding (pipes), for the specification on bedding.

(g) Laying of asbestos cement, concrete or galvanised mild steel pipelines

New sections of the pipelines shall be laid on class A or B bedding as directed by the Engineer. The inside of the pipes shall be smooth and without any displacement and

all pipes shall be laid true to line and level with a minimum slope of 2 % or as directed by the Engineer.

Refer to SANS 1200 LB: Bedding (pipes), for the specification on bedding.

(h) Rock foundation

Where rock, shale or hard material is encountered on the bottom of excavations a bed of fine material as required for class B bedding shall be placed before laying the pipe.

(i) Concrete encasement

Where instructed by the Engineer pipes shall be encased in concrete. All such encasing shall be done in accordance with the Engineer's instructions and sufficient allowance shall be made for movement joints.

(j) Extension of existing pipelines

Where existing pipelines require extension or where damaged sections are replaced the new sections shall be placed at the same grade and, where they join the existing service, at the same level as the existing pipeline.

Existing chambers or other structures which may obstruct any new work shall be demolished and removed. The demolition and reconstruction of new structures shall be paid for under the relevant sections in the specification.

(k) Construction in existing roads

Road crossings shall either be constructed utilising sufficient provision of bypass roads or utilising the half width of the road. At all times a through route shall be maintained for all traffic.

(l) Repairing of leaks

Where leaks occur at pipe sockets or collars the affected section shall be cut from the pipeline and repaired using repair couplings.

Where obvious leaks occur due to displaced sealing rubbers, the rubbers shall be replaced if the replacement can be done economically by lifting adjacent pipes.

(m) Replacement of pipes damaged by exposure to extensive ultraviolet light

Pipes damaged as a result of excessive exposure to sunlight shall be replaced where indicated by the Engineer.

CE 04.02.03 Quality standard

Pipelines shall be laid at even gradients within the points of correction, to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the applicable specifications.

CE 04.02.04 Materials

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following:

(a) Supercast cast-iron pipes and fittings

Supercast cast iron pipes can be used for underground and above ground installations. Plain ended cast iron pipes and fittings shall be used, manufactured from 150, Grade A, grey iron in accordance with SANS 1034. Fittings and pipes shall be free of pinholes, blowholes, blemishes, flash and foundry sand and have a smooth bore. All pipes and fittings shall be sand blasted and coated on the inside and outside by submersion in a corrosion inhibiting oxide primer or bitumen paint.

The pipes and fittings shall be joined by means of stainless steel neoprene couplings as supplied by the manufacturer's of the pipe system. The coupling shall be installed according to the manufacturer's specification and is to be tightened with a torque wrench to a torque of 6,8 Nm.

(b) uPVC pipe and fittings under ground

uPVC pipes and fittings can be used for above ground installations.

For pipe sizes larger than 160 mm diameter, uPVC class 6 pressure pipe to SANS 966 shall be used with prefabricated uPVC bends and junctions. Prefabrication shall be done by means of hot-air welding of fittings to be covered with three layers of fibreglass reinforced lining over welded sections. The resin to be used shall be as specified by the manufacturer for usage with PVC. Bends shall be manufactured out of 3 to 4 sections per bend. Pipe joints shall be done by means of couplings fixed with solvent cement for PVC piping. This joint shall be reinforced with a fibreglass lining of three layers.

Piping is to be supported and bracketed with properly sized and designed brackets consisting of two half sections clamped over the pipe and hung with two hanger rods.

Pipes are to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification.

(c) Prefabricated galvanised steel piping and fittings above ground

The pipe to be used shall be plain-ended medium gauge uncoated pipe to SANS 62, galvanised to SANS 763 and shall be approved by the Galvanising Association of South Africa. All fittings are to be manufactured out of the same material, welded with flanged ends or rolled ends to fit clampon fittings. Fittings are only to be galvanised after manufacturing. All joints are to be either flanged or equipped with clampon couplings. All fittings and junction to be 45° sections.

The pipe system must be properly secured and bracketed at regular intervals with correctly sized and designed galvanised brackets.

Pipes are to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification.

(d) HDPE pipe and fittings

HDPE pipes and fittings can be used for underground and above ground installations where specified in accordance with SANS 8770:2008 only pipes manufactured using an extrusion process and tempered in a hot bath shall be used. Pipes shall be plain ended and only moulded HDPE bends and fittings shall be used. Jointing of pipes and fittings shall be done by butt welding, electro-sleeve couplings and/or flanged joints. Pipes and fittings shall only be installed by industry approved installers and the Contractor shall furnish a certificate to this effect. Pipes and fittings shall be installed strictly according to the manufacturer's application technique.

Pipes are to be pressure tested in sections as specified in this specification

(e) Galvanised steel pipe installations

- (i) All galvanised steel pipes shall be medium gauge mild steel screwed and socketed pipes to SANS 62 and shall be normalised and marked as such by the manufacturer. Pipes shall be hot-dipped galvanised to SANS 763 and shall be approved by the Galvanising Association of South Africa.
- (ii) All fittings shall be malleable cast-iron fittings to SANS 509 and galvanised to SANS 763 and shall be approved by the Galvanising Association of South Africa.
- (iii) All 80 diameter and larger pipes shall be joined with Class 16 flanged couplings to SANS 1123/1600. The bolts, nuts and spring washers to be used on these joints shall be cadmium plated.
- (iv) In pipe ducts and elsewhere pipes shall be fixed onto walls, soffits, etc, with approved type of supports, holderbats, clamps, etc. Brackets shall be designed to structurally support and fix the pipe system and shall have enough clearance from walls, soffits, etc, to insulate hot-water pipes and maintain equipment.
- (v) Pipes shall be supported according to the manufacturer's specifications with approved brackets at the following maximum intervals:

NORMAL SIZE (mm)	HORIZONTAL (mm)	VERTICAL (mm)
15 dia to 20 dia	1 200	1 830
32 dia to 40 dia	1 830	2 450
50 dia to 150 dia	2 450	3 050

- (vi) Pipes shall be installed in such a manner as to prevent airlocks. A minimum rise of 1:250 shall be maintained to high points, which shall be fitted with suitable air release valves.
- (vii) All pipes shall be marked according to SANS 10140 or as specified by the Engineer. All surface pipes shall be painted.
- (viii) Pipes shall be installed flush unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer.
- (ix) Provision shall be made for thermal contraction and expansion.
- (x) The type of pipe joint compound shall be approved by the Engineer and used sparingly with good quality hemp. For pipes larger than 80 mm diameter a jointing compound such as Epidermix 32 shall be used.
- (xi) Any pipes buried shall have at least 900 mm cover and be coated and wrapped to SANS 11 17 and tested in the presence of the Engineer.
- (xii) All exposed hot-water pipes shall be lagged as specified.
- (xiii) All pipework and fittings shall be pressure tested and sterilised as specified.
- (xiv) Valves shall be installed on all branch pipes and ball-o-stop valves on all connectors to basin pillar cocks, sink mixers, cistern type WCs and other fittings.
- (xv) Approved type expansion bellows shall be installed where required for expansion and contraction to prevent excessive stain on fittings and pipe joints.

(f) uPVC underground pipe installations

- (i) uPVC piping shall conform to SANS 966 with rubber ring type joints.
- (ii) All bends shall be uPVC type fittings with rubber ring joints.
- (iii) All other fittings such as T-pieces, reducers, flanges, etc, shall be bitumen-dipped cast iron rubber ring jointed fittings to SANS 546.
- (iv) No solvent weld type fittings will be allowed.
- (v) All cast iron fittings shall be coated and wrapped to SANS 1117.
- (vi) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand-bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm sand before backfilling.
- (vii) All backfilling shall be to the Engineer's specification and approval.

(viii) Pipe trenching and bedding shall be as follows:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90% of modified AASHTO density

- (ix) All thrust blocks shall be cast between the pipe and the undisturbed trench material.
- (x) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the uPVC pipe. At the thrust blocks the bend shall be wrapped with Densopol 80 HT Tape or approved equivalent.
- (xi) DPE pipe connections to UPVC pipes up to 50 mm diameter can be done by means of SG iron manufactured saddles with the appropriate gaskets and cadmium-plated bolts and nuts.
- (xii) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (xiii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered, to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (xiv) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

(g) HDPe underground pipe installations

- (i) HDPe piping shall be Type 4 HDPe pipe to SANS 533.
- (ii) All fittings shall be of Plasson compression type, conforming to ISO/DIS 3458.
- (iii) All pipes shall be laid on a 100 mm sand bedding cradle and covered with 300 mm of sand of selected material.
- (iv) All backfilling shall be to the Engineer's specification and approval.
- (v) Pipe trenching and bedding shall be as follows:

AREA	MINIMUM COVER	BEDDING TYPE	MAIN FILL
Vehicle traffic	1 100		Soilcrete
Under surface bed	600		Soilcrete
Other areas	900		90% of modified AASHTO density

- (vi) No concrete shall come into direct contact with the HDPe pipe. At these points the fittings shall be wrapped with a Densopol 80 HT tape or approved equivalent.
- (vii) All pipe crossings under traffic areas shall be backfilled with soilcrete and compacted as specified.
- (viii) All pipework shall be pressure tested with all joints uncovered to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (ix) Suitably sized air release valves built into valve chambers shall be installed at all high points of the pipeline.

(h) Valves

- (i) Gate valves underground in valve chambers to connect to uPVC piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves are to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadine rubber-covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadine rubber O-rings and seals, cast iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valve shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665, and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valve shall be fitted with a square key spindle top to close the valve in a clockwise direction and socket ends to SANS 665 to fit into uPVC Class 12 pipe and installed to detail.

(ii) Gate valves underground in valve chamber to connect to HDPe piping

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valve shall conform to SANS 776 Class 125. The valve shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa. The valve shall be fitted with a hand wheel on an extended spindle shaft of 700 mm to close in a clockwise direction and installed to detail.

(iii) Gate valves above ground for temperatures up to 40 °C to connect to steel piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves to be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 936 Grade 42, cast-iron nitrile butadine rubber-covered gate, stainless steel spindle, nitrile butadine rubber O-rings and seals, cast iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2.

The valve shall conform to SANS 664 and/or 665, and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valves shall be fitted with flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600, hand wheel to close the valve in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or side ways to a maximum 90° from upright.

(iv) Gate valves above ground for temperatures above 40 °C to connect to steel piping (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valve shall be equipped with non-rising spindle, spherical graphite iron body to SANS 963 Grade 42, cast-iron gate, gunmetal seat and gate rings, high-tensile bronze spindle, cast-iron bonnet and gunmetal thrust collar to BS 1400 LG2. The valve shall conform to SANS 665 and shall be capable of withstanding a working pressure of 1 600 kPa and a temperature of 90 °C.

The valve shall be fitted with flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600, hand wheel to close the valve in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90° from upright.

(v) Gate valves above-ground to fit to copper pipes (65 mm NB and larger)

Gate valves shall be equipped with non-rising spindle, gunmetal bronze or dezincified brass body, gunmetal or dezincified brass gate, graphite asbestos packing in the gland.

The valve shall be fitted with a hand wheel to close in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to maximum 90° from upright.

The valve shall be equipped with flanges to SANS 1123/1600, hand wheel to close the valve in a clockwise direction and installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90° from upright.

- (vi) Gate valves above-ground for temperatures up to 100 °C (up to 50 mm NB)

The gate valves shall be of the dezincified brass type with brass gate, brass body, non-rising spindle and BSP threaded socket ends. The valve shall conform to SANS 776-1965 Class 125.

The valve shall be able to withstand a working pressure of 1 600 kPa.

The valve shall be equipped with a hand wheel to close in a clockwise direction.

The valve shall be installed in an upright position or sideways to a maximum 90° from upright and shall be so placed with other fittings to be removable without cutting the pipework.

- (vii) Ball-O-Stop valves (15 mm diameter - 25 mm diameter)

This valve shall be a full-way ballcock type with BSP threaded ends. This valve shall conform to SANS 1056 Part 3, 1985, shall be rated for a test pressure of 2 000 kPa, and shall be chrome-finished where exposed.

- (viii) Angle regulating valves

This valve shall be a 15 mm diameter chromium-plated angle regulating valve with a 350 mm chromium-plated copper tube and cap nuts where required.

- (i) Strainers

- (i) Strainers for connection to steel or uPVC pipes (65 mm NB and larger)

These strainers shall be of the Y-type with cast iron body, stainless steel or bronze strainer element and shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600. The whole size of the strainer element shall be maximum 1 mm diameter and be removable without dismantling of pipework. The strainer shall be suitable for a temperature of up to 90 °C at a 1 000 kPa pressure rating and installed with the element facing downwards or a maximum of 45° sideways.

- (ii) Strainers for connection to steel and copper pipes (up to 50 mm NB)

The strainers shall be of the Y-type with bronze or dezincified brass body, stainless steel strainer element and must be equipped with BSP threaded socket ends. The whole size of the strainer element shall be maximum 0,8 mm diameter. The strainer shall be suitable for a temperature of up to 90 °C at a pressure rating of 1 000 kPa and installed with the element facing downwards or a maximum of 45° sideways.

- (j) Non-return valves

- (i) Non-return valves for cold water (65 mm NB and larger)

The non-return valve shall be of the spring-loaded dual flap plate type fitted between two flanges (wafer).

The non-return valve shall be equipped with a cast-iron body, aluminium bronze plates, stainless steel springs and neoprene seals on the plates. The valves shall be suitable for a working pressure of 1 000 kPa.

- (ii) Non-return valves for hot water (up to 100 mm diameter) and cold water (up to 50 mm NB)

The non-return valve shall be of the spring-loaded piston type, with bronze or dezincified brass body, stainless steel spring and bronze disc with neoprene seal fitted with BSP threaded socket ends. The valve shall be suitable for a working pressure of 1 000 kPa and a temperature of up to 90 °C. All valves shall be installed as to be removable without extensive pipework removal.

(k) Air release valves and vacuum breakers

- (i) Double orifice double-acting air release valves with sizes from 50 mm NB to 200 mm NB

The air release valve shall be fitted with small and large orifice. The air release valve shall be fitted with a cast-iron or stainless steel body, stainless steel or fibreglass balls, integral shut-off valve and flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600. The valve shall be equipped with an anti-shock facility.

The valve shall be suitable for maximum pressure of 1 600 kPa.

- (ii) Single orifice air release valves for main water lines with sizes from 25 mm NB to 50 mm NB

The air release valve shall be fitted with a small orifice, cast-iron or stainless steel body, fibre glass or stainless steel ball float and BSP threaded inlet.

When the valve is installed a shut-off valve shall be installed on the inlet side. The valve shall be equipped with an anti-shock facility.

The valve shall be suitable for maximum pressure of 1 600 kPa.

- (iii) Single orifice double purpose air release valves for domestic water lines up to 15 mm NB

The air release valves shall be fitted with a stainless steel float, brass or cast steel body with an integral shut-off valve fitted.

The valve shall be capable to withstand a working pressure of 1 000 kPa at 110 °C.

- (iv) Vacuum breaker up to 40 mm diameter

The vacuum breakers shall be fitted with neoprene seal, spring-loaded disc in a dezincified brass or bronze body. The valve shall seal watertight and shall be designed to withstand a working pressure of 1 000 kPa and a temperature of 90 °C.

(l) Pressure-reducing valves

- (i) Combination pressure reducing stations

Where a high peak flow can occur as well as a small flow and the small flow is out of the range of the large pressure-reducing valve, a small pressure-reducing valve

shall be installed in parallel with the large pressure-reducing valve. The two pressure-reducing valves in parallel shall be set according to the manufacturer's specification.

(ii) Large pressure-reducing valves (65 mm NB and larger)

The pressure reducing valve shall be equipped with a cast iron body, neoprene-nylon reinforced diaphragm, bronze seal disc washer, stainless steel shaft and flanged ends. The valve shall be pilot operated and shall be designed to handle high flows at a minimum head loss.

The valve must be adjustable to handle a wide range of incoming pressure at a constant downstream pressure.

The valve shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123/1600.

(iii) Small pressure-reducing valves (15 mm NB - 50 mm NB)

The pressure-reducing valve shall be equipped with brass body, balanced single seat and integral strainer. The valve shall be able to handle a wide range of incoming pressure while the downstream pressure stays constant with maximum inlet pressure of 1 000 kPa and a maximum water temperature of 40 °C.

The valve shall be equipped with BSP male threaded brass union couplings.

(m) Water meters

(i) Combination water meters

Where high peak flow as well as a low flow can occur, and the low flow is out of the registration range of large water meter, a small diameter water meter shall be installed in parallel with the large water meter to cater for the low flows with integral automatic change-over valves. These valves shall be designed to have a minimum pressure drop at the operating point.

(ii) Water meters (50 mm NB and larger)

These water meters shall be of the dry type with all gears and transmission and roller counters in a dry head, and shall be equipped with flanged ends to SANS 1123, cast-iron body with high quality corrosion proof coating. The meter must be protected from magnetic fields and sealed to prevent tampering with adjustments. The meter must be able to work up to a pressure of 1600 kPa under a maximum water temperature of 40 °C. The scale of meter must be in cubic metre (m³) and equipped with needle indicators reading in litres. The accuracy of the meter shall be not less than 98 %.

The meters shall be installed with leading and trailing lengths of pipes to the manufacturer's specification.

(iii) Water meters (up to 50 mm NB)

The meter shall be of the volumetric rotary piston type with brass body equipped with union couplers. The meter reading must be in kilolitres. The meter shall have an accuracy of not less than 98 %. The meter must be able to operate up to a water pressure of 1000 kPa at a water temperature of 40 °C.

The meters shall be installed with leading and trailing lengths of pipes to the manufacturers specification.

CE 04.03 FIRE WATER PIPED RETICULATION NETWORKS

CE 04.03.01 General

Repair work to the fire water piped reticulation networks is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the work described below. This specification only covers the water piped reticulation for the fire water protection system, whereas the equipment to this installation, such as fire hydrants, hose reels and extinguishers, are covered and detailed in Technical Specification JC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment. This specification must be read in conjunction with the afore-mentioned specification.

Repair work to the fire water piped reticulation networks may include the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded above-ground and underground pipe work, fittings and equipment;
- (b) Repair, replace and service valves which shall include new gaskets, gland packings, seals, bolt and nuts, etc;
- (c) Where valves do not close properly, all these valves are to be refurbished, descaled and if necessary replaced;
- (d) Repair, service and check the proper functioning of all non-return valves and backflow preventers;
- (e) Repair, service, readjust and calibrate all pressure gauges;
- (f) Repair work to bracketing systems including fixing and repair of existing brackets and the introduction of additional brackets where required;
- (g) Report all related problems to fire fighting equipment to the Engineer;
- (h) Water storage tanks are to be emptied, cleaned out, repaired, sealed and put back into operation. Ball float or/and filling valves to these tanks are to be serviced and repaired where required;
- (i) Pressure test and sterilise repaired new installation and equipment;
- (j) Reinstatement and making good of walls, tiling, floors, concrete, finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an acceptable level where any repair, upgrade and/or service work have been executed;
- (k) Record pressure readings on supply to installation.

CE 04.03.02 Material and equipment specification for fire water piped reticulation networks

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the relevant specification.

CE 04.04 CLEANING OF PIPELINES

The work under this section involves the removal of silt, debris and lime deposits from within the pipelines and the general cleaning in areas resulting from leakage.

CE 04.04.01 Construction

Prior to the cleaning of any pipeline sections, the Contractor shall arrange with the Engineer for an inspection of the pipe route. Based on the inspection, the Engineer will instruct the Contractor as to which sections of the network require cleaning.

Visual inspections utilising check circuit TV cameras will not be required unless deemed essential on large diameter pipelines.

Sections of the pipeline may be removed for a more detailed inspection. Such sections will be repaired as specified in Subclause CE 04.02. Sections will only be cut from the pipeline where specifically instructed by the Engineer.

The method to be applied for the cleaning of the pipelines will be chemical or mechanical and shall be followed by disinfection of the related section. The method to be applied for each section of the pipeline will be instructed by the Engineer.

Material removed from the pipelines shall be disposed of as instructed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall discuss the method proposed for the scouring of the pipelines where insufficient scour valves are present with the Engineer prior to implementation.

CE 04.04.02 Quality standard

Pipelines shall be cleaned such that head losses along the pipe route are negligible under simulated fire flow, when measured at convenient points along the route.

CE 04.05 REPAIR OF FITTINGS**CE 04.05.01 Construction**

The Engineer will indicate the fittings that are to be repaired.

The repair of the following fittings may be required:

- (a) Gate valves
- (b) Fire hydrants
- (c) Viking Johnson couplings
- (d) Pressure-reducing valves
- (e) Ferrules
- (f) Domestic water meters
- (g) Bulk water meters
- (h) Stop-cocks
- (i) Tees
- (j) Bends
- (k) End caps
- (l) Saddles
- (m) Sprinklers.

CE 04.06 REPAIR OF STRUCTURES

The Engineer will indicate the structures that are to be repaired or cleaned from debris.

Damaged existing structures shall be demolished to the extent directed by the Engineer on site and the resulting debris and other debris spoiled at designated sites.

The reinstatement of damaged structures shall be carried out to the same standards prescribed for new construction.

CE 05 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

Except where otherwise provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall provide all labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out such tests. The Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests and he shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer, in writing, prior to commencement of the test.

In the event of the plant or installation not passing the test, the Employer shall be at liberty to deduct from the Contract price all reasonable expenses incurred by the Employer or the Engineer attending the repeated test.

Whenever any installation or equipment is operated for testing or adjusting as provided for above, the Contractor shall operate the entire system for as long a period as may be required to prove satisfactory performance at all times in the occupied space served by that system for up to twenty-four hours a day continuously until the system is handed over.

The Contractor shall provide all labour and supervision required for such operation and the Employer may assign operating personnel as observers, but such observation time shall not be counted as instruction time.

After complete installation of the system all equipment shall be tested, adjusted and readjusted until it operates to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall submit certificates of tests carried out to prove the quality and proper functioning of all equipment and also certificates to be obtained from all relevant authorities and statutory bodies, etc.

CE 06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

The Contractor shall institute an approved quality assurance (QA) system which shall be submitted to the Employer or Engineer for approval. The records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the Contract and be submitted to the Engineer at regular intervals as required.

CE 07 MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

CE 07.01 GENERAL

This part of the Contract shall include routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance and breakdown maintenance as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in the Particular Specification and this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be implemented by the Contractor.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance Contract shall be furnished with the prescribed manufacturer's guarantees.

The maintenance work and items are categorised for each maintenance activity under the following headings:

- (a) Repair of water distribution pipelines (see table CE 07.02/1)
- (b) Cleaning of existing pipelines (see table CE 07.02/2)
- (c) Repair of fittings (see table CE 07.02/3)
- (d) Repair of existing structures (see table CE 07.02/4)
- (e) Fire water piped reticulation structures (see table CE 07.02/5).

The scope of the external water network and bulk water network is indicated in the drawings in the Contract.

CE 07.02 ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

This routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the following items listed in the tables below under each heading.

These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

TABLE CE 07.02/1 REPAIR OF WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPELINES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system	Monthly
2	Log all water meter readings	Monthly
3	Log all pressure gauge readings	Monthly
4	Check, inspect, report and repair leaks/replace rotten pipes where required	Monthly
5	Sample water supply and chemical analyses to be provided by approved company	Monthly
6	Bulk Water storage tanks to be emptied, cleaned out, inspected, repaired and resealed where necessary	Annually
8	Clean out all strainers	Monthly
9	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly
10	Paint repairs to piping, fittings and equipment	Annually

TABLE CE 07.02/2 CLEANING OF EXISTING PIPELINES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system	Monthly
2	Remove silt, debris and loose lime deposits from within pipelines where required by scouring	Annually
3	Do general cleaning in areas where leakage has occurred	Six-monthly

TABLE CE 07.02/3 REPAIR OF FITTINGS

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Replace all valve gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
2	Check, inspect, service, repair and readjust all pressure reducing valves	Annually
3	Check, inspect and test operation of all valves on site	Four-monthly
4	Check, inspect, service, test and repair/replace all safety and expansion release valves	Six-monthly
5	Check, inspect, service, test and repair/replace all air release valves and vacuum breakers	Four-monthly
6	Check, service, repair or replace all ball float valves	Six-monthly
7	Check, inspect, test, service and repair/replace all non-return valves	Four-monthly

TABLE CE 07.02/4 REPAIR OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on all water distribution related structures	Monthly
2	Clean out structures of debris	Six-monthly

TABLE CE 07.02/5 FIRE WATER PIPED RETICULATION STRUCTURES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system	Monthly
2	Report any failures/breakage of fire fighting equipment to the Engineer	Monthly
3	Log all pressure gauge readings	Monthly
4	Replace all valve gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
5	Clean out water storage tanks and reseal/repair if necessary	Annually
6	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all non-return valves and backflow presenters	Four-monthly
7	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks/replace rotten pipes where required	Monthly
8	Inspect, service, readjust and calibrate all pressure gauges	Four-monthly
9	Paint repairs to piping, fittings and equipment	Annually
10	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly

CE 07.03 CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE

This corrective maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment to be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The Contractor shall inspect and check all equipment, materials, systems and installation for any pending breakdowns, maladjustments or anomalies of equipment.

The Contractor shall report and take actions to correct such deficiencies.

CE 07.04 BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE

Breakdown maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All breakdown problems experienced shall be acted upon within the time limitations allowed in the General Maintenance specification.

All breakdown maintenance shall be done in accordance with the related specifications, standards, regulations and codes.

The Contractor shall have access to the necessary spares, equipment and tools for the expected breakdowns.

CE 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**CE.01 WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPELINES****CE.01.01 Repair of existing pipelines Unit: metre (m)**

The unit of measurement shall be per metre length of pipe replaced. In each case the Contractor shall agree on the length of pipe to be replaced and the method of coupling the pipes.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning and grubbing, excavation, removal of existing pipeline, dealing with water logged conditions, provision of bedding and additional backfill, logging and backfilling of replacement pipeline, finishing, repair of kerbs, road surfaces, accommodation of traffic, excavation in all materials, removal of unsuitable material from the trench, disposal of surplus materials.

Separate items will be scheduled for house connections and distribution pipes.

The provision of the materials will be measured separately under CE 01.02.

CE.01.02 Provision of materials

(a) Pipelines Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe replaced.

(b) Fittings Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fittings installed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all transport to the place of installation, storage, labour costs.

Separate pay items shall be listed for the pipe materials and fittings per diameter and class.

CE.01.03 Replacement of manhole covers, grid inlets and the like

(a) SANS 558 Type 4 - covers, grids, etc, only:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm Unit: number

(b) SANS 558 Type 4 - frames only for covers, grids, etc:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

(c) SANS 558 Type 2A - covers, grids, etc, only:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

(d) SANS 558 Type 2A - frames only for covers, grids, etc:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of covers or frames installed. The classification of the size of each cover or frame will be based on the nominal dimensions of the unit and not on the actual dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and placing the new covers, grids and/or frames. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for removing and disposing of the damaged covers, grids and/or frames from the site.

CE.01.04 Repair of corrosion protection

Corrosion protection of pipes with diameters of:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (a) <u>Up to 100 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (b) <u>101 to 200 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (c) <u>201 to 300 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (d) <u>301 to 400 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |

The unit of measurement shall be meter length of pipe painted with corrosion protection in accordance with Specification LB: Corrosion protection.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for preparation of pipe fittings, application of corrosion protection and curing of corrosion protection.

Separate items shall be scheduled for different types of pipework.

CE.01.05 New Pipelines: Preparation and Finishing Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be per metre length of pipe being replaced. In each case the Contractor shall agree on the length of pipe to be replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning and grubbing, all excavations to the specified depth, removal of existing pipeline, dealing with water logged conditions, provision of bedding and additional backfill, logging and backfilling of replacement pipeline, finishing, repair of kerbs, road surfaces, accommodation of traffic, excavation in all materials, removal of unsuitable material from the trench, disposal of surplus materials and pressure testing of the completed pipeline.

The provision of the pipeline materials will be measured separately under CE 01.02.

CE.02 REPAIR OF FIRE WATER PIPE RETICULATION NETWORK

Measurement and payment items from CE.01, CE.03, CE.04 and CE.05 will be utilised for work done on the external fire water pipe reticulation. Additional payment items for specialist fittings shall be paid under Specification JC.

CE.03 CLEANING OF PIPELINE

CE.03.01 Cleaning of deposits in pipeline by mechanical means for pipes of diameters of:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (a) <u>Up to 100 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (b) <u>101 to 200 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (c) <u>201 to 300 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |
| (d) <u>301 to 400 mm dia</u> | Unit: metre (m) |

CE.03.02 Scouring of pipeline to remove trapped debris for pipes of diameters of:

- (a) Up to 100 mm dia Unit: metre (m)
 (b) 101 to 200 mm dia Unit: metre (m)
 (c) 201 to 300 mm dia Unit: metre (m)
 (d) 301 to 400 mm dia Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be metre length of pipe cleaned or scoured.

The unit rate of measurement for item CA.03.01 shall include full compensation for the emptying of the pipeline, cleaning, refilling and reporting on the condition of the pipe after cleaning. The rate shall also include the disposal of waste material in and appropriate manner.

The unit of measurement for item CA.03.02 shall include full compensation for the scouring of the pipeline and refurbishing of the pipeline. The unit of measurement shall be the total length of filled pipeline from which the water is scoured. The length shall be agreed with the Engineer prior to scouring.

The provision of additional scour points shall also be included in the rate.

CE.04 REPAIR OF FITTINGS

CE.04.01 Servicing of valves Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of valves serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning, removing rust, scale or other solids from surfaces or moving parts, proper greasing of all moving parts, preparation for corrosion protection coating and painting of valves.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

CE.04.02 Recondition valves Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of valves reconditioned.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for dismantling, cleaning, removing rust, removing scale or other solids from surfaces and moving parts, replacing components such as hinges, spindles, hard wheels or gates, swing axles, swing gates, replacing or repair of seals, skimming of seal surfaces, proper greasing of all moving parts, preparation for corrosion protection, painting or any other action or cost necessitated to recondition a valve to a perfect functional drop tight condition.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

CE.04.03 Decommission and remove valves Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of valves decommissioned and removed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour and equipment required to decommission and remove valves, such as installation of temporary isolating valves or blank flanges, removal of unserviceable valves, loosening and removal of bolts and nuts, or any

other related action required. Excavation to exposed partially buried valves shall also be included in the rate.

Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of valves.

CE.04.04 Repair of house connections..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of house connections repaired.

The tendered rate shall exclude the provision of new fittings measured under CE. 01.02 but shall otherwise include full compensation for appurtenant fittings, excavation, backfilling and other necessary work to repair existing house connections.

All connections to the distribution pipelines, up to a diameter of 32 mm shall be measured as "house connections".

CE.05 REPAIR OF STRUCTURES

CE.05.01 Demolition and removal of damaged existing structures

- (a) Plain concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (b) Reinforced concrete..... Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (c) Brickwork Unit: square metre (m²)
- (d) Precast concrete manhole sections..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement for CE.05.01(a) and (b) shall be the cubic metre of existing material demolished, determined from 70 % of the rated cubic metre capacity of the truck used to remove the material.

The unit of measurement for CE.05.01(c) and (d) shall be the square metre length of brickwork and the number of precast concrete manhole sections.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools for removal of the damaged sections, trimming the bedding and for loading, transporting and disposing of the material. Excavation and backfill shall also be included for constructing the precast concrete manholes inclusive of all work required to complete the work as shown on the drawings.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be paid for under the relevant items for constructing new structures.

CE.05.02 Cleaning of existing manholes, chambers and other structures Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of debris and other material to be disposed, removed from manholes, chambers and other structures.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools for removal of the material, trimming the bedding and for loading, transporting and disposing of the material.

CE.05.03 Overhaul on material for haul in excess of 1,0 km

- (a) Excavated material to spoil..... Unit: cubic metre kilometre (m³-km)
- (b) Existing structures demolished..... Unit: cubic metre kilometre (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of loose material hauled in excess of 1,0 km, measured according to the rated capacity of the truck used, multiplied by the average overhaul distance. All trucks shall be fully loaded to their rated capacity.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material in excess of the free-haul distance.

CE.05.04 Repair of structures

- (a) Brickwork Unit: square metre (m²)
- (b) Concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)
- (c) Precast concrete manhole sections..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of brickwork or concrete constructed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of materials, transport, preparation and placing of foundations, labour and all other associated work to complete the work required.

Separate items will be scheduled for specific installations.

CE.05.05 Marker posts..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of marker posts installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture and installation complete as shown on the drawings.

CE.05.06 Sample testing

- (a) Extract sample to determine lime deposition, corrosion and general condition for pipes of:
 - (i) Up to 100 mm dia Unit: number
 - (ii) 101 to 200 mm dia Unit: number
 - (iii) 201 to 300 mm dia Unit: number
 - (iv) 301 to 400 mm dia Unit: number

The unit rate of measurement shall be the number of sample tests carried out.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cutting into pipe and extraction of sample, visual inspection and reporting on condition of pipe. The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the appropriate disposal of the sample and for the repair of the section pipeline.

Compensation for provision of new pipes and fittings, shall be measured under CE 01.

CE.05.07 New structures

Precast concrete manhole sections Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of new pre-cast manholes constructed complete with precast top, manhole frame, cover and finishing.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of materials, transport, preparation and placing of foundations, labour and all other associated work to complete the work required.

CE.06 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS OF REPAIR WORK

CE.06.01 Pressure testing

(a) Pressure test pipeline in sections of pipes with diameter of:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| (i) Up to 100 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |
| (ii) 101 to 200 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |
| (iii) 201 to 300 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |
| (iv) 301 to 400 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |

The unit of measurement shall be the metre length of pipe tested.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for isolation of test section, filling of section with water, testing for required duration and reporting on performance of pipes, the provision of any additional water shall also be included in the rate. The rate shall also include the provision of all equipment, labour and supervision necessary for the completion of the pressure test.

CE.06.02 Provision of equipment for visual inspection of underground pipeline network Unit: lump sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the provision of suitable equipment, such as torches, lights and mirrors, etc, to enable a basic visual inspection of the pipeline network.

CE.06.03 CCTV inspection of underground pipework

(a) Pipes of diameter:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| (i) Up to 300 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |
| (ii) 301 to 600 mm dia | Unit: metre (m) |

The unit of measurement shall be the metre length of pipe inspected.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all inter-pipe relocations required to conduct a thorough check of the pipework where indicated by the Engineer.

CE.07 LOCATE AND CONNECT INTO THE EXISTING WATER NETWORK

(a) Locate and connect into the existing water network pipeline Unit: number

The tendered rate shall include the provision of all equipment, labour, fittings and material required to locate the existing water network pipeline, excavate and expose the existing pipe, blank off any unnecessary connections, and connect to the new pipeline.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CF SEWERAGE NETWORKS

CONTENTS

CF 01	SCOPE
CF 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CF 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CF 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CF 05	TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
CF 06	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
CF 07	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT
CF 08	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CF 01 SCOPE

This specification covers all aspects regarding the general maintenance of sewerage networks which may include the following installations:

- (a) Sewer pipelines and manholes
- (b) Open sewerage channels
- (c) Conservancy tanks.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

CF 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CF 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- SANS 1200 D - Earthworks
- SANS 1200 DB - Earthworks (pipe trenches)
- SANS 1200 L - Medium-pressure pipelines
- SANS 1200 LB - Bedding (pipes)
- SANS 1200 LC - Cable ducts
- SANS 1200 LD - Sewers

CF 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1998: Construction Regulations, 2004 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

CF 02.03 MANUFACTURER'S SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CF 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CF 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CF 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

CF 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the details specified in the Particular Specification.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all Additional and Particular Specifications included in this document.

All repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs to be agreed at the start of the Contract period. All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of twelve (12) months from date of completion of repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

CF 04.02**REPAIR OF EXISTING PIPELINES AND STRUCTURES**

This section covers the work in connection with the construction of sewerage networks and associated sewerage structures such as manholes, cleaning eyes and the like. It also covers the removal and replacement of damaged and broken pipes and sewerage structures, as well as repairs to existing pipes and structures.

CF 04.02.01**General**

Repair work to the soil and wastewater drainage system shall be detailed in the Particular Specification and may include the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded above-ground and underground pipework and fittings;
- (b) Replacement of damaged, broken and missing gully gratings, manhole covers and frames, cleaning eye covers, screws and bolts, inspection of eye covers, screws and bolts, end caps and vent cowl;
- (c) Repair work to damaged manholes, gullies, cleaning eyes, etc, including builder's work and benching;
- (d) Initial unblocking and cleaning of all drainage pipework, traps and gullies;
- (e) Repair of sewerage system where necessary;
- (f) Provision of additional connections to the sewerage system;
- (g) Reinstatement and making good of walls, concrete, road surfaces, etc, to an approved acceptable level where any repair and/or service work have been executed;
- (h) Video surveying of all underground drainage pipework to establish root ingress, damaged pipework, fat build-up, blockages, incorrect falls, sagging and as-built information. This survey shall be utilised to establish the extent of repair and upgrade work to be executed;
- (i) Test pipe system and equipment for leakage;
- (j) Sewerage pipes are to be sampled for corrosion and scaling. The Engineer will evaluate the actions to be followed if the outcome of this sampling requires attention;
- (k) Reinstatement and making good of walls, tiling, floors, concrete, finishes, holes, chases, surfaces, etc, to an acceptable level where repair and/or service work have been executed.

CF 04.02.02**Construction**

The Engineer will indicate the location at which sections of pipeline are in need of repair after the appropriate surveys have been completed by the Contractor.

(a) Excavation

The width of the excavation shall be sufficient to allow the proper laying, bedding and backfilling of the pipelines. The width of the excavation for each type and size of pipeline shall be as specified in SANS 1200 DB.

The depth of the excavation for each type and size of pipeline shall depend on site conditions and the amount by which the excavation is to exceed the proposed level of the invert of the pipeline and shall be sufficient to allow for the type and thickness of bedding material as instructed by the Engineer.

Where excavation is to be carried out through asphalt premix or concrete, the asphalt/concrete shall be cut neatly and vertically with approved sawing equipment before the asphalt/concrete is removed.

Excavations shall extend such that, where possible, cut in may be reduced by lifting adjacent pipes.

(b) Classification of excavation

All excavations shall be classified as follows for payment purposes:

(i) Hard material

Material which cannot be excavated except by drilling and blasting, or with the use of pneumatic tools or mechanical breakers and boulders exceeding 0,10 m³ shall be classified as hard material.

Where more than 40 % of any material (by volume) consists of boulders each exceeding 0,10 m³ in size, the material shall be classified as hard material.

(ii) Soft material

All material not classified as hard material shall be classified as soft material.

Notwithstanding the above classification, all material excavated from previously constructed fills, subgrades and subbases shall be classified as soft material.

(c) Disposal of excavated material

Where excavated material does not comply with the requirements for backfilling material as specified or is surplus to backfilling requirements, such excavated material shall be removed from the site.

Material suitable for use in the works, however, shall be used as prescribed.

(d) Removal of damaged pipelines

Where indicated by the Engineer damaged sections of pipelines shall be completely removed and replaced.

Excavation shall be carried out as described for new pipeline installation and the excavated material shall be, if suitable, preserved for backfilling. The damaged pipe materials shall be disposed of where instructed by the Engineer.

(e) Pipe couplings

Repair sections shall be joined utilising existing pipe sockets and collars where possible.

Repair couplings shall be used with the approval of the Engineer.

(f) Laying of vitrified clay pipes and fittings

New sections of vitrified clay pipes shall be laid on granular bed as directed by the Engineer. The inside of the pipes shall be smooth and without any displacement and all pipes shall be laid true to line and level with a minimum slope of 2 % or as directed by the Engineer.

(g) Rock foundation

Where rock, shale or hard material is encountered on the bottom of excavations a bed of fine material as required for class B bedding shall be placed before laying the pipe.

(h) Concrete encasement

Where instructed by the Engineer pipes shall be encased in concrete. All such encasing shall be done in accordance with the Engineer's instructions and sufficient allowance shall be made for movement joints.

(i) Extension of existing pipelines

Where existing pipelines require extension or where damaged sections are replaced the new sections shall be placed at the same grade and, where they join the existing service, at the same level as the existing pipeline.

Existing chambers or other structures which may obstruct any new work shall be demolished and removed. The demolition and reconstruction of new structures shall be paid for under the relevant sections in the specification.

(j) Construction in existing roads

Road crossings will either be constructed utilising sufficient provision of bypass roads, or they will be done utilising the half width of the road. At all times a through route shall be maintained for all traffic.

(k) Repairing of leaks

Where leaks occur at pipe sockets or collars the effected section will be cut from the pipeline and repaired using repair couplings.

Where obvious leaks occur due to displaced sealing rubbers they will be replaced if the replacement can be done economically by lifting adjacent pipes.

(l) Sewer manholes

All manhole cover frames shall be cast into the concrete cover slabs.

Manholes in trafficable areas shall be provided with heavy duty covers and frames and surrounded by concrete slabs.

(m) Steep sewers

Sewer pipes in the ground with a slope steeper than 1:5 and under surface beds shall be encased in concrete.

(n) External sewers

The sewer outside the boundary of the building complex shall be constructed strictly in accordance with the details and specifications of the Local Authority.

(o) As-built services

Existing drainage invert levels and positions are to be checked against invert levels given on the drawings before work commences. The Engineer must be informed immediately of any discrepancy.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of as-built plans of sewerage network, showing all pipes, pipe diameters, invert levels and associated structures.

All existing services are to be located and opened before the proposed work commences.

(p) Testing

The drainage system shall be tested according to the specifications laid down by the NBRI. This test shall be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

(q) Ingress of foreign material

During construction all pipe ends are to be suitably plugged to prevent any ingress of dirt, rubble, etc.

(r) CCTV surveys

Modern technology video surveying equipment and detection equipment shall be utilised to establish blockage problems and positions of such problems.

(s) Proximity to buildings

Any drainage pipe within the 45° range below building foundations shall be encased in concrete or soilcrete as specified.

(t) Repair to existing structures

Damaged existing structures shall be demolished to the extent directed by the Engineer on site and the resulting debris shall be spoiled at designated sites.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be carried out to the same standards prescribed for new construction and shall be paid for under the relevant items scheduled for new structures.

Provision shall be made for the reinstatement of existing damaged prefabricated concrete half round channels.

(u) Repair to existing channels

Existing channels shall be cleaned. Broken sections of lined channels shall be repaired. Such repair work shall comprise patching of concrete and replacement of precast sections.

CF 04.02.03 Quality standard

Pipelines shall be laid at even gradients to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the applicable specifications.

CF 04.02.04 Materials

Materials and equipment to be used for repair items shall be suitable and/or adaptable to the existing installation and shall comply with the following:

(a) Manhole covers

Manhole covers, etc, shall have covers and frames complying with SANS 558.

(b) Vitrified clay pipe and fittings

Vitrified clay pipe shall only be used for underground installations. The pipes and fitting shall strictly conform to SANS 559. The pipes and fittings shall have a minimum crushing strength of 45 kN/m.

The joining method to be used shall be polypropylene couplings with integral rubber seal similar or equal to Vitrosleeve in accordance with SANS EN 295: Vitrified clay pipes and fittings and pipe joints for drains and sewers, allowing up to 2,5° angular movement per joint and 5 mm line displacement per joint. The joint shall retain an affective water seal with respect to above conditions with a 6 m water head.

Pipes shall be cut using an approved pipe cutter and the end shall then be trimmed by means of a pipe trimmer to remove any sharp edges.

All fittings underground shall consist of vitrified clay and shall comply with SANS 559.

The piping system shall be tested according to the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34.

CF 04.02.05 Air test for sewer and drains

The following air test as specified in the NBRI information sheet X/BOU 2-34 shall be applicable to all air tests on new sewers and drains installed under the repair Contract, and shall be executed by the Contractor and witnessed by the Engineer.

(a) Method of air testing

All openings in the pipeline are plugged by means of sewer testing plugs. The sewer plug at the lowest end of the pipeline is connected to an air supply hose, which is attached to a mechanically driven air blower, compressor or hand pump. Air is pumped into the pipeline at a pressure of approximately 375 mm water gauge. The pressure is held at this level for a period of two minutes to allow the air temperature to become constant. Subsequently the air supply is closed off and the time recorded for the air pressure to drop from 250 to 125 mm water gauge. If the recorded time is less than the value given in the table below, it means that the pipeline is leaking and does not comply with the required standards of tightness. The apparatus required for the air test is commercially available.

The following requirements have to be taken into account when performing the air test:

- (i) Air-permeable pipelines such as vitrified clay or asbestos cement should preferably be tested when moist or wet.
- (ii) The trench shall be partially backfilled before the test is carried out. This is required to stop possible temperature variations and to prevent damage to the pipeline during subsequent backfilling operations.
- (iii) The testing equipment shall be shielded from the direct rays of the sun.
- (iv) Flexible joints are recommended for sewer and drain pipelines. Good quality flexible joints are superior to cement caulked joints and they also provide the pipeline with flexibility to prevent cracking due to subsequent soil movement.
- (v) The test method is very sensitive to flaws in the pipeline, such as cracks or leaking joints. The actual positions of flaws along the pipeline can be determined by using the specialised equipment.
- (vi) If the pipeline is below the water table and subjected to external water pressure, the test method should be modified by the Engineer to ensure that the final pressure value is higher than that of the external water pressure acting on the lowest part of the installation.

The minimum times for pressure drop of 250 mm to 125 mm water gauge are given in table CF 04.02.05/1 below.

TABLE CF 04.02.05/1

PIPE DIAMETER (mm)	MINIMUM TIME (min - s)	CRITICAL LENGTH OF PIPELINE (m) (58 m ² internal surface area)	MINIMUM TIME(s) FOR LONGER LENGTH (L) OF PIPELINE
100	1 to 58	184,6	0,640 L
150	2 to 57	123,1	1,439 L
200	3 to 56	92,3	2,559 L
225	4 to 26	82,1	3,239 L
250	4 to 55	73,8	3,998 L
300	5 to 54	61,5	5,757 L
375	7 to 23	49,2	8,996 L
450	8 to 51	41,0	12,954 L
525	10 to 20	35,2	17,632 L
600	11 to 49	30,8	23,030 L

CF 04.03

CLEANING OF SEWERAGE NETWORK

The work involved under this section is the removal of silt, debris and vegetation from within the pipelines and manholes and the general cleaning of areas where leakage has occurred. This can be done either mechanically or chemically according to the more appropriate method as specified by the Engineer.

CF 04.03.01 Construction

The Contractor shall arrange with the Engineer for an inspection of the pipe route before the cleaning of any pipeline sections is carried out.. Based on the inspection, the Engineer will instruct the Contractor as to which sections of the network require cleaning.

Visual inspections utilising closed-circuit TV cameras will not be required unless deemed essential and will be specifically requested by the Engineer.

Sections of the pipeline may be removed for a more detailed inspection. Such sections shall be repaired as specified in Subclause CF 04.02.02. Sections shall only be cut from the pipeline where specifically instructed by the Engineer.

The method to be applied for the cleaning of the pipelines shall be chemical or mechanical. The method to be used for each section of the pipeline will be instructed by the Engineer.

Material removed from the pipes shall be disposed of as instructed by the Engineer.

Where insufficient scour values are present, the method for scouring of the pipelines shall be discussed and agreed with the Engineer prior to implementation.

CF 04.04 REPAIR OF FITTINGS**CF 04.04.01 Construction**

The Engineer will indicate the fittings that are to be repaired, but these fittings shall not be limited to those specifically indicated by the Engineer.

Repair of the following fittings may be required:

- (a) Cleaning eyes
- (b) Permanent plug stoppers
- (c) Channel sections.

CF 05 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

Except where otherwise provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall provide all labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out such tests. The Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests and he shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer, in writing, prior to commencement of the test.

In the event of the plant or installation not passing the test, the Employer shall be at liberty to deduct from the Contract price all reasonable expenses incurred by the Employer or the Engineer attending the repeated test.

Whenever any installation or equipment is operated for testing or adjusting as provided for above, the Contractor shall operate the entire system for as long a period as may be required to prove satisfactory performance at all times in the occupied space served by that system for up to twenty-four hours a day continuously until the system is handed over.

The Contractor shall provide all labour and supervision required for such operation and the Employer may assign operating personnel as observers, but such observation time shall not be counted as instruction time.

After complete installation of the system all equipment shall be tested, adjusted and readjusted until it operates to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall submit certificates of tests carried out to prove the quality and proper functioning of all equipment and also certificates to be obtained from all relevant authorities and statutory bodies, etc.

CF 06 **QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM**

The Contractor shall institute an approved quality assurance (QA) system which shall be submitted to the Employer or Engineer for approval. The records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the Contract and submitted to the Engineer at regular intervals as required.

CF 07 **MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT**

CF 07.01 **GENERAL**

This part of the Contract shall include routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance and breakdown maintenance, as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, for the specified installations described under the Clause CF 01 of this specification.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in the Particular Specification and this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be implemented by the Contractor.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance Contract shall be furnished with the prescribed manufacturer's guarantees.

The maintenance work and items are to be categorised for each maintenance activity under the following headings:

- (a) Sewerage network systems
- (b) Wastewater treatment systems.

CF 07.02 **ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE**

The routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed in table CF 07.02/1. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all material, plant and labour required in order to perform such maintenance to the satisfaction of the engineer.

These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

TABLE CF 07.02/1 – SEWERAGE NETWORK SYSTEM

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete installation	Monthly
2	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole covers and frames and builder's work to manholes	Four-monthly
3	Check, inspect and repair manhole benching.	Four-monthly
4	Check, inspect, repair or replace all inspection eye, end caps and cleaning eye covers	Four-monthly
5	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockage that occurs	Monthly
6	Check, inspect, repair/replace and clean out all equipment traps	Monthly
7	Paint repairs to surface piping and equipment	Annually
8	Survey and resultant repairs and unblocking of all main sewer lines	At start of Contract
9	Check, inspect, repair/replace sewer pipes where necessary to maintain good working condition at all times	Four-monthly

CF 07.03

CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE

This corrective maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment to be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The Contractor shall inspect and check all equipment, materials, systems and installation for any pending breakdowns, maladjustments or anomalies of equipment.

The Contractor shall report and take actions to correct such deficiencies.

CF 07.04

BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE

Breakdown maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All breakdown problems experienced shall be acted upon within the time limitations allowed in the General Maintenance documents.

All breakdown maintenance shall be done in accordance with the related specifications, standards, regulations and codes.

The Contractor shall have access to the necessary spares, equipment and tools for the expected breakdowns.

CF 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**CF.01 SEWERAGE NETWORKS****CF.01.01 Repair of existing pipelines Unit: metre (m)**

The unit of measurement shall be per metre length of pipe replaced. In each case the Contractor shall agree on the length of pipe to be replaced and the method of coupling the pipes.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning and grubbing, excavation, removal of existing pipeline, dealing with water logged conditions, provision of bedding and additional backfill, bedding and back filling of replacement pipeline, cutting to length, finishing, repair of kerbs, road surfaces, accommodation of traffic, excavation in all materials, removal of unsuitable material from the trench and disposal of surplus materials.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all material, plant and labour required to temporarily by-pass (if required) the pipe section being replaced.

The provision of the materials will be measured separately under CF. 01.02.

CF.01.02 Provision of materials**(a) Pipelines Unit: metre (m)**

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe replaced.

(b) Fittings Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fittings installed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all transport to the place of installation, storage, labour costs.

Separate pay items shall be listed for the pipe materials and fittings per diameter and class and for the class of bedding to be used.

CF.01.03 Replacement of manhole covers, grid inlets and the like**(a) SANS 558 Type 4 - covers, grids, etc, only:**

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm Unit: number

(b) SANS 558 Type 4 - frames only for covers, grids, etc:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

(c) SANS 558 Type 2A - covers, grids, etc, only:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

(d) SANS 558 Type 2A - frames only for covers, grids, etc:

- (i) Maximum dimension up to 300 mm..... Unit: number
- (ii) Maximum dimension 301 mm - 600 mm Unit: number
- (iii) Maximum dimension 601 mm - 900 mm Unit: number
- (iv) Maximum dimension over 900 mm..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of covers or frames installed. The classification of the size of each cover or frame will be based on the nominal dimensions of the cover/unit and not on the actual dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and placing the new covers, grids and/or frames. The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for removing and disposing of the damaged covers, grids and/or frames from the site.

CF.01.04 Manholes and inspection chambers**CF.01.04.01 Raising or lowering of existing manholes or inspection chambers of all types:**

- (a) Raise/lower 0 m up to and including 0,5 m Unit: number
- (b) Raise/lower exceeding 0,5 m up to and including 1 m Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of manholes/inspection chambers raised/lowered within the specified dimensions.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all excavation (including around structures), levelling, temporary timbering, shoring and strutting, for preparing the bottom of the excavation for the manhole beds, the disposal of material, dealing with subsurface or surface water, benching and for other operations necessary for completing the work as specified.

Payment shall distinguish between soft and hard material. The tendered rates shall include full compensation for transporting the excavated material from the site.

CF.01.04.02 Breaking into existing sewer and building a new manhole(a) Pre-cast concrete manhole:

- (1) Depth exceeding 0,5 m up to and including 1,0 m..... Unit: number
- (2) Depth exceeding 1,0 m up to and including 1,5 m..... Unit: number
- (3) Depth exceeding 1,5 m up to 2,0 m Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of manholes constructed within the specified dimensions.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for excavation, building a new manhole over the sewer, breaking into the existing sewer, building the channelization under wet conditions, ensuring the water tightness of the new connection, supplying all the necessary materials, removing surplus material, all labour and equipment required to make the connection, and liaison with the local authorities. Provision for manhole covers shall be made under CF 01.03 payment.

CF.01.04.03 Connecting to existing sewer Unit: sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for excavation, making an opening in the existing manhole, installing new pipes in the new opening, for breaking out and modifying the channelization inside the manhole to suit the new pipe layout, ensuring the water tightness of the new connection, supplying all the necessary materials, removing surplus material and debris all labour and equipment required to make the connection, and liaison with the local authorities.

CF.01.04.04 Repair of channels Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the length of channel section repaired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning, patching, repairing of existing channels, irrespective of diameter and position. The rate shall also include all necessary materials, equipment and labour required.

CF.02 CLEANING OF SEWERAGE NETWORK

CF.02.01 Mechanical cleaning of sewer pipes and structures:

- (a) Up to 150 mm Unit: metre
- (b) 151 mm to 300 mm Unit: metre
- (c) 301 mm to 450 mm Unit: metre
- (d) More than 450 mm Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe cleaned, measured once along the soffit of the culvert. For multiple pipes each individual pipe shall be measured separately.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for removing the material, for disposing of the material in an approved manner and ensuring that the material will not wash into drainage trenches.

CF.02.02 Chemical cleaning of sewer pipes and structures:

- (a) Up to and including 150 mm Unit: metre
- (b) 151 mm to 300 mm Unit: metre
- (c) 301 mm to 450 mm Unit: metre
- (d) More than 450 mm Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe cleaned, measured once along the soffit of the culvert. For multiple pipes each individual pipe shall be measured separately.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for supply of chemical agents, equipment, labour and the effective application of the cleaning process.

CF.02.03 Provision of equipment for visual inspection of underground pipe networks Unit: lump sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the provision of suitable equipment, such as TV surveillance equipment, torches, lights and mirrors, etc, to enable a thorough visual inspection of the pipe network.

CF.02.04 Use of CCTV surveillance equipment Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe inspected.

The rate shall be fully inclusive of all associated equipment and interpipe moves and recording equipment.

CF.02.05 Visual inspection of underground pipe network Unit: sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for all processes necessary to complete a thorough check of the sewer network including lifting and replacing manhole covers, using relevant equipment and any clearing necessary to allow the visual inspection to proceed.

CF.02.06 Demolition and removal of damaged existing structures:

(a) Plain concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(b) Reinforced concrete Unit: cubic metre (m³)

(c) Kerbing and channelling Unit: metre (m)

(d) Pipework Unit: metre (m)

The unit of measurement for CF.02.06(a) and (b) shall be the cubic metre of existing material demolished, determined from 70 % of the rates cubic metre capacity of the truck used to remove the material.

The unit of measurement for CF.02.06(c) and (d) shall be the metre length of kerbing and channelling or pipework removed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools for removal of the damaged sections, trimming the bedding and for loading, transporting and disposing of the material.

The reinstatement of damaged sections shall be paid for under the relevant items for constructing new structures.

CF.03 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

(a) Pressure testing of pipelines Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the length of sewer pipeline tested.

(b) Testing of manholes Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of manholes tested after repair.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out relevant tests as per SANS 1200. Submission of certificates from tests and equipment and any costs involved in obtaining such from relevant authorities shall also be included in the tendered sum.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CG SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT

CONTENTS

CG 01	SCOPE
CG 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CG 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CG 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
CG 05	MAINTENANCE
CG 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CG 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the requirements for maintenance work related to solid waste and solid waste management.

Monthly maintenance responsibilities for Solid Waste (which forms part of installation A4, Fencing, Cleaning and Site Keeping) including all units and components as specified, shall commence with access to the site (site handover).

CG 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CG.02.01 GUIDELINES

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the guidelines on solid waste and landfill sites as stipulated by DWAF which shall be deemed to form part of these specifications.

CG 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

CG 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

Any work related to solid waste identified by the Contractor or during inspection by the Engineer shall be carried out on the instruction of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall ensure that the necessary materials, skilled personnel, tools and equipment are available at all times to perform his duties.

The work shall include the collection and removal of litter, rubble and other solid waste across the entire site.

Apart from informal dumps, the Contractor shall be responsible for removing all scattered waste in order to clean the entire site to a clean and healthy state. Collection of solid waste shall be performed under the guidance of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall transport solid waste collected across the entire site to a central container for removal to a disposal site off-site. Removal of solid waste from the central container to a disposal site off-site shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

CG 04.01 LITTER COLLECTION

All litter and rubble shall be collected within the perimeter fences of the various Ports of Entry and Borderline bases (as reflected on the layout diagrams) and removed and disposed of as specified.

CG 04.02 WASTE COLLECTION

Waste bins shall be provided at each residential unit. Additional waste bins shall be provided at the offices and service buildings. The waste bins at all residential units shall be cleaned out on a weekly basis. Waste bins in public areas shall be cleaned out daily. The storage of the solid waste at the solid waste disposal area until such time as it is removed from site will be the responsibility of the Contractor in a skip at a central location within the site.

The disposal area shall be prepared and managed by the Contractor. The site shall be fenced-off (1,8 m high diamond mesh) and the entrance gate shall be locked at all times.

CG 04.03 REMOVAL OF SOLID WASTE

Removal of solid waste from the central solid waste container (skip) to a formal solid waste facility shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

The existing waste disposal site shall be de-commissioned and backfilled. All waste located at the disposal site shall be relocated to the nearest off-site waste disposal site. All waste collected at the Port of Entry shall be relocated to the nearest off-site waste disposal site on a weekly basis.

CG 05 MAINTENANCE

This specification must be read in conjunction with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

The whole of the site within the perimeter fences of the Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry (as reflected on the layout diagrams) shall be kept free of litter, rubble and other solid waste. Litter and rubble (solid waste) shall be collected, stored by the Contractor and removed from the site as frequently as necessary, but at least weekly by the Contractor.

Storage of the collected solid waste until such time as it is removed from the site shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Solid waste shall be removed from the residential units to the waste disposal site at least weekly. Solid waste shall be removed from the central solid waste container (skip) provided by the contractor as frequently as necessary, but at least weekly.

Removal of household solid waste to the municipal/approved dump site will still be carried out by the Contractor. The cleanliness of the site, excluding all areas included within residential fences, will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

Garden refuse is amongst the litter and rubble to be collected and disposed of by the Contractor.

Solid waste maintenance forms part of Installation A4. The tendered monthly payment for maintenance of Installation A4 as based on the point system and listed in the schedule of quantities, shall be deemed to include all labour, material, tools, equipment and transport required to continuously collect litter and rubble across the entire site, placing it in a central solid waste container (skip) provided by the contractor and removing it off-site to a formal solid waste facility at least weekly.

TABLE CG 05/1: SUMMARY OF MAINTENANCE RESPONSIBILITY

NO	ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Cleaning out of all waste bins in public areas	Daily
2	Cleaning out of all waste bins at residential units	Weekly
3	Collect litter, rubble and other waste across the entire site within the perimeter fences of the Port of Entry and place in a central solid waste container (skip)	Continuously
4	Remove waste from skip to an external approved waste disposal site	Weekly

CG 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CG.01 DISPOSAL OF LITTERUnit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of litter, building rubble and other waste material removed from the site, irrespective of the type of material. The quantity shall be determined from 70 % of the rated cubic metre capacity of the truck used to remove the material.

Only litter, building rubble and other waste removed on instruction from the Engineer shall be measured for payment.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and tools for collecting, loading, transporting and disposing of the material from the site to an approved dumping site, off-site.

CG.02 LEVELLING OF SITEUnit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the surface area of the site to be graded.

The importation of additional material shall be paid under CG.03.

CG.03 IMPORTATION OF FILL MATERIALUnit: m³

The unit of measurement shall be cubic metres of fill measured as the transported volume. The rate shall be inclusive of excavation, transport and the distribution of the material at the disposal site.

CG.04**COVERING OF DUMPING SITE**

- (a) Lime cover Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of area covered with lime.

The tendered rate shall include provision of lime, spreading and finishing of the lime to a minimum depth of 20 mm.

- (b) Topsoil cover Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the square metre of area of topsoil placed.

The tendered rate shall include provision of topsoil, spreading and finishing of the material to a depth of 300 mm.

CG.05**SUPPLY OF WASTE BINS** Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of waste bins supplied as described in the schedule of quantities.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply, transportation and placing of the waste bins.

CG.06**WASTE COLLECTION SKIP** Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum for the provision of a single skip at a central location within the site.

The tendered rate shall be fully inclusive of the supply and installation of the skip to the site required including a 1.8m high diamond fence around the skip with a lockable gate.

CG.07**OVERHAUL ON MATERIAL FOR HAUL****IN EXCESS OF 1,0 km:**

Unit: cubic metre per kilometre (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material hauled in excess of 1,0 km, measured according to the rated capacity of the truck used, multiplied by the average overhaul distance.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for hauling the material in excess of the free-haul distance.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CI PRESSED STEEL TANKS

CONTENTS

CI 01	SCOPE
CI 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CI 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
CI 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CI 05	TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
CI 06	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
CI 07	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND REPAIR WORK
CI 08	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CI 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the materials, equipment, methods, testing and work required for the repair and maintenance of pressed steel tanks for the storage of potable water:

Ports of Entry	Elevated Tanks
Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry	12 m ³ - 12 m high
Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry	21 m ³ - Ground level & 2 x 50 m ³ concrete tanks at ground level
Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry	21 m ³ - 1.5 m high

This specification shall form an integral part of the repair and maintenance contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

Where a particular specification has been included in the documents to supplement Technical Specification CI: Pressed steel tanks, this technical specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence. The Contractor shall at all times adhere to this technical specification unless otherwise specified in the applicable Particular Specification.

CI 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

CI 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

CKS 114 - Pressed steel sectional tanks

CI 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act no 85 of 1993) shall be adhered to.

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

CI 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CI 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CI 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be required for pressed steel tanks.

CI 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

CI 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance Contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the specified Specification details.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of 12 months from the date of completion of repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

CI 04.02 REPAIR OF PRESSED STEEL PANEL RESERVOIRS

Tanks shall be disassembled, cleaned, reconstructed, sealed and re-commissioned. All work shall be in compliance with the requirements of CKS 114 (Pressed steel sectional tanks).

- (a) The water level indicators located on the tanks shall be repaired to a perfect functional condition;
- (b) A COPON KSIR88 internal lining consisting of two coats with a total thickness of 275 microns shall be applied.
- (c) Sealing strips or sealing compounds of a type suitable for an extremely hot, arid climate to be applied between the plate flanges. Sealing to be non-toxic and approved for use with drinking water;
- (d) All bolts, washers, nuts etc. used for the fastening of plate flanges and other components shall be discarded and new bolts, nuts, washers etc. supplied for the fastening of plate flanges etc.;
- (e) All external pipe connection points to the tank shall be flanged to SANS 1123 table 1600/3. All pipe work outside the tank, connecting to flanges as mentioned above, will be measured elsewhere;
- (f) The tank together with the stand, ladders, walkways, panels and all other components forming part of the tank and its accompanying stand shall be treated and painted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ (BJ 03.01 .03 Paint Specification for various components: (c) Metalwork; (2) Exterior: Previously painted metalwork).

All mild steel tank components, structural steel stands, walkways, and ladders including bolts, nuts, and washers shall be hot-dipped galvanized after manufacture to the requirements of SABS 763. This includes any pipe fittings, etc for connections.

The tanks shall be tested for water tightness after completion to the satisfaction of the Engineer and shall also be sterilized by the contractor after completion.

For all details of the tank, internal and external bracing, COPON lining, stand, walkway, and ladders, written approval of the Engineer shall be obtained before manufacture. Workshop drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer timeously for his final approval of the concrete footings and the bending schedules.

All external pipe connection points supplied with the tanks shall be flanged to SABS 1123 table 1600/3, unless otherwise specified

CI 04.03 LIGHTNING PROTECTION

The reservoirs shall be protected from the effects of lightning by the installation of a lightning protection system that complies with the requirements of SABS Code of Practice 03.

The Contractor shall obtain the services of a firm specialising in the supply and installation of such systems. The firm which shall be approved by the Engineer, shall timeously submit drawings of the system to the South African Bureau of Standards for approval, and work may commence only after the approved plan has been submitted to the Engineer.

CI 04.04 STERILIZATION OF RESERVOIR

Before the reservoir is sterilized, the pipelines serving the reservoir shall have been sterilized. The reservoir shall then be thoroughly cleaned out and washed down with clean water.

The roof and walls shall thereafter be thoroughly sprayed down, using pressurised equipment, and the floors shall be scrubbed with the solution specified in sub clause 5.10 of SABS 1200 L.

On completion of the sterilization, the sterilizing solution shall be run to waste before the reservoir is filled for testing water tightness.

Should additional work be required to be done inside the reservoir after the water tightness tests have been completed, the reservoir shall be re-sterilized at the Contractor's expense.

CI 04.05 TESTING FOR WATERTIGHTNESS

Water for testing shall be provided by the contractor and he shall be responsible for providing all necessary equipment required for filling the reservoir.

The reservoir shall be filled with water at a uniform rate until the top water level has been reached. The water level will then be carefully noted and recorded by the Engineer in relation to a fixed benchmark.

The level of the liquid surface shall be recorded at 24-hour intervals for a test period of 7 days. During this 7-day test period the total permissible drop in level, after allowing for evaporation, shall be determined by the Engineer.

In the event of appreciable leakage being evident at any stage of the filling or testing or in the event of the Engineer considering the final degree of water tightness to be unsatisfactory, the Contractor when ordered by the Engineer shall discontinue such filling or testing and shall, at his own expense, take approved steps immediately to rectify the leakage until a satisfactory test is obtained, which shall prove to the Engineer that water tightness has been obtained.

The costs of emptying the reservoir shall be borne by the Contractor. The water shall be discharged in a manner approved by the Engineer and shall be such that the Employer can utilise the water if he so desires.

The water shall not be used as a medium for additives to effect remedial work or to stop leaks.

The costs of retesting the structure for water tightness shall be borne by the Contractor.

CI 04.06 ENGINEER'S CERTIFICATE

The Contractor shall obtain a certificate from a registered professional engineer stating that the tank, stand, ladders, walkway, and tank lining have all been designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering standards. This certificate shall cover all the tanks installed under the contract, but shall also refer to each tank individually. No payment shall be made for any of the tanks until such time as when the certificate has been provided to the Engineer and the Engineer finds it to be legitimate and acceptable.

CI 05 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

Except where otherwise provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall provide all labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories, and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out such tests. The Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests and he shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer, in writing, prior to commencement of the test.

In the event of the plant or installation not passing the test, the Employer shall be at liberty to deduct from the Contract price all reasonable expenses incurred by the Employer or the Engineer attending the repeated test.

Whenever any installation or equipment is operated for testing or adjusting as provided for above, the Contractor shall operate the entire system for as long a period as may be required to prove satisfactory performance at all times in the occupied space served by that system for up to twenty-four hours a day continuously until the system is handed over.

The Contractor shall provide all labour and supervision required for such operation and the Employer may assign operating personnel as observers, but such observation time shall not be counted as instruction time.

After the complete installation of the system, all equipment shall be tested, adjusted and readjusted until it operates to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall submit certificates of tests carried out to prove the quality and proper functioning of all equipment and also certificates to be obtained from all relevant authorities and statutory bodies, etc.

CI 06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

The Contractor shall institute an approved quality assurance (QA) system which shall be submitted to the Employer or Engineer for approval. The records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the Contract and submitted to the Engineer at regular intervals as required.

CI 07 MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

CI 07.01 GENERAL

This part of the Contract shall include routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance and breakdown maintenance, as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, for the specified installations described under the Clause CI 01 of this specification.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be implemented by the Contractor.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance Contract shall be furnished with the prescribed manufacturer's guarantees.

CI 07.02 ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

The routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and the Specification related to this work.

TABLE CI 07.01 MAINTENANCE OF PRESSED STEEL TANKS

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE OF PRESSED STEEL TANKS AND ANCILLARIES	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system.	Monthly
2	Check for and repair all leaks. Report leaks.	Monthly
3	Corrosion protection.	Bi-annually
4	Test lightning protection.	Annually
5	Clean and sterilise pressed steel tank	Bi-annually

CI 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CI.01 Manufacture, supply and erection of a (specify size) kilolitre storage tank complete with (specify height) m high galvanized steel stand.....Unit: sum

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all materials, labour, equipment, transport, loading, off-loading, assembly and erection of the tank and stand, complete as scheduled with all pipework connections, level indicator, and accessories, stand, platform, walkway, hand railing ladders, holding down bolts, anchor bolts and grouting of base plates, as well as for all corrosion protection as specified, all in accordance with the specification, drawings and manufacturer's instructions.

Where the storage tank is erected on plinths or dwarf foundation walls and not on a steel stand, it shall be scheduled as such and the tendered rate shall include bearer beams as necessary and shown on the drawings.

Note: Excavations, footings, plinths, dwarf foundation walls, etc, will be measured and paid for elsewhere, as well as external GMS pipework, specials, and valves connecting to flanges.

CI.02 Disassembling, repairing, cleaning, painting, re-sealing, re-constructing and re-commissioning of a (specify size) kilo liter storage tank.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks disassembled, repaired, cleaned, painted, re-sealed, re-constructed and re-commissioned.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all materials, labour, equipment, transport, loading, off-loading, disassembly, assembly and erection of the tank, complete as scheduled with all pipe work

connections, level indicator, and accessories, stand, platform, walkway, hand railing ladders, holding down bolts, anchor bolts and grouting of base plates, as well as for all corrosion protection, cleaning and painting as specified (Clause CI 04.02), all in accordance with the specification, drawings and manufacturer's instructions.

CI.03 Lightning protection for (specify size) kilolitre storage tank.....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks for which lightning protection is provided.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for obtaining SABS approval of the drawings, and for installing and testing the lightning-protection system on the structure as specified on the approved drawings.

CI.04 Sterilization of (specify size) kilolitre storage tank Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks that are sterilized.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for sterilizing the structure as specified in Clause CI 04.04.

CI.05 Testing for water tightness (specify size) kilolitre storage tank.....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks tested for water tightness.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the provision of all labour, plant, materials and water for testing as necessary to carry out the test as specified. Only one test per tank shall be measured for payment, regardless of the number of tests carried out to determine water tightness as per Clause CI 04.05.

CI.06 Engineer's certificate Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks for which an Engineer's certificate is obtained.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for obtaining the certificate as specified in Clause CI 04.06 to the satisfaction of the Engineer. One certificate shall be obtained in respect of all the tanks supplied and installed under this contract."

CI.07 Installation of 'LevelDex' hydraulic level control valve.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of level control valves installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of all labour, plant, materials, equipment and installation for installing a 'LevelDex' hydraulic, differential area level control valve. Size to be specified.

CI.08 Dismantling and removal of existing tanks (description given).....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of all labour, plant, materials and transport necessary to dismantle and remove the existing tanks and steel stands from site.

CI.09 Supply, delivery and installation of a storage tank.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tanks manufactured, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all materials, labour, equipment, transport, loading, off-loading, assembly and erection of the tank, complete as scheduled with all pipe work connections, level indicator, and accessories, stand (including layerwork and concrete foundations), platform, walkway, hand railing ladders, holding down bolts, anchor bolts and grouting of base plates, as well as for all corrosion protection, cleaning and painting as specified (Clause CI 04.02), all in accordance with the specification, drawings and manufacturer's instructions.

CI.10 Painting of storage tank stand.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of storage tank structures painted.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring and furnishing all materials, tools, labour and equipment, corrosion protection, cleaning and painting as specified (Clause CI 04.02) of the steel tanks stand, including all pipe work, platform, walkway, hand railing, ladders, etc., all in accordance with the specification, drawings and engineer's instructions.

CI.11 Disassembling and removal from the site of a polyethylene tank and its steelstand.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of polyethylene storage tanks and steel stands decommissioned, and removed from site.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all materials, labour, equipment and transport necessary for the disassembly, loading, and off-loading, of the polyethylene tank and steel stand up to and including the dimensions listed in the schedule of quantities. The tendered rate includes the disassembling of all pipe work connections, level indicators, accessories, platforms, walkways, hand railing ladders, holding down bolts, anchor bolts base plates, and the removal of all materials off-site.

The size of the polyethylene storage tank and the height of the stand shall be specified in the Bill of Quantities.

CI.12 Supply and installation of permanent fixed access ladder for a pressed steel tank on a steel stand.....Unit : number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of access ladders supplied and installed on a pressed steel tank with dimensions up to and including the dimensions listed in the schedule of quantities.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the provision of all labour, materials and equipment necessary to provide, design and install a fixed ladder in accordance with SANS 10329 - The design and construction of sectional steel tanks for storage of liquids at or above ground level.

CI.13 Testing of the earth installation of a pressed steel tank on a steel standby a specialist contractorUnit: number

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the testing of the earth installation of a pressed steel sectional tank for the dimensions listed in the schedule of quantities. The testing shall be done by a specialist contractor approved by the Engineer.

The size of the sectional steel tank and the height of the stand shall be specified in the Bill of Quantities.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

CJ SITE KEEPING AND CLEANING

CONTENTS

CJ 01	SCOPE
CJ 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
CJ 03	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
CJ 04	MAINTENANCE
CJ 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CJ 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the cleaning and site keeping of the facilities at the various installations. The scope of work has been divided into:

- Site keeping; and
- Cleaning of offices and support facilities

CJ 01.01 SITE KEEPING

The area where site keeping is to be performed is the area included within the perimeter fence of the applicable installation and all areas falling within fenced-in residential properties (See Table CJ 01.01). Site keeping will include removal of rubble, removal of weeds, shrubs and other objects and cutting of the grass.

CJ 01.01.01 TABLE: OPEN AREAS

TABLE CJ 01.01.01: AREAS

NO	LOCATION	AREA	DESCRIPTION
1.	Boesmansnek, Land Port of Entry Open Area (Site Keeping)	37 700 m ²	All areas included within the perimeter fence and all areas falling within fenced in residential properties.
2.	Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry Open Area (Site Keeping)	29 000 m ²	All areas included within the perimeter fence and all areas falling within fenced in residential properties.
3.	Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry Open Area (Site Keeping)	13 000 m ²	All areas included within the perimeter fence and all areas falling within fenced in residential properties.

CJ 01.02**CLEANING OF OFFICES AND SUPPORT FACILITIES**

All offices, ablutions and support buildings are to be cleaned and maintained in a sanitary condition at all times. Table CJ 01.02 indicates the facilities where cleaning are to be executed.

TABLE CJ 01.02: BUILDINGS

No.	Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry:	Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:
1.	PUBLIC ABLUTION B	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK GARAGE	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK
2.	PUBLIC ABLUTION A	OLD GENERATOR STORE ROOM	OFFICE
3.	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK	DISABLED PUBLIC ABLUTION	PUBLIC ABLUTION
4.	SAPS ADMINISTRATION OFFICE	GENERATOR ROOM	GENERATOR ROOM
5.	GYMNASIUM	ADMINISTRATION BLOCK	CELL BLOCK OFFICES
6.	OIL STORE	GATE HOUSE	IT SERVER CONTAINER
7.	GENERATOR ROOM	CARPORT	SAPS CONTAINER
8.	CELL BLOCK BUILDING	BULK DIESEL TANKS	
9.	STOCK THEFT UNIT BUILDING	SOLID WASTE SKIP	
10.	STORE ROOM 1		
11.	PUBLIC ABLUTION C		
12.	STORE ROOM BUILDING		
13.	STABLES STORE ROOMS		
14.	STABLES		
15.	CARPORT		
16.	CARPORT		

CJ 01.03 ABLUTION EQUIPMENT AND CLEANING AGENTS

All offices, ablutions and support buildings are equipped with sanitizing and ablution equipment which must be maintained at all times. The following indicates the equipment that must be maintained in working order as well as providing of consumables such as toilet paper, hand-wash soap, air fresheners refills, sanitizer refills and plastic refuse bags for all waste bins and sanitary bins which will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

TABLE CJ 01.03: EQUIPMENT

Location:	Hand Dryers (No)	Air Freshener	Toilet Roll Holders	She Bins	Soap Dispensers	Urinal Sanitizers	Paper Dispenser
Boesmansnek Port of Entry	7	6	13	11	8	5	2
Ongeluksnek Port of Entry	2	4	7	5	5	4	2
Ramatselitso Port of Entry	3	3	6	6	5	2	2

CJ 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**CJ 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES**

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

CODE	DESCRIPTION
CKS 285-1971	Dispensers for paper towels
CKS 340-1979	Plastic Refuse Bags (Disposable)
SANS 1344:2009	Medium duty solvent detergent
SABS 1868	Gel detergent cleaner (non-abrasive)
SANS 1887-1:2008	Tissue paper Part 1: General requirements
SANS 1887-2:2008	Tissue paper Part 2: Toilet paper
SANS 1887-4:2008	Tissue paper Part 4: Paper towels
SANS 1924:2007	Toilet soaps intended for use in dispensers
SANS 60335-1:2007	Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety Part 1: General requirements
SANS 60335-2-67:2003	Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety Part 2-67: Particular requirements for floor treatment and floor cleaning machines, for industrial and commercial use

CJ 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

The Contractor shall be required to comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993, Construction Regulations 2004 and related regulations. Non-compliance with these regulations, in any way whatsoever, will be adequate reason for suspending the Works.

CJ 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

CJ 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

CJ 03 EXECUTION OF WORK

CJ 03.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall ensure that the necessary materials, skilled personnel, tools and equipment are available at all times to accommodate the site keeping and cleaning of the facilities.

The Contractor shall be responsible for cleaning ablution facilities as frequently as necessary to maintain them in a clean and healthy condition. The actions outlined serve only as a benchmark for the cleaning and maintaining of the facilities.

The ablution facilities and operational buildings will be kept clean during the operational periods of the Port of Entry as indicated below:

- (i) Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry are operational from 08:00 – 16:00.

Cleaning activities will include providing all cleaning agents and equipment necessary for cleaning.

Providing of consumables such as toilet paper, hand-wash soap, air fresheners refills, sanitizer refills and plastic refuse bags for all waste bins and sanitary bins will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

CJ 03.02 ABLUTIONS

Each ablution facility shall be equipped with the following equipment:

- 1) Hand Dryer
- 2) Stainless steel air freshener
- 3) Stainless steel toilet paper dispenser units
- 4) Stainless steel she bins
- 5) Stainless steel hand soap dispensers
- 6) Stainless steel sanitizer
- 7) Stainless steel paper towel dispenser
- 8) Stainless steel wall bin

CJ 03.02.01 Hand Dryer

The hand dryer unit shall comply with at least the following specifications:

- Blower Output: 450 Watt @ 20,000 rpm
- Air Heater Output: 900 W
- Air Flow Rate: 81 metres per second @ 100 mm from the air outlet nozzle
- Air Temperature: 55 °C @ 100 mm from the air outlet nozzle

The hand dryer units shall be of the wall-mounted kind and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

CJ 03.02.02 Air Freshener Doser

The stainless steel air freshener dosing units shall be battery-operated, wall mounted, and lockable. The device shall possess an adjustable automatic timer between at least 5 to 30 minutes and the aerosol spray shall be metered.

CJ 03.02.03 Toilet Paper Dispensing Unit

The stainless steel toilet paper dispensing units shall be able to accommodate two standard size 500 sheet single-ply toilet paper rolls and shall be lockable. The device shall be wall-mounted.

CJ 03.02.04 She Bin

One stainless steel she bin shall be supplied for each of the female ablutions. The she bins shall possess a self-closing lid and shall accommodate for plastic bag liners which can be removed and replaced with a new liner.

CJ 03.02.05 Hand Soap Dispenser

There shall be at least one stainless steel liquid hand soap dispenser per ablution. The liquid soap dispenser shall be of the wall-mounted kind. The dispenser shall dispense a metered amount of liquid soap.

CJ 03.02.06 Urinal Sanitiser Dispenser

There shall be one stainless steel, battery-operated, wall-mounted, urinal sanitiser dispenser per urinal.

CJ 03.02.07 Paper Towel Dispenser

The paper towel dispenser shall comply with CKS 285-1971. The unit shall be a Type 2, closed dispenser designed to dispense paper towels in sheets.

There shall be at least one stainless steel wall-mounted paper towel dispenser per ablution.

CJ 03.02.08 Wall Bin

There shall be one stainless steel wall bin per ablution. The wall bin shall possess a self-closing lid and shall accommodate plastic bag liners which may be removed and replaced with a new liner. The device shall be wall-mounted.

CJ 04 MAINTENANCE

CJ 04.01 GENERAL

The maintenance work to be performed under site keeping and cleaning shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in this specification.

Maintenance implies and shall include routine cleaning (which is the equivalent of routine preventative maintenance), routine preventative maintenance of site keeping and cleaning equipment, corrective cleaning (which is the equivalent of corrective maintenance), corrective maintenance of site keeping and cleaning equipment as well as breakdown maintenance of all site keeping and cleaning equipment.

The maintenance scope in terms of site keeping is set out in table CJ 01.01.01.

The maintenance scope in terms of cleaning is set out in table CJ 01.02

The maintenance scope in terms of equipment is set out in table CJ 01.03.

Monthly maintenance responsibilities for site keeping and cleaning of installations shall commence with access to the site. The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be implemented by the Contractor.

Remuneration for maintenance of site keeping and cleaning will be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for maintenance based on the point system, as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and in accordance with installation: A4: Cleaning and Site Keeping.

CJ 04.02

ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

The tasks related to routine preventative maintenance work shall include but not be limited to the general actions listed in table CJ 04.02.01 and CJ 04.02.01 and CJ 04.02.03 below.

Please note that the operational times for the Port of Entry are as follows

- (i) Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry are operational from 08:00 – 16:00.

TABLE CJ 04.02.01: SITE KEEPING

No	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE TASKS	FREQUENCY
1.	Cleaning out of and supply of black refuse bags to all waste bins in public areas.	At least daily
2.	Watering of plants, shrubs, grass and trees	Weekly
3.	Removal of weeds	Weekly
4.	Clearing of weeds and grass along the edges of paved areas.	Weekly
5.	Cutting of grass. <i>No grass to exceed the length of 50 mm.</i>	Monthly
6.	Cutting of grass at residential units. <i>No grass to exceed the length of 30 mm.</i>	Weekly
7.	Restore lawns	Monthly
8.	Trimming of dense shrubs.	2 monthly
9.	Fertilisation of lawns	Quarterly

No	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE TASKS	FREQUENCY
10.	Fertilisation of flower beds and trees	Quarterly
11.	Removal of undesirable shrubs	Quarterly
12.	Trimming of trees where branches cause obstruction.	Quarterly
13.	Collecting of litter and foreign objects.	Continuous

TABLE CJ 04.02.02: CLEANING OF OFFICES AND SUPPORT FACILITIES

	ACTION	FREQUENCY
1.	Cleaning of floors in public areas and open-plan offices	Daily (before opening of port of entry)
2.	Cleaning of countertops and under counter shelves in public areas and open plan offices.	Daily (before opening of port of entry)
3.	Emptying waste baskets in offices and service buildings	Daily
4.	Cleaning of office floors	Daily
5.	Vacuum carpets	Weekly
6.	Clean carpets	Six Monthly
7.	Washing of windows and dusting of window sills and ledges	Weekly
8.	Clean and polish all fittings	Weekly
9.	Washing of interior and exterior walls	Monthly
10.	Dusting of the interior of the building to remove dust and spider webs	Weekly
8.	Clean and polish all vinyl floors	Monthly

TABLE CJ 04.02.03: CLEANING OF ABLUTION FACILITIES

	ACTION	FREQUENCY
1.	Cleaning and ensuring that the ablution facilities are in a sanitary condition	Continuous
2.	Washing and cleaning of floors	Daily
3.	Empty and clean all waste receptacles	Daily
4.	Clean all bowls, basins and urinals	Daily

	ACTION	FREQUENCY
5.	Clean and polish all fittings and mirrors	Daily
6.	Washing and cleaning out of the bins	Twice weekly
7.	Washing of windows and dusting of window sills, ledges, pipes and fittings	Weekly
8.	Washing of walls	Weekly
9.	Dusting of the interior of the building to remove dust and spider webs	Weekly

CJ 04.03**SITE KEEPING AND CLEANING EQUIPMENT**

All site-keeping and cleaning equipment will be supplied by the Contractor and shall be maintained in perfect working order for the duration of the Contract period. Remuneration for the provision of cleaning equipment will be deemed included in the monthly tendered monthly payment for maintenance based on the point system, as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

CJ 04.03.01**Grass, Shrub and Tree Cutting Equipment**

A distinction will be made amongst 4 different types of grass, shrub and tree-cutting equipment:

1. Light-duty grass and shrub cutter (Weed Eater)

The light-duty grass and shrub cutter shall be similar to a light duty Brushcutter and comply with the following:

Nylon or blade head;
 Minimum displacement of 40.2 cm³;
 Minimum power output of 1.6 kW; and
 Length of 1.77 m.

2. Heavy-duty shrub and tree cutter

The heavy-duty shrub and tree cutter shall be similar to a heavy-duty Brushcutter and comply with the following:

Blade head;
 Minimum displacement of 51.7 cm³;
 Minimum power output of 2.4 kW;
 Length of 1.69 m.

3. Lawnmower for small lawns

The lawn mower for small lawns to be used at the residential areas shall comply with at least the following:

Walk behind 4 stroke petrol self propelled rotary mower;
 Power output of 4 kW;
 422 mm cutting width;
 200 mm heavy-duty sealed ball bearing wheels; and
 54-litre polymer catcher with metal lining.

4. Lawn mower for large lawns

The lawn mower for large lawns shall comply with at least the following:

Walk behind 4 stroke petrol self propelled rotary mower;
Power output of 12 kW;
750 mm cutting width;
Rubber wheels.

CJ 04.03.02 Vacuum Cleaner

Vacuum cleaners shall be wet and dry and comply with at least the following:

Tank capacity: 25 litre
Cable length: 10 m
Airflow rate: 56 litre per second

CJ 04.03.03 Carpet Cleaner

Carpet cleaners shall comply with at least the following:

Tank capacity fresh water: 40 litre
Tank capacity dirty water: 25 litre
Cable length: 10 m
Suction motor: 2 x 1250 W;
Airflow rate: 2 x 60 litre per second
Pump delivery: 2.8 litre per minute @ 3 bar

Carpet cleaners shall be similar to Wetrok's Extravac 400.

CJ 04.03.04 Mop and bucket system

A two bucket mopping system shall be provided and be fitted with metal wringers. The mops provided shall be suitable for use with the buckets provided.

Mop and bucket systems shall be similar to Wetroks Socar L40.

CJ 04.03.05 Window cleaning kit

Window cleaners shall have a telescopic handle with a length of 0.5 to 3 m. It shall be possible to fit squeegees and brushes to the telescopic handle as required in order to clean windows. A bucket with capacity of at least 10 liter shall be provided that is suitable for use with the window cleaning kit.

CJ 04.03.06 Sign boards

Sign boards shall be yellow in colour, free standing and printed on both sides. It shall clearly indicate the dangerous situation.

CJ 04.04 CONSUMABLES FOR SITE KEEPING AND CLEANING

Provision of consumables will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Remuneration for provision of consumables will be deemed included in the monthly tendered monthly payment for maintenance based on the point system, as described in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

CJ 04.04.01 Refuse Bags

Refuse bags shall comply with CKS 340-1979.

CJ 04.04.02 Toilet Paper

Toilet paper shall comply with SANS 1887 Part 1 & Part 2.

Toilet paper provided shall be single-ply, soft with a nominal number of 500 sheets per roll and a nominal outside diameter of 125 mm.

CJ 04.04.03 Toilet soap for hand soap dispensers

Toilet soap shall comply with SANS 1924:2007 – Toilet soaps intended for use in dispensers.

Toilet soap shall be Type 1, liquid toilet soap and shall be perfumed. The toilet soap shall be suitable for use in the hand soap dispensers provided.

CJ 04.04.04 Biological detergent for urinal dispenser

The urinal dispenser detergent may not contain any disinfectants. A biological detergent shall be used. The biological detergent shall have an EU ECO-LABEL accreditation and shall be endorsed by Indalo Yethu (South Africa's official environmental campaign)

The biological detergent shall be similar to nu flush from innu-science.

CJ 04.04.05 Air freshener

Air freshener shall be supplied that is suitable for use in the air freshener doser.

Air fresheners shall be similar to Technical Concepts Neutrallle Metered Aerosols (available from Steiner Hygiene).

CJ 04.04.06 SHE bin liners

SHE bin liners shall be provided that are suitable for use in the she bins.

CJ 04.04.07 Paper towels

Paper towels shall comply with SANS 1887 Part 1 & Part 4.

Paper towels provided shall be supplied in packets of folded towels that can be dispensed from the supplied paper towel dispenser without sticking or other undue difficulty.

CJ 04.04.08 Wall bin liners

Wall bin liners shall be provided that is suitable for use in the wall bins.

CJ 04.04.10 Biological detergents for cleaning of ablutions and public areas

Disinfectants and Detergent-disinfectants shall not be allowed to clean ablutions and public areas. A biological detergent shall be used. The biological detergent shall have an EU ECO-LABEL accreditation and shall be endorsed by Indalo Yethu (South Africa's official environmental campaign)

The biological detergent shall be similar to nu kleen smell from innu-science.

CJ 04.04.11 Medium duty solvent detergent

Medium duty solvent detergents shall comply with SANS 1344:2009 Medium duty solvent detergent. It shall be used in cases where surfaces, walls and floors are soiled with oil, grease or similar soils.

A biological detergent may be used as an alternative where surfaces are soiled with oil, grease or similar soils. The biological detergent shall have an EU ECO-LABEL accreditation and shall be endorsed by Indalo Yethu (South Africa's official environmental campaign)

CJ 04.04.12 Other

Brooms, dusters and muslin cloths shall be seen as consumables.

The Contractor shall furthermore be responsible for the supply of batteries for all battery operated equipment, e.g. the urinal sanitizer and the air freshener dozer.

CJ 04.05 SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT

All solid waste that is generated as a result of site keeping and cleaning shall be managed in accordance with specification CG Solid Waste.

CJ 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

CJ.05.01	<u>HAND DRYERS</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
-----------------	---------------------------	-------------------

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CJ.05.02	<u>AIR FRESHENER DOSERS</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
-----------------	------------------------------------	-------------------

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CJ.05.03	<u>TOILET PAPER DISPENSING UNITS</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
-----------------	---	-------------------

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CJ.05.04	<u>SHE BINS</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
-----------------	------------------------	-------------------

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CJ.05.05	<u>HAND SOAP DISPENSER</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
-----------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CJ.05.06	<u>URINAL SANITIZER</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour and installation and commissioning of the urinal sanitizer. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.		
CJ.05.07	<u>PAPER TOWEL DISPENSER</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.		
CJ.05.08	<u>WALL BIN</u>	<u>Unit</u> No
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, labour, installation and commissioning of the unit. The unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.		

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

DA BOREHOLE PUMP SYSTEMS

CONTENTS

DA 01	SCOPE
DA 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
DA 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
DA 04	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
DA 05	GENERAL SPECIFICATION FOR ELECTRIC MOTORS
DA 06	TESTING AND COMMISSIONING
DA 07	MAINTENANCE
DA 08	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DA 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the decommissioning, removal, repair and reconditioning, installation, testing, commissioning and maintenance of borehole pumping equipment, motor control devices and low-voltage cables. It also includes the pump testing of all boreholes to determine the borehole yield and optimum use of each borehole. The function of borehole pump systems shall be delivery of raw water at a specified flow rate and head to the required location.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

DA 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

DA 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| BS 5316, Part 1 | - Acceptance tests for centrifugal, mixed flow and axial pumps |
| SANS 948 | - Three-phase induction motors |
| SANS 1222 | - Enclosures for electrical equipment (classified according to the degree of protection that the enclosure provides) |
| BS 4999 | - General requirements for rotating electrical machines |
| ISO 281/1 | - Rolling bearings – dynamic load ratings and rating life. |

DA 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2014 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

DA 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DA 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DA 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

The Contractor shall at the start of the Contract be given all available as-built information and operating and maintenance manuals.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of an inventory list and operating and maintenance manuals.

This shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

DA 04 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

DA 04.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

At the start of the repair and maintenance contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the details specified in the Particular Specification.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve.

All materials and equipment shall comply fully with the requirements as specified for each installation.

The work required shall include, but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Removal of existing equipment;
- (b) Installation of temporary pumps;
- (c) Pump testing to determine safe yield;
- (d) Ground-water sampling;
- (e) Compilation of borehole recommendation report.

The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee with a defects liability period of twelve (12) months from date of completion of repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repair work items for the borehole pump systems shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Pump testing of boreholes
- (b) Repair of existing structures
- (c) Repair/replacement of electrical components.

DA 04.02**CLASSIFICATION OF BOREHOLES**

The boreholes shall be inspected by the Contractor and the Engineer to confirm the classification of the boreholes in accordance with the guidelines below:

CLASS I	CLASS II	CLASS III	CLASS IV
Existing pump and motor in working order	Existing pump and motor require repair	Not equipped	Not equipped
Has connecting pipework	Has connecting pipework	Has connecting pipework	No connecting pipework
REPAIR WORK			
Routine maintenance	Repair pump and motor	Pump test Replace pump and motor	Abandon borehole

The above classification shall be used to determine the degree of repair work required.

DA 04.03**PUMP TESTING OF BOREHOLES**

This section covers the requirements of the pump testing of the boreholes.

DA 04.03.01**Construction**

It will be the responsibility of the Contractor to arrive on site with all equipment and materials required to complete the work without interruption.

The Contractor shall provide suitable plant to enable the installed pumping equipment to be removed and reinstalled. This includes the removal and reinstallation of motorised pumps and may also include the recovery of existing pumping equipment previously lowered into a borehole.

(a) Arrival-on-site actions

The Contractor shall firstly establish whether or not the borehole is equipped. If so, the Contractor will be required to:

- (1) Remove the equipment, taking care not to damage either the equipment or the installation,

- (2) inspect the equipment for defects, and
- (3) note down all particulars regarding the equipment and the installation.

The latter shall include but not be limited to the make and type of pump (and motor if motorised), the depth to which the pump was installed, the power rating of the motor and the diameter, length and quantity of pump column sections.

The Contractor shall next establish whether there are any other boreholes in the vicinity that need to be tested. Should this be the case, the following information shall be gathered and recorded for each borehole:

- (1) The straight-line distance (in metres) between each such borehole to be tested;
- (2) whether the borehole is equipped, open or sealed and, if equipped,
- (3) whether the installation is operational or not.

Depending on the degree of access available to such a borehole, the Contractor shall improve the access until it is adequate to reach the borehole and establish whether there is water in the borehole and if so, measure and record:

- (1) The depth to the ground-water rest level;
- (2) the height of the borehole collar above ground level, and
- (3) the depth of the borehole.

The final activities to be carried out prior to the actual installation of the test pump into the borehole to be tested shall comprise measuring and recording:

- (1) The diameter of the borehole;
- (2) the depth of the borehole as determined by means of a weighted line or plumb bob, and
- (3) the depth to the ground-water rest level in the borehole, with reference to a date level.

(b) Test pump installation

The conduit tube shall be attached and secured to the first section of pump column behind the pump element and the test pump installed to the required depth, attaching and securing the conduit tube to the riser main every 2 to 3 metre. If the pump installation depth has not been specified by the Engineer beforehand, then the depth must be determined on the basis of the guidelines provided in table DA 04.02.01/1.

The Contractor will be remunerated for the installation of a test pump per linear metre of depth installed at the rate tendered as set out in the Schedule of Quantities.

TABLE DA 04.02.01/1 GUIDELINES FOR TEST PUMP INSTALLATION DEPTH IF NOT SPECIFIED

DEPTH OF WATER IN BOREHOLE	TEST PUMP INSTALLATION DEPTH
Less than 5 m	Do not install the test pump
Between 5 m and 30 m	± 2 m above the bottom of the borehole
Between 30 m and 60 m	± 3 m above the bottom of the borehole
Between 60 m and 90 m	± 4 m above the bottom of the borehole
More than 90 m	± 5 m above the bottom of the borehole
<p>NOTE:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Depth of water in borehole is calculated as the difference between the total depth of the borehole and the depth to the ground-water rest level as measured. 2. \pm denotes a variation of not more than 0,5 m either way. 	

(c) Equipment set-up and pre-test actions

Where possible, the discharge pipe must be laid in a downhill direction from the borehole to be tested, provided this will take the pipe in the direction of or past another borehole located in the vicinity of the borehole to be tested. In such instances, lay the discharge pipe in a downhill direction that will take its furthest end as far as possible away from any other borehole in the vicinity.

In field situations where the terrain is extremely flat, the length of the discharge pipe shall be extended from 50 m to at least 300 m if any possibility exists that the discharged water may infiltrate to the ground-water resource within the radius of influence of the test. The dip meter should be inserted into the installed conduit tube and run down this tube to the bottom. Make sure that it passes freely down the full length of the tube. If the dip meter used is not graduated to an accuracy of 0,01 m, the position is to be marked on the dip meter cable indicating the depth to the ground-water rest level, and the end of the graduated tape attached at this position on the cable ensuring that the zero mark of the graduated tape corresponds exactly to this mark. Slowly lower the dip meter and graduated tape down the conduit tube, in the process securing the tape to the dip meter cable every 2 to 3 metre. Ensure that there is no slack between each point where the tape is secured to the dip meter cable. Also make sure that the dip meter cable and graduated tape combination passes freely along the full length of the conduit tube.

The Contractor will be remunerated for this work per set-up at the rate tendered for one such activity as set out in the Schedule of Quantities.

(d) Final pre-test measurements

The Contractor shall ensure that all the basic information required on the field data sheet is collected and recorded as completely as possible. The basic information data entry fields can be used as a checklist for information to be measured/collected and recorded. The Contractor shall not guess any information which has not been measured.

Payment for this work shall be incorporated into the payment for data recording as described below.

(e) Data recording

(i) Discharge measurements

The measurement of discharge (yield or pumping rate) must be consistently accurate and reliable and shall be appropriate to meet this requirement. Where volumetric calculation methods are applied, time will be measured using a stopwatch and the container volume must be accurately known. The volumetrically measured yields recorded on the field data sheets shall be based on the average obtained from a set of three sequential measurements. Guidelines for the number and periodicity of discharge rate measurements for each type of test are given in table DA 04.02.01/2.

TABLE DA 04.02.01/2 NUMBER OF PERIODICITY OF DISCHARGE RATE MEASUREMENTS

TYPE OF TEST	DISCHARGE RATE MEASUREMENTS	
	NUMBER	PERIODICITY
Calibration test	2 per step	At ± 5 and ± 10 minutes into each step
Stepped discharge test	5 per step	At ± 5 , ± 15 , ± 30 , ± 60 and ± 90 minutes into each step
Constant discharge test	See periodicity column	At ± 5 , ± 15 , ± 30 , ± 60 , ± 90 and ± 120 minutes into test and every 60 minutes thereafter for the full duration of pumping

(ii) Water-level measurements

Rigid guidelines for the periodicity of water-level measurements for each type of test are given in table DA 04.02.01/3. This information can be found duplicated on the field data sheets which must be filled in as a record of all data collection activities carried out for a pumping test. The type of water-level measurement values required to be recorded on the field data sheets are the actual (or true) draw down values. These values represent measurements which reflect the depth of the water level below the ground-water rest level depth, ie which already take into account the ground-water rest level depth below the reference measuring point. It shall be noted that the more basic type of measurement which reports the depth of the dynamic water level as a distance below the reference measuring point, ie which combines the depth of the water level below the ground-water rest level depth and the depth of the ground-water rest level below the reference measuring point, gives only an apparent (or false) draw down value. All water-level measurements must be measured to an accuracy of at least 0,01 m (10 mm). The water-level data shall be plotted on the semi-logarithmic graph paper provided with each set of field data sheets. The plotting of the data shall be done as the test proceeds, ie each water-level measurement shall be plotted on the graph as soon as possible after measuring. The field data sheets and accompanying water-level graphs shall be shown to authorised supervisory personnel at request and shall be up-to-date at the time of such request.

(iii) Other information

The Contractor shall also record any extraordinary observations made during the test. These may include:

- (1) Changes in the colour of the discharged water;
- (2) changes in the turbidity of the discharged water;
- (3) the presence of air in the discharged water, and
- (4) rainfall events which occur during a test.

Remuneration for all data collection and recording activities by the Contractor in the course of a pumping test shall be incorporated into an hourly rate as set out in the Schedule of Quantities.

TABLE DA 04.02.01/3 PERIODICITY (IN MINUTES) OF WATER-LEVEL MEASUREMENTS DURING PUMPING TESTS

CALIBRATION TEST	STEPPED DISCHARGE TEST	CONSTANT DISCHARGE TEST	RECOVERY TEST
1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
7	7	7	7
9	9	9	9
12	12	12	12
15	15	15	15
	20	20	20
The above periodicity (measured in minutes after the start of each increased pumping rate) must be followed for each step of the calibration test	25	25	25
	30	30	30
	40	40	40
	50	50	50
	60	60	60
	70	70	70
	80	80	80
	90	90	90
	100	120	120
		150	150
	The above periodicity (measured in minutes after the start of each increased pumping rate) must be followed for each step of the stepped discharge test	180	180
		210	210
		240	240
		Every 60 minutes to end of pumping	Every 60 minutes to end of recovery

(f) Test pumping of boreholes

The Contractor may be required to test existing "older" boreholes which may or may not already be equipped with pumping installations.

Test pumping serves two primary objectives. The first of these is an assessment of the productive capacity (yield potential) of the borehole. The second objective addresses the productivity of the ground-water resource. These objectives are met by various types of borehole tests performed separately and often sequentially. These tests are identified as:

- (i) the slug test
- (ii) the calibration test
- (iii) the stepped discharge test
- (iv) the constant discharge test
- (v) the recovery test.

Factors determining which of these tests shall be performed include:

- The potential yield of the borehole, and
- the amount of water which it will be required to supply.

(i) The slug test

The slug test provides a rapid means of assessing the potential yield of especially low yielding (less than 1 litre) boreholes (Vivier *et al*, 1995). The results may indicate whether it is feasible and warranted to perform other tests on the borehole. As with any of the other tests, a slug test can be executed in any borehole and not necessarily only newly drilled boreholes.

The test involves measuring the water-level response in a borehole to the rapid displacement of water therein. This displacement might cause either -

- (1) a rise in water level, as would result from the introduction of a slug below the rest water level, or
- (2) a drop in water level, as would be caused by the removal of a quantity of water from the borehole.

In instances where a slug is introduced, the water level will recede to its original level. The sudden removal of a quantity of water from the borehole will cause the water level to rise to its original level. The rate of recession or rise provides an indication of the yield of the borehole. In qualitative terms the more rapid this is, the higher the potential yield of the borehole.

(ii) The calibration test

A calibration test requires that water be pumped from the borehole at three or more different rates over short (15 minutes) sequential periods. The response of the water level to each known pumping rate is measured and recorded. The calibration test provides a means of assessing the yield potential of borehole according to the magnitude of the water-level decline associated with each pumping rate. This information is used to select appropriate pumping rates at which to perform a stepped discharge test or a pumping rate at which to perform a constant discharge test.

(iii) The stepped discharge test

Also known as a step draw down test, this test is performed to assess the productivity of a borehole. It also serves to more clearly define the optimum yield at which the borehole can be subjected to constant discharge testing if required. The test involves pumping the borehole at three or more sequentially higher pumping rates, each maintained for an equal length of time, generally not less than 60 minutes and seldom longer than 120 minutes. A step length of 100 minutes is recommended. The magnitude of the water-level draw down in the borehole in response to each of these pumping rates must be measured and recorded in accordance with a prescribed time schedule. The actual pumping rate maintained during each "step" must also be measured and recorded. As a rule, the rate of water-level recovery for a period of time immediately following the period of pumping should also be monitored according to the same time schedule as during pumping.

(iv) The constant discharge test

A constant discharge test is performed to assess the productivity of the aquifer according to its response to the abstraction of water. This response can be analysed to provide information in regard to the hydraulic properties of the ground-water system and arrive at an optimum yield for the medium to long-term utilisation of the borehole. This test entails pumping the borehole at a single pumping rate which is kept constant for an extended period of time. The test duration shall not be less than 12 hours and, in some instances, might last up to 72 hours or more. The duration is generally determined by the importance which is attached to the borehole and ground-water resource not only in terms of its yield potential but also in terms of its intended application.

The pumping rate is set at a yield which it is considered the borehole and ground-water system will be able to maintain for the entire planned duration of the test and, in the process, utilising better than 70 per cent but not exhausting the available draw down. It is critical that the pumping rate during the entire duration of the test be kept as constant as possible. The draw down in water level in the borehole during the course of the test is again measured and recorded according to a prescribed time schedule. In the case of this type of test, it is imperative that water-level measurements be made during the recovery period following the end of pumping.

(v) The recovery test

This test provides an indication of the ability of a borehole and ground-water system to recover from the stress of abstraction. This ability can again be analysed to provide information with regard to the hydraulic properties of the ground-water system and arrive at an optimum yield for the medium to long-term utilisation of the borehole. Although referred to as a test, it rather represents a period of monitoring activity following a period of pumping. The rate at which the water level in the tested borehole (or any other borehole affected by the abstraction) recovers towards its starting level (the ground-water rest level before pumping started) is monitored in this period. The duration of this monitoring is generally equal to that of the preceding period of pumping unless the rate of recovery is sufficiently rapid so that the starting water level is reached in a shorter period of time.

(g) General approach and methodology

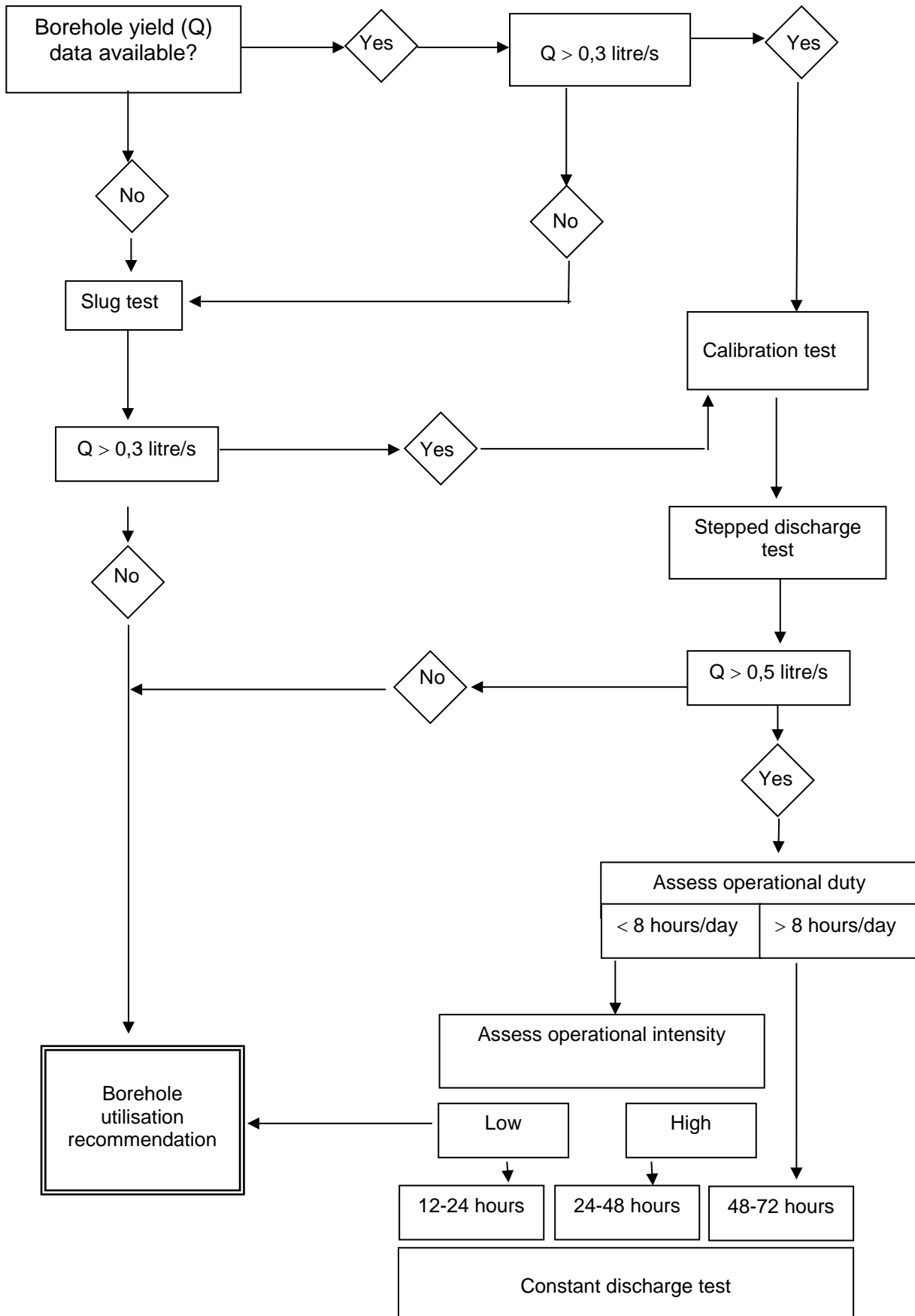
The Engineer will formulate a test pumping schedule for each borehole. The flow diagram presented overleaf provides an indication of the considerations which determine the scope of test pumping based on a logical decision-making process.

All project-related test pumping activities will also be carried out under the direct supervision of the Engineer. The execution of a pumping test in accordance with established scientific protocols must be undertaken by a suitably experienced and equipped testing contractor. The South African Bureau of Standards (SANS) is finalising a Standard Code of Practice titled *The test-pumping of water boreholes*. A draft of this Standard has been considered in the compilation of this document. It will be the task of the Engineer to evaluate and analyse the data, draw conclusions with regard to the productivity of the borehole and the aquifer, and make recommendations with regard to a suitable operating schedule for the borehole and the optimum exploitation of the ground-water resource.

Both the practical and analytical aspects of test pumping benefit greatly from prior information regarding the borehole and the aquifer which it taps into. This information is gleaned during the drilling and the construction of the borehole. It includes knowledge of:

- (1) The amount of water blown out of the borehole during drilling operations;
- (2) the depth(s) at which water was struck in the borehole;
- (3) the construction of the borehole in terms of the setting of especially perforated (slotted) casing, and
- (4) the nature of the rock formation at the depth(s) where water was struck.

This information will be communicated to the testing contractor by the Engineer prior to the testing of any borehole.



The Contractor shall keep a full record of the test pumping which is undertaken and submit the record on completion of the test. This record must include the following basic information:

- (1) The depth to water level before the start of testing;
- (2) the depth at which the test pump was installed;
- (3) the type, make and model of the test pump used;
- (4) the pumping rate as measured at regular intervals during the test, and
- (5) the water level in the borehole as measured according to a prescribed time schedule both during and after pumping.

The Contractor must be sufficiently well-equipped to gather this information with acceptable accuracy.

The rationale behind the flow diagram is explained as follows. A slug test should be performed on a borehole in instances where there is no prior indication of its possible yield. The result of the slug test will indicate whether additional test pumping is warranted. A slug test shall also be performed in instances where the possible yield of a borehole from prior information is indicated to be less than 0,3 litre/s. The result of the slug test will again indicate whether additional test pumping is warranted. In instances where the possible yield of a borehole from prior information is indicated to be equal to or greater than 0,3 litre/s, then a calibration test followed by a stepped discharge test shall be performed.

The result of the stepped discharge test will indicate whether further test pumping in the form of a constant discharge test is warranted or whether the borehole is judged to be sufficiently weak (potential production yield less than 0,5 litre/s) to make a utilisation recommendation without further testing. Should the result of the stepped discharge test indicate that a constant discharge is warranted, then the Engineer will need to make an assessment of the possible operational duty to which the borehole might be subjected.

The operational duty describes the number of hours per day for which the borehole must operate in order to meet the local water demand. By implication, the potential production yield of the borehole must be compared to the water demand. In qualitative terms, a lower yielding borehole would need to operate for a longer period per day to meet a given demand than a higher yielding borehole would need to. Further, the water demand is often too great for even a high yielding borehole pumping continuously to meet. The flow diagram indicates, however, that any borehole which reveals the potential to yield more than 0,5 litre/s and which will operate for a period in excess of 8 hours per day must be subjected to a constant discharge test of 48 to 72 hours duration. A borehole which does not fit this category requires an assessment of its possible operational intensity.

The operational intensity describes the yield at which a higher yielding borehole must operate in order to meet a water demand in a pumping period of eight hours or less per day. By implication, a high operational intensity requires the borehole to be pumped at a yield approaching its maximum, whereas a low operational intensity will place less stress on the borehole. These considerations will indicate whether a 24 to 48 hour or a 12 to 24 hour duration constant discharge test respectively will be performed.

The final step in the flow diagram requires the Engineer to make a borehole utilisation recommendation.

DA 04.02.02 Equipment and materials

This represents the test unit and all ancillary equipment and materials required to accurately and efficiently perform borehole testing. Details are provided below.

(a) Test unit

The test unit shall comprise a positive displacement (PD) type pump element and a pump head driven by a motor fitted with an accelerator, gearbox and clutch. The unit must be in good working order and capable of maintaining a minimum of 72 hours of continuous operation.

The unit must be capable of delivering water at a rate in excess of the expected maximum yield of the borehole to be tested. It may be acceptable under certain circumstances to employ a submersible pump for testing purposes. This must, however, be identified in the tender enquiry document. It is imperative that any submersible pump used for testing purposes be equipped with a non-return valve fitted at the bottom of the pump column (rising main).

(b) Discharge piping

Discharge piping comprises both the pipe (rising main or pump column) which brings the water to surface and the pipe (discharge hose) used to lead the pumped water away from the borehole being tested. The Contractor shall supply sufficient rising main to set the test pump at a depth of at least 100 m below the surface. It may, however, be required under certain circumstances to set the test pump at a greater depth in the borehole. Where necessary it shall be discussed with the Engineer prior to the installation of the test pump. The pump column must be of uniform diameter throughout. The Contractor shall also provide at least 50 m discharge piping. This must be free of leaks for its entire length. It may again, under certain circumstances, be required to discharge the pumped water at a point further away than 50 m (possibly in excess of 300 m) from the borehole being tested. In such instances, a similar procedure to that discussed above in regard to the rising main must be followed.

(c) Discharge measuring equipment/Instrumentation

This equipment/instrumentation must be adequate to accurately measure the pumping rate within the range of yields expected from successful project boreholes. If volumetric methods are used, a stopwatch for measuring time to an accuracy of at least one-tenth of a second is required. The full capacity of each container shall be determined accurately. The Contractor shall also ensure that a container stands level when used for discharge measurements. Guidelines regarding the use of different size containers for volumetric discharge rate measurements in specific yield ranges are given in table DA 04.02.02/1. Other acceptable instruments that may be used for discharge measuring are: (1) an orifice weir and (2) a flow meter. The use of these instruments is subject to various application criteria.

(i) Orifice weirs

These must be installed in a horizontal position at the end of the discharge pipe. The orifice plate opening must be sharp, clean, bevelled to 45 degrees and have a diameter less than 80 per cent of the diameter of the approach

tube to which it is fixed. The orifice plate must be vertical and centred on the end of the approach tube. There must be no leakage around the perimeter of the orifice plate mounting. The piezometer tube must not contain entrained air bubbles at the time of pressure head measurement. The latter measurement must be at least three times the diameter of the orifice.

TABLE DA 04.02.02/1 YIELD RANGE VERSUS CONTAINER SIZE
FOR VOLUMETRIC MEASUREMENTS

YIELD RANGE	CONTAINER SIZE
Less than 2 litre/s	20 litre
2 litre/s to 5 litre/s	50 litre
5 litre/s to 20 litre/s	210 litre
20 litre/s to 30 litre/s	500 litre
30 litre/s to 50 litre/s	1000 litre
More than 50 litre/s	Other suitable methods

The orifice weir equipment must be calibrated for various combinations of approach tube and orifice diameters so that pressure head readings can be converted to accurate discharge measurements.

(ii) Flow meters

Flow meters must be calibrated and of similar diameter to that of the discharge pipe. The latter must be straight and of uniform diameter for a distance of four times the diameter of the pipe before the position of the meter. There must be no turbulent flow or entrained air in the discharge pipe before the meter. The discharged water must be free of solid material carried in suspension.

It is recognised that some water leakage will generally occur especially at the borehead during pumping. This is acceptable provided that: (1) such leakage does not interfere with any water-level monitoring and (2) the total amount of leakage to the end of the discharge pipeline does not exceed one per cent of the pumping rate as measured at the end of this pipeline.

(d) Water-level measuring equipment/instrumentation

The Contractor shall provide at least three water-level measuring devices which are each capable of providing an accuracy of at least 0,01 m (10 mm) and are of sufficient length to match the pump installation depth. If ungraduated electrical contact meters (dip meters) are used for this purpose, each such instrument must be equipped with a measuring tape of an acceptable length and approved standard and which is graduated to an accuracy of at least 0,01 m (10 mm). These instruments must be in good working order and number at least one spare for each two on site.

The Contractor shall further provide conduit tubing of sufficient length to match the pump installation depth. The diameter of this tube must be large enough (minimum 15 mm) to allow free movement of the dip meter probe and cable therein. The tubing must be made of material strong enough to withstand reasonable pressure on its sidewall which might cause a constriction. The tube must be open at its lower end to allow the free entrance of water into the tube. This is facilitated by perforating the

bottom section of the conduit tube sidewall. Precautions shall also be taken to prevent the dip meter probe from passing beyond the bottom end of the conduit tube and, as a result of entanglement, not able to be withdrawn.

(e) Other materials

No pumping test should commence without field data sheets on which to record all data and information relevant to the test pumping activities in an acceptable format. These can either be provided by the Contractor or the Engineer.

DA 04.02.03

Ground-water sampling

(a) Sampling for macro-element analysis

The Institute for Water Quality Studies of the DWAF, in conjunction with the Department of Health, commenced in May 1996 with the compilation of guidelines addressing all aspects of water sample collection aimed at routinely establishing the quality thereof for drinking purposes. Until such time as these guidelines become available, the following recommendations in this regard should be followed.

A water sample shall be collected from the end of the discharge pipeline no sooner than 15 minutes before the scheduled end of a pumping test, whether of a calibration, stepped discharge or constant discharge nature. This will ensure that a water sample is collected in case testing does not proceed to include either one or both of the latter two types of test. The standard amount of sample normally collected is in a clean, sterilised plastic bottle of capacity 240 millilitre or larger and equipped with a watertight screw-on cap. This is the standard issue sample bottle provided by the DWAF. Depending on the analysing laboratory's requirements, however, a sample of up to two litres in volume may have to be collected. The Engineer will advise on this matter in instances where the Contractor is required to collect samples, in which case the Engineer will provide ampoules containing preservative chemicals if required. All other materials such as sample bottles, tie-on labels and sample custody forms are to be provided by the Contractor. The mandatory sample custody form DW45 must be completed for each sample collected. Note that the code MACRO1 in Instruction 8 ("analyse for") of form DW45 defines the macro-element analysis.

(i) Sampling procedure

Wash hands thoroughly and rinse the sample bottle three times with the water to be sampled, ie the water being pumped from the borehole. Fill the bottle so that a space of five to ten millimetres is left at the top. Add the preservative as instructed in (ii).

(ii) Sample preservation

Gently tap the bottom of an ampoule of preservative on a firm surface so that all the chemical flows to below the constriction. Hold the ampoule firmly upright with thumbs placed either side of the constriction, flex off the neck, turn the ampoule upside down and place it in the bottle together with the broken-off neckpiece. Firmly screw on the cap of the sample bottle after rinsing it well with water from the borehole. Shake the capped sampled bottle well. **Caution shall be exercised when handling the preservative, since this chemical is poisonous.**

(iii) Sample custody

Fill in the information requested on the tie-on label and attach this securely to the neck of the sample bottle. Place the sample bottle in a cooler or ice-box and keep it stored under chilled conditions. Complete the sample custody form (DWAF form DW45). The water sample and its custody form will be collected by the Engineer. The above procedures shall be adhered to and complied with to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

(b) Sampling for environmental isotope analysis

Use a new, clean, one-litre polyethylene bottle with watertight screw-on cap for routine stable (hydrogen and/or oxygen) isotope and tritium analysis. Take the same basic precautions as for macro-element analysis. Ensure that the water is as clean as possible, but do not filter or add anything. Turbidity does not matter. Rinse the bottle three times with the water to be sampled, fill till overflowing and tighten cap well. Turn bottle upside down and squeeze to test for tightness. Clearly label the bottle by waterproof marking pen on the bottle shoulder or tie-on label.

In special cases of confined to semi-confined (older) water, where tritium values $< 0,5$ TU are observed, or where it is specifically requested, samples for radiocarbon analysis may be required. Since this involves special procedures of field extraction of larger quantities of water, the Engineer shall contact experts in this field for the procedures and materials required.

This test shall only be conducted when requested by the Engineer.

The standards of isotopic measurement for hydrological applications are defined as follows:

(i) Minimum detectable values

Tritium: 0,3 TU (tritium units)

Radiocarbon: 2 pMC (per cent modern carbon)

(ii) Maximum analytical error

Tritium: $\pm 0,3$ TU (0 - 3 TU); otherwise ± 10 %

Radiocarbon: ± 2 pMC (> 40 pMC); ± 1 pMC (< 40 pMC)

Oxygen-18: $\delta^{18}O$; $\pm 0,15$ ‰

Deuterium: δ^2H ; $\pm 1,5$ ‰

DA 04.02.04**Aborted tests and breakdowns**

The Engineer may at any stage during the execution of a pumping test request the testing contractor to abort a test if, in the opinion of the Engineer, continuation of the test is not in the interests of the project. Factors which may contribute to such a decision by the Engineer are:

- Sufficient data having been collected for an adequate scientific evaluation thereof;
- the execution of the test not meeting project criteria and requirements (such as for constancy of yield, accuracy of yield measurements or accuracy of water-level measurements, sufficiency of discharge line length, etc), or
- a mechanical breakdown occurring during pumping which causes a test to be interrupted or aborted.

(a) Tests aborted due to sufficiency of data

The Engineer will fully motivate his decision to abort the test in a written statement to the User Client. In such instances, the testing contractor will be remunerated for the actual duration of testing (including recovery testing) at the hourly rates set out in the Schedule of Quantities.

(b) Tests aborted due to incorrect execution

The testing contractor will be required to remedy the cause(s) for an abort decision by the Engineer. The test shall be restarted, as if it were the first attempt, after the water-level has recovered to within five per cent of the pre-test rest water-level or the contractor is instructed thereto by the Engineer. The testing contractor shall not be entitled to remuneration for any test which is aborted under these circumstances irrespective of the time elapsed up to receipt of the instruction to abort.

(c) Tests aborted due to breakdowns

The following procedures are recommended when a mechanical breakdown occurs during pumping which causes a test to be interrupted or aborted.

(i) Calibration test

Start immediately with the measurement and recording of the water-level recovery rate according to the periodicity given in table DA 04.02.04/1. Irrespective of how long after the start of pumping the breakdown occurs or how rapidly the breakdown can be fixed, continue with water-level recovery measurements until the water level is within five per cent of the pre-test rest water level or, at the discretion of the Engineer, may be discontinued. Restart the calibration test as if it is the first attempt. The Testing Contractor shall not be entitled to remuneration for a calibration test which is aborted under such circumstances.

(ii) Stepped discharge test

Record the time of the breakdown and start immediately with the measurement and recording of the water level recovery according to the periodicity given in Table 4-9. If the breakdown occurs during the first or second steps of the test, continue with water-level recovery measurements until the water-level is within five per cent of the start rest water level and then restart the stepped discharge test as if it is the first attempt. If the breakdown occurs during the third step of the test, can be fixed and the pump restarted to produce the same yield (as before the breakdown) within five minutes of the breakdown occurring, continue with the test at this yield after measuring and recording the water level immediately before restarting the pump. Only one such breakdown event is allowed.

If a second breakdown occurs, proceed as described for a first step breakdown. If the breakdown occurs during the fourth or later step of the test, can be fixed and the pump restarted to produce the same yield (as before the breakdown) within five minutes of the breakdown occurring, continue with the test and complete it at this yield after measuring and recording the water level immediately before restarting the pump. If a breakdown at this stage can not be fixed within five minutes, continue with water-level recovery measurements as if the test has been fully completed. The Contractor shall not be entitled to remuneration for a stepped discharge test which is aborted: (1) within the first or second step, or (2) within the third step and can not be restarted within the time allowed for repair.

(iii) Constant discharge test

Note the time of the breakdown and start immediately with the measurement and recording of the water-level recovery according to the periodicity given in table DA 04.02.04/1. If the breakdown occurs within the first two hours after the start of pumping, continue with water-level recovery measurements until the water-level is within five per cent of the pre-test (start) rest water level and then restart the test. If the breakdown occurs later than two hours into the test, can be fixed and the pump restarted to produce the same yield as before the breakdown within the time periods (after the breakdown occurring) given in table DA 04.02.04/1, continue with the test at this yield after measuring and recording the water level immediately before restarting the pump.

If the breakdown can not be fixed and the pump started within one hour of the breakdown occurring, continue with water-level recovery measurements until the water level is within five per cent of the pre-test rest water level and then restart the constant discharge test as if it is the first attempt unless the following condition has been met. If the breakdown occurs after approximately 80 per cent of the planned duration of the constant discharge test has been successfully completed, continue with water-level recovery measurements as if the test has been fully completed. The allowable elapsed time (in hours) with regard to selected constant discharge test total durations in order for this specification to be acceptable is given in table DA 04.02.04/2.

TABLE DA 04.02.04/1 PERIOD ALLOWED FOR BREAKDOWN REPAIR AND CONTINUATION OF TESTING

TIME BREAKDOWN AFTER START OF TEST	PERIOD ALLOWED FOR REPAIR
2 hours to 4 hours	6 minutes
4 hours to 6 hours	12 minutes
6 hours to 8 hrs hours	18 minutes
8 hours to 10 hours	24 minutes
10 hours to 12 hours	30 minutes
12 hours to 14 hours	36 minutes
14 hours to 16 hours	42 minutes
16 hours to 18 hours	48 minutes
18 hours to 20 hours	54 minutes
Longer than 20 hrs	60 minutes

TABLE DA.04.02.04/2 PERIOD AFTER WHICH A CONSTANT DISCHARGE TEST MAY BE CONSIDERED COMPLETED IN THE EVENT OF A BREAKDOWN

CONSTANT DISCHARGE TEST DURATION	ALLOWABLE TIME ELAPSED TO BREAKDOWN
24 hours	20 hours (equivalent to 80 % of total time)
36 hours	30 hours (equivalent to 83 % of total time)
48 hours	38 hours (equivalent to 79 % of total time)
72 hours	60 hours (equivalent to 77 % of total time)

The Contractor shall not be entitled to remuneration for a constant discharge test which is aborted under circumstances which preclude its restart within the time allowable for repair and continuation. The contractor will, however, be entitled to remuneration for a constant discharge test which is aborted after approximately 80% of the planned duration of the constant discharge test (refer to table DA.04.02.04/2) has been successfully completed, payment being made for the actual duration of the test (including the recovery test) at the hourly rates set out in the Schedule of Quantities.

DA 04.03 REPAIR OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

This section covers the requirements for the repair of the associated structures at the borehole installation.

DA 04.03.01 General

The work required shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Repair existing concrete base slabs around boreholes;
- (b) Cast concrete base slabs at boreholes without base slabs;
- (c) Clear around the borehole an area 20 m x 20 m.

DA 04.03.02 Detail of work

(a) Brickwork structures

Where instructed by the Engineer, existing minor brickwork buildings shall be renovated.

(b) Concrete base slabs

Where instructed by the Engineer, existing concrete base slabs shall be broken up and removed from existing boreholes.

Concrete base slabs shall be constructed as instructed by the Engineer.

(c) Clear area

An area of 20 m x 20 m shall be cleared of bushes, building rubble and other foreign matter as instructed by the Engineer. The area shall in addition be levelled.

DA 04.04 REPAIR/REPLACEMENT OF ELECTRICAL AND MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

This section covers the requirements for the repair of the mechanical equipment associated with the boreholes.

The requirements for the repair of the electrical equipment associate with the boreholes are specified in Technical Specification GB: Electrical installation for mechanical and pumping equipment.

DA 04.04.01 General

The work required shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Reconditioning of MCC panel and housing
- (b) Testing of electrical mechanical equipment
- (c) Reconditioning of borehole pumping equipment
- (d) Borehole information register
- (e) Commissioning.

DA 04.04.02 Detail of work

- (a) Testing electrical and mechanical equipment

All electrical and mechanical equipment shall be inspected and tested at the start of the Contract to establish which items need to be repaired, reconditioned or replaced.

- (b) Borehole pumping equipment

The Contractor shall remove or extract the submersible pumps and inspect. Reconditioning or repair of pumps shall be carried out if necessary on the instruction of the Engineer. The difference between reconditioning and repair is defined in the payment items.

- (c) Borehole information register

A data register containing the following information shall be compiled during the repair contract and further developed during the maintenance contract:

- (i) Borehole pumping equipment and maintenance tasks, records, etc
- (ii) Borehole utilisation (rate of discharge and duration of discharge)
- (iii) Borehole water-level.

- (d) Commissioning

All components at each borehole will be fully commissioned after reconditioning or replacement as described in Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

DA 04.05 SUBMERSIBLE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

This Specification covers the supply, delivery and installation of submersible centrifugal pumps. Testing and commissioning is covered in Clause DA 05 and in Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

DA 04.05.01 General

Centrifugal pumps supplied under this Contract shall be suitable for vertical installation in submerged conditions, shall consist of a submersible motor coupled directly to a multistage centrifugal pump and shall be suitable for pumping water for domestic use.

The details of the existing installation were unknown at the time of tender. Allowance has been made for the servicing of pumping equipment.

Should it become apparent during the servicing that components need to be replaced such as bearings, shafts, etc., a payment item for the reconditioning of the pumping equipment has been allowed. The "reconditioning" payment item will replace the "servicing" payment item in this event.

No orders shall be placed for any pumping equipment until the boreholes have been tested and the report submitted to the Engineer. The Engineer shall then provide the pump requirements to the Contractor for ordering of equipment.

Preference will be given to pumps of the self-regulating type and where the power consumption characteristic is such that with an increase in delivery to beyond a certain limit, the power consumption decreases, thereby ensuring that the motor is not overloaded in the event of a large reduction in pumping head.

Preference will be given to locally manufactured pumps and motors, with a reliable and efficient after sales service and readily available spares.

DA 04.05.02 Depth of installation

The most suitable depth of installation and safe pumping rate shall be confirmed by an experienced borehole contractor by virtue of the supplied borehole record, test and calculated information. All costs involved in confirming the most suitable depth of installation and safe pumping rate shall be deemed included in payment item DA.01.

DA 04.05.03 Material

All parts of the pump shall be manufactured from material most capable of withstanding wear. Full specification in this respect shall accompany the Tender and the Tenderer's advice in this respect will be considered.

DA 04.05.04 Speed

The pump shall have a rotational speed not exceeding 1 450 rpm. If a higher rotational speed is required, this shall be motivated in a covering letter or in the technical data sheets.

DA 04.05.05 Design

All working parts of the pumps shall be removable and serviceable and shall under no circumstances be integrated into the body of the pumps.

DA 04.05.06 Turbine bowls

Turbine bowls shall be manufactured from high-grade cast steel and shall be finished off smoothly before a high-quality corrosion protection system is applied. Grey Iron No 30 turbine bowls may be approved by the Engineer, or if so stated in the Project Specifications. The bowls shall be selected for a minimum of 2 500 kPa or 1,5 times the maximum discharge pressure, whichever is the greater. The casing, suction strainer, cable shield and all fastenings, nuts and bolts shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

DA 04.05.07 Pump shaft

The shaft shall be manufactured of stainless steel. Where the shaft passes through stuffing boxes it shall be fitted with renewable sleeves of high-quality, wear-resistant alloy.

The shaft shall be so designed that the running speed is well below the first critical speed, and the complete rotor shall be accurately balanced after assembly.

The rotating elements shall be accurately balanced statically and dynamically to eliminate noise and vibration when running.

DA 04.05.08 Pump impellers

Impellers shall be manufactured of stainless steel or bronze and shall be carefully bored and keyed. All parts inaccessible to machining shall have a smooth finish. Balancing of impellers shall not be done by means of drilling balancing holes, but rather by accurate and careful machining of impellers.

DA 04.05.09 Seals and bearings

Pumps shall be fitted with mechanical seals with sand deflectors. Pump bearings and thrust collars shall be bronze and shall be lubricated by the fluid handled. The pump and motor shall not be adversely affected by suspended sand concentrations of up to 25 g/m³.

DA 04.05.10 Rising pipe

The rising pipe shall have threaded or approved bolted couplings at a spacing of approximately 6 m intervals. The rising pipe shall have a minimum internal diameter of 50 mm and shall internally and externally be protected against corrosion by a fusion-bonded powder epoxy coating to a minimum thickness of 250 micron. All bolts used shall be stainless steel. The couplings shall not totally obstruct the borehole, but shall allow for sufficient clearance between the coupling and borehole casing to prevent any damage to the drop cable set and earth wire. The pump and rising pipe shall be centered in the borehole by means of approved centralisers at a preferred spacing of not more than 3 m. The centralisers shall be manufactured of an approved corrosion-resistant material and shall assist in eliminating any vibration that may occur in the borehole/rising pipe installation.

DA 04.05.11 Borehole vents

The borehole shall be adequately vented to prevent the build-up of pressure or vacuum. All borehole vent openings shall be piped watertight to the atmosphere outside of any enclosure and not less than 200 mm above any low ground level or the highest recorded flood level. Such vent openings shall be at least 12 mm in diameter. The terminal of the vent shall be suitably shielded and screened so as to prevent the entrance of foreign matter and insects.

DA 04.05.12 Pump motor

Unless otherwise specified, each pump shall be supplied complete with an electrical motor. Each electrical motor shall comply with the requirements as specified in Specification GB: Electrical installation for mechanical and pumping equipment and Clause DA 05 of this specification and Specification PF: Acceptance tests for pumps.

The depth setting shall be such that an up-flow of water past the motor is created. If insufficient up-flow of water past the motor is available, a suitable flow induced tube shall be fitted to the pump and motor to ensure sufficient cooling of the motor.

DA 04.05.13 Base plate

A suitable base plate shall be used to effectively close the top of the borehole to prevent any foreign matter from entering. The rising pipe shall be effectively bolted to the base plate. The base plate shall further be provided with the necessary openings for the drop cable site, earth wire and water-level monitoring device.

DA 04.05.14 Accessories

Over and above any reflux valves installed and specified above ground level, the pump shall be fitted with a non-slam type reflux valve situated at the pump outlet. The reflux valve shall be a matched component supplied and tested by the pump manufacturer for efficient and troublefree operation.

DA 04.05.15 Pump technical details

The pump shall be a currently catalogued product. Documentation shall include performance curves or selection tables, indicating flow, head, NPSH required, power absorbed, speed and efficiency for the expected range of operational conditions.

Performance curves and selection tables shall be based on a reproducible and certified test carried out in an approved laboratory. Certified detail selection shown on these performance curves or tables shall be submitted.

The flow rate at break-off point of the curve for the impeller selected shall be at least 1,5 times that of the maximum flow rate specified.

The head at zero delivery of the curve for the impeller selected shall be at least 1,2 times the operating head.

The efficiency of the pump shall not be less than 95 % of its maximum efficiency at the selected duty point. The efficiency of the pump at the selected duty point as stipulated in table DA 04.05.01/1 shall not be less than 75 %.

The possible percentage variation of data measured on Site by the supplied and/or installed instrumentation when compared with the catalogued performance data must be submitted.

All calculations for static and dynamic heads are to be based on an atmospheric pressure above mean sea level of approximately 1 410 m, which is the site elevation of the borehole site.

The pump shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be maintained in "as new" condition at start up.

Details of the equipment shall include the following:

- (a) Operating, testing and commissioning instructions
- (b) Trouble analysis guide.

Full details of periodic and annual maintenance and service to be undertaken by the maintenance staff in accordance with a preventive maintenance programme shall be submitted.

The Contractor shall state in the technical data sheets the minimum selected service life for which the pump has been engineered and the components selected when operated under normal working conditions with optimum servicing and maintenance.

The minimum acceptable service life is 15 years with 8 500 operating hours per annum.

The Engineer reserves the right to call for -

- (a) Test certificates and reports from the manufacturer's quality control laboratory or an independent test laboratory such as SANS, and/or
- (b) site inspection, customer reports/references and user's interviews, and/or
- (c) full engineering, design and component selection details,

in order to check the correctness of the service life claimed.

DA 04.06 SUBMERSIBLE PROGRESSING CAVITY PUMPS

This Specification covers the supply, delivery and installation of belt-driven submersible progressing cavity pumps. Testing and commissioning is covered in Clause DA 05 and Additional Specification SC: General decommissioning, testing and commissioning procedures.

DA 04.06.01 General

The pumps supplied under this Contract shall be of the progressing cavity type with a stator and a rotor, similar to Mono, Orbit or approved equivalent pumps.

The pumps shall be belt-driven and suitable for vertical installation in submerged conditions and shall be suitable for pumping water for domestic use.

Preference will be given to locally manufactured pumps, with reliable and efficient after sales service and readily available spares.

DA 04.06.02 Depth of installation

The most suitable depth of installation and safe pumping rate if not required in the detail specification shall be confirmed by an experienced borehole contractor by virtue of the supplied borehole record, test and calculated information. All costs involved in confirming the most suitable depth of installation and safe pumping rate shall be deemed included in payment item DA.01.

DA 04.06.03 Material

The Contractor shall take cognisance of the operating environment and the properties of the pumped liquid when selecting the materials of manufacture for the pump components to ensure that the components are resistant to corrosion.

All parts of the pump shall be manufactured from material most capable of withstanding wear. Full specification in this respect shall accompany the Tender and the Tenderer's advice in this respect will be considered.

DA 04.06.04 Pump speed

The pump shall have a rotational speed not exceeding 1 500 rpm. If a higher rotational speed is required this shall be motivated in a covering letter or in the technical data sheets.

DA 04.06.05 Design

All working parts of the pumps shall be removable and serviceable and shall under no circumstances be integrated into the body of the pumps.

DA 04.06.06 Pump shaft and rotor

The pump shaft and rotor shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

The shaft shall be so designed that the running speed is well below the first critical speed.

The rising shaft shall be supported by a bobbin bearing every 1,5 metres.

The shaft supporting bearings shall be made of stainless steel with a vulcanised rubber outer sleeve and rubber linings with bushes of a synthetic material and shall be lubricated by the fluid handled.

DA 04.06.07 Pump stator

The stator of the pumps shall be manufactured from a suitable wear-resistant rubber and shall be formed by moulded-to-metal construction. The rubber shall be resistant to wear and heat caused by the occasional dry running of the pumps and the maximum permissible time span during which the pumps can run dry without any damage caused to the pumps, shall be indicated in the covering letter at tender stage.

DA 04.06.08 Rising pipe

The rising pipe shall withstand a 1 600 kPa working pressure.

The rising pipe shall have threaded or approved bolted couplings at a spacing of approximately 3 m intervals. The rising pipe shall have a minimum internal diameter of 50 mm and shall internally and externally be protected against corrosion by a fusion-bonded powder epoxy coating to a minimum thickness of 250 micron. All bolts used shall be stainless steel. The pump shaft shall run inside the rising pipe.

The pump and rising pipe shall be centred in the borehole by means of approved centralisers at a preferred spacing of not more than 6 m. The centralisers shall be manufactured of an approved corrosion-resistant material and shall assist in eliminating any vibration that may occur in the borehole/rising pipe installation.

DA 04.06.09 Borehole vents

The borehole shall be adequately vented to prevent the build-up of pressure or vacuum. All borehole vent openings shall be piped watertight to the atmosphere outside of any enclosure and not less than 200 mm above any low ground level or the highest recorded flood level. Such vent openings shall be at least 12 mm in diameter. The terminal of the vent shall be suitably shielded and screened so as to prevent the entrance of foreign matter and insects.

DA 04.06.10 Pulley head and base plate

A pulley head which includes the pulleys, shaft seals, bearings and pump delivery flange shall be mounted on a suitable base plate.

The pulley head and base plate shall effectively close the top of the borehole to prevent any foreign matter from entering.

The rising pipe shall be effectively bolted to the pulley head.

A double bearing configuration shall be installed where the shaft exits the pulley head frame. The bearing configuration shall consist of a lower thrust bearing and an upper sealed ball or roller locating bearing.

The pulley head shall be fitted with a stuffing box and shall have gland packings of adequate depths for sealing around the shaft, where the shaft exits the pump casing.

The gland packing shall be designed to permit high speed rotation without the possibility of seizing and charring the packing material or shaft. An automatic water seal shall be provided to prevent the entry of air into the pump.

DA 04.06.11 Belt drives

This clause only deals with V-belts, but full details of alternatives may be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

The Contractor shall install at least two belts per coupling.

The coupling (the belts, pulleys, shafts and keys) shall be selected such that it can safely transfer 200 % of the design starting torque and can operate up to a rotational speed of 150 % of the nominal duty speed.

The motor/engine and driven equipment shall be aligned and installed such that misalignment and stagger is within 60 % of the safe allowable limits specified by the supplier of the driving and/or driven equipment. Radial run-out on pulleys shall not be more than 1 % of the pulley diameter.

If the driving and driven pulleys are not in the same plane a maximum of a quarter twist turn between the driving and driven pulleys is allowed with a suitable belt length to prevent damage to the V-belts or pulleys.

Keys and keyways for load transfer to and from shafts shall comply with BS46 Part 1 and BS 4235 Part 2.

Suitable and accessible methods for adjusting the tension of the belts shall be provided.

The driving and driven pulleys and belts shall be enclosed in a single sturdy guard which allows visual inspection of the belt condition with the guard fitted. The guard shall be easily removable for belt maintenance.

Pulley sizes and ratios shall be selected such that operational belt speeds never exceed 25 m/s and are never less than 10 m/s.

The arc of contact on the small pulley shall be more than 120° . The pulley ratio shall not be less than 2,25:1, unless prior approval is obtained from the Engineer.

Belts shall be easily removed and installed for maintenance purposes and shall be to the approval of the Engineer.

The required belt tension to transfer the required load, including starting, shall not result in side thrusts in the prime mover and pump head pulley bearing which exceed 60 % of the manufacturer's specified maximum allowable side thrusts.

DA 04.06.12 Accessories

Each pump discharge line shall be fitted with the fittings and accessories as indicated by the Engineer.

Each pump shall be fitted with a suitably calibrated pressure relief valve fitted in the delivery pipework immediately downstream of the outlet flange.

Each pump shall be fitted with a non-slam type reflux valve situated at the pump outlet. The reflux valve shall be a matched component supplied and tested by the pump manufacturer for efficient and troublefree operation.

DA 04.06.13 Pump efficiency

The efficiency of the pumps shall not be less than 75 %. The normal operational efficiency of the pumps shall not be less than 3 % below the peak efficiency of the pumps.

DA 04.06.14 Pump technical details and installation

The pump shall be a currently catalogued product. Documentation shall include performance curves or selection tables, indicating flow, head, power absorbed, speed and efficiency for the expected range of operational conditions.

Performance curves and selection tables shall be based on a reproducible and certified test carried out in an approved laboratory. Certified detail selection shown on these performance curves or tables shall be submitted.

The Contractor shall state in the technical data sheets, the minimum selected service life for which the pump has been engineered and the components selected when operated under normal working conditions with optimum servicing and maintenance.

The minimum acceptable service life is 15 years with 8500 operating hours per annum.

The pumps required shall be determined by the Engineer after the borehole yield testing to ensure the optimum use of each borehole.

The Engineer or his representative reserves the right to call for -

- (a) Test certificates and reports from the manufacturer's quality control laboratory or an independent test laboratory such as SANS, and/or
- (b) site inspection, customer reports/references and user's interviews, and/or
- (c) full engineering, design and component selection details,

in order to check the correctness of the service life claimed.

The pump shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be maintained in "as new" condition at start up.

Details of the equipment shall include the following:

- (a) Operating, testing and commissioning instructions
- (b) Trouble analysis guide.

Full details of periodic and annual maintenance and service to be undertaken by the maintenance staff in accordance with a preventive maintenance programme shall be submitted.

DA 04.06.15 Prime mover

The pump shall be belt-driven by either an electric motor or diesel engine as specified in the schedule of quantities.

The prime mover and the pump pulley head shall be mounted on separate base frames.

DA 05 GENERAL SPECIFICATION FOR ELECTRIC MOTORS

DA 05.01 SCOPE, REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, STANDARDS AND CODES

This specification covers all aspects related to electric motors that may be incorporated in any of the items of equipment to be supplied under the contract.

DA 05.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- (a) Electric motors shall be manufactured in South Africa and shall comply with the requirements of SANS 948.
- (b) Where imported motors are offered they shall be submitted to the South African Bureau of Standards to be tested in accordance with the requirements of SANS 948 and the Engineer shall be provided with the appropriate certificate obtained from the South African Bureau of Standards stating that such motors do comply, prior to the installation of the motors. However, where tests reveal that motors do not comply, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to supply alternative motors which comply with the requirements of SANS 948 and which are acceptable to the Engineer. Where imported motors are not normally kept in stock in South Africa, written proof shall be provided of the availability of replacement parts as well as the delivery period of the parts after placing the orders.
- (c) All motors shall be standard catalogue models and shall be readily available.

- (d) All motors shall, where possible, be from the same manufacturer and shall have the same interchangeable frames. Variations in type and size shall, where possible, be limited to prevent stocking a variety of special spares.

DA 05.03 WORKING VOLTAGE AND SUPPLY SYSTEMS

- (a) The motors shall be capable of operating within $\pm 10\%$ of the nominal voltage supply without risk of damage. All motors shall be suitable for operating continuously at the specified 3-phase voltage under actual service conditions, including the $\pm 10\%$ system voltage tolerance, without exceeding the specified temperature rise determined by the resistance on a basic full load heat run.
- (b) All motors shall be capable of operating continuously under actual service conditions at any supply frequency between 48 and 51 Hz together with any voltage between plus and minus 5 per cent of the nominal supply voltage.
- (c) The slip-in speed of any motor at 80 per cent of the nominal voltage at 50 Hz shall not exceed a percentage agreed on by the Engineer, and the motors shall be capable of operating at this voltage for a period of five minutes without deleterious heating.

DA 05.04 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rise, as determined by resistance, of all motors, shall not exceed the following derated values:

Insulation class	E	B	F	H
Temperature rise (K)	50	60	80	100

DA 05.05 EFFICIENCY AND POWER FACTOR

- (a) The efficiency of all motors shall be guaranteed by the Contractor. Deviations from the guaranteed efficiency shall be within the limits specified in SANS 948.
- (b) The guaranteed efficiency of each size and rating of motor shall be as determined in accordance with BS 4999: Part 102. A basic test certificate of efficiency will be accepted for a motor of identical size and rating or a basic test of efficiency shall be conducted if no certificate is available.
- (c) The power factor of motors with a capacity of 20 kW or more shall not be less than 0,9 under all operating conditions.

DA 05.06 VIBRATION

- (a) Motors shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
- (b) All motors shall be checked for vibration without load, and at full rated voltage at the manufacturer's works, and the vibration amplitude as measured shall be in accordance with BS 4999: Part 142, quality grade 'Normal'.
- (c) The ratio of axial to radial vibration shall not exceed 0,5.

DA 05.07 NOISE LEVEL

Unless otherwise specified motors shall be of 'normal sound power', in compliance with BS 4999.

DA 05.08 ENCLOSURE AND FRAME

- (a) Each motor shall be protected to the degree required by its application, and its enclosure shall be designed for the system of cooling associated therewith.
- (b) Notwithstanding the requirements of DA 05.08 above, the minimum degree of protection shall be IP55 to SANS 1222 and, unless otherwise required, motors shall preferably be of the totally enclosed fan-cooled (TEFC) type.
- (c) All motors of the vertical-spindle type and exposed to the weather, shall be provided with a robust canopy of approved design.
- (d) Medium-length motors are preferred but short-length motors may be accepted where space is limited and written permission has been granted by the Engineer.

DA 05.09 MOTOR TYPE

Motors shall be of the squirrel-cage induction motor type. Slip-ring induction motors or other approved types will be considered if the Contractor is of the opinion that better results could be obtained by using such motors. Full electrical and mechanical details of each alternative shall be submitted with the tender documents.

DA 05.10 RATING AND STARTING REQUIREMENTS

- (a) Motors shall be adequately rated for the service for which they are intended, and due allowance shall be made for the temperature, altitude, climatic conditions and variations in the supply voltage. Motors shall, however, not exceed 120 % of the required capacity without prior approval having been obtained from the Engineer.
- (b) Not only shall motors be based on the full load requirements, but the motor capacity and starting characteristics shall be compatible with the requirements of the driven equipment.
- (c) Where motors are required to drive high inertia loads, the starting torque of the motor and the torque curve of the driven load shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to manufacture. Such motors shall be capable of three starts per hour, with two consecutive starts from normal operating temperature, or more frequently if required by the Engineer.
- (d) Motors shall be of the continuously running duty class S1 unless otherwise specified in the detailed specification or if a more onerous duty is dictated by the drive requirement.
- (e) All squirrel-cage induction motors shall be suitable for direct-on-line starting at full voltage. Single-speed motors shall conform to BS 4999 part 41, Design B characteristics unless otherwise approved by or dictated by the drive requirements.
- (f) All motors shall be capable of starting its associated load with a minimum accelerating torque of not less than 5 per cent of full-load torque when the voltage at the motor terminals during starting is reduced to 80 per cent of the nominal value.
- (g) Unless otherwise approved, the -15 per cent tolerance on locked-rotor torque permitted by BS 4999: Part 69 will not be accepted and shall be limited to -10 per cent.
- (h) Documentation shall include performance curves to suit the expected working conditions.

DA 05.11 BEARINGS

- (a) All motors shall, wherever possible, be provided with prelubricated sealed bearings.
- (b) Regreasable bearings shall require only one lubrication per year. Grease lubrication of ball or roller bearings, where approved, shall be by means of hexagonal button-type grease nipples to BS 1486: Part 2, Nos. 21A or 21B (industrial type).
- (c) Grease-lubricated bearings shall have relief holes to ensure that the bearings have been correctly packed, which holes shall be positioned so that the excess grease can be easily removed. Cups shall be fitted to contain excess grease.
- (d) Bearings shall be protected against eddy currents and shall be capable of withstanding vibrations caused by unbalanced loads.
- (e) All bearings shall be designed for a life of 100 000 hours at B10 rating.

DA 05.12 EARTHING

All motors shall be provided with a machined or spot-faced boss tapped to receive a bolt of not less than 10 mm in diameter for earthing purposes, which is located on one side between the mounting feet.

DA 05.13 HEATERS AND DRAINAGE

Non-submersible motors which will be located out of doors or in a damp location such as in a drainage sump, shall be provided with suitable means of drainage to prevent the accumulation of water due to condensation. They shall also be fitted with anti-condensation heaters suitable for a 220V AC supply if considered advisable by the manufacturer.

Where specified in the project specifications, motors shall be supplied with anti-condensation heaters to keep the motor temperature at 23 °C when the motor is not operational to prevent moisture from condensing in the motor.

Heater terminal boxes shall be fitted on the motor frame and shall be of robust design, liberally sized and complete with suitable terminal block and mechanical cable gland or conduit entry.

DA 05.14 TERMINAL ARRANGEMENTS

- (a) The line connections of each motor shall be brought out to a terminal box located in an approved position. In the case of two-speed motors, separate terminal boxes shall be provided for each speed.
- (b) Terminal boxes shall be of the totally enclosed type designed to exclude the ingress of dust and moisture and sealed from the internal circuit of the motor, and shall be manufactured from sand-cast metal. The wall thickness of the terminal boxes and the dimension of the cable inlet shall be as specified in SANS 948. The terminal box shall be so designed that the cable entry may be made in any one of four positions placed at right angles to one another.
- (c) Terminal boxes shall be of ample size to allow the cable to be terminated in the box. Under no circumstances will the cable be allowed to be in contact with the inside of the box or lid.

- (d) Terminals shall be of a substantial design and shall be suited to receive cable lugs. Pinch-screw connections will not be accepted.
- (e) The terminal arrangement shall permit the motor to be disconnected from its supply cable without damaging the cable tails and shall allow the supply cable and motor windings to be tested separately.
- (f) The electrical clearance and creepage distances, with the correct cable terminations in position, shall comply with the requirements of BS 4999.
- (g) Terminal markings shall be clear and permanent and shall comply with BS 4999. Irrespective of the direction of rotation required on the site, the connections shall be such that, when the supply leads L1-L2-L3 are connected to the motor terminals U-V-W respectively, the motor shall rotate in a clockwise direction when viewed from the driving end.
- (h) Motors suited for only one-directional rotation, shall be clearly marked as such by an arrow fixed to the motor frame at the driving end.

DA 05.15**MOTOR/LOAD COUPLING**

- (a) Motors shall be coupled direct to the equipment to be driven, by means of approved couplings. Vee-belt and chain drives shall be considered only if direct coupling of the motor to the equipment is impossible or impracticable. Motors driving vee-belt or chain drives shall be fitted with heavy-duty bearings suited to the full side thrust at 120 % of full load torque and short-term overloads of up to 250 % of the full load torques during starting. The stiffness of the rotor shaft shall be checked to ensure that resonance and fatigue do not occur.
- (b) Where applicable, the flanges of the motors and equipment shall be identical.
- (c) The precision tolerance class shall apply to all flange-mounted motors with regard to concentricity, perpendicularity and shaft run-out.

DA 05.16**SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS**

The following additional requirements apply specifically to all submersible motors:

- (a) All submersible motors shall be suited for submersion up to a depth of 1,5 times the depth of submersion shown on the drawings for each application, or as specified in the project specifications.
- (b) All submersible motors shall have dynamically balanced rotors supported by maintenance-free, sealed-for-life ball bearings.
- (c) All motors shall be suitably coated to ensure the satisfactory operation of the motor under the specified class of service.
- (d) All terminal boxes shall be waterproof and suited for submersion up to the depth as specified for the motors.
- (e) An adequate length of waterproof cable, purpose-made for submerging, shall be supplied with each submersible motor. The coupling of this cable to the normal power-distribution cable, which usually is of the PVC type with steel-wire armour, shall be placed at least 1,0 m above the maximum water level by means of a purpose-made, weatherproof, outdoor junction box. The submerged cable shall be supported to

minimize any movement of the cable which results from turbulence caused by the operation of the equipment or the flow of the water.

- (f) Thermistor protection shall be provided for submersible motors.

DA 05.17 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- (a) The rotation speed of motors shall not exceed 1 500 r/m unless approved otherwise by the Engineer.
- (b) Thermistor protection shall be provided for each winding of each motor.
- (c) The preferred class of insulation is Class F, derated in accordance with DA 05.16(d) above.

DA 05.18 TECHNICAL DATA SHEETS

Details of all individual electric machines and equipment requiring electrical energy shall be indicated on the 380 V motor and equipment schedule included in the technical data sheets.

DA 06 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

DA 06.01 TESTS TO BE PERFORMED

- (a) All pumping equipment shall be subject to the commissioning tests as described in Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning.
- (b) At least one of each type or size of pump supplied shall be subject to a delivery flow rate test. Flow rate or volumetric flow testing facilities will be supplied by others, unless otherwise specified in the detail specification.
- (c) The operating point of each pump shall be determined.
- (d) Efficiency tests will only be performed when specified in the detail specification.
- (e) NPSH tests will only be performed when specified in the detail specification.

DA 06.02 PUMP OPERATING POINT

During the day 1 commissioning tests the pump operating point shall be determined by observing the following:

- (a) Pump delivery and suction pressures, and
- (b) Electric motor power consumption.

If no efficiency tests are required in the detail specification then the motor power consumption shall be calculated from the voltage and current measurements obtained during the commissioning test.

The Contractor shall supply the necessary adaptors, fittings and pressure gauges to measure the suction and delivery pressures. If no gauge fittings exist on the suction side, then the suction pressure conditions will be calculated from the system properties.

DA 06.03 FLOW RATE (DELIVERY), EFFICIENCY AND NPSH TESTS

- (a) Testing will be done in accordance with BS 5316 Part 1, class C tests.
- (b) Power consumption of electric motors shall be as determined by the three-wattmeter method where efficiency tests are required in the detail specification.

DA 06.04 TEST CONDITIONS

- (a) All tests will be performed in situ.
- (b) The pumped medium or liquid specified as the process liquid in the detail specifications shall be utilised during the tests. The Contractor shall obtain from the pump manufacturer the test point for clean water corresponding to the specified duty point for the pumped liquid, in order to relate the measured performance to the pump supplier's curves which are based on water.

DA 06.05 ADDITIONAL TESTS

Additional tests may be specified in the detail specification.

DA 07 MAINTENANCE

All borehole pumping equipment and systems shall be serviced and repaired, following practical completion of the installation of which it forms part, to maintain it in perfect functional condition.

Maintenance to be carried out shall include routine preventative maintenance in accordance with the manufacturer's specification to be set out in the operating and maintenance manual, as well as unforeseen repair work or replacement.

The remuneration for monthly maintenance of borehole pumping equipment and systems shall be deemed included in the tendered rate for ten points of the installation of which the system forms part. Installations are specified in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

The routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall include, but not be limited to the items listed in table DA 07/1 below:

DA 07.01 TABLE DA 07/01 ROUTINE MAINTENANCE OF INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

NO	ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Remove, inspect and service submersible pumps	Four-monthly
2	Clean filters/strainers	Monthly
2	Inspect and clean air release valves	Monthly
3	Check V-belts	Monthly
4	Measure rest water-level	Weekly
5	Check MCC panel	Monthly
6	Check electric motors	Monthly
7	Log and record water meter reading and water usage	Daily
8	Log and record amps, volts and hour meter readings	Daily

DA 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**DA.01 PUMP TESTING OF BOREHOLES Unit: number**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes tested on the written instructions of the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and material required for the complete testing of the boreholes in accordance with the specification.

DA.01.01 Extra over DA.01 for:**(a) The removal of existing equipment..... Unit: number**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes from which all the equipment is removed. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of existing operational pumps and motors and all associated pipework.

(b) Recovery of lost equipment..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes from which all the lost equipment is retrieved. The tendered rate shall cover the recovery of lost pumps and pipework for boreholes.

(c) Installation of temporary pumps Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of temporary pumps installed and later retrieved. The tendered rate shall be fully inclusive of the pump and pipes required to effectively test the boreholes in accordance with the specifications.

(d) Ground-water sampling..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes of which the water is sampled. The tendered rate shall be fully inclusive of the requirements of the specification irrespective of the number of samples taken from a borehole.

(e) Compilation of borehole report Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes regarding which approved reports is compiled. The tendered rate shall be fully inclusive of the work required to compile and produce six copies of each borehole recommendation report.

(f) Standing time Unit: day

The unit of measurement shall be the number of days no work could be carried out. This will cover periods when the test pumping rig and crew or, if more than one rig and crew are fielded, when all rigs and crews are idle, waiting for decisions by the Engineer where those decisions or whose presence is required before the commencement or continuation of the work instructed. Under no circumstances will standing time be payable for any delays other than those incurred by the Engineer's decisions. Except only for abnormal weather conditions as provided for in PS14 of Portion 1 of the Project Specifications, no standing time will be payable due to inclement weather or prevention of access to a site by the Contractor due to inclement weather.

- (g) Interhole moves Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of interhole moves made. The tendered rate shall include all labour and equipment costs incurred in moving plant, equipment and labour from one hole to another hole.

- (h) Removal of existing pumping equipment Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes from which equipment is removed prior to testing the borehole. The tendered rate shall cover the removal of existing pumping equipment from a borehole to be tested. Payment for removal up to an installed depth of 50 m shall be made at the unit rate tendered for in the Schedule of Quantities. Installed depths in excess of 50 m shall be remunerated for the first 50 m at the tendered unit rate and, for each full metre thereafter, at the rate per metre tendered in the Schedule of Quantities.

- (i) Reinstallation of existing pumping equipment Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes in which removed equipment is re-installed. The tendered rate shall cover the reinstallation of existing pumping equipment in a borehole following test pumping of the borehole. Payment for installation up to a depth of 50 m shall be made at the unit rate tendered for in the Schedule of Quantities. Reinstallation depths in excess of 50 m shall be remunerated for the first 50 m at the tendered unit rate and, for each full metre thereafter, at the rate per metre tendered in the Schedule of Quantities.

The existing pumping equipment shall be reinstalled and left in working condition as it was found before removal unless the Contractor is instructed otherwise by the Engineer.

DA.02 REPAIR OF EXISTING STRUCTURES

- DA.02.01 Brickwork** Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the area of brickwork repaired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials and equipment required for the complete repair of brickwork.

- DA.02.02 Concrete base slabs** Unit: m³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete used in the repair of base slab.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, and equipment required to carry out the work as well as for all work carried out.

- DA.02.03 Clean around borehole** Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes around which the area is cleaned and levelled.

The tendered rate shall cover full compensation for the cleaning of an area 20 m x 20 m around each borehole.

- DA.02.04 Removal of concrete base slab Unit: cubic metre (m³)**
- The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre volume of concrete broken out of the existing base slab.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the concrete inclusive of all tools, labour, removal of surplus material to a dump site and all other work required to satisfactorily complete the task.
- DA.02.05 Painting of exposed pipework Unit: m**
- The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipework painted inside the pump house. The approximate diameter of the pipework is 100 mm.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the tools, labour, material, supply and delivery. The paintwork shall be conducted in accordance with Technical Specification BJ.
- DA.03 REPAIR/REPLACEMENT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**
- DA.03.01 Detailed inspection and testing of components Unit: number**
- The unit of measurement shall be the number of boreholes for which a detailed inspection has been performed and all electrical and mechanical components tested.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for testing all electrical and mechanical components for carrying out inspections and for all labour and equipment needed to carry out the work.
- DA.03.02 Commissioning Unit: number**
- The unit of measurement shall be the number of borehole installations commissioned.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour and equipment supplied and for the commissioning of each borehole installation.
- DA.03.03 Reconditioning of pumping equipment Unit: number**
- The unit of measurement shall be the number of pumps and motors reconditioned.
- The tendered rates shall include full compensation for replacement of components and materials and for, tools, transport, site handling and labour necessary for the complete reconditioning of pumping equipment to conform to all the specifications in Subclause DA 04.06.14: Pump technical details and installation.
- Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.
- DA.03.04 Repair of pumping equipment Unit: number**
- The unit of measurement shall be the number of submersible pumps and motors repaired.
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supply of an identification label, resetting the spacer between impeller and back plate and ensuring that impeller rotates freely, as well as cleaning and corrosion protection and installing a new hoisting chain.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

DA.03.05 De-commissioning and removal of submersible pumping equipment Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of submersible pumps and motors de-commissioned and removed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for tools, transport, site handling and labour necessary for the complete de-commissioning and removal of pumping equipment.

DA.03.06 Servicing of submersible borehole pumps Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of pumps serviced. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for servicing (including all consumables), cleaning, corrosion protection (including pump and motor base), adjusting, aligning, including disassembling and re-assembling. The tendered rate shall include all labour, tools, equipment and spare parts that form part of servicing as set out in the operating and maintenance manuals or as specified by the supplier.

DA.04 SUBMERSIBLE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

DA.04.01 Supply and delivery of submersible borehole pumps:

(a) (Pump description) Unit: number

(b) Etc for other pumps

The unit of measurement shall be the number of units supplied and delivered where each unit shall include one pump, one motor, one base plate, drop cable set, earth wire, flow inducer if required and all other accessories as specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the design, manufacture, corrosion protection, testing, delivery to site, storage, patent rights, etc, of all the equipment complete as specified in the Specifications.

DA.04.02 Installation of submersible borehole pumps:

(a) (Pump description) Unit: number

(b) Etc for other pumps

The unit of measurement shall be the number of units installed. Each unit shall include one pump with motor or engine, base plate and all other accessories as specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the installation of the units, the making good of all damaged corrosion protection areas, maintenance and for all other costs and actions that are necessary to provide a complete and efficiently working system.

Payment under this item may only be claimed after the relevant operating manuals have been handed over to the Engineer.

DA.04.03 Supply, deliver and install rising pipe (diameter and pressure class indicated) Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of rising pipe installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, plant, transport and materials required to manufacture, supply and install the rising pipe, corrosion protection, fixing to the pump and base plate, including couplings, gaskets, nuts and bolts.

DA.04.04 Remove existing equipment from borehole and store on site as directed by the Engineer:

(a) (Equipment description)..... Unit: number

(b) Etc for other descriptions

The unit of measurement shall be the number of installations from which the equipment is removed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing borehole equipment, providing a suitable storage facility, transporting the equipment to the storage facility and store the equipment for the period required.

DA.05 SUBMERSIBLE PROGRESSING CAVITY PUMPS

DA.05.01 Supply and delivery of submersible progressing cavity pumping equipment:

(a) Pump unit..... Unit: number

(b) Pulley head and base frame Unit: number

(c) Rising pipe Unit: m

(d) Rising pump shaft Unit: m

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.01(a) shall be the number of submersible progressing cavity pump units supplied and delivered.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.01(b) shall be the number of pulley heads including two complete sets of drive belts and their protective safety cages (sized to enclose the drive pulley heads of the motor or engine, suited to the particular installation) and a base frame for each pulley head supplied and delivered.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA 05.01(c) shall be the linear metre length of rising pipe supplied and delivered.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.01(d) shall be the linear metre length of shaft supplied and delivered.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the manufacture, corrosion protection, predelivery testing, transport to site, off-loading and all handling of equipment which shall include the following:

- the pump unit
- pulley head and base frame
- rising pipework and centralisers
- rising shaft and locating bearings
- all accessories including valves, fittings, V-belts, fasteners and auxiliary materials to render a complete pump unit.

DA.05.02 Installation of submersible progressing cavity pumping equipment:

- (a) Pump unit..... Unit : number
- (b) Pulley head and base frame Unit : number
- (c) Rising pipe Unit : m
- (d) Rising pump shaft Unit : m

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.02(a) shall be the number of submersible progressing cavity pump units installed.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.02(b) shall be the number of pulley heads including two complete sets of drive belts and a base frame for each pulley head installed.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.02(c) shall be the linear metre length of rising pipe installed.

The unit of measurement for subitem DA.05.02(d) shall be the linear metre length of shaft installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the site handling and positioning and installation of the equipment including all labour and consumables required for a fully installed submersible progressing cavity pump.

Payment under this item may only be claimed after the relevant operating manuals have been handed over to the Engineer.

DA.06 BOREHOLE STRUCTURES**DA.06.01 Clear area around borehole Unit: square metre (m²)**

The unit of measurement shall be the square meter of area cleaned and levelled around the borehole.

DA.06.02 Removal of concrete base slab Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre volume of concrete broken out of the existing base slab.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the concrete inclusive of all equipment, labour, removal of surplus material to a dump site and all other work required to satisfactorily complete the task.

DA.06.03 Laying of Concrete base slabs Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of concrete used for a new base slab or for the repair of a base slab.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, and equipment required to carry out the work, as well as cleaning of the construction area.

DA.06.04 Brickwork..... Unit: m²

The unit of measurement shall be the area of brickwork repaired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials and equipment required for the complete repair of brickwork. The tendered rate shall also include the cleaning of the construction area and the removal of surplus material from site.

DA.06.05 Repair of existing steel cover..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of steel covers repaired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials and equipment required for the complete repair required and repainting of the existing borehole steel cover. The tendered rate shall also include the cleaning of the construction area and the removal of surplus material from site.

DA.06.06 Supply, Deliver and Install new borehole enclosure..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of borehole enclosures installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials and equipment required for the supply, delivery and installation of the new borehole enclosure complete as per the tender drawings. The tendered rate shall also include the cleaning of the construction area and the removal of surplus material from site.

DA.06.07 Painting of exposed pipe work..... Unit: m

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of pipe work painted. The approximate diameter of the pipe work is 100 mm.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the tools, labour, material, supply and delivery. The paintwork shall be conducted in accordance with Particular Specification BJ 03.01.03 (c).

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION**DB BOREHOLE DRILLING AND EQUIPPING****CONTENTS**

DB 01	SCOPE
DB 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
DB 03	CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY AND APPROACH
DB 04	DRILLING PROCEDURE
DB 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DB 01 SCOPE

This specification covers borehole drilling procedures, casing, backfilling, stabilising, protection and recording and reporting of related activities with the drilling of a borehole. The function of drilling of a borehole shall be supply of raw water to the facility at hand.

DB 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**DB 02.01 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993**

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act no 85 of 1993) shall be adhered to.

DB 02.02 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DB 02.03 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DB 02.03 DWAF GUIDELINES

Minimum Standards and Guidelines for Groundwater Resource Development for the Community Water Supply and Sanitation Programme issued by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DB 03 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY AND APPROACH

It is required that the drilling of any borehole be approached with due diligence and care on the part of the appointed drilling contractor. Specifically, it is required that the drilling of each borehole be approached on the premise that it will be successful and, as such, will serve the function of a raw water supply to the facility at hand. Under normal circumstances, the pre-drilling of a small diameter pilot borehole will not be allowed. Such an approach may only be considered with the approval of the Hydrogeological Consultant who shall be required to fully motivate such an approach to the Implementing Authority.

The Drilling Contractor shall function under the direct supervision of the Hydrogeological Consultant. This by no means implies that the Drilling Contractor is absolved from any responsibility. All drilling activities shall, therefore, be approached through communication and discussion between the Hydrogeological Consultant and the contractor with a view to developing the most suitable and mutually acceptable finished product serving the best interests of the project.

Failure by the contractor to timeously render advice and input where required shall be regarded as a dereliction of duty. This responsibility extends to informing the Hydrogeological Consultant of serious reservations regarding any aspect of the work. The contractor shall also be required to maintain the aesthetic appearance of the site during drilling operations, including keeping the site neat, tidy and free of litter. The contractor shall ensure that safety standards are met and that the work site is kept free, as far as is possible, from vehicular and pedestrian traffic and from interested bystanders and onlookers not involved with the project.

The appointed Drilling Contractor shall carry the final responsibility for the finished water supply borehole and all actions and activities leading up thereto.

DB 04 DRILLING PROCEDURE

DB 04.01 WORKMANSHIP & PERFORMANCE

The standard of workmanship of the Drilling Contractor shall be subject to close scrutiny by the Hydrogeological Consultant. Although it cannot be expected of the contractor to complete a specified number of boreholes in a given time period, it is reasonable to expect that "favourable progress" be made under normal circumstances and drilling conditions. An indication of what might be regarded as "favourable progress" is considered to fall in the range of 50 to 100 m of drilling advancement per day taking into consideration interhole moves and setup time.

Although work-in-progress may be completed, the contractor shall under no circumstances vacate a site before the Hydrogeological Consultant has inspected the completed works and provided written approval that the work executed conforms to the requirements of this specification.

DB 04.02 DRILLING TECHNIQUE

The drilling technique to be employed for the project at hand is that of rotary air percussion drilling employing a down-the-hole (DTH) hammer.

Depending on site-specific circumstances other techniques might be employed including: (1) mud rotary drilling, (2) Odex drilling, (3) dual-tube reverse circulation and (4) cable tool percussion drilling. Instances where another drilling technique might be considered more appropriate and efficient shall be identified by the Hydrogeological Consultant during the project and the Contractor informed accordingly.

DB 04.03 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

The equipment made available by the Drilling Contractor shall be in good working order. Equipment shall be maintained in good condition for the duration of the project. Routine servicing and preventative maintenance of all equipment required for the drilling procedure and other ancillary equipment shall form the responsibility of Contractor and shall be deemed as included in the tendered rates.

The drilling equipment shall include a full air/foam pumping system. At the start of the project, the gauge diameter of the button drill bits to be employed with the rotary air percussion drilling technique shall conform closely to their manufactured gauge and shall also possess all of their tungsten carbide buttons.

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall discuss with the Drilling Contractor the retirement of a bit due to excessive wear or damage incurred during the course of the project. Further, it is imperative that the equipment be of a suitable size and capacity to deal, on occasion, with: (1) deep boreholes (up to 200 m), (2) larger than average borehole diameters (up to 254 mm), (3) large quantities of groundwater and (4) potentially onerous drilling conditions. Since this capability is provided in large measure by the air compressor, it is considered that a compressor having a capacity of at least 2400 kPa (24 bar) and a volume of at least 750 cfm is appropriate for most water borehole drilling applications and conditions using the rotary air percussion technique. In order to maintain the straightness of a borehole, the Hydrogeological Consultant may insist that the drilling contractor employ at least an overshot sleeve (drill collar) fitted to the pneumatic DTH hammer. Further precautions to ensure this aspect might include the use of a stabiliser rod immediately behind the bit/hammer/overshot combination. All materials to be used on the project should be new and meet project specifications.

Steel casing shall be: (1) of the seam-welded type, (2) round, (3) straight, (4) of uniform wall thickness and (5) have bevelled edges. Second-hand material such as steel casing recovered from an earlier borehole can be used provided that it has been refurbished to an acceptable condition. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall have the right to reject, with motivation, any material (including casing) that is deemed inappropriate, substandard or otherwise unsuitable for the project.

DB 04.03

BOREHOLE CONSTRUCTION

This sections addressed certain basic borehole construction practices which will contribute to final acceptance of the successfully finished product.

DB 04.03.01

DRILLING DIAMETER

Drilling of the water supply borehole shall commence at a diameter, which shall allow for the trouble free insertion of casing. Under normal circumstances, this entails drilling a 203 mm (8") or 216 mm (8½") diameter bore through the weathered overburden and any other potentially unstable near surface material. The bore shall penetrate at least three meters into fresh, more competent material before this horizon can be secured from potential collapse or wash-out by casing it off with nominal 165 mm (6½") or 152 mm (6") diameter steel casing. Thereafter, the bore is continued at 165 mm (or 152 mm) drilling diameter to its completion depth.

The presence of unstable rock formations (which are often also associated with groundwater-bearing horizons) at greater depths in the bore generally account for complications, which shall impact, on the abovementioned approach. The Drilling Contractor shall firstly attempt to penetrate through such horizons in order establish their vertical thickness. Such horizons often possess only a temporary instability and become "cleaned out" as drilling advances. In instances where such horizons remain unstable and severely hamper drilling progress, it will become necessary for the contractor to remove the surface casing and ream (widen) the borehole to a diameter of at least 203 mm (or 216

mm) to the depth of such unstable horizon. It will then be required to re-insert 165 mm (or 152 mm) nominal diameter casing to this depth and attempt to advance this casing through the unstable horizon.

In exceptional circumstances it may even be necessary to re-drill or ream the borehole to a diameter of 254 mm through unstable overburden material, insert nominal 203 mm (or 216 mm) diameter casing through this horizon and widen the borehole to 203 mm (or 216 mm) diameter below this depth to the unstable zone. Extremely onerous drilling conditions at depth might even warrant the commencement of drilling at a diameter of 305 mm or greater. This approach is often taken when aiming to maximise the exploitation of groundwater from a productive karst aquifer.

Information regarding the dimensions of the more commonly used button drill bits for rotary air percussion drilling is given in Table DB.1 together with casing diameters generally associated with each bit gauge.

Table DB.1. Dimensions of commonly used button drillbit gauge diameters for use with the rotary air percussion drilling method	
BIT GAUGE DIAMETER	CASING INSIDE DIAMETER FOR DRILL-THROUGH PURPOSES
127 mm (5 in.)	143 to 146 mm
152 mm (6 in.)	156 to 159 mm
165 mm (6½ in.)	168 to 171 mm
203 mm (8 in.)	207 to 212 mm
216 mm (8½ in.)	
254 mm (10 in.)	257 to 264 mm
305 mm (12 in.)	
NOTE: 1. The bit gauge diameter is also given in the Imperial unit of inches (in.) since this unit is still in common use when referring to this parameter. 2. Casing inside diameter varies according to wall thickness (refer Table DB.2).	

The information provided in Table DB.1 shows that each bit gauge passes comfortably through casing with a similar nominal diameter. For example, a 203 mm gauge bit can be used to extend the depth of a borehole already equipped with 207 to 212 mm inside diameter casing without having to reduce to the next smallest drilling diameter. Note also that a borehole drilled to a given diameter is able to accept casing having the next smallest diameter. For example, a 203 mm diameter borehole can be fitted with either 152 mm nominal inside diameter or preferably 165 mm nominal inside diameter steel casing.

In view of the foregoing, it is clear that the minimum final cased diameter of a successful raw water supply (for the extent of the facility at hand) borehole shall seldom be less than 152 mm nominal.

STEEL CASING

Steel casing may either be used in a temporary manner or form a permanent part of the borehole infrastructure. Its temporary use is indicated in instances where, for example, the borehole is unsuccessful or the need for it to remain in place becomes redundant. Under these circumstances it is also referred to as a pre-collar, surface casing, starter casing, outer casing or soil casing generally to be removed (recovered) on completion of drilling. It shall be left in place where the Hydrogeological Consultant is of the opinion that the unsuccessful borehole should be secured to serve a long-term groundwater monitoring purpose. In such instances, additional provision shall be made to protect the borehole against actions, which may compromise this function.

Steel casing shall be: (1) of the seam-welded type, (2) round, (3) straight, (4) of uniform wall thickness and (5) have bevelled edges. Secondhand material such as steel casing recovered from an earlier borehole can be used provided that it has been refurbished to an acceptable condition. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall have the right to reject, with motivation, any material (including casing) that is deemed inappropriate, substandard or otherwise unsuitable for the project.

More commonly, however, this casing constitutes the final casing with which a successful borehole is equipped. Its proper installation, therefore, is mandatory. It is installed from surface through unstable, unconsolidated or fractured materials usually occurring in the near surface. Under these circumstances, the function of steel casing includes one or more of: (1) supporting unstable materials against collapse into the borehole during drilling, (2) facilitating the installation or removal of other casing, (3) minimising the erosion and widening of the unstable upper portions of the borehole sidewall caused by the return flow established during drilling and/or the passage of drilling equipment/tools and (4) facilitating the placement of a sanitary seal and/or gravel pack or formation stabiliser.

In order to ensure as far as is possible that the annular space between this casing and the borehole sidewall remains open for the later emplacement of a sanitary seal, the circumferential entrance to this space shall be temporarily plugged. Hessian sacking packed around and lightly tamped into the surface entrance to this annular space can be used for this purpose. In instances where steel casing needs to be driven through unstable horizons (generally at greater depths in a borehole), it will be also be required that such casing be fitted with a casing shoe to protect the "mouth" of the casing from damage. Irrespective of the casing used to facilitate the drilling of the borehole, the final cased diameter of the finished product shall be sufficient for the borehole to easily accept a borehole pump. Since the outside diameter of the latter are generally in the order of 100 mm, it is required that the final cased diameter of the borehole not be less than 152 mm (6 in.) nominal where steel casing is used. Information on the dimensions of the more commonly used steel casing available locally is given in Table DB.2.

Table DB.2.Dimensions of commonly used and locally available steel borehole casing

OUTSIDE DIAMETER	WALL THICKNESS	INSIDE DIAMETER
165 mm (6 in. nominal)	3.0 mm 4.0 mm 4.5 mm	159 mm 157 mm 156 mm
177 mm (6½ in. nominal)	3.0 mm 4.0 mm 4.5 mm	171 mm 169 mm 168 mm
219 mm (8 in. nominal)	3.5 mm 4.5 mm 6.0 mm	212 mm 210 mm 207 mm
273 mm (10 in. nominal)	4.5 mm 6.0 mm 8.0 mm	264 mm 261 mm 257 mm
NOTES: 1. The casing outside diameter dimensions are also given in the Imperial unit of inches (in.) since this unit is still in common use when referring to this parameter. 2. Use of the term "nominal" when referring to casing diameter provides a direct association with the gauge of the bit (Table DB.1) which most closely passes through it.		

DB 04.03.03**CASING SHOE**

This item is fitted (welded) to the bottom end (foot) of a casing string in order to protect the "mouth" of the casing from damage due to forcing the casing through unstable horizons. Its use is therefore only warranted (indeed mandatory) in instances where such conditions reveal themselves to require securement through the emplacement of casing.

DB 04.03.04**uPVC CASING**

Also referred to as thermoplastic casing, the material generally comprises PVC (polyvinyl chloride) which, when treated to withstand ultraviolet radiation, is known as uPVC casing. Its application in the construction of water supply boreholes is specific, being used mainly in instances where security against the collapse of a borehole sidewall is required and where steel casing does not already offer such security. In such instances, the casing is inserted the entire length of the borehole and will certainly be perforated for some portion of its length.

The diameter of this casing will also necessarily be smaller than that of the steel casing used which, in most instances, will have a nominal diameter of 165 mm. In order not to compromise too severely on the minimum nominal diameter requirement of 152 mm for successfully completed water supply boreholes, the inside diameter of the uPVC casing shall not be less than 128 mm with a wall thickness of 6 mm. It is also common practice to leave the steel casing in place in order to provide protection for the uPVC casing. The decision to use uPVC casing in the final construction of a borehole shall be made by the Hydrogeological Consultant.

DB 04.03.05 PERFORATED CASING

For the purposes of this project perforated casing used shall be of a prefabricated type. As a general guideline, slots should be: (1) 300 mm in length, (2) 3 to 4 mm wide, (3) positioned in bands around the circumference of the casing, (4) spaced equally in each band, (5) each circumferential band of slots separated by 100 mm of plain pipe, (6) every second band of slots aligned with one another and (7) a 300 mm section of plain pipe left at both ends of the casing.

Bearing in mind that the number of slots forming each circumferential band depends not only on the casing diameter but also impact on the strength of the casing, it is suggested that the guidelines presented in Table DB.3 be adhered to in this regard.

Table DB.3.Recommended number of slots per circumferential band for various steel casing diameters and associated percentage open area provided		
NOMINAL CASING DIAMETER	NUMBER OF SLOTS PER CIRCUMFERENTIAL BAND	PERCENTAGE OPEN AREA
152 mm	6	3.0%
165 mm	8	3.7%
203 mm	10	3.7%

Also presented in this table (Table DB.3) is the approximate open area provided by the above slot pattern applied to each of the given casing diameters. In certain instances, however, it may be required to use more sophisticated and expensive slotted casing. Also known as screens, these include: (1) continuously wound wedge wire screens, (2) louvered screens or bridge-slotted screens and (3) screens pre-coated with gravel. The decision to use such screens shall again be made by the Hydrogeological Consultant after providing motivation to and gaining acceptance from the Implementing Authority.

DB 04.03.06 RECOVERY OF STEEL CASING

The contractor shall make every effort to recover, only on instruction from the Hydrogeological Consultant, steel casing from unsuccessful or abandoned boreholes. This casing can also be refurbished to an acceptable condition for re-use.

DB 04.03.07 BOREHOLE STRAIGHTNESS

The Drilling Contractor in the presence of the Hydrogeological Consultant shall perform the straightness test and its success (or failure) recorded by this party.

A borehole, which fails a straightness test, shall be deemed lost and it shall be required of the Drilling Contractor to drill a replacement borehole at own

expense. In the event that a straightness test is made before completion of the borehole, then the contractor shall be required to cease operations and facilitate access to the borehole for the duration of such activity.

DB 04.03.08**BOREHOLE VERTICALITY**

The Hydrogeological Consultant in the presence of the Drilling Contractor shall perform the verticality test. The consultant shall therefore be required to provide the necessary equipment for conducting a verticality test. A borehole, which fails a verticality test, shall be deemed lost and it shall be required of the contractor to drill a replacement borehole at own expense. In the event that a verticality test is made before completion of the borehole, then the Drilling Contractor shall be required to cease operations and facilitate access to the borehole for the duration of such activity.

DB 04.03.09**BACKFILLING**

This entails filling the annular space between the borehole sidewall and the outside of the casing with suitable material. The purpose of annular backfilling includes: (1) the provision of a base on which to found a sanitary seal and (2) the provision of support for the sidewalls of the borehole and the casing. In instances where casing has been seated at a comparatively shallow depth in fresh material below a weathered near-surface horizon, all of the drill cuttings removed from the borehole whilst drilling represents suitable material for this purpose. Annular backfilling with this material is not advisable in instances where this is not the case, such as for example where the casing extends to a substantial depth and comprises slotted/perforated sections or where the water-bearing horizon is shallow and open to the borehole via slotted/perforated casing. In these instances, it shall be required to insert a formation stabiliser into the annulus. The backfilling shall extend to within approximately 5 m of the ground surface.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of backfilling in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.10**FORMATION STABILISER**

This comprises material, which is placed in the annulus between the borehole sidewall and perforated/slotted sections of casing to stabilise the formation against collapse and ingress into the borehole. The drill cuttings and spoils removed from the borehole is not suitable material for this purpose. The stabiliser shall comprise material which is: (1) well sorted, (2) well rounded, (3) low in calcareous content and (4) graded such that the smallest grain size is larger than the casing perforations/slots. The stabiliser material can either be placed by hand or through a tremie pipe. Excessive bridging of stabiliser material in the annulus can be prevented: (1) through the use of centralisers on the casing or (2) by washing it in with clean water. The formation stabiliser should extend some 10 m above the top of the uppermost perforated/slotted section of casing before the borehole is developed.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of formation stabilising in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.11 CONCRETE COLLAR

The Drilling Contractor shall construct a shallow circular concrete collar around each successfully completed borehole. This collar shall have dimensions and volume as specified by the Hydrogeological Consultant. The concrete mixture shall required strength of some 30 MPa after 28 days. A similar collar may need to be constructed, on request of the Hydrogeological Consultant, over unsuccessful or abandoned boreholes.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the concrete collar in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.12 UNSUCCESSFUL AND ABANDONED BOREHOLES

A borehole shall be declared unsuccessful at the discretion of the Hydrogeological Consultant. The latter may also, at any time during the course of the work, order the abandonment of a borehole in progress.

In such instances, the Hydrogeological Consultant shall instruct the Drilling Contractor on further actions to be taken. These may include either: (1) the salvage of any casing from the borehole and (2) the plugging of the borehole or (3) the securement of the borehole for long term monitoring purposes, in which case it shall be provided with a sanitary seal concrete collar protection and marking.

Plugging (or finishing) of an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole is aimed at removing any danger or hazard such boreholes may present to the environment, eg. as a conduit for the inflow of surface water into the groundwater regime or as a danger to traffic (whether human, stock or vehicular) in the immediate vicinity thereof. It shall also be required to cast a concrete collar over the infilled borehole.

The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole on the basis of tendered rates in the Schedule of Rates for such of the following items as are relevant: (1) drilling per linear metre of depth for each relevant drilling diameter employed, (2) steel casing per linear metre thereof recovered, (3) backfilling, (4) a sanitary seal, (5) borehole protection and (6) borehole marking. Payment for any casing left behind in an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole will only be made, on the same basis as described in (2) above, on written certification by the Hydrogeological Consultant that the contractor has made every reasonable attempt in this regard.

DB 04.03.13 LOST BOREHOLES

A borehole shall be declared lost by the Hydrogeological Consultant in the event that it can not be completed satisfactorily due to factors such as: (1) the irrecoverable loss of drilling equipment, materials or tools therein, (2) accident to plant or heavy machinery, (3) failure to pass a straightness test and (4) failure to pass a verticality test. A decision in this regard shall be made after consultation with the Drilling Contractor, who shall have the considered option to either attempt remediation of the situation to the satisfaction of the Hydrogeological Consultant or, alternatively, declare the situation irretrievable.

No payment shall be made for any work done, materials used or time spent by the Drilling Contractor on a lost borehole. The cost of any materials recovered in a damaged state from a lost borehole shall be borne by the contractor.

A borehole, which is declared lost, shall be replaced with a new borehole to be constructed by the Drilling Contractor in the vicinity of the lost borehole and at a position indicated by the Hydrogeological Consultant. Payment for a new borehole constructed under these circumstances shall be made on the same basis as for any other successfully completed borehole. Materials recovered in good condition may, however, be re-used by the contractor.

DB 04.03.14 SANITARY SEAL

Every successful water supply borehole shall be provided with a sanitary seal. The seal shall consist of portland cement mixed to slurry with bentonite and water, which is free of oil and other organic matter. The bentonite and water should be thoroughly mixed in the ratio of 2 kg bentonite to 25 l water prior to adding and mixing in 50 kg (one bag) cement. The final grout seal shall extend to a depth of at least 5 m below ground surface, ie. founded on the backfilling. In such shallow applications, the slurry can be gravity-fed into the annulus through a small diameter tube (tremie pipe) extending to the depth of emplacement. The tremie pipe should be withdrawn slowly as the slurry fills up the annulus. There shall be no voids in the sanitary seal.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the sanitary seal in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.15 BOREHOLE DEVELOPMENT

The Geohraulogist shall submit proof of sufficient borehole development procedures. This activity shall be concluded with the collection of a 1liter representative water sample obtained from the return flow during development.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole development in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.16 BOREHOLE DISINFECTION

The Geohraulogist shall submit proof of sufficient borehole disinfection procedures.

Guideline volumes/weights of common compounds to be used for disinfection purposes under most normal circumstances can be derived from the information provided in Table DB.4.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole disinfection in the tendered rates.

Table DB.4.Guideline volumes/weights of common sterilants to be used per unit volume of water for various borehole diameters

		Sodium hypochlorite	Calcium hypochlorite	Chlorinated lime
	18 l	500 ml (2 cups)	26 g (¼ cup)	90 g (1 cup)
	21 l	600 ml (2½ cups)	30 g (½ cup)	105 g (1 cup)
	33 l	940 ml (4 cups)	47 g (½ cup)	165 g (1½ cups)
	51 l	1500 ml (6 cups)	73 g (¾ cup)	255 g (2½ cups)

NOTES:

1. No distinction is drawn between open and cased portions of a borehole since these differences are considered to have a negligible impact on calculated unit volumes.
2. The trade percentage of chlorine in the listed sterilants is taken to be:
 - 3.5 percent by volume (35 ml/l) for sodium hypochlorite,
 - 70 percent by weight (700 g/kg) for calcium hypochlorite, and
 - 20 percent by weight (200 g/kg) for chlorinated lime.

EXAMPLE:

A 100-metre deep borehole with a nominal diameter of 165 mm and with a rest water level standing at a depth of 25 m below surface will require 75 x 30 g = 2,250 g (2.25 kg), alternatively 75 x ½ cup = 25 cups, of calcium hypochlorite to achieve adequate disinfection. The same situation would require 75 x 600 ml = 45,000 ml (45 l) of sodium hypochlorite to achieve adequate disinfection.

DB 04.03.17**BOREHOLE PROTECTION**

This entails sealing the borehole from the introduction of foreign material directly through the casing.

In order to provide the Hydrogeological Consultant with ready access to the borehole for water level measuring purposes, it is required that a small hole be drilled in the lid. This hole shall be furnished with a tamper-proof plug such as a "dead-end" threaded into a water pipe connector welded on the hole. The final diameter of the hole providing access to the borehole shall be sufficient to allow a "normal" dipmeter probe to pass through it. It is considered that a diameter of at least 10 mm and not more than 20 mm is suitable for this purpose.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole protection in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.18 BOREHOLE MARKING (IN THE FIELD)

The activity itself represents marking the borehole by: (1) script-welding its assigned and unique identifying number onto the lid of the borehole and (2) planting a concrete block with dimensions of 200 mm x 200 mm x 200 mm (also bearing the number of the borehole) in the ground a distance of five metres to the north of the borehole.

It is the responsibility of the Hydrogeological Consultant to ensure that a borehole number is provided to the contractor for this purpose.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole marking in the tendered rates.

DB 04.03.19 SITE FINISHING

The activities associated with this task shall include the repair of construction scars on the work site resulting from drilling activities as well as the general cleanup of the site of waste materials, debris and oil spills. The latter shall be shoveled over and worked into the ground wherever possible.

Site finishing shall be deemed as included in the tendered rates.

DB 04.04 DATA RECORDING AND REPORTING

A detailed and accurate record of all information arising from the borehole drilling activity shall be recorded with care and diligence. The Drilling Contractor can collect much of this information. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall keep this current and available for inspection on request.

The contractor shall include the cost of data recording and reporting in the tendered rates.

It shall be the responsibility of the Hydrogeological Consultant to verify receipt of this information prior to certifying a claim by the Drilling Contractor in this regard. The following items of information represent the minimum number of parameters, which shall be monitored and recorded by the contractor:

- Penetration Rate
- Formation Sampling and Description
- Water Strike Depth
- Blow Yield
- Groundwater Rest Level

DB 04.05 DOWN-THE-HOLE LOSS OF EQUIPMENT

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall afford the contractor every opportunity and reasonable time to fish for lost equipment. The Drilling Contractor shall, in turn, keep the Hydrogeological Consultant informed of progress and the likelihood of success in this regard. The contractor shall have no claim against any other party for any losses incurred in this regard. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall finally decide on the fate of the borehole. It may either be declared successful or lost.

DB 04.05.01 BOREHOLE DECLARED SUCCESSFUL

Circumstances under which a borehole may be declared successful include: (1) the borehole has encountered significant water, (2) pumping equipment can be installed to an acceptable depth in the borehole and (3) the lost equipment does not pose a threat to the present and future quality of the groundwater. In the event that a borehole is declared successful despite the irrecoverable loss of drilling equipment, materials or tools therein, then the exact nature and position of the equipment lost in the borehole shall be recorded and appear in relevant project documentation. The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for a borehole declared successful under these circumstances on the same basis as for any other successfully completed borehole.

DB 04.05.02 BOREHOLE DECLARED LOST

Refer to paragraph DB 04.03.13.

DB 04.06 BOREHOLE INFORMATION REQUIRED

A detailed and accurate record of all information arising from the following activities shall be submitted by the Hydrogeological Consultant.

- Down-the-hole borehole measurement
- Borehole Construction Information
- Geological Information
- Hydrogeological Information
- Hydrochemical Information

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the information in the tendered rates.

DB 04.07 REHABILITATION OF EXISTING BOREHOLES

The scope of this work may vary from the basic cleaning out and re-development of an existing borehole to the recovery of casing, the reaming and subsequent re-installation of casing. The nature of the rehabilitation required in each individual instance shall be identified prior to undertaking this activity since this shall indicate which equipment will most suitably complete the task.

The rehabilitation of an existing borehole shall be carried out under the supervision of the Hydrogeological Consultant. In any event, the execution of such work shall be subject to the same degree of data collection and record keeping as is required of a new borehole.

The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for this service on the basis of the rates tendered as per section DB 05. It shall be expected of the contractor to have assessed the potential technical risks involved with such work and, as a consequence, the contractor shall have no claim against any other party for the loss of equipment, materials or tools incurred in the course of such work.

DB 04.08 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall accept a successfully finished water supply borehole by issuing of a certificate of completion. At this stage, the Hydrogeological Consultant shall have established that all aspects pertaining to the work and the final product meet, at least, those of the various criteria and requirements set out above which have been imposed.

DB 04.09 APPOINTMENT OF HYDROGEOLOGICAL CONSULTANT

The Contractor shall be responsible for appointing a Hydrogeological Consultant for the purposes of this contract. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall be registered with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and shall be approved by the Engineer.

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall be responsible for the hydrogeological survey to site the borehole, oversee the drilling of the borehole and pump testing the borehole as well classification of the drinking water for domestic purposes.

DB 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**DB.01 DRILLING OF BOREHOLE Unit: m**

The contractor shall be remunerated for drilling per linear metre of depth at the rate tendered for each relevant drilling diameter employed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and material required, recording and reporting for the complete drilling of the boreholes in accordance with the specification.

DB.02 BOREHOLE CASING**DB.02.01 Steel Casing Unit: m**

The unit of measurement for steel casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DB.02.02 Casing Shoe Unit: item

Remuneration shall be for each casing shoe supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing shoe.

DB.02.03 uPVC Casing Unit: m

The unit of measurement for uPVC casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DB.02.04 Perforated Casing.... Unit: m

The unit of measurement for perforated casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DB.03 RECOVERY OF STEEL CASING Unit: m

Remuneration for the recovery of steel casing shall be per linear metre thereof salvaged from a borehole.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the recovery of steel casing.

DB.04 APPOINTMENT OF HYDROGEOLOGICAL CONSULTANT

(a) Appointment of Hydrogeological Consultant Unit: PC Sum

(b) Charge required by Contractor on subitem (a) above Unit: %

Remuneration for the appointment of a Hydrogeological Consultant shall be based on a Prime Cost Sum. The Prime Cost Sum provided under subitem (a) in the Schedule of Quantities will be expended in accordance with Subclause 48(2) of the General Conditions of Contract.

The tendered percentage under subitem (b) will be paid to the Contractor on the value of each payment made to the Hydrogeological Consultant.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

DC BOREHOLE SITING AND DRILLING

CONTENTS

DC 01	SCOPE
DC 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
DC 03	CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY AND APPROACH
DC 04	DRILLING PROCEDURE
DC 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DC 01 SCOPE

This specification covers borehole drilling procedures, casing, backfilling, stabilising, protection and recording and reporting of related activities with the drilling of a borehole. The function of drilling of a borehole shall be supply of raw water to the facility at hand.

DC 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

DC 02.01 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act no 85 of 1993) shall be adhered to.

DC 02.02 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DC 02.03 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DC 02.03 DWAF GUIDELINES

Minimum Standards and Guidelines for Groundwater Resource Development for the Community Water Supply and Sanitation Programme issued by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DC 03 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY AND APPROACH

It is required that the drilling of any borehole be approached with due diligence and care on the part of the appointed drilling contractor. Specifically, it is required that the drilling of each borehole be approached on the premise that it will be successful and, as such, will serve the function of a raw water supply to the facility at hand. Under normal circumstances, the pre-drilling of a small diameter pilot borehole will not be allowed. Such an approach may only be considered with the approval of the Hydrogeological

Consultant who shall be required to fully motivate such an approach to the Implementing Authority.

The Drilling Contractor shall function under the direct supervision of the Hydrogeological Consultant. This by no means implies that the Drilling Contractor is absolved from any responsibility. All drilling activities shall, therefore, be approached through communication and discussion between the Hydrogeological Consultant and the contractor with a view to developing the most suitable and mutually acceptable finished product serving the best interests of the project.

Failure by the contractor to timeously render advice and input where required shall be regarded as a dereliction of duty. This responsibility extends to informing the Hydrogeological Consultant of serious reservations regarding any aspect of the work. The contractor shall also be required to maintain the aesthetic appearance of the site during drilling operations, including keeping the site neat, tidy and free of litter. The contractor shall ensure that safety standards are met and that the work site is kept free, as far as is possible, from vehicular and pedestrian traffic and from interested bystanders and onlookers not involved with the project.

The appointed Drilling Contractor shall carry the final responsibility for the finished water supply borehole and all actions and activities leading up thereto.

DC 04 DRILLING PROCEDURE

DC 04.01 WORKMANSHIP & PERFORMANCE

The standard of workmanship of the Drilling Contractor shall be subject to close scrutiny by the Hydrogeological Consultant. Although it cannot be expected of the contractor to complete a specified number of boreholes in a given time period, it is reasonable to expect that "favourable progress" be made under normal circumstances and drilling conditions. An indication of what might be regarded as "favourable progress" is considered to fall in the range of 50 to 100 m of drilling advancement per day taking into consideration interhole moves and setup time.

Although work-in-progress may be completed, the contractor shall under no circumstances vacate a site before the Hydrogeological Consultant has inspected the completed works and provided written approval that the work executed conforms to the requirements of this specification.

DC 04.02 DRILLING TECHNIQUE

The drilling technique to be employed for the project at hand is that of rotary air percussion drilling employing a down-the-hole (DTH) hammer.

Depending on site-specific circumstances other techniques might be employed including: (1) mud rotary drilling, (2) Odex drilling, (3) dual-tube reverse circulation and (4) cable tool percussion drilling. Instances where another drilling technique might be considered more appropriate and efficient shall be identified by the Hydrogeological Consultant during the project and the Contractor informed accordingly.

DC 04.03 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

The equipment made available by the Drilling Contractor shall be in good working order. Equipment shall be maintained in good condition for the duration of the project. Routine servicing and preventative maintenance of all equipment required for the drilling

procedure and other ancillary equipment shall form the responsibility of Contractor and shall be deemed as included in the tendered rates.

The drilling equipment shall include a full air/foam pumping system. At the start of the project, the gauge diameter of the button drill bits to be employed with the rotary air percussion drilling technique shall conform closely to their manufactured gauge and shall also possess all of their tungsten carbide buttons.

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall discuss with the Drilling Contractor the retirement of a bit due to excessive wear or damage incurred during the course of the project. Further, it is imperative that the equipment be of a suitable size and capacity to deal, on occasion, with: (1) deep boreholes (up to 200 m), (2) larger than average borehole diameters (up to 254 mm), (3) large quantities of groundwater and (4) potentially onerous drilling conditions. Since this capability is provided in large measure by the air compressor, it is considered that a compressor having a capacity of at least 2400 kPa (24 bar) and a volume of at least 750 cfm is appropriate for most water borehole drilling applications and conditions using the rotary air percussion technique. In order to maintain the straightness of a borehole, the Hydrogeological Consultant may insist that the drilling contractor employ at least an overshot sleeve (drill collar) fitted to the pneumatic DTH hammer. Further precautions to ensure this aspect might include the use of a stabiliser rod immediately behind the bit/hammer/overshot combination. All materials to be used on the project should be new and meet project specifications.

Steel casing shall be: (1) of the seam-welded type, (2) round, (3) straight, (4) of uniform wall thickness and (5) have bevelled edges. Second-hand material such as steel casing recovered from an earlier borehole can be used provided that it has been refurbished to an acceptable condition. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall have the right to reject, with motivation, any material (including casing) that is deemed inappropriate, substandard or otherwise unsuitable for the project.

DC 04.03

BOREHOLE CONSTRUCTION

This sections addressed certain basic borehole construction practices which will contribute to final acceptance of the successfully finished product.

DC 04.03.01

DRILLING DIAMETER

Drilling of the water supply borehole shall commence at a diameter, which shall allow for the trouble free insertion of casing. Under normal circumstances, this entails drilling a 203 mm (8") or 216 mm (8½") diameter bore through the weathered overburden and any other potentially unstable near surface material. The bore shall penetrate at least three meters into fresh, more competent material before this horizon can be secured from potential collapse or wash-out by casing it off with nominal 165 mm (6½") or 152 mm (6") diameter steel casing. Thereafter, the bore is continued at 165 mm (or 152 mm) drilling diameter to its completion depth.

The presence of unstable rock formations (which are often also associated with groundwater-bearing horizons) at greater depths in the bore generally account for complications, which shall impact, on the abovementioned approach. The Drilling Contractor shall firstly attempt to penetrate through such horizons in order establish their vertical thickness. Such horizons often possess only a temporary instability and become "cleaned out" as drilling advances. In instances where such horizons remain unstable and severely hamper drilling progress, it will become necessary for the contractor to remove the surface casing and ream (widen) the borehole to a diameter of at least 203 mm (or 216 mm) to the depth of such unstable horizon. It will then be

required to re-insert 165 mm (or 152 mm) nominal diameter casing to this depth and attempt to advance this casing through the unstable horizon.

In exceptional circumstances it may even be necessary to re-drill or ream the borehole to a diameter of 254 mm through unstable overburden material, insert nominal 203 mm (or 216 mm) diameter casing through this horizon and widen the borehole to 203 mm (or 216 mm) diameter below this depth to the unstable zone. Extremely onerous drilling conditions at depth might even warrant the commencement of drilling at a diameter of 305 mm or greater. This approach is often taken when aiming to maximise the exploitation of groundwater from a productive karst aquifer.

Information regarding the dimensions of the more commonly used button drill bits for rotary air percussion drilling is given in Table DC.1 together with casing diameters generally associated with each bit gauge.

Table DC.1. Dimensions of commonly used button drillbit gauge diameters for use with the rotary air percussion drilling method	
BIT GAUGE DIAMETER	CASING INSIDE DIAMETER FOR DRILL-THROUGH PURPOSES
127 mm (5 in.)	143 to 146 mm
152 mm (6 in.)	156 to 159 mm
165 mm (6½ in.)	168 to 171 mm
203 mm (8 in.)	207 to 212 mm
216 mm (8½ in.)	
254 mm (10 in.)	257 to 264 mm
305 mm (12 in.)	
NOTE: 1. The bit gauge diameter is also given in the Imperial unit of inches (in.) since this unit is still in common use when referring to this parameter. 2. Casing inside diameter varies according to wall thickness (refer Table DC.2).	

The information provided in Table DC.1 shows that each bit gauge passes comfortably through casing with a similar nominal diameter. For example, a 203 mm gauge bit can be used to extend the depth of a borehole already equipped with 207 to 212 mm inside diameter casing without having to reduce to the next smallest drilling diameter. Note also that a borehole drilled to a given diameter is able to accept casing having the next smallest diameter. For example, a 203 mm diameter borehole can be fitted with either 152 mm nominal inside diameter or preferably 165 mm nominal inside diameter steel casing.

In view of the foregoing, it is clear that the minimum final cased diameter of a successful raw water supply (for the extent of the facility at hand) borehole shall seldom be less than 152 mm nominal.

DC 04.03.02

STEEL CASING

Steel casing may either be used in a temporary manner or form a permanent part of the borehole infrastructure. Its temporary use is indicated in instances where, for example, the borehole is unsuccessful or the need for it to remain in place becomes redundant. Under these circumstances it is also referred to as a pre-collar, surface casing, starter casing, outer casing or soil casing generally to be removed (recovered) on completion of drilling. It shall be left in place where the Hydrogeological Consultant is of the opinion that the unsuccessful borehole should be secured to serve a long-term groundwater monitoring purpose. In such instances, additional provision shall be made to protect the borehole against actions, which may compromise this function.

Steel casing shall be: (1) of the seam-welded type, (2) round, (3) straight, (4) of uniform wall thickness and (5) have bevelled edges. Secondhand material such as steel casing recovered from an earlier borehole can be used provided that it has been refurbished to an acceptable condition. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall have the right to reject, with motivation, any material (including casing) that is deemed inappropriate, substandard or otherwise unsuitable for the project.

More commonly, however, this casing constitutes the final casing with which a successful borehole is equipped. Its proper installation, therefore, is mandatory. It is installed from surface through unstable, unconsolidated or fractured materials usually occurring in the near surface. Under these circumstances, the function of steel casing includes one or more of: (1) supporting unstable materials against collapse into the borehole during drilling, (2) facilitating the installation or removal of other casing, (3) minimising the erosion and widening of the unstable upper portions of the borehole sidewall caused by the return flow established during drilling and/or the passage of drilling equipment/tools and (4) facilitating the placement of a sanitary seal and/or gravel pack or formation stabiliser.

In order to ensure as far as is possible that the annular space between this casing and the borehole sidewall remains open for the later emplacement of a sanitary seal, the circumferential entrance to this space shall be temporarily plugged. Hessian sacking packed around and lightly tamped into the surface entrance to this annular space can be used for this purpose. In instances where steel casing needs to be driven through unstable horizons (generally at greater depths in a borehole), it will be also be required that such casing be fitted with a casing shoe to protect the "mouth" of the casing from damage. Irrespective of the casing used to facilitate the drilling of the borehole, the final cased diameter of the finished product shall be sufficient for the borehole to easily accept a borehole pump. Since the outside diameter of the latter are generally in the order of 100 mm, it is required that the final cased diameter of the borehole not be less than 152 mm (6 in.) nominal where steel casing is used. Information on the dimensions of the more commonly used steel casing available locally is given in Table DC.2.

Table DC.2.Dimensions of commonly used and locally available steel borehole casing		
OUTSIDE DIAMETER	WALL THICKNESS	INSIDE DIAMETER
165 mm (6 in. nominal)	3.0 mm 4.0 mm 4.5 mm	159 mm 157 mm 156 mm
177 mm (6½ in. nominal)	3.0 mm 4.0 mm 4.5 mm	171 mm 169 mm 168 mm
219 mm (8 in. nominal)	3.5 mm 4.5 mm 6.0 mm	212 mm 210 mm 207 mm
273 mm (10 in. nominal)	4.5 mm 6.0 mm 8.0 mm	264 mm 261 mm 257 mm
NOTES: 1. The casing outside diameter dimensions are also given in the Imperial unit of inches (in.) since this unit is still in common use when referring to this parameter. 2. Use of the term "nominal" when referring to casing diameter provides a direct association with the gauge of the bit (Table DC.1) which most closely passes through it.		

DC 04.03.03 CASING SHOE

This item is fitted (welded) to the bottom end (foot) of a casing string in order to protect the "mouth" of the casing from damage due to forcing the casing through unstable horizons. Its use is therefore only warranted (indeed mandatory) in instances where such conditions reveal themselves to require securement through the emplacement of casing.

DC 04.03.04 uPVC CASING

Also referred to as thermoplastic casing, the material generally comprises PVC (polyvinyl chloride) which, when treated to withstand ultraviolet radiation, is known as uPVC casing. Its application in the construction of water supply boreholes is specific, being used mainly in instances where security against the collapse of a borehole sidewall is required and where steel casing does not already offer such security. In such instances, the casing is inserted the entire length of the borehole and will certainly be perforated for some portion of its length.

The diameter of this casing will also necessarily be smaller than that of the steel casing used which, in most instances, will have a nominal diameter of 165 mm. In order not to compromise too severely on the minimum nominal diameter requirement of 152 mm for successfully completed water supply boreholes, the inside diameter of the uPVC casing shall not be less than 128 mm with a wall thickness of 6 mm. It is also common practice to leave the steel casing in place in order to provide protection for the uPVC casing. The decision to use uPVC casing in the final construction of a borehole shall be made by the Hydrogeological Consultant.

DC 04.03.05**PERFORATED CASING**

For the purposes of this project, perforated casing used shall be of a prefabricated type. As a general guideline, slots should be: (1) 300 mm in length, (2) 3 to 4 mm wide, (3) positioned in bands around the circumference of the casing, (4) spaced equally in each band, (5) each circumferential band of slots separated by 100 mm of plain pipe, (6) every second band of slots aligned with one another and (7) a 300 mm section of plain pipe left at both ends of the casing.

Bearing in mind that the number of slots forming each circumferential band depends not only on the casing diameter but also impact on the strength of the casing, it is suggested that the guidelines presented in Table DC.3 be adhered to in this regard.

Table DC.3. Recommended number of slots per circumferential band for various steel casing diameters and associated percentage open area provided		
NOMINAL CASING DIAMETER	NUMBER OF SLOTS PER CIRCUMFERENTIAL BAND	PERCENTAGE OPEN AREA
152 mm	6	3.0%
165 mm	8	3.7%
203 mm	10	3.7%

Also presented in this table (Table DC.3) is the approximate open area provided by the above slot pattern applied to each of the given casing diameters. In certain instances, however, it may be required to use more sophisticated and expensive slotted casing. Also known as screens, these include: (1) continuously wound wedge wire screens, (2) louvered screens or bridge-slotted screens and (3) screens pre-coated with gravel. The decision to use such screens shall again be made by the Hydrogeological Consultant after providing motivation to and gaining acceptance from the Implementing Authority.

DC 04.03.06**RECOVERY OF STEEL CASING**

The contractor shall make every effort to recover, only on instruction from the Hydrogeological Consultant, steel casing from unsuccessful or abandoned boreholes. This casing can also be refurbished to an acceptable condition for re-use.

DC 04.03.07**BOREHOLE STRAIGHTNESS**

The Drilling Contractor in the presence of the Hydrogeological Consultant shall perform the straightness test and its success (or failure) recorded by this party.

A borehole, which fails a straightness test, shall be deemed lost and it shall be required of the Drilling Contractor to drill a replacement borehole at own expense. In the event that a straightness test is made before completion of the borehole, then the contractor shall be required to cease operations and facilitate access to the borehole for the duration of such activity.

DC 04.03.08 BOREHOLE VERTICALITY

The Hydrogeological Consultant in the presence of the Drilling Contractor shall perform the verticality test. The consultant shall therefore be required to provide the necessary equipment for conducting a verticality test. A borehole, which fails a verticality test, shall be deemed lost and it shall be required of the contractor to drill a replacement borehole at own expense. In the event that a verticality test is made before completion of the borehole, then the Drilling Contractor shall be required to cease operations and facilitate access to the borehole for the duration of such activity.

DC 04.03.09 BACKFILLING

This entails filling the annular space between the borehole sidewall and the outside of the casing with suitable material. The purpose of annular backfilling includes: (1) the provision of a base on which to found a sanitary seal and (2) the provision of support for the sidewalls of the borehole and the casing. In instances where casing has been seated at a comparatively shallow depth in fresh material below a weathered near-surface horizon, all of the drill cuttings removed from the borehole whilst drilling represents suitable material for this purpose. Annular backfilling with this material is not advisable in instances where this is not the case, such as for example where the casing extends to a substantial depth and comprises slotted/perforated sections or where the water-bearing horizon is shallow and open to the borehole via slotted/perforated casing. In these instances, it shall be required to insert a formation stabiliser into the annulus. The backfilling shall extend to within approximately 5 m of the ground surface.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of backfilling in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.10 FORMATION STABILISER

This comprises material, which is placed in the annulus between the borehole sidewall and perforated/slotted sections of casing to stabilise the formation against collapse and ingress into the borehole. The drill cuttings and spoils removed from the borehole is not suitable material for this purpose. The stabiliser shall comprise material which is: (1) well sorted, (2) well rounded, (3) low in calcareous content and (4) graded such that the smallest grain size is larger than the casing perforations/slots. The stabiliser material can either be placed by hand or through a tremie pipe. Excessive bridging of stabiliser material in the annulus can be prevented: (1) through the use of centralisers on the casing or (2) by washing it in with clean water. The formation stabiliser should extend some 10 m above the top of the uppermost perforated/slotted section of casing before the borehole is developed.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of formation stabilising in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.11 CONCRETE COLLAR

The Drilling Contractor shall construct a shallow circular concrete collar around each successfully completed borehole. This collar shall have dimensions and volume as specified by the Hydrogeological Consultant. The concrete mixture shall required strength of some 30 MPa after 28 days. A similar collar may need to be constructed, on request of the Hydrogeological Consultant, over unsuccessful or abandoned boreholes.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the concrete collar in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.12 UNSUCCESSFUL AND ABANDONED BOREHOLES

A borehole shall be declared unsuccessful at the discretion of the Hydrogeological Consultant. The latter may also, at any time during the course of the work, order the abandonment of a borehole in progress.

In such instances, the Hydrogeological Consultant shall instruct the Drilling Contractor on further actions to be taken. These may include either: (1) the salvage of any casing from the borehole and (2) the plugging of the borehole or (3) the securing of the borehole for long term monitoring purposes, in which case it shall be provided with a sanitary seal concrete collar protection and marking.

Plugging (or finishing) of an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole is aimed at removing any danger or hazard such boreholes may present to the environment, eg. as a conduit for the inflow of surface water into the groundwater regime or as a danger to traffic (whether human, stock or vehicular) in the immediate vicinity thereof. It shall also be required to cast a concrete collar over the infilled borehole.

The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole on the basis of tendered rates in the Schedule of Rates for such of the following items as are relevant: (1) drilling per linear metre of depth for each relevant drilling diameter employed, (2) steel casing per linear metre thereof recovered, (3) backfilling, (4) a sanitary seal, (5) borehole protection and (6) borehole marking. Payment for any casing left behind in an unsuccessful or abandoned borehole will only be made, on the same basis as described in (2) above, on written certification by the Hydrogeological Consultant that the contractor has made every reasonable attempt in this regard.

DC 04.03.13 LOST BOREHOLES

A borehole shall be declared lost by the Hydrogeological Consultant in the event that it can not be completed satisfactorily due to factors such as: (1) the irrecoverable loss of drilling equipment, materials or tools therein, (2) accident to plant or heavy machinery, (3) failure to pass a straightness test and (4) failure to pass a verticality test. A decision in this regard shall be made after consultation with the Drilling Contractor, who shall have the considered option to either attempt remediation of the situation to the satisfaction of the Hydrogeological Consultant or, alternatively, declare the situation irretrievable. No payment shall be made for any work done, materials used or time spent by the Drilling Contractor on a lost borehole. The cost of any materials recovered in a damaged state from a lost borehole shall be borne by the contractor.

A borehole, which is declared lost, shall be replaced with a new borehole to be constructed by the Drilling Contractor in the vicinity of the lost borehole and at a position indicated by the Hydrogeological Consultant. Payment for a new borehole constructed under these circumstances shall be made on the same basis as for any other successfully completed borehole. Materials recovered in good condition may, however, be re-used by the contractor.

DC 04.03.14 SANITARY SEAL

Every successful water supply borehole shall be provided with a sanitary seal. The seal shall consist of portland cement mixed to slurry with bentonite and water, which is free of oil and other organic matter. The bentonite and water should be thoroughly mixed in the ratio of 2 kg bentonite to 25 l water prior to adding and mixing in 50 kg (one bag) cement. The final grout seal shall extend to a depth of at least 5 m below ground surface, ie. founded on the backfilling. In such shallow applications, the slurry can be gravity-fed into the annulus through a small diameter tube (tremie pipe) extending to the

depth of emplacement. The tremie pipe should be withdrawn slowly as the slurry fills up the annulus. There shall be no voids in the sanitary seal.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the sanitary seal in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.15 BOREHOLE DEVELOPMENT

The Geohraulogist shall submit proof of sufficient borehole development procedures. This activity shall be concluded with the collection of a 1liter representative water sample obtained from the return flow during development.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole development in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.16 BOREHOLE DISINFECTION

The Geohraulogist shall submit proof of sufficient borehole disinfection procedures.

Guideline volumes/weights of common compounds to be used for disinfection purposes under most normal circumstances can be derived from the information provided in Table DC.4.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole disinfection in the tendered rates.

Table DC.4.Guideline volumes/weights of common sterilants to be used per unit volume of water for various borehole diameters

		Sodium hypochlorite	Calcium	Chlorinated lime
	18 l	500 ml (2 cups)	26 g ($\frac{1}{4}$ cup)	90 g (1 cup)
	21 l	600 ml (2½ cups)	30 g (_ cup)	105 g (1 cup)
	33 l	940 ml (4 cups)	47 g ($\frac{1}{2}$ cup)	165 g (1½ cups)
	51 l	1500 ml (6 cups)	73 g ($\frac{3}{4}$ cup)	255 g (2½ cups)

NOTES:

1. No distinction is drawn between open and cased portions of a borehole since these differences are considered to have a negligible impact on calculated unit volumes.
2. The trade percentage of chlorine in the listed sterilants is taken to be:
 - 3.5 percent by volume (35 ml/l) for sodium hypochlorite,
 - 70 percent by weight (700 g/kg) for calcium hypochlorite, and
 - 20 percent by weight (200 g/kg) for chlorinated lime.

EXAMPLE:

A 100-metre deep borehole with a nominal diameter of 165 mm and with a rest water level standing at a depth of 25 m below surface will require $75 \times 30 \text{ g} = 2,250 \text{ g}$ (2.25 kg), alternatively $75 \times \text{cup} = 25 \text{ cups}$, of calcium hypochlorite to achieve adequate disinfection. The same situation would require $75 \times 600 \text{ ml} = 45,000 \text{ ml}$ (45 l) of sodium hypochlorite to achieve adequate disinfection.

DC 04.03.17 BOREHOLE PROTECTION

This entails sealing the borehole from the introduction of foreign material directly through the casing.

In order to provide the Hydrogeological Consultant with ready access to the borehole for water level measuring purposes, it is required that a small hole be drilled in the lid. This hole shall be furnished with a tamper-proof plug such as a "dead-end" threaded into a water pipe connector welded on the hole. The final diameter of the hole providing access to the borehole shall be sufficient to allow a "normal" dipmeter probe to pass through it. It is considered that a diameter of at least 10 mm and not more than 20 mm is suitable for this purpose.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole protection in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.18 BOREHOLE MARKING (IN THE FIELD)

The activity itself represents marking the borehole by: (1) script-welding its assigned and unique identifying number onto the lid of the borehole and (2) planting a concrete block with dimensions of 200 mm x 200 mm x 200 mm (also bearing the number of the borehole) in the ground a distance of five metres to the north of the borehole.

It is the responsibility of the Hydrogeological Consultant to ensure that a borehole number is provided to the contractor for this purpose.

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of borehole marking in the tendered rates.

DC 04.03.19 SITE FINISHING

The activities associated with this task shall include the repair of construction scars on the work site resulting from drilling activities as well as the general cleanup of the site of waste materials, debris and oil spills. The latter shall be shoveled over and worked into the ground wherever possible.

Site finishing shall be deemed as included in the tendered rates.

DC 04.04 DATA RECORDING AND REPORTING

A detailed and accurate record of all information arising from the borehole drilling activity shall be recorded with care and diligence. The Drilling Contractor can collect much of this information. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall keep this current and available for inspection on request.

The contractor shall include the cost of data recording and reporting in the tendered rates.

It shall be the responsibility of the Hydrogeological Consultant to verify receipt of this information prior to certifying a claim by the Drilling Contractor in this regard. The

following items of information represent the minimum number of parameters, which shall be monitored and recorded by the contractor:

- Penetration Rate
- Formation Sampling and Description
- Water Strike Depth
- Blow Yield
- Groundwater Rest Level

DC 04.05 DOWN-THE-HOLE LOSS OF EQUIPMENT

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall afford the contractor every opportunity and reasonable time to fish for lost equipment. The Drilling Contractor shall, in turn, keep the Hydrogeological Consultant informed of progress and the likelihood of success in this regard. The contractor shall have no claim against any other party for any losses incurred in this regard. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall finally decide on the fate of the borehole. It may either be declared successful or lost.

DC 04.05.01 BOREHOLE DECLARED SUCCESSFUL

Circumstances under which a borehole may be declared successful include: (1) the borehole has encountered significant water, (2) pumping equipment can be installed to an acceptable depth in the borehole and (3) the lost equipment does not pose a threat to the present and future quality of the groundwater. In the event that a borehole is declared successful despite the irrecoverable loss of drilling equipment, materials or tools therein, then the exact nature and position of the equipment lost in the borehole shall be recorded and appear in relevant project documentation. The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for a borehole declared successful under these circumstances on the same basis as for any other successfully completed borehole.

DC 04.05.02 BOREHOLE DECLARED LOST

Refer to paragraph DC 04.03.13.

DC 04.06 BOREHOLE INFORMATION REQUIRED

A detailed and accurate record of all information arising from the following activities shall be submitted by the Hydrogeological Consultant.

- Down-the-hole borehole measurement
- Borehole Construction Information
- Geological Information
- Hydrogeological Information
- Hydrochemical Information

The Contractor shall allow for the cost of the information in the tendered rates.

DC 04.07 REHABILITATION OF EXISTING BOREHOLES

The scope of this work may vary from the basic cleaning out and re-development of an existing borehole to the recovery of casing, the reaming and subsequent re-installation of casing. The nature of the rehabilitation required in each individual instance shall be identified prior to undertaking this activity since this shall indicate which equipment will most suitably complete the task.

The rehabilitation of an existing borehole shall be carried out under the supervision of the Hydrogeological Consultant. In any event, the execution of such work shall be

subject to the same degree of data collection and record keeping as is required of a new borehole.

The Drilling Contractor shall be remunerated for this service on the basis of the rates tendered as per section DC 05. It shall be expected of the contractor to have assessed the potential technical risks involved with such work and, as a consequence, the contractor shall have no claim against any other party for the loss of equipment, materials or tools incurred in the course of such work.

DC 04.08 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall accept a successfully finished water supply borehole by issuing of a certificate of completion. At this stage, the Hydrogeological Consultant shall have established that all aspects pertaining to the work and the final product meet, at least, those of the various criteria and requirements set out above which have been imposed.

DC 04.09 APPOINTMENT OF HYDROGEOLOGICAL CONSULTANT

The Contractor shall be responsible for appointing a Hydrogeological Consultant for the purposes of this contract. The Hydrogeological Consultant shall be registered with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and shall be approved by the Engineer.

The Hydrogeological Consultant shall be responsible for the hydrogeological survey to site the borehole, oversee the drilling of the borehole and pump testing the borehole as well classification of the drinking water for domestic purposes.

DC 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DC.01 DRILLING OF BOREHOLE Unit: m

The contractor shall be remunerated for drilling per linear metre of depth at the rate tendered for each relevant drilling diameter employed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and material required, recording and reporting for the complete drilling of the boreholes in accordance with the specification.

DC.02 BOREHOLE CASING

DC.02.01 Steel Casing Unit: m

The unit of measurement for steel casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DC.02.02 Casing Shoe Unit: item

Remuneration shall be for each casing shoe supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing shoe.

DC.02.03 uPVC Casing Unit: m

The unit of measurement for uPVC casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DC.02.04 Perforated Casing.... Unit: m

The unit of measurement for perforated casing per linear metre thereof supplied, delivered and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the complete installation of the casing.

DC.03 RECOVERY OF STEEL CASING Unit: m

Remuneration for the recovery of steel casing shall be per linear metre thereof salvaged from a borehole.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, materials, transport, recording and reporting and equipment required for the recovery of steel casing.

DC.04 APPOINTMENT OF HYDROGEOLOGICAL CONSULTANT

(a) Appointment of Hydrogeological Consultant Unit: PC Sum

(b) Charge required by Contractor on subitem (a) above Unit: %

Remuneration for the appointment of a Hydrogeological Consultant shall be based on a Prime Cost Sum. The Prime Cost Sum provided under subitem (a) in the Schedule of Quantities will be expended in accordance with Subclause 48(2) of the General Conditions of Contract.

The tendered percentage under subitem (b) will be paid to the Contractor on the value of each payment made to the Hydrogeological Consultant.

DC.05 REHABILITATION OF EXISTING BOREHOLES..... Unit: m

The contractor shall be remunerated for rehabilitation of an existing borehole by means of drilling per linear metre of depth at the rate tendered for each relevant drilling diameter employed.

The contractor shall also be remunerated for the basic cleaning out and re-development of an existing borehole to the recovery of casing, the reaming and subsequent re-installation of casing. The nature of the rehabilitation required in each individual instance shall be identified prior to undertaking this activity since this shall indicate which equipment will most suitably complete the task.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, equipment and material required recording and reporting for the complete drilling of the boreholes in order to rehabilitate an existing borehole in accordance with the specification.

The rehabilitation of an existing borehole shall be carried out under the supervision of the Hydrogeological Consultant. In any event, the execution of such work shall be subject to the same degree of data collection and record keeping as is required of a new borehole.

It shall be expected of the contractor to have assessed the potential technical risks involved with such work and, as a consequence, the contractor shall have no claim against any other party for the loss of equipment, materials or tools incurred in the course of such work.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

DF POTABLE WATER DISINFECTION AND SEDIMENTATION UNITS

CONTENTS

DF 01	SCOPE
DF 02	STANDARDS AND REQUIREMENTS
DF 03	DETAIL OF WORK
DF 04	MAINTENANCE
DF 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DF 01 SCOPE

This section covers the repair and maintenance of the equipment used to add chemicals as part of the treatment of the potable water at the water treatment works at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso, and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry. The dosing equipment used to add flocculent to the raw water and the dosing equipment used to chlorinate treated water, before water is pumped to the pressure tower, are covered.

All additives (chemicals) to be added to raw water and treated water as part of the water treatment process *shall be supplied by **others***. It shall **not** be the responsibility of the Contractor to supply, store, manage or add chemicals as part of the operation of the water treatment works whatsoever.

The Contractor shall be responsible for repair and maintenance of the equipment as specified. ***Operating of the water treatment works is performed by Department of Public Works' staff. Operating of the water treatment works does not form part of this contract.*** The Contractor shall be responsible for training of the departmental staff in the operation of the water treatment works (based on the operating and maintenance manuals), as specified elsewhere.

DF 02 STANDARDS AND REQUIREMENTS

DF 02.01 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

These specifications shall be read in conjunction with the following documents:

SABS 241:	Water for domestic supplies
SABS 295:	Calcium Hypochlorate

DF 02.02 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DF 02.03 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health And Safety Act Of 1993 shall be adhered to.

DF 03 **DETAIL OF WORK**

The dosing equipment used to add flocculent to the raw water and the dosing equipment used to chlorinate treated water, before water is pumped to the pressure tower are all in perfect working order at the time of this tender.

The Contractor shall be granted the opportunity to remove, service and reinstall the equipment as per the work measured in the schedule of quantities for repair work. Subsequent to the completion of the repair work as measured, the Contractor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the dosing equipment.

DF 04 **SERVICING OF EQUIPMENT**

The Contractor shall service the dosing equipment according to the specifications that shall be provided in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals to be developed as part of this contract.

The Contractor shall set equipment to comply with the dosing rate as follows:

- The average flow rate of the raw water through the flocculation installation and of treated water through the chlorination installation shall be determined as accurately as possible
- Dosing rates shall be determined by the manufacturers of the dosing equipment and compared with those of the chemical suppliers (To be reflected in Operating and Maintenance manuals) after which the equipment shall be adjusted and tested to comply with the specification rates
- The actions and procedures for setting dosing equipment rates shall be reflected in the Operating and Maintenance manuals.

DF 05 **MAINTENANCE**

The dosing equipment used to add flocculent to the raw water and the dosing equipment used to chlorinate treated water, before water is pumped to the pressure tower shall be maintained by the Contractor as soon as the repair work measured in the schedule of quantities has been completed.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing leaks, routine settings (of dosing rates etc.), corrosion protection and all other actions necessary to maintain dosing equipment in a perfect functional condition.

Remuneration for maintenance of dosing equipment shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly rate, based on the point system, for the maintenance of installation G.

DF 06 **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Item

DF.01 **DECOMMISSIONING AND REMOVAL OF DOSING EQUIPMENT** ... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of dosing equipment units decommissioned and removed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the removal, storage, safekeeping and all other actions required to be able to service the equipment. Separate items will be listed in the schedule of quantities for different sizes of equipment.

DF.02 SERVICE DOSING EQUIPMENT Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of dosing equipment units serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning, removing rust, removing dried sludge or other solids from surfaces and moving parts, proper greasing of all moving parts, preparation for corrosion protection (where applicable) coating (where applicable) and painting (where applicable) of dosing equipment units with its appurtenant material, and all other servicing actions as specified by the supplier. After servicing, the dosing equipment shall be in a perfect working order, adding additives at rates as specified in the Operating and Maintenance manuals.

Separate items will be listed in the schedule of quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

DF.03 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING OF DOSING EQUIPMENT Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of dosing equipment units installed, commissioned and tested.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the installation and commissioning of the dosing equipment, to render the installation in a perfect working order, adding additives at rates as specified in the operating and maintenance manuals.

Separate items will be listed in the schedule of quantities for different sizes of equipment.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

DH OPERATION OF POTABLE WATER WORKS

CONTENTS

DH 01	SCOPE
DH 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATION AND REGULATIONS
DH 03	LEGAL AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
DH 04	GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS
DH 05	TECHNICAL DETAILS OF THE INSTALLATION
DH 06	DETAIL OF REPAIR WORK
DH 07	OPERATION
DH 08	MONITORING AND REPORTING
DH 09	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DH 01 SCOPE

Potable water works shall mean all units, components, equipment and materials, and their relation to each other, employed to enable reliable and effective water treatment.

This specification covers the operation of a bulk water supply system with borehole pump systems and equipment related to effective water treatment.

The Contractor shall manage and operate the water supply system in accordance with the prescriptions in this specification, the relevant operation and maintenance manuals and **Additional Specification SF**. Operation duties shall generally refer to all tasks and actions required for operating the process units and components of the water works typically found at remote DPW sites such as police stations, border posts, etc. These works shall include (among others):

1. Borehole(s):

- One fully equipped production borehole(s): Duty (at least) and stand-by (where available).
- Monitoring borehole (where applicable).
- Water meter and isolating valves at each production borehole.
- Ground level tank/reservoir.
- Pump and rising main from boreholes to ground level tank/reservoir.
- Chlorination unit.
- Feed from ground level tank/reservoir to first user connection.

This specification covers requirements for potable water quality, as well as testing procedures and equipment to verify these requirements.

This specification shall form an integral part of the repair and maintenance contract document and shall be read in conjunction with Portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

DH 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS AND REGULATIONS**DH 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES**

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

- | | | |
|-------------|---|---|
| SANS 1200 | - | Standardised specification for civil engineering construction |
| SANS 5667-2 | - | Water quality sampling, part 2: Guidance on sampling techniques |
| SANS 241 | - | South African Standard Specification for drinking water |

DH 02.02 OTHER SPECIFICATIONS

The following Technical Specifications for repair and maintenance of water process units shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- | | |
|----|---|
| CI | Pressed steel tanks |
| CE | Water Distribution Networks |
| DA | Borehole pump systems |
| DB | Potable Water Filtration Systems |
| DF | Potable Water Disinfection and Filtration Units |
| SF | General Operation |

DH 02.03 ACTS, REGULATIONS AND STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS

All relevant regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the following acts shall be adhered to:

- Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (No. 85 of 1993)
- National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998)
- Water Services Act (No. 108 of 1997)
- Environment Conservation Act (No. 73 of 1989)
- National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)

DH 02.04 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DH 02.05 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DH 03 LEGAL AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**DH 03.01 DEFINITION OF WATER USE**

This specification covers the legal requirements for water use as regulated by the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998). A large fraction of the activities performed by the Department of Public Works is covered by the general authorisations in terms of Section 39 of the Water Act. The following categories of water use are scheduled:

- Taking of water and storage of water (Section 2 (a) and (b)) of the Water Act.
- Engaging in a controlled activity, identified as such in Section 37 (1) of the Water Act. Irrigation of any land with waste or water containing waste generated through any industrial activity or by a water works (Section 21 (e) of the Water Act).
- Discharging of waste or water containing waste into a water resource through a pipe, canal, sewer or other conduit, and disposing in any manner of water which contains waste from, or which has been heated in, any industrial or power generating process.
- Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact a water resource (Section 28 of the Water Act).

DH 03.02 REGISTRATION OF WATER USE

According to the Water Act a water use must be registered with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF). The prescribed forms are available on DWAF's internet web site:

<http://www.dwaf.gov.za>

The application forms for registration or licensing of a water use are available on the above website. Forms DW 771 / DW 758 R1c.doc (updated version) – Licensing Part 1: Company, Business or Partnership, National or Provincial Government are applicable.

Parts 1, 3, 4 and 8 of these forms will be completed by the Department of Public Works. All other forms shall be completed and submitted by the Contractor.

These registration forms shall be completed by the Contractor and must be submitted to:

**The Director-General
Department of Public Works
Private Bag X65
PRETORIA
2001**

For attention of: **Deputy Director, Water Management**

Based on the information so provided, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry may require the applicant to apply for a license for the relevant water or wastewater use.

DH 03.03 LICENSING OF A WATER USE

In general a water use must be licensed unless it is:

- Listed in Schedule 1 (See page 152 of Government Gazette No. 19182 dated 26 August 1998)

- An existing lawful use.
- Permissible under a general authorisation (See Government Gazette No. 20526 dated 8 October 1999)

The responsible authority can waive the need for a license.

If licensing is required, the Department of Public Works will appoint an independent consultant for the duty.

DH 03.04 OPERATOR REGISTRATION AND CLASSIFICATION OF WATER CARE WORKS

In the terms of Section 26 (f) of the Water Act (No. 36 of 1988) operators shall be registered with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. The Contractor shall be responsible for the registration of workers/operators in terms of this requirement (See Regulation R2834 dated 27 December 1985). The Engineer will classify the water care works for tendering purposes.

DH 03.05 ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT (EIA)

In terms of Government Notices R1182 and R1183 of 5 September 1997, new water care works as well as upgrading of water care works are generally subject to Environmental Impact Assessment. The relevant procedures are described in a guideline document: EIA Regulations, Implementation of Sections 21, 22 and 26 of the Environment Conservation Act (No. 73 of 1989).

An independent consultant will generally be appointed to conduct such assessment. An EIA must be submitted to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism for approval by means of a Record of Decision.

Under normal conditions, an EIA will not be required for repair of water care works.

DH 03.06 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN (EMP)

An Environmental Management Plan (EMP) is required for all repair work that may generate waste (such as water treatment sludge) or that may detrimentally impact the environment during repair and operation of the water care works.

The Contractor shall prepare and submit an EMP to the Department of Public Works' project manager. His approval is not required, but the EMP should guide repair work so as to safeguard the environment from detrimental impact. The Contractor shall make provision in his tendered rates for all costs implied by the EMP.

DH 04 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

DH 04.01 BOESMANSNEK, RAMATSELITSO AND ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORTS OF ENTRY BULK WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

Boesmansnek Port of Entry chlorine dosing take place in line before pumping into the 12 kl elevated galvanized pressed steel tank. Borehole is situated in the perimeter of the port approximately 15 meters from the reservoir.

Ongeluksnek Port of Entry chlorine dosing take place in line before pumping into the 21kl elevated galvanized pressed steel tank. Borehole is situated in the perimeter of the port approximately 10 meters from the reservoir.

Ramatseliso Port of Entry water is pumped from a river source approximately 2.5km from site. The water is pumped into three reservoirs which is coupled in series. Chlorine dosing take place in line toward the consumer from the reservoirs.

The complete bulk water system requires daily monitoring and operation in order to ensure effective reporting and supply of water to the operational and residential area.

DH 05 TECHNICAL DETAILS OF THE INSTALLATION

DH 05.01 BOESMANSNEK, RAMATSELITSO AND ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORTS OF ENTRY: BOREHOLE PUMPS

BOESMANSNEK

QTY	Position	Pump Description	Pump and Motor Description	Pumping Medium	IN USE (YES/NO)
1	BHP01	To be confirmed on site	0 To be confirmed on site	Potable Water	YES

RAMATSELITSO

QTY	Position	Pump Description	Pump and Motor Description	Pumping Medium	IN USE (YES/NO)
1	BHP01	To be confirmed on site	To be confirmed on site	Potable Water	YES

ONGELUKSNEK

QTY	Position	Pump Description	Pump and Motor Description	Pumping Medium	IN USE (YES/NO)
1	BHP01	To be confirmed on site	To be confirmed on site	Potable Water	YES

DH 06 DETAILS OF THE REPAIR WORK

Additional boreholes will be connected to the bulk water supply and a new chlorination system will be installed.

DH 07 OPERATION

DH 07.01 GENERAL

Operation shall include all activities and all other actions or rectifying measures necessary for the optimal operation of water care works.

Remuneration for the operation of the complete water works shall be deemed included in at the tendered rate for monthly payment of operation of the works.

DH 07.02 PREPARATORY OPERATIONAL TASKS

The preparatory tasks to be executed shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the table below:

DH 04.02	PREPARATORY OPERATIONAL TASKS
01	Satisfy legal and general requirements.
02	Draft inventories of process units, components, materials, etc.
03	Draft process flow diagrams.
04	Derive from available information the design capacity and current load of the works.
05	Assess compliance with relevant design parameters to enable optimal operation of the plant according to its original functionality.
06	Draft plant-specific Operation and Maintenance manuals.
07	Institute required safety measures.
08	Draft template logbook.
09	Draft water balance of water and wastewater system.

DH 07.03 GENERAL OPERATION WORK

General operation of the water care works shall be done in accordance with this specification, with Additional Specification SF: General Operations, and with the Particular Specification related to this work.

The general operation work to be performed and executed shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the table below.

DH 04.03	GENERAL OPERATION WORK	FREQUENCY
01	General housekeeping: Keep site and treatment facilities in neat and acceptable condition.	Daily
02	Control access to the site.	Daily
03	Maintain safety conditions on site.	Daily
04	Log and report pollution events, power failures, extraordinary process phenomena, etc. Check auto-reset of power to mechanical equipment.	Event
05	Calibrate water meters to ensure accurate flow data.	Six-Monthly
06	Record operating hours (and kW-hours where applicable) of all mechanical equipment.	Daily
07	Check the operation of all valves and sluices.	Monthly

DH 07.04 OPERATION OF SPECIFIC PROCESSES AND UNITS

Operation of specific processes, units and components of the water care works shall be done in accordance with this specification, with Additional Specification SF: General Operations, and with the Particular Specification related to this work.

The specific operation work to be performed and executed shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the table below.

DH 07.04.		OPERATION OF SPECIFIC PROCESSES AND UNITS	FREQUENCY
01		Boreholes and equipment	
	01	Check whether pump is operating.	Daily
	02	Record operating hours.	Daily
	03	Record pressure at borehole collar during operation.	Daily
	04	Record borehole water levels at start and stop of pump.	Daily
	05	Check operation of emergency stop switch.	Monthly
	06	Record meter reading.	Daily
	07	Record rainfall: Date, precipitation and duration per event.	Event
	08	Monitor pollution risk (e.g. septic tank or fuel depot close to borehole).	3 Months
02		Treated water tanks and reservoirs	
	01	Record water level in tank/reservoir.	Daily
	02	Empty and clean tank/reservoir.	6 Months
03		Chlorination	
	01	Check operation of chlorination facility.	Daily
	02	Ensure chlorine-dosing proportional to flow rate.	Weekly
	03	Measure residual chlorine concentration at outlet of contact tanks (generally the elevated storage tank).	Weekly
	04	Ensure dosage concentration and dosing rates compatible with specification requirements.	Weekly
04		On-site pipework	
	01	Flush pipework, tanks and geysers.	6 Months
	02	Measure residual pressure in pipelines.	3 Months
05		Submersible pumps	
	01	Check operation and correct switching of pumps.	Daily
	02	Clean pump suction sumps/chambers.	Weekly
	03	Check integrity of power supply and MCC	Monthly
06		Power supply	
	01	Check operation of stand-by generator where applicable	Daily

DH 08 **MONITORING AND REPORTING**

The contractor shall keep a written record of all measurements taken and analyses done for process control and for reporting to relevant authorities in terms of legal or project management requirements.

A logbook shall be kept for daily recording of failures, malfunctions, spills, pollution events, power failures and details of corrective measures implemented.

The monitoring program for the above measurements and analyses shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the attached table.

DH 09 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**DH 09.01 REGISTRATION OF A WATER USE Unit : Number**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of potable water and sewage treatment plants to be registered. Boreholes are registered as single units. Separate forms are necessary for individual properties, as it is registered at the Surveyor General under its own title deed number. Multiple boreholes on the same property can be registered on the same form by using a summary of the location of each borehole.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation to obtain all relevant information from different authorities (Surveyor General, for instance) to complete the forms. It shall also include full compensation to complete and dispatch the application form

**DH 09.02 ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT (EIA):
PRE-APPLICATION CONSULTATION, SUBMIT
APPLICATION AND PLAN OF STUDY FOR
SCOPING AND THE SCOPING REPORT Unit : Number**

The unit of measurement shall be to perform the necessary tasks required by the relevant authorities to obtain authorisation for the proposed activity (or activities which may form any entity) up to the acceptance of and the issuing of Records of Decision. This can be performed by the contractor or if required, by the relevant authority, an independent consultant shall be appointed.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of scoping reports compiled by the contractor. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for performing the necessary tasks required by the relevant authorities to obtain authorisation for the proposed activity (or activities which may form an entity) up to the issuing of Record of Decision. Should it be required by the relevant authority that an independent consultant perform this duty such a consultant will be appointed for that purpose by the Department of Public Works.

**DH 09.03 ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT:
PLAN OF STUDY FOR ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT
REPORT Unit : Number**

The unit of measurement shall be to do a full Environmental Assessment if it is required by the relevant authority for the proposed activity (or activities which may form an activity), after the scoping report has been reviewed and accepted. The Environmental Impact Assessment shall be conducted by an independent consultant.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all the necessary tasks required by the relevant authority to authorise the activity (activities).

**DH 09.04 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN (EMP)
DURING REPAIR AND OPERATION Unit : Number**

The unit of measurement shall be number of EMP's compiled by the contractor. One EMP per site will be acceptable.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the compilation of an Environmental Management Plan, which will be executed during the repair, maintenance, and operation of a potable water installation and sewerage purification works.

DH 09.05 REMUNERATION FOR OPERATIONAL RESPONSIBILITIES

Remuneration for the monthly operation of an installation is determined by a ten point per month scoring system (refer to score card in Technical Specification SF: General Operation of an Installation). The scoring system includes but is not limited to the following operational parameters:

- Potable water quality control analysis by an approved authority
- quality monitoring programme
- operation of a site laboratory
- tests performed on site to evaluate component performance
- record keeping and reporting system
- supply of chemicals necessary for the operation of the plant
- operators and supervisors
- tools and equipment for operational needs
- compliance with the required standard (SANS 241 Class 0 or Class 1) .
- daily operation of the entire plant to its optimum capacity
- Keep site clean, cut/mow weeds and natural grass to a length not longer than 50mm, remove shrubs and small trees from pond walls.

DH 09.06 SUPPLY AND DELIVERY OF REVERSE OSMOSIS MEMBRANE ELEMENTS AND PRESSURE VESSELS Unit : Number

The unit of measurement shall be number of elements and pressure vessels supplied and delivered.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the design, manufacture, corrosion protection, patent rights, pre-delivery testing and test certificates, transport for delivery to site and off-loading including all handling of the equipment. The equipment shall include the following:

End caps, o-rings, connectors and all pipe work for the stages and arrays.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

DH 09.07 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING OF REVERSE OSMOSIS ELEMENT AND PRESSURE VESSELS Unit : Number

The unit of measurement shall be number of elements and pressure vessels, tested and commissioned.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the site handling and positioning of the equipment, including the fastening of the equipment in its designated position. The following shall also be included in the tendered rates:

- (a) Coupling of all required pipes flanges, including all required gaskets, nuts, bolts, o-rings, connectors and washers;
- (b) All required installation materials, labour and consumables to render a complete and working installation.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for all preliminary tests, delivery and efficiency tests if required and commissioning tests. Commissioning tests shall comply with the section dealing with testing and commissioning.


Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of equipment.

DH 09.08 SUPPLY OF CHEMICALS Unit : Litre


The unit of measurement shall be the volume of Chemicals supplied in litres.


The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all labour, transport and site handling for the chemicals delivery and storage of the chemicals.

Separate items for chemical reagents and solutions which are required will be listed in Schedule of Quantities.

	DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS																				
	BORDER CONTROL – PORTS OF ENTRY																				
REPAIR, MAINTENANCE AND UPGRADING OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL INFRASTRUCTURE, ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS AND MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT																					
MONTHLY ANALYSIS REPORT- WATER PURIFICATION WORKS																					
																			YEAR		
MONTH	Conductivity (25°) mS/m	Dissolved Solids mg/?	pH (25°)	Turbidity NTU	Calcium (Ca) mg/?	Chloride (Cl) mg/?	Fluoride (F) mg/?	Magnesium (Mg) mg/?	Potassium (K) mg/?	Sodium (Na) mg/?	Sulfate (SO ₄) mg/?	Nitrate (NO ₃ -N) mg/?	Zinc (Zn) mg/?	*Aluminium (Al) µg/?	Copper (Cu) µg/?	Iron (Fe) µg/?	Manganese (Mn) µg/?	*Heterotrophic Plate Count count/m?	*Faecal Coliform Bacteria count/100 m?	*Total Coliform Bacteria count / 100m?	Total Hardness (CaCO ₃) mg/?
JANUARY																					
FEBRUARY																					
MARCH																					
APRIL																					
MAY																					
JUNE																					
JULY																					
AUGUST																					
SEPTEMBER																					
OCTOBER																					
NOVEMBER																					
DECEMBER																					

* Tests to be submitted on a Monthly Basis

		BORDER CONTROL – PORTS OF ENTRY				
REPAIR, MAINTENANCE AND UPGRADING OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL INFRASTRUCTURE, ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS AND MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT						
DAILY WATER CONSUMPTION REPORT IN k/?						
YEAR:					MONTH:	
DAY	A	B	C	D	E	D-E
	RAW WATER METER READING	PRODUCT WATER METER READING	WASTE	BORE HOLE METER READING	ELVATED TANK METER READING	DIFFERENCE OF D AND E
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						
16						
17						
18						
19						
20						
21						
22						
23						
24						
25						
26						
27						
28						
29						
30						
31						
TOT						

	DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS						
	BORDER CONTROL – PORTS OF ENTRY						
36 MONTHS MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL, MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL INFRASTRUCTURE AND INSTALLATIONS							
BORE HOLE PUMP READINGS						YEAR:	
						MONTH:	
Day	BOREHOLE 1: DELIVERY OF 1.2 ?/s for 12 HOURS						Comments
	Hour Reading	Hours worked	Amps	Water Meter Reading	m³ Pumped	m³/h	
1							
2							
3							
4							
5							
6							
7							
8							
9							
10							
11							
12							
13							
14							
15							
16							
17							
18							
19							
20							
21							
22							
23							
24							
25							
26							
27							
28							
29							
30							
31							

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

DL CHLORINATION SYSTEMS FOR THE DISINFECTION OF DRINKING WATER AT REMOTE BOREHOLE INSTALLATIONS

CONTENTS

DL 01	SCOPE
DL 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
DL 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
DL 04	PROCUREMENT AND INSTALLATION OF CHLORINATION SYSTEMS
DL 05	TESTING AND COMMISSIONING
DL 06	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE
DL 07	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

DL 01 SCOPE

This specification states the requirements for all work related to the procurement, installation, testing, commissioning, operation and maintenance of chlorination equipment for the disinfection of drinking water at remote borehole installations. Chlorination equipment shall be provided as one of the following three technological systems, according to site-conditions and the relevant stipulations in this document:

- 1) Calcium hypochlorite dosing systems.
- 2) Sodium hypochlorite dosing systems.
- 3) Vacuum systems for gas chlorination.

Any on-site sodium hypochlorite generators, chlorine dioxide preparation systems or pressure systems for gas chlorination (direct chlorination) shall be deemed UNACCEPTABLE and are all excluded from the scope of this work.

DL 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

DL 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

SANS 10298	- Indirect small to medium-sized gas chlorination systems for the disinfection of water
SANS 241	- Drinking water
SANS 10306	- The management of potable water in distribution systems
SANS 6052	- Residual chlorine content of water

DL 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993. Construction Regulations, 2004 as promulgated in the Government Gazette No 37305 shall be adhered to.

DL 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

DL 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

DL 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation and production of operating and maintenance manuals including an inventory of all chlorination equipment.

This shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals. The completion of operating and maintenance manuals shall be a requirement for practical completion.

DL 04 PROCUREMENT AND INSTALLATION OF CHLORINATION SYSTEMS

DL 04.01 GENERAL

Chlorine and hypochlorite are strong bleaching and oxidizing agents and pose a SUBSTANTIAL SAFETY RISK.

The Contractor shall submit proof to the Engineer to demonstrate his (or his subcontractor's) understanding, skill and experience in the assembly of chlorination systems

All chlorine dosing equipment shall be manually adjustable to set accurate dosing rates within the range of average daily flow rates specified. The concentration of chlorine at the point of dosing shall be between 1 – 5 mg/l, so that the free residual chlorine concentration shall be between 0.2 – 1.0 mg/l at the furthest point of use in the water distribution system.

The chlorination system shall be installed in such a way as to dose upstream of overhead tanks/ reservoirs to provide for contact time. Where more than one borehole is used for water supply, the dosing point shall be installed in a common rising main, upstream of the overhead tanks/ reservoirs.

DL 04.02**CALCIUM HYPOCHLORITE DOSING SYSTEM**

Calcium hypochlorite dosing shall be the system of choice for disinfection at small remote bore-hole water supply installations.

Calcium hypochlorite can be supplied as briquettes, chips or pellets. Chlorinators shall be designed to provide a consistently accurate dose of available chlorine to small water systems. Corrosion resistant plastics (polyethylene) shall be used in the product's construction.

All $\text{Ca}(\text{ClO})_2$ supplied shall have a chlorine content of between 65 and 70% and an average moisture content of less than 4%. Calcium hypochlorite shall be properly packaged prevent contact with moisture and to ensure safety of handling. A shelf life of at least 3 months shall be maintained for supplied calcium hypochlorite.

The dosing plant uses a dry chemical product that is dissolved in water to make-up the required chlorine containing solution. When the chemical make-up tank is empty a specified mass of the chemical is added to the tank as it is filled with water to make up the required concentrate of chemicals in the solution.

The chemical solution used on this systems is 1,7% of Calcium Hypochlorite (*1,13% Cl)

Note*: Calcium Hypochlorite contains 68% chlorine

The principal of making up the chemical is to top up the tank once per week so that the tank is operating of the top half of the tank. This is done at the time of performing the weekly operational tasks. The level of the solution in the tank is used, as the indicator of how much chemical has to be added when performing the topping up task. If this is done, the concentrate of the chemical solution will stay constant.

The calcium component of the Calcium Hypochlorite will precipitate and cause a white settlement in the dosing tank. This settled white substance that accumulates at the bottom of the tank is not chlorine and needs to be cleaned out on a regular cycle as described in the three monthly procedures. The tank is used to its lowest operating level (15%) before executing the three monthly cleaning procedures. The make-up tanks are marked in 10% increments. The mass of chemical that has to be added at each increment is indicated in gram at each increment as in the following illustration as example using the main plaza markings.

DL 04.03 SODIUM HYPOCHLORITE DOSING SYSTEM

Sodium hypochlorite is a colourless, transparent liquid, which shall be dissolved in cold water to a concentration of between 8 – 10% for liquid dosing. Sodium hypochlorite shall be safely stored, located it in a cool, dark place, maintaining pH 11 or more and avoiding contact with copper or nickel.

The size of dosing tank shall be dimensioned such and kept at a maximum level to ensure that sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl) does not break down to NaCl and NaOH .

A UV-stabilized polyethylene (PE) off-white or semitransparent dose tank is required, with a sintered drain-off connection and 4 lateral mounting places at the bottom on the tank shell. The dose tanks shall be optimized for stability and functionality.

The dosing apparatus shall be robust and shall not cause blockages. The dosing apparatus shall ensure absolutely precise dosing through a dosing process that is always strictly proportional to the quantity of water flowing through the main delivery pipe. This could be achieved through a flow meter in the dosing apparatus. The following special features shall be required:

- (i) adjustable dosing capacity that avoids over- or under-dosing
- (ii) automatic stop of an overload-proof synchronous motor under conditions of short-term pressure shocks, with automatic re-start when pressure drops to normal again
- (iii) a control LED that indicates pump strokes, with a second LED that flashes if the liquid level becomes too low causing the dose pump to switch off automatically: the empty indication is directly combined with the suction line for this purpose.

DL 04.04 VACUUM GAS CHLORINATION SYSTEM

Vacuum gas chlorination systems shall only be considered where average daily flow rates are more than 8 l/s (i.e. around 700 m³/d). The mean residence time of gas cylinders shall never be more than two months. Gas cylinders shall be mounted on mechanical balances.

Pressure systems feeding pressurized gaseous chlorine directly into the water supply system shall not be acceptable.

A dual system with two cylinders is required, including an automatic change-over device to switch between cylinders that shall be installed with a wall mounted manifold.

All chlorination equipment and ancillaries, the layout and installation, materials, operational safety measures and maintenance shall be strictly in accordance with SANS 10298.

DL 04.05 SAFETY SIGNS AT CHLORINATION INSTALLATION

Regardless of the type of chlorination system installed, warning signs shall be installed at the chlorination systems to be clearly visible. Warning signs shall also include all safety precautions for the operation and maintenance of chlorination systems, in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and other relevant safety specifications and acts. A warning sign with first aid instructions shall also be installed at the chlorination system, specifying instructions for instances of skin exposure, eye exposure, inhalation exposure and swallowing, according to the manufacturer's specifications and SANS 10298.

DL 05 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

After installation, the contractor shall evaluate the functioning of chlorination systems to ensure that there are no leaks and that the rate of dosing is set correctly.

DL 06 DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATION

DL 06.01 BULK WATER

Water is pumped from multiple boreholes with borehole pumps and delivered into the elevated bulk storage tanks.

The boreholes are switched on and off to maintain a “full tank status”. This manual does not cover details regarding the control of the boreholes.

An analysis of the borehole water indicated that the physical properties of the water were suitable for human consumption. The only treatment that the water requires is to dose it with a small quantity of chlorine so that any harmful bacteria and microorganisms that may enter the water can be destroyed.

A system was designed to dose chlorine at a rate of 0,5 to 2-mg/l. The object is to have a residual of chlorine left in the water so that by the time it reaches the user. The traceable presence of free chlorine should be between 0,2 to 0,5 mg/l. the dosing pump can be adjusted up or down to achieve the required residual.

The flow rate from the boreholes could vary depending on which of the boreholes are active and in which combination the boreholes are used. To maintain a constant dosing ratio (mg/l) the dosing facility has to be able to keep pace with possible fluctuations of flow from the boreholes.

“Proportionate to flow” takes place as follows:

- A water meter is used to measure the volume of water that is delivered from the boreholes to the storage tanks. This water meter is equipped with a sensor that gives one pulse for every 100L of water that has passed through the meter to the storage facility.
- A chemical dosing pump is used to dose a chlorine containing solution from the chemical make-up tank into the pipeline, before the water enters the storage tanks.
- The pulses from the water meter is received by an Alldos dosing pump with Etron electronics.
- Each pulse, as received from the water meter, is used to start the dosing pump and introduce a set volume of the chlorine containing solution into the pipeline to maintain the required chlorine-dosing ratio

The dosing pump can be set to manual mode in case of failure of the signal from the water meter.

DL 06.01

WASTEWATER TREATMENT WORKS

The wastewater treatment works consists of a 180kg Chip Dozer with a capacity capable of holding 180kg Calcium Hypochlorite chips Scientific Chips.

The maximum feed rate is 50kg chips per hour and the system is capable of handling a flow rate 40-4000 litre water per hour. Is also consists of a double rotameter system with a 2000 litre maximum flow per rotameter.

The system must be regularly cleaned to prevent build-up and blockages. The cleaning procedure will form part of the maintenance and operation requirements.

DL 07

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

DL 07.01

GENERAL

Maintenance shall be carried out according to an approved maintenance plan and operation and maintenance manual, which shall specify actions including routine

preventative maintenance according to the manufacturer's specifications, as well as unforeseen repair work, corrective maintenance and/or replacement of parts of the system.

DL 07.02**OPERATION AND ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE**

The tasks related to the operation and routine preventative maintenance work shall include but not be limited to the GENERAL actions listed in table DL 06.02/1 below. SANS 241 shall be adhered to in the routine preventative maintenance of vacuum systems for gas chlorination.

These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

TABLE DL 07.02/1

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE OF CHLORINATION SYSTEMS AND ANCILLARIES	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Visually inspect and report on complete system.	Daily
2	Clean complete installation thoroughly so that leaks would be obvious and clear when they occur.	Weekly
3	Check, service, repair and clean dosing apparatus from blockages.	Monthly
4	Corrosion protect all equipment and ancillaries.	Whenever necessary
5	Check for and repair all leaks. Report leaks.	Monthly
6	Check dosing rate and reset regulators if necessary.	Monthly
7	Measure residual chlorine in the drinking water system (DPD 4 or similar).	Weekly

DL 07.03**OPERATION**

Operation of all chlorination systems shall include the supply of chemicals, including chlorine gas or sodium hypochlorite or calcium hypochlorite. The contractor shall supply chemicals to ensure that there is always enough supplied for a full month's requirement.

DL 07.04**SAFETY PROCEDURES AND PRE-CAUTIONS**

SANS 10298 specifies operational safety in terms of general safety requirements, emergency action plans, personal protective equipment and handling of containers, which shall at all times be adhered to. Only personnel who are adequately trained shall be allowed to operate and maintain the chlorination systems.

DL 07.05**REMUNERATION**

Remuneration for the monthly operation of chlorination systems, the supply of chlorine or hypochlorite as well as ALL maintenance activities related to chlorination systems shall be deemed included in the tendered rate for ten points of the installation of which the system forms part. Installations are specified in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

DL 08 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**DL.01 SUPPLY AND DELIVERY OF CHLORINATION SYSTEMS Unit: number**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of chlorination systems supplied and delivered, including all equipment and ancillaries deemed part of a functional system.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the design, manufacture, corrosion protection, patent rights, pre-delivery testing and test certificates. Different systems as specified in this document shall be listed in the Schedule of Quantities, according to:

- i. Calcium hypochlorite dosing systems.
- ii. Sodium hypochlorite dosing systems.
- iii. Vacuum systems for gas chlorination.

Tendered rates shall include full compensation for all transport cost, including all handling of the equipment, loading and off-loading of chlorination systems.

Different systems shall be based on the daily average flow rate of the main water supply.

DL.02 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING OF CHLORINATION SYSTEMS Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of chlorination systems installed, tested and commissioned.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the site handling and positioning of the chlorination equipment, including the fastening of the equipment in its designated position. The following shall also be included in the tendered rates:

- (a) Installation of all equipment, ancillaries and all other necessary appurtenances required to render a fully functional chlorination system;
- (b) Coupling of all required pipes flanges, including all required gaskets, nuts, bolts and washers;
- (c) Routing and fastening of all power cables, connecting of all electrical material and switchgear;
- (d) All required installation materials, labour and consumables to render a complete and working installation.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for all preliminary tests, delivery and efficiency tests if required and commissioning tests to ensure a leak-free system and the correct settings of regulators to ensure accurate dosing.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different types and sizes of systems, as specified under payment item DL.01.

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

DW SUPPLY OF WATER

CONTENTS

PWS 01	SCOPE
PWS 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES OF PRACTICE
PWS 03	DETAIL OF WORK
PWS 04	PLANT: TRANSPORT
PWS 05	TESTING
PWS 06	PAYMENT ITEMS

DW 01 SCOPE

Procure, deliver and discharge, into the storage container(s) at each facility, potable water complying with the specified quality standards.

DW 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES OF PRACTICE

The supply of water is to be undertaken in compliance with the relevant specifications, regulations and/or codes of practice included in the following publications.

- SANS 241 of 2006 - South African Standard Specification for Drinking Water*
- SANS 10252-2: 1993 – Code of Practice “Water Supply and Drainage for Buildings, Part 2: Drainage Installations for Buildings” – Annexure B – Septic Tank Systems*
- National Water Act, Act No 36 of 1998**
- Occupational Health and Safety Act, No 85 of 1993*

DW 03 DETAIL OF WORK

DW 03.01 PROCUREMENT OF WATER

DW 03.01.01 Procurement of potable water

Water of quality in compliance with the South African Standard Specification for Drinking Water, SANS 241: 2006 and volume to meet the facility requirements is to be procured on a legal basis from a source(s) identified by the Contractor. Written proof of purchase, quantity, quality and date(s) is to be provided with the Contractors application for payment for services provided under the Contract.

DW 03.01.02 Procurement of raw water

Raw water is to be procured on a legal basis from a source(s) identified by the Contractor. Written proof of purchase, quantity, quality and date(s) is to be provided with the Contractors application for payment for services provided under the Contract.

DW 03.02 DELIVERY OF WATER TO FACILITIES**DW 03.02.01 General**

The Contractor shall deliver the water to facilities on instruction from the Engineer within 24 hours.

DW 03.02.02 Delivery of potable water

The Contractor shall ensure that the water is not contaminated during delivery and upon discharge into the facility storage container(s) and must comply with the following macro- and micro-determinants and bacteriological limits:

MACRO- AND MICRO-DETERMINANTS	
1	2
Determined Mg/l	Class 1
Turbidity	1
Magnesium (as Mg)	70 max.
Sodium (as Na)	200 max.
Chloride (as Cl)	200 max.
Sulphate (as So ₄)	400 max.
Nitrate + nitrite (as N)	10 max.
Fluoride (as F)	1.0 max.
Zinc (as Zn)	1.0 max.
Aluminium (as Al)	0.3 max
pH	6.0 - 9.0
Conductivity	150 mS/m
Iron	0.2
Manganese	0.1

MICROBIOLOGICAL REQUIREMENTS				
1	2	3	4	5
		Allowable compliance contribution		
		95% of samples, min	4% of samples max	1% of samples max
		Upper limits		
Heterotrophic plate count	Count/ml	100	1000	10000
Total coliform bacteria	Count/100 ml	Not detected	10	100
Feacal coliform bacteria	Count/100 ml	Not detected	1	10

DW 04 PLANT: TRANSPORT

The Contractor shall ensure that the type, condition and capacity of the vehicle(s), including standby vehicles, to be used is sufficient to fulfil the obligations of the Contract. The transport operation shall be undertaken in compliance with relevant transport ordinances.

DW 05 TESTING

The Contractor is responsible to ensure that tests required ensuring compliancy with the specifications and ordinaries relating to the quality of water, are undertaken at the frequency and in terms of procedures prescribed.

DW 06 PAYMENT ITEMS

DW 06.01 Supply units of 1000 litres (m³) of potable water from commercial sources on the instruction of the Engineer/Department's representatives Unit: m³

The unit of measurement shall be the number of cubic metres of potable water delivered to site within 24 hours from the time that the Engineer has logged an emergency breakdown call with the Call Centre.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labour, materials and equipment needed to supply potable water into the elevated storage tank as directed by the engineer.

The tendered rate shall include, initial testing of water quality, value related as well as all time related preliminary and general charges, the operation and maintenance cost of the vehicle and the remuneration costs of the driver and workers. Separate items will be listed in the schedule of quantities for different rates of delivery.

DW 06.02 Supply and delivery units of 1000 litres (m³) of potable water from existing sources within a 3km radius on the instruction of the Engineer/Department's representatives Unit: m³

The unit of measurement shall be the number of cubic metres of potable water delivered to site within 24 hours from the time that the Engineer has logged an emergency breakdown call with the Call Centre.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labour, materials and equipment needed to supply and deliver potable water into the elevated storage tank as directed by the engineer.

The tendered rate shall include, initial testing of water quality, value related as well as all time related preliminary and general charges, the operation and maintenance cost of the vehicle and the remuneration costs of the driver and workers.

DW 06.03 Supply units of 1000 litres (m³) of raw water on the instruction of the Engineer/Department's representatives Unit: m³

The unit of measurement shall be the number of cubic metres of raw water delivered to site.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labour, materials and equipment needed to supply and deliver raw water into the raw storage tank or raw storage dams as directed by the engineer. It shall be possible to treat the raw water with the existing water treatment works on site to a standard that is in compliance with the South African Standard Specification for Drinking Water, SANS 241: 2006.

The tendered rate shall include, initial testing of water quality, value related as well as all time related preliminary and general charges, the operation and maintenance cost of the vehicle and the remuneration costs of the driver and workers. Separate items will be listed in the schedule of quantities for different rates of delivery.

DW 06.04

Delivery of potable water from commercial sources on the instruction of the Engineer/Department's representatives..... Unit: km

The unit of measurement shall be the number of kilometres travelled from the commercial source approved by the Engineer delivered to the storage tank.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labour, materials and equipment needed to transport potable water into the elevated storage tank as directed by the engineer.

The tendered rate shall include, value related as well as all time related preliminary and general charges, the operation and maintenance cost of the vehicle and the remuneration costs of the driver and workers.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

EG SEPTIC TANK FACILITIES

CONTENTS

EG 01	SCOPE
EG 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
EG 03	INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SEPTIC TANK SYSTEMS
EG 04	DETAIL OF REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE
EG 05	RESOURCES REQUIRED
EG 06	SOAK-AWAY PERCOLATION TEST
EG 07	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

EG 01 SCOPE: SEPTIC TANK (ST) AND FRENCH DRAIN (FD)

Septic tanks (STs) are generally used as the most appropriate method of sewage disposal in rural/remote locations such as police stations. Typical problems experienced with ST facilities include:

- Inadequate capacity for the loads generated by their serviced populations, thus requiring too frequent emptying and consequent operation as conservancy tanks.
- Counter-sloping of feed sewers, causing blockages in these pipes.
- Inappropriate or broken inlet and/or outlet pipe-work (tee pieces).
- Top level of separation baffles too low, causing spillover of accumulated scum from primary to secondary compartment.
- Blocked connection between ST and disposal unit (mostly french drains – FDs).
- Blocked and/or overflowing FD, due to under-sized drain or retarded percolation.
- Uneven distribution of septic tank effluent into FD drain, caused by inappropriate slope and perforation of spreader pipe.
- Blockage of pipes and/or FDs by tree and grass roots.

EG 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

EG 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

SABS 1200 - Standardized specification for civil engineering construction

EG 02.02 OTHER SPECIFICATIONS

LB - General corrosion protection

EG 02.03 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

The Contractor shall be required to comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993, Construction Regulations 2014 and related regulations. Non-compliance with these regulations, in any way whatsoever, will be adequate reason for suspending the works.

EG 02.04 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

EG 02.05 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

EG 03 INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SEPTIC TANK SYSTEMS

The specifications in EG 03 are of a general nature and if not referred to in Clause EG 04.

EG 03.01 SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

Specific information requirements re each ST facility include:

- Current and projected design population, incorporating appropriate design factors for domestic, public and institutional sanitation facilities (with/without detention cells).
- Dimensions and capacities of existing STs and FDs.
- ST emptying frequency and period since previous emptying event.
- Required ST and FD capacities.
- Integrity and serviceability of existing ST and FD structures and accessories (in/outlet fittings, baffle walls, rodding eyes on connecting pipes, etc.).
- Type and frequency of operational problems experienced, including resultant nuisance conditions.
- Contravention of applicable legal requirements.
- Availability and utilisation of groundwater (GW), its risk of pollution by the sanitation facility and precautions practised, such as chlorination of water supplied to users.
- Depth of GW table.
- Distance of separation between ST/FD and GW source.

- Other modes of water supply (with/without special treatment), such as Local Authority (LA) connection, surface source and carting from a remote source.
- Feasibility of connecting the water supply and/or sanitation facility to a LA-system.

EG 04 DETAIL OF REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE

EG 04.01 ALL INSTALLATIONS

The following general/repair and maintenance tasks shall be performed on all installations, whether specific problems are experienced, or not:

- Assess category in which the installation falls: Maintenance (no specific problems – largely applicable to FDs), Emergency repair and Repair (problematic cases – largely applicable to FDs), and/or Upgrading (applicable to STs or FDs, depending on design population). Measure internal length and width of tank, as well as depth from top of roof slab to top levels of scum layer, supernatant layer and sludge layer, and to floor level.
- Prepare temporary sludge disposal facility – the more appropriate of the following:
 - Drying bed/pond
 - Direct on-site burial
 - Carting to nearby sewage treatment works or domestic sanitary landfill site.
- Install permanent sewage by-pass facility consisting of a pre-fabricated tank of appropriate volume (c. 1m³ for single dwelling, larger for communal facilities) parallel to the ST, with up- and downstream connecting pipes and plugs.
- Install rodding eyes for regular cleaning of connecting pipes, particularly those between the ST and FD.
- Using a stirrer, pump and/or bacterial aids, break up scum and sludge layers and suspend tank content to enable its pumping.
- Empty tank by means of pumping – retain seed sample for re-commissioning of tanks. Remove large settled objects, such as bricks, etc. Operate by-pass tank during emptying and re-commissioning of main tank.
- Clean connecting pipes and accessories, e.g. in/outlet tees. Remove tree and grass roots from pipes.
- Maintain acceptable aesthetic conditions re smells and spillages during the cleaning cycle.

EG 04.02 INSTALLATIONS REQUIRING EMERGENCY REPAIR, REPAIR AND/OR UPGRADING

Facilities in these categories shall, in most cases, be designed as if for new installations. Appropriate design guidelines are given in:

Water Institute of Southern Africa (1988). *Manual on the Design of Small Sewage Works*.

Summaries of preliminary designs shall be submitted to the Project Manager for conceptual approval. The services of a hydro-geologist may have to be employed, particularly where the accompanying water supply is fed from GW sources.

In cases where the capacities of the ST and/or FD are inadequate for the flow to be treated, or where evidence of malfunctioning of the FD/disposal field is observed, the following tasks shall be carried out:

- Determine the design population/flow.
- In case of a single existing FD, install a duplicate FD and use it while the original FD is being refurbished. Thereafter, operate them alternately.
- In case of a disposal field (e.g. multiple FDs):
 - Dig an inspection hole close to the existing disposal field and characterise the soil profile to a depth of 1,2 to 1,5m below ground level.
 - Select the most feasible percolation layer and perform the prescribed percolation test in that layer.
 - Assess the percolation capacity of the existing FD/disposal field and, if necessary, the additional capacity required.
 - Increase the installed capacity of the FD/disposal field to at least 120% of its design capacity and operate the two halves of the system alternately.
- If the percolation zone of the FD/disposal field is perceived to be blocked, as evidenced by effluent seeping to the surface:
 - Remove the stone media from the drain, wash off accumulated biomass and allow the media to dry.
 - Strip a 100mm mantle of blocked soil from the sides and bottom of the drain and dispose of the spoil by on-site burial.
 - Return the stone media to the drain and replenish shortages.
- Pipework:
 - In either case (new or refurbished FD), install flow distribution pipe horizontally at correct level and with percolation holes located such that flow will be spread evenly over the length and width of the drain.
 - Install vertical inspection pipe (from floor level to 1m above ground level) to enable assessment of water level in drain.
- The ST site must at all times be maintained in a neat and acceptable condition.

EG 04.03

Six monthly maintenance shall include the measurement and recording of sludge levels in the septic tank. Sludge removal shall be at frequencies as follows:

Population served:	10	-	30 persons	=	2 years
	50	-	200 persons	=	1 year
	200	-	500 persons	=	6 months
	Single household			=	3 years

EG 04.04 OTHER MEANS OF DISPOSAL OF ST EFFLUENT

Where geological conditions are such that ST effluent disposal by means of subsurface percolation is not feasible, the following alternative disposal methods may be considered:

- Evapo-transpiration beds, either as a stand-alone facility, or supplementary to a FD system
- Reedbeds
- Hydroponic systems.

EG 05 RESOURCES REQUIRED

- Apparatus for measuring sludge and scum layers in STs
- Apparatus for performing percolation tests
- Excavator
- Sludge pump
- Stirrer/bacterial aids for breaking up of sludge and scum layers
- Geo-hydrologist.

EG 06 SOAK-AWAY PERCOLATION TEST

The percolation test has to be performed at the site of the soak-aways, the following procedure shall be followed:

Excavate a test hole to the floor of the trench of the soak-away (approximately 500mm in depth). The test hole shall be excavated large enough to allow a person to work on the floor of the excavation. The excavation shall be either shored to prevent collapsing of the walls, or the excavation shall be battered to prevent collapse.

At the floor of the excavation, a hole with a diameter of 300 mm \pm 20 mm. The depth of the hole should be approximately 300 mm.

Now the 300 mm diameter hole must be filled with water and kept filled for 4 hours. The soil needs to be soaked.

After 4 hours of soaking, the hole is allowed to drain completely, where after the hole shall be filled with water to a depth of only 150 mm and the time noted. It is important to measure the actual depth of the water – if this differs from 150 mm.

As soon as the water has again soaked away, the time must be noted again. This time period, together with the original depth of water, is required to assess the percolation rate of the soil.

From the time it took to drain, the average time for the water to drop 10 mm is calculated. The table below is then used to determine the sidewall area of the trench. The trench bottom should be neglected since it gets clogged very rapidly.

SOAK-AWAY PERCOLATION TEST	
Minutes to drop 10 mm	Rate of application (ℓ/m ² .d)
1	170
2	110
4	75
6	50
10	40
18	30
24	25
More than 24	Soil not suitable

EG 07 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**EG 07.01 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT FOR DESLUDGE AND GENERAL REPAIR OF SEPTIC TANKS Unit : Number**

The unit of measurement shall be for the procedure described in EG 04.01 as well as for site specific requirements to achieve a clean and operational septic tank.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning, excavation, installation, removing of obsolete material and rubble, dealing with water logged conditions, execution of the Environmental Measurement Plan during repair, provision of backfill and by-pass tanks and pipes and the disposal of sludge and surplus material. All labour shall also be included in the tendered rate.

EG 07.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT FOR REHABILITATION OF FRENCH DRAIN SYSTEM Unit : Number

The unit of measurement shall be for the procedure described in EG 04.02 as well as for site specific requirements to achieve a clean and operational French Drain System.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the percolation test, the increased disposal field capacity, removal of stone media (if required), pipe work, rehabilitation of existing FD and installation of inspection pipes.

EG 07.03 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT FOR ALLIENATIVE METHODS TO AUGMENT THE SEPTIC TANK/ FRENCH DRAIN TREATMENT Unit : Number

The unit of measurement shall be for the construction of the component to augment the ST/FD treatment system (see EG 04.04).

The tendered shall include the full compensation for the installation or construction of the system as approved by the Engineer.

EG 07.04 SOAK-AWAY PERCOLATION TEST.....Unit: Number

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of slump tests required.

The tendered rate shall include the full compensation for the excavation of the trench/ hole, materials, equipment, labour and any other requirements not mentioned here to complete the soak test.

EG.07.05 PUMP OUT OF SEPTIC TANK SLUDGE INTO A SUITABLE WASTE CONTAINMENT VEHICLE FOR TRANSPORTATION.....Unit: cubic metre (m³)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of sludge pumped, multiplied by the distance (one-way) in kilometre.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all components, materials, tools, transport, site handling and labour necessary for the complete pumping, removal and disposal of the sludge.

The Contractor shall be required to provide a certificate of the disposed sludge as proof from the registered treatment plant indicated by the Engineer.

The waste containment vehicle shall be a commercially registered waste containment vehicle capable of handling no less than 10m³ at a time.

EG.07.06 DISPOSING OF SEPTIC TANK SLUDGE AT A REGISTERED COMMERCIAL SOURCE ON THE INSTRUCTION OF THE ENGINEER/DEPARTMENT'S REPRESENTATIVE.....Unit: cubic metre – kilometre (m³-km)

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre load of sludge multiplied with the number of kilometres travelled (one way trip) to the commercial source approved by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labour, materials and equipment needed to transport sludge to a registered wastewater treatment works indicated by the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include, value related as well as all time related preliminary and general charges, the operation and maintenance cost of the suitable commercial waste containment vehicle and the remuneration costs of the driver and workers.

The Contractor shall be required to provide a certificate of the disposed sludge as proof from the registered treatment plant indicated by the Engineer.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

EJ WATER QUALITY TESTING

CONTENTS

EJ 01	SCOPE
EJ 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
EJ 03	FLOW MEASUREMENT
EJ 04	DETAIL OF WORK
EJ 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

EJ 01 SCOPE

This particular specification is applicable to the water quality testing by chemical analysis for both the sewage treatment works and the potable water purification works at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnok Land Ports of Entry.

The specification covers requirements for sewage effluent standards as well as potable water standards. Testing procedures and equipment to verify these standards are also covered.

EJ 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

EJ 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

SANS 5667-2	- Water quality sampling, part 2: Guidance on sampling techniques
SANS 5667-2	- Water quality sampling, part 10: Guidance on sampling of wastewater.
SANS 5011	- Water - pH value
SANS 5217	- Water - free and saline ammonia content
SANS 6048	- Water - chemical oxygen demand
SANS 6049	- Water - suspended solids content
SANS 6057	- Electrical conductivity of water
SANS 4831	- Microbiology: General guidance for the enumeration of coliforms: Most probable number technique
SANS 4833	- Microbiology: General guidance for the enumeration of coliforms: Colony count technique at 30 °C
SANS 241:2006	- Drinking water

EJ 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

EJ 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

EJ 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

EJ 03 FLOW MEASUREMENT

Flow rate shall be measured and recorded daily to populate a database of the following parameters:

- (a) Total flow
- (b) Maximum flow (peak flow)
- (c) Minimum flow (night flow).

EJ 04 DETAIL OF WORK**EJ 04.01 GENERAL**

As part of the operational responsibilities on this project the Contractor shall regularly test wastewater and effluent quality as specified in the following clauses.

Operation shall include maintaining all testing equipment, including equipment not supplied as part of the Contract, in a clean and perfect functional condition.

EJ 04.02 TEST LABORATORY

The existing buildings shall be utilised as a site laboratory. Should the Contractor require more space, it shall be provided at his cost.

EJ 04.03 TEST EQUIPMENT

The contractor shall provide for the following analytical glassware and testing apparatus as part of this Contract:

- (a) Bench top pH, accurate and precise to at least 0,1 pH unit, including reference electrode and glass sensor or combination electrode;
- (b) Turbidity meter.
- (c) Electrical conductivity meter, with error not exceeding 1 % or 0,1 m S/m;
- (d) Magnetic stirrer with PTFE (Teflon) stirring bars;
- (e) 3 x 1 000 millilitre Imhoff cones with wooden rack;
- (f) 2 x 500 millilitre volumetric flasks;
- (g) 3 x pipettes (glass);
- (h) 5 x 500ml glass beakers
- (i) 2 x 1000ml plastic beakers
- (j) 3 X 1000 ml graduated measuring cylinders

EJ 04.04 WASTE WATER AND POTABLE WATER QUALITY TESTING

Waste water and potable water quality shall be tested within the first month after completion and commissioning of the sewage treatment plant and the water purification plant respectively.

See Operation Schedules for respective waste water treatment works.

EJ 04.05 SEWAGE EFFLUENT QUALITY TESTS

The final effluent of the sewage treatment plant shall comply with the general limit of the General Authorizations in terms of Section 39 of the Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998): DISCHARGE OF WASTE OR WATER CONTAINING WASTE INTO A WATER RESOURCE THROUGH A PIPE, CANAL, SEWER OR OTHER CONDUIT; AND DISPOSING IN ANY MANNER OF WATER WHICH CONTAINS WASTE FROM, OR WHICH HAS BEEN HEATED IN, ANY INDUSTRIAL OR POWER GENERATION PROCESS

The following analysis shall be performed by an approved authority on a monthly basis on the final effluent of the sewage works.

Faecal coliforms.(per 100ml)
 Chemical Oxygen demand (mg/l)
 pH
 Ammonia as Nitrogen (mg/l)
 Nitrate as nitrogen (mg/l)
 Chlorine as free chlorine (mg/l)
 Suspended solids (mg/l)
 Electrical conductivity (mS/m)
 Ortho-phosphate as phosphorus (mg/l)

Provision shall be made for the full analysis as published in table 3.1 of the GENERAL AUTHORIZATIONS once during the term of the contract.

The sample shall be taken at the outflow of the last maturation pond.

EJ 04.06 MONITORING PROGRAMME FOR SEWAGE TREATMENT WORKS

Regular measurement of the quantity and quality of wastewater final effluent shall be recorded according to the requirements of Government Notice no 1191: General Authorisations in terms of section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act no 36 of 1998), 8 October 1999. Licensed works shall be monitored in accordance with the license requirements.

The Contractor shall keep a written record and report electronically on a prescribed report form of all values for the duration of the Contract, of the following wastewater discharge and relative activities:

- (a) Quantity of wastewater final effluent discharged;
- (b) Quality of the wastewater final effluent discharged;
- (c) Detail of the monitoring programme;
- (d) Detail of failures and malfunctions in the discharge system and detail of measures taken.

EJ 04.07 POTABLE WATER QUALITY TESTS

An approved testing authority shall analyse the potable water on a monthly basis as per analysis schedule in particular specification PDH. Provision shall be made for a full Physical, organoleptic, and chemical requirements analysis once during the contract period. The sample shall be submitted to the testing authority according to prescription. The water distributed to consumers shall comply with the SANS 241:2006 Specification for the standards of drinking water. Only Class 1 (recommended operational limit) water shall be distributed for human consumption.

The following analysis shall be performed by an approved authority on a monthly basis on the water delivered to the consumers.

MICROBIOLOGICAL ANALYSIS OF THE WATER IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE MICROBIOLOGICAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS ACCORDING TO THE SANS 241:2006

The following analysis shall be performed by an approved authority on a monthly basis on the water delivered to the consumers.

Turbidity (NTU)
Calcium as Ca (mg/l)
Chloride as Cl⁻ (mg/l)
pH value
Electrical conductivity
Dissolved solids (mg/l)
Sodium as Na (mg/l)
Nitrate as N (mg/l)
Magnesium as Mg (mg/l)
Sulfate as SO₄⁼ (mg/l)
Aluminium as Al (µg/l)
Iron as Fe (µg/l)
Manganese as Mn (µg/l)
Dissolved organic Carbon

EJ 05 **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

Remuneration for the monthly maintenance of the wastewater quality monitoring programme, maintenance of a site laboratory if necessary, laboratory equipment, testing to be performed on site during the maintenance phase as specified and record keeping system shall be deemed included in ten points for the maintenance of the installation of which wastewater quality control, measurement and testing form part.

Remuneration for all work and expenses related to water and wastewater quality tests by approved testing authorities in terms of SANS 10259 shall be paid to the Contractor as tendered for the number of tests including all water quality parameters as specified in EJ.

The Contractor shall be responsible for payment of testing authorities for any tests performed by them.

Monthly Water Report

DWAF Water Use Registration

Farm Name	Title Deed	Water Use	Reg No	Expiry Date

DWAF Operator Registration & Classification

Name & ID Number	Classification & Date of Issue

Class - Works

[illegible]

Compiled:

Checked:

Date:

Date:

Sewage Analysis Report

DWAF Water Use Registration

DWAF Operator Registration

<i>Farm Name</i>	<i>Title Deed</i>	<i>Water Use</i>	<i>Reg No.</i>	<i>Expiry Date</i>

<i>Name</i>	<i>Reg No. & Date</i>

Class Works

Bold Face & Underline = Did not comply with the Water Act

[illegible]

Compiled:

Checked:

Date:

Date:

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

FD HEATING VENTILATION AND AIRCONDITIONING SYSTEMS

CONTENTS

FD 01	SCOPE
FD 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
FD 03	VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
FD 04	AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
FD 05	TRAINING OF OPERATIONS FOR THE OPERATION OF THE INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT
FD 06	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
FD 07	TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
FD 08	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
FD 09	COMMISSIONING AND RECOMMISSIONING OF PLANT AND INSTALLATION
FD 10	GUARANTEE OF INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT
FD 11	MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES
FD 12	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT
FD 13	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT

FD 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the general maintenance and servicing of heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems, which include the following:

- (a) Room air-conditioning units with air cooled condensers
- (b) Refrigeration pipework
- (c) Fans and attenuators
- (d) Electric motors
- (e) Air filters
- (f) Duct work
- (g) Air terminals
- (h) Noise and vibration
- (i) Painting and cleaning
- (k) Labelling and identification.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document, and shall be read in conjunction with the additional and particular specifications compiled as part of this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

The Contractor shall at all times adhere to this specification, unless otherwise specified in the Particular Specification.

FD 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**FD 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES**

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

FD 02.01.01 SANS and other specifications and codes

SANS 046	-	Copper tube manufacturing code of practice
SANS 10400	-	The applications of building regulations
SANS 10103	-	The measurement and rating of environmental noise with respect to annoyance and speech communication
SANS 10139	-	The prevention, automatic detection and extinguishing of fire in buildings
SANS 10140	-	Identification colour marketing
SANS 10142	-	Code of practice for the wiring of premises
SANS 10147	-	Refrigerating systems, including plants associated with air-conditioning systems
SANS 10173	-	Installation, testing and balancing of duct work
SANS 630	-	Decorative high-gloss enamel paint for interior and exterior
SANS 763	-	General coating thickness
SANS 1238	-	HVAC duct construction standards
Act 103	-	National Building Regulations and Building Standard Act, 1977 (Act No 103 of 1977) as amended

FD 02.01.02 Department of Public Works Specifications

PW 371	-	Specification of materials and methods to be used
STS 1	-	Standard specification for air conditioning services
STS 5	-	Standard Specification for electrical installations and equipment pertaining to mechanical installations

FD 02.01.03 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

FD 02.01.04 Manufacturers' specifications, codes of practice and installation instructions

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

FD 02.01.05 Municipal regulations, laws and by-laws

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

FD 03 VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS TO STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The following additional general specifications and requirements shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified in the Particular Specification.

FD 03.01**GENERAL REPAIR AND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- (a) All materials and equipment supplied and installed shall be of new high quality, design and manufactured to the relevant specifications, suitable for providing efficient, reliable and trouble-free service.
- (b) All work shall be executed in a first-class workman-like manner by qualified tradesmen.
- (c) All equipment, component parts, fittings and materials supplied and/or installed, shall conform in respect of quality, manufacture, test and performance to the requirements of the applicable current SANS specifications and codes, except where otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer in writing.
- (d) All materials and workmanship which, in the opinion of the Engineer, is inferior to that specified for the work will be condemned. All condemned material and workmanship shall be replaced or rectified as directed and approved by the Engineer.
- (e) The Contractor shall submit a detailed list of the equipment and material to be used to the Engineer for approval before placing orders or commencing installation.
- (f) All new equipment, materials and systems shall be installed and positioned such as to not impede on access routes, entrances and other services. The Contractor shall coordinate these items taking other services and equipment into account.
- (g) All control equipment and serviceable items shall be installed and positioned such that they will be accessible and maintainable.
- (h) The Contractor shall make sure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during the repair and construction periods to ensure the safety of the public and User Client.
- (i) Repair work shall be programmed in accordance with Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures, to ensure the shortest possible down-time of any service and the least inconvenience to the User Client and public. The Contractor shall make sure that the necessary notifications and notices are timeously put into place for these activities.

FD 03.02**TESTING OF REFRIGERATION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

- (a) All new refrigerant pipe installations shall be thoroughly tested to be sure that they are absolutely tight. Nitrogen must be used to pressure test the system at 1,5 times the working pressure. A pressure-reducing valve must be used to set the test pressure. A leak test must be carried out on the entire system.
- (b) All new refrigerant pipe installations shall be vacuum pumped by means of a suitable vacuum pump. An absolute pressure of 2500 micron must be reached. Allow the system to stand under vacuum for a minimum of 12 hours. If no noticeable rise in pressure has taken place after 12 hours, the system may be charged.
- (c) The dryness of the refrigeration system shall be indicated by an approved moisture indicator.
- (d) Should moisture be present, the system shall be leak tested and the leak repaired. Should no leak be present, the system shall be flushed with dry nitrogen and vacuum pumped again as described above.
- (e) If the completed system complies with all the Specifications and passes the test and inspection, it can be approved and the Contractor may be instructed to recharge the system with the correct refrigerant and refrigerant charge.
- (f) Under no circumstances shall the refrigerant piping/installation be purged.

FD 03.03**REFRIGERANTS**

- (a) No CFC refrigerant shall be used in new installations.
- (b) Equipment still running on CFC shall be maintained until such time that a leak occurs or the system has to be decanted. The system shall then be converted to a compatible HCFC or HFC as described in the Montreal Protocol and recommended by the compressor manufacturer.
- (c) Any CFC refrigerant that has to be discharged, shall be decanted by means of an approved reclaiming system, and not discharged to the atmosphere. Should the Contractor not comply with this requirement, full action shall be taken contractually and statutory against him.
- (d) Any refrigeration system not supplied with three-way service valves, shall be provided with Schreuder type service valves. These valves shall be installed on both suction and discharge lines of the compressors. Tap-o-line valves shall not be fitted or used on the systems.
- (e) In the event of an electrical motor burn-out in a hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor, a burn-out drier shall be used. Purging only is prohibited. The burn-out drier shall be installed and removed as per the manufacturer's instructions.
- (f) No synthetic components or solutions shall be used to repair leaks in refrigeration piping, on coils or evaporators. Only approved gas welding shall be used. Should the leak be of such nature that repair is not possible, the item should be replaced.

FD 03.04**FANS AND ATTENUATORS****FD 03.04.01****General**

- (a) Requirements under this heading apply to fans that are not integral parts of complete units supplied by recognised suppliers. Selected fans shall be such that the operating point is as close as possible to maximum efficiency.
- (b) Fan motors selected must be capable of supplying not less than 10 % above the specified air quantity without overloading.
- (c) The system resistance must be calculated and the fan selected to meet the required static pressure, taking into consideration the site altitude, system air temperature and air density at which the system duty shall be met. The selection must be submitted to the Engineer for approval before ordering the equipment.
- (d) Belt drives shall be designed for a minimum overload of 25 % and not less than two matched belts may be used. Belts shall be selected and installed according to BS 790.
- (e) Pulleys shall be of the adjustable speed taper-lock type and shall be accurately keyed to the shafts and aligned before the system is put into operation.
- (f) Belt guards shall be supplied in accordance with Occupational Health and Safety Act, No 85 of 1993. The guards shall have an expanded metal front and shall allow oiling and the use of a tachometer without removal of the guard.
- (g) Bearings shall be selected for a minimum life expectancy of 200 000 hours at the given duty.
- (h) Lubrication points shall be readily accessible and shall be extended to the outside to permit lubrication without removal of the fan. Fan shafts shall be suitably protected from rust and corrosion.

FD 03.04.02 Axial flow fans

- (a) Axial flow fans shall be in-line direct-driven type with the motor mounted inside the fan housing.
- (b) Fans shall be of the multi-bladed aerofoil type of a non-ferrous construction. The number of blades vary according to the application. The fans shall be provided with adjustable blade pitch indexed to permit field adjustment.
- (c) Fan casings shall be constructed of hot-dip galvanized mild steel with a minimum thickness of 3 mm and mild steel galvanized flanges on each side drilled for connections to matching flanges on ducting.

FD 03.04.03 Sound attenuators

- (a) Sound attenuators shall be installed in the positions indicated on the drawings and shall be selected to provide the noise criteria levels as specified. All sound attenuators shall be products of an accredited manufacturer who publishes selection data on these products. Data shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval before ordering.
- (b) Metalwork shall be galvanized steel and acoustic insulation shall be non-combustible material, properly bonded and covered so as not to permit particles to be eroded by air moving over it.
- (c) Sound absorbing lining material shall have a density not less than 48 kg/m³ and thickness of not less than 50 mm.

FD 03.05 CANOPIES AND GREASE ELIMINATORS

- (a) Kitchen canopies shall be connected to the extract fan by means of cuts of which the joints and seams are of the welded or soldered construction and shall be watertight. Cleaning openings shall be provided at such intervals on the ducting that the inside of the ducting can be reached for cleaning purposes. The fan shall be provided with a cleaning access door, as well as a drain point at the bottom.
- (b) Fire dampers, operated with fusible links, shall be provided in each air outlet connection and shall form an integral part of the canopy construction.
- (c) Lights shall be fitted into the canopy by the manufacturer. Access to the tube for tube replacement shall be through the face of the fittings without the use of tools.
- (d) Grease filters shall contain a series of vertical baffles to change the direction of the air flow and efficiently divert grease particles out of the air stream by centrifugal action. Each filter bank shall contain a condensate trough and removable grease storage container.

FD 03.06 ELECTRIC MOTORS

- (a) All electric motors shall be of one make, unless integral with the equipment, and shall not operate in excess of 1500 r/min unless previously approved by the Engineer for specific reasons. Motors, unless otherwise specified, shall be 380 volt, three-phase, 50 hertz for all sizes from and including 0,37 kW upwards. Smaller motors may be 220 volt, single-phase, 50 hertz.
- (b) All motors shall be totally enclosed, fan-cooled and have metric frame dimensions. Motors shall be quiet in operation to the full acceptance of the Engineer.
- (c) Three-phase motors shall all be squirrel cage induction type, special high torque motors being used on high inertia loads such as centrifugal fans, where otherwise excessively large motors, necessary to overcome driven equipment inertia, cause operation BHP to be less than 70 % of motor nameplate kW.

- (d) Starting methods for three-phase motors shall be as follows:
 - Motors up to 5,5 kW - DOL
 - Above 5,5 kW - Star-delta started, provided that the starting current does not exceed three times the full load amps.
- (e) Single-phase motors shall be capacitor started, induction run type with built-in manual reset overload protection.
- (f) Nameplate rating of electric motors shall be at least 15 % larger than the required driven equipment brake drive losses duly accounted for, on motors below 15 kW. On larger motors a 10 % margin shall suffice.
- (g) All switch panels shall have a phase failure and low voltage protection with automatic reset adjustable to a maximum period of 10 minutes.

FD 03.07**DUCT WORK**

- (a) This specification covers the air distribution system as shown on the drawings. Duct work shall be manufactured in accordance with the standard specification for air-conditioning duct work, SANS 1238. Duct work shall be erected in accordance with the code of practice for the installation, testing and balancing of duct work, SANS 0173.
- (b) Fittings such as elbows, parallel flow branches, branch connections, off-sets and transitions shall be manufactured and installed in accordance with the SMACNA standards.
- (c) All ducting shall be sufficiently airtight to ensure economical and quiet performance of the system, and joints shall be suitably sealed in accordance with the relevant SMACNA standard with suitable non-combustible filler compound.
- (d) The Contractor shall provide all hangers and supports which are to be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to SANS 193. No explosive fasteners to the building structure shall be allowed, only approved expanding bolts or clamps are permissible.
- (e) The duct work shall be connected to the air terminals by means of flexible ducting. Flexible ducting shall be coated fibreglass fabric with a mineral base. Flexible ducting shall be installed with "easy" bends of not less than one duct diameter centre line and shall be supported to SMACNA specification to ensure that the ducting does not kink. The length of the flexible duct shall be kept to a minimum and shall not exceed lengths of 1200 mm.

FD 03.08**AIR TERMINALS**

- (a) Air distribution shall be effected by means of the supply air grilles as indicated on the drawing. The finish of the grilles shall be epoxy powder-coated, the colour of which shall be advised and approved by the Engineer. Supply air grilles shall be of the double deflection type, consisting of two rows of individually adjustable aerofoil section vanes, front vanes horizontal rear vanes vertical, all vanes housed in a surrounding fixing flange with neat mitred joints in the corner.
- (b) Supply air grilles shall be of steel construction and shall be provided with burglar bars. The inner section will be only accessible from above and the face plate of the grille is fixed from above. No screws or fixing devices are accessible from below.
- (c) Supply grilles are supplied with a plenum box with spigot and connected to the spigot on the ducting by means of flexible ducting.
- (d) Transfer grilles shall be of steel construction and be provided with burglar bars. Standard door grilles may be installed with a burglar bar assembly in between.

FD 03.09 AIR FILTERS**FD 03.09.01 General**

- (a) Provide and install air filters in the positions as indicated on the drawings.
- (b) Filters shall be standard products of a reputable manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the particular filter. The manufacturer shall submit evidence to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the filters have been tested by an independent authority and that they meet the minimum arrestance, efficiency and dust holding capacity.
- (c) Filters shall be tested in accordance with ASHRAE test standard 52 - 76.
- (d) A Megnahelic gauge calibrated from zero to 500 Pa shall be installed, connected with copper tubing to static pressure taps complete with isolating valves.

FD 03.09.02 Primary filters

- (a) Primary filters shall, unless otherwise stated, be washable on woven polyester material, pleated to provide an extended surface with a dust spot efficiency of minimum 40 % and an arrestance of 85 %.
- (b) Media shall be firmly held in place by rustproof wire screens to maintain pleat strength and spacing.
- (c) Media and support screens shall be continuously bonded into aluminium support.
- (d) Frames shall be folded to form a robust media support frame. The bonding between media and frame shall be continuous to prevent leakage.
- (e) Each filter shall be provided with a factory made holding frame, constructed of not less than 1,0 mm thick galvanized mild steel provided with suitable seals and quick release spring type clips to securely hold the filter cell in place without permitting leakage of air.
- (f) The holding frames of multiple cell filter banks shall be suitably joined and sealed so as to prevent leakage of air between the frames.

FD 03.10 LABELLING AND IDENTIFICATION

All equipment shall be labelled and identified using black Traffolite labels with 10 mm high white lettering on the labels. Labels will be secured using epoxy base glue.

The identification number used on these labels shall correspond with the equipment number on the complete inventory list.

FD 03.11 NOISE AND VIBRATION

- (a) Particular care shall be taken in the selection, application and installation of all equipment used to ensure that the equipment will operate below the required noise level for public areas of NC 35 and with the least vibration possible, all to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- (b) Equipment shall be mounted on vibration isolators of the correct type and selection depending on deflection requirement and vibrating frequency.
- (c) Anti-vibration connections shall be used on duct work where it joins vibrating equipment such as fans and air-conditioning units.
- (d) Suitable sound attenuating devices shall be incorporated within the duct work to reduce airborne noise to acceptable levels as specified.

- (e) The subcontractor shall provide sound level data to the Engineer on the completion of the installation detailing the noise levels in NC level for each separate area. No measurement shall be taken closer than 1 metre from any outlet.

FD 03.12**PAINTING AND CLEANING**

- (a) No untreated metal surfaces shall be allowed on the project. Items which are not galvanized or similarly protected against rust and corrosion shall be painted as detailed below. No equipment, hangers, brackets, etc, shall be delivered to site in unprotected condition; they shall be factory coated with an approved zinc-rich prime coat before being despatched.
- (b) Painting shall comprise the following consecutive processes. Thoroughly clean, descale and degrease all surfaces, apply one coat of approved zinc-rich primer and one coat of universal undercoat, and finish off with two coats of quality high-gloss enamel. Final finish shall be to the full approval of the Engineer.
- (c) Items with galvanized finish, such as cable trays, need not be painted but shall be properly cleaned with suitable galvanized iron cleaning fluid. Where galvanized finish is painted, it shall be primed with a calcium plumbate primer.
- (d) It is not a requirement to paint duct work, conduits or pipework installed in roof voids and shafts, where they are not visible, if they are galvanized. Items as mentioned above shall be properly cleaned and painted as specified above.
- (e) Visible sections of the inside of ducting through grilles shall be painted matt black after degreasing and priming as specified above.
- (f) Plant and equipment shall be painted with the relevant colour in accordance with SANS.

FD 03.13**SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS**

- (a) The self-contained packaged unit shall be a fully catalogued product and documentation shall include performance curves and selection tables.
- (b) Self-contained room air-conditioning units consist of unit casing, compressor, evaporator and fan, condenser and fan, refrigerant pipework with expansion device and the relevant controls. The condenser unit shall form an integral part of the unit or be separate for split applications.
- (c) Unit casings shall be of sheet metal construction with a baked enamel finish to give a corrosion resistance. Units shall be suitably insulated to ensure quiet operation.
- (d) Evaporator fans shall be of the double inlet centrifugal type with integral motor or belt-driven. The fan assembly shall be isolated from the unit by means of rubber mounts and the unit shall operate without vibration.
- (e) Condensate trays shall be manufactured of non-corrosive materials and shall be insulated and condensate shall be piped to the nearest drain point.
- (f) Washable WP 77 filters shall be provided and installed behind the inlet grille and shall be easily removable.
- (g) Compressors shall be of the hermetically sealed dome type with crankcase heaters and suitable vibration isolators.
- (h) Condenser coils shall be copper tubes with aluminium fins for inland use. Condenser fans shall be propeller fans or of the centrifugal type.
- (i) Refrigerant piping shall be installed and repaired as specified in FD 03.

FD 04 AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of an inventory list and operating and maintenance manuals and system data sheets.

This shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

The Contractor shall allow for the required equipment and facilities to establish the correct as-built information.

All information shall be recorded and reproduced in electronic format, as well as three sets of hard copies to be supplied to the Department.

Over and above what is specified in Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals, the operating and maintenance manual to be compiled shall be structured to include at least the following:

(a) System description

Complete system description and the working of the plant.

(b) Commissioning data

Complete commissioning, test and inspection data of plant.

(c) Operating data

- (i) Plant running check list and frequency of servicing required;
- (ii) Safety precautions to be implemented;
- (iii) Manual and automatic operation;
- (iv) Maintenance duties and logging required;
- (v) Lubricating oils and service instructions;
- (vi) Pre-start checklist for each system;
- (vii) Starting and stopping procedures.

(d) Mechanical equipment

- (i) Description of all major items with the make, model number, names, addresses and telephone numbers of the suppliers, manufacturers or their agents;
- (ii) Design capacities of all equipment, including selection parameters, selection curves, capacity tables, etc;
- (iii) Manufacturers' brochures and pamphlets;
- (iv) Schedule of spares with part numbers recommended to be held as stock.

(e) Maintenance instructions

- (i) Schedule of maintenance particulars, frequency of services and replacements;
- (ii) Trouble-shooting guide;
- (iii) Part number of all replacement items and spares;
- (iv) Capacity curves of pumps, fans and compressors;
- (v) Serial numbers of all items of equipment.

(f) Electrical equipment

- (i) Schedule of equipment, indicating manufacturer, type, model number, capacity and addresses and telephone numbers of suppliers;
- (ii) Maintenance instructions;
- (iii) Manufacturers' brochures and pamphlets;
- (iv) Complete as-built circuit diagrams and diagrammatic representation of interconnections of all electrical equipment.

(g) Instrumentation and control

- (i) Description of each control system;
- (ii) Schedule of control equipment indicating manufacturer, type, model number, capacity and addresses and telephone numbers of suppliers;
- (iii) Maintenance instructions;
- (iv) Manufacturers' brochures and pamphlets.

(h) Drawings

- (i) Paper prints of all as-built mechanical and electrical drawings;
- (ii) Wiring diagrams framed behind glass shall be mounted adjacent to each relevant control panel.

FD 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

The Contractor shall under this repair and maintenance contract institute a logging and recording system as part of his maintenance control plan as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance. This shall consist of a log and record book which shall be utilised to log and record all operations, faults, system checks, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections, etc.

The logbook shall be kept in a safe place at the maintenance section and shall only be utilised by the boiler house supervisor, the Contractor and the Engineer. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with this monthly report to the Engineer.

The logbook shall be structured to include at least the following:

- (i) Daily inspection and maintenance actions;
- (ii) Monthly inspection and maintenance actions;
- (iii) Six-monthly inspection and maintenance actions;
- (iv) Breakdown reports.

The Contractor shall also institute an attendance register, which shall be kept in a safe place at the maintenance section. This register shall be completed by all persons visiting the relevant plants, including:

- (a) Contractor and maintenance personnel;
- (b) Inspectors;
- (c) User Client and associates;
- (d) Engineer.

This register shall state the date, time-in, time-out, name, company and reason for visit. A copy of the register shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report.

On completion of repair work and/or the installation of new equipment the plant and equipment shall be put into operation after all tests and adjustments have been carried out to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Where new plant is installed the Contractor shall run and operate the system for a period of time specified by the Engineer and train the staff of the User Client to operate and maintain the system. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with Clause SC 11 of the Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

Logging of the operation of the installations shall commence immediately upon start-up.

The Contractor shall submit a full commissioning report as per attached commissioning data sheet.

FD 06 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS ON COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

On completion of repair work the Contractor shall prior to recommissioning test the plant and its equipment. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with Clause SC 08 of Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

Except where otherwise provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall provide labour, materials, power, fuel, accessories and properly calibrated and certified instruments necessary for carrying out such tests. Arrangements for these tests shall be made by the Contractor and he shall give at least 72 hours written notice to the Engineer before commencing the test. In the event of the plant or installation not passing the test, the Employer shall be at liberty to deduct from the Contract amount all reasonable expenses incurred by the Employer or the Engineer attending the repeated test.

Whenever any installation or equipment is to be operated for testing or adjusting as provided for above, the Contractor shall operate the entire system for as long a period as may be required to prove satisfactory performance at all times in the occupies space served by that system for up to twenty-four hours a day continuously until the certificate of practical completion of repair work is handed over.

The Contractor shall provide all labour and supervision required for such operation and the Department may assign staff as observers, but such observation time shall not be counted as instruction time.

After complete installation of the system all equipment shall be tested, adjusted and readjusted until it operates to the satisfaction and approval of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall submit certificates of tests carried out to prove the performance of all equipment, as well as certificates obtained from all the relevant authorities and statutory bodies, etc.

The Contractor shall only utilise Departmental approved inspection authorities for all inspections and tests to be conducted. This will be done and approved in writing among the relevant parties.

FD 07 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

The Contractor shall institute an approved quality assurance (QA) system, which shall be submitted to the Engineer for his approval. The records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the Contract and be submitted to the Engineer at regular intervals as required.

FD 08 COMMISSIONING AND RECOMMISSIONING OF PLANT AND INSTALLATION**FD 08.01 GENERAL**

On completion of repair work and/or the installation of new equipment the plant and equipment shall be put into operation after all tests and adjustments have been carried out to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Where new plant is installed the Contractor shall run and operate the system for a period of time as specified by the Engineer and train the staff of the User Client to operate and maintain the system. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with Clause SC 11 of Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

Logging of the operation of the installations shall commence immediately upon start-up.

The Contractor shall submit a full commissioning report as per attached commissioning data sheet.

FD 08.02**RECOMMISSIONING OF PLANT AND ANCILLARY EQUIPMENT**

On completion of repair work the Contractor shall recommission the plant and its equipment. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with Clause SC 11 of Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures. This operation shall also be carried out strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and shall be witnessed by the Engineer.

Recommissioning checks to be carried out shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Mechanical checks
- (b) Electrical and control checks.

On completion of repair work the Contractor shall recommission the plant and its ancillary equipment. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and shall be witnessed by the Engineer. This shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) All required recommissioning mechanical checks
 - (i) Check system for leaks;
 - (ii) Check rotation of all fans;
 - (iii) Check mountings of all equipment.
- (b) All required recommissioning electrical and control checks
 - (i) Check all wiring connections for tightness and repair any hot connections.
 - (ii) Check that all electrical equipment have been properly reconnected in accordance with the manufacturer's specification.
 - (iii) Perform and record all required electrical insulation tests on equipment.
 - (iv) Check and test all controls with main circuits isolated.
 - (v) Check all motor-driven equipment for correct rotational directions.
 - (vi) Check and test the operation of all indication and warning lights.
 - (vii) Check, set, record and readjust all equipment control and set points in accordance with manufacturer's specification.
 - (viii) Run all motor-driven equipment for a period to ensure free movement and correct operation, feed pumps only to be operated for a short interval to check rotation.

FD 08.03**COMMISSIONING AND COMPLETION OF REPAIRS**

On completion of the recommissioning checks the Contractor shall proceed with the commissioning. This operation shall be done strictly in accordance with Clause SC 11.02 of Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures. This operation shall also be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and shall include but not be limited to the following for the different types of equipment:

FD 08.03.01**Self-contained air-conditioning unit**

- (a) Check evaporator and condenser pressures and superheat.
- (b) If the unit needs charging, find leak, decant, repair leak and recharge unit.
- (c) Check fans, fan speed control and fan motors.
- (d) Check entering and leaving air temperatures over evaporator coil.

- (e) Check operation of all safeties:
 - (i) LP cut-out pressure
 - (ii) HP cut-out pressure
 - (iii) Low on-coil thermostat
 - (iv) Set point of oil pressure safety
 - (v) Oil pressure trip.
- (f) Check anti-recycle timer.
- (g) Check all running amps of fans and compressors.
- (h) Check compressor unloading mechanism if applicable.
- (i) Complete commissioning data sheet.

FD 09 GUARANTEE OF INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT

The Contractor shall provide and obtain guarantees from the manufacturer(s) and/or supplier(s) to the effect that each piece of new equipment, supplied and installed under the repair contract, will comply with the required performance and will function as part of the complete system.

All new equipment, including the complete new installations and the systems as a whole, shall be guaranteed for a period of 12 (twelve) months commencing on the day of issue of a certificate of completion for repair work of the installation.

FD 10 REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATION SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

FD 10.01 GENERAL

At the start of the repair and maintenance contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include but not be limited to the specified Particular Specification details.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve. The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standard, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all additional and particular specifications included in this document.

The repair work items shall be listed in tabular form in the Particular Specification with all relevant details, such as capacity, size, manufacturer, model number, etc.

All repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs to be agreed at the start of the Contract period. All new equipment, materials and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee of a defects liability period of 12 months from date of issue of a certificate for completion of the repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works. On completion of the required and specified repair work the systems, installations and equipment shall be commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Repair work items shall be categorised for the following installations:

- (a) Self-contained air-conditioning units.

FD 10.02**SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS**

- (a) Clean air intake screen.
- (b) Replace filters.
- (c) De-rust, neutralise and touch up paintwork.
- (d) Replace canvas collars.
- (e) Clean housing, ensure all panels are properly secured and door panels close properly.
- (f) Check setting and operation of all pressure switches, reset if required.
- (g) Check setting and operation of all safety switches, ie LP and HP switches, oil pressure switch.
- (h) Check setting and operation of thermostats.
- (i) Check timers and reset if required.
- (j) Check operation of seven-day timer.
- (k) Check running current of fans and compressor and settings and operation of overloads.
- (l) Check tightness of all electrical terminals.
- (m) Ensure operation of local and remote isolators.
- (n) Check condition of all cables and whether cables are neatly strapped and reposition and strap if required.
- (o) Ensure correct operation of emergency stop.
- (p) Carry out a leak test on all refrigeration piping and components inclusive of evaporator and condenser.
- (q) All leaks shall be repaired. Should a leak on a component be of such a nature that it cannot be repaired, the component shall be replaced. The procedure to follow is as set out in FD 03.
- (r) The superheat setting of the thermostatic expansion valve shall be checked and adjusted if required (setting approximately 8 °C).
- (s) The filter dryer shall be replaced.
- (t) Check compressor vibration mounts.
- (u) Test oil acidity.
- (v) Check refrigerant charge sight glass being clear or flashing.
- (w) Check moisture indication being dry.
- (x) Clean condensate tray and test drainage operation.
- (y) Clean evaporator and condenser blades and check unbalance.
- (z) Replace suction line insulation.
- (aa) Check all service valves for full operation, replace caps if missing.

FD 11**MAINTENANCE TO INSTALATION AND EQUIPMENT****FD 11.01****GENERAL**

Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified, shall commence with commencement of the Contract. A difference shall be made in payment for the maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work.

Maintenance responsibilities of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work, and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

This part of the Contract shall include:

- (a) Routine preventative maintenance;
- (b) Corrective maintenance; and
- (c) Breakdown maintenance;
- (d) Cleaning of filters,

as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, for the specified installations described under FD 01 of this specification.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and as specified in Particular Specification PFD and this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, statutory regulations, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturers' specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be instituted by the Contractor, as specified in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance contract shall be furnished with prescribed manufacturer's guarantees.

The maintenance work and items are to be categorized by the Contractor for each maintenance activity under the following headings:

- (a) Self-contained air-conditioning units.

The Contractor shall be remunerated monthly, based on his performance, for maintaining the complete installation in a perfect functional condition.

FD 11.02 DEFINITION AND QUALIFICATION OF ACTIONS

FD 11.02.01 Daily maintenance actions

Daily actions are the responsibility of the User Client. These checks are to be performed by staff responsible of the facility. The self-contained air-conditioning units and ventilation systems should run during working hours and/or continuously. The status of these systems can thus be monitored by observation on a daily routine.

- (a) Self-contained air-conditioning units:

- Does the unit perform and maintain temperature?
- Is the temperature in the areas concerned satisfactory?
- Is the condensate drain working properly?

These daily checks shall be logged at the facility, ie by the kitchen manager and the maintenance personnel.

FD 11.02.02 Monthly maintenance actions

TABLE FD 11.02.02/1: SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONING UNIT

REFERENCE NUMBER	ACTION
S-1	Clean filters, replace if required
S-2	Inspect air intake and discharge for blockages
S-3	Check all refrigerant, drainage pipes for damaged and leaks
S-4	Check sightglass: clear or flash gas
S-5	Carry out visual inspection of condenser coil for blockages and correct operation of fans
S-6	Carry out visual inspection of evaporator coil for blockages and correct operation of supply fan
S-7	Check enclosure for damages
S-8	Check electric motor running temperatures
S-9	Check electric connections for tightness

S-10	Test thermostat and control operation
S-11	Clean condensate tray and test drainage for proper operation
S-12	Check cooling and heating cycle

Note: The monthly actions shall include the activities of the daily maintenance actions.

FD 11.02.03 Biannual maintenance actions

TABLE FD 11.02.03/1: SELF-CONTAINED AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

REFERENCE NUMBER	ACTION
S-1	Clean filters, replace if required
S-2	Inspect air intake and discharge for blockages
S-3	Check all refrigerant, drainage pipes for damages and leaks
S-4	Check sight-glass: clear or flash gas
S-5	Carry out visual inspection of condenser coil for blockages and correct operation of fans
S-6	Carry out visual inspection of evaporator coil for blockages and correct operation of supply fan
S-7	Check enclosure for damages
S-8	Check electric motor running temperatures
S-9	Check electric connections for tightness
S-10	Test thermostat and control operation
S-11	Clean condensate tray and test drainage for proper operation
S-12	Check filter/dryer
S-13	Check superheat and functioning of expansion valve
S-14	Check operation of HP and LP switch
S-15	Check operation of controllers
S-16	De-rust, neutralize and touch up paint work
S-17	Check cooling and heating cycle
S-18	Clean evaporator and condenser coil chemically
S-19	Clean all filter frames and seals
S-20	Check fan motor and compressor current
S-21	Check and test overload settings
S-22	Lubricate all bearings

Note: The above biannual actions include the activities of the monthly maintenance actions.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

HB STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

CONTENTS

HB 01	SCOPE
HB 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS
HB 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
HB 04	TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
HB 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
HB 06	MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES
HB 07	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
HB 08	RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION
HB 09	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS
HB 10	DIESEL GENERATORS: TECHNICAL DETAILS
HB 11	MAINTENANCE OF STANDBY POWER INSTALLATIONS

HB 01 SCOPE

HB 01.01 This specification comprises all aspects regarding the maintenance and servicing of standby power systems. The standby power sources consist of:

- a) 125 KVA Generator – Stand-by only at Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry
- b) 2x 130 KV Generator – Permanent Alternating at Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry
- c) 2x 130 KV Generator – Permanent Alternating at Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry

HB 01.02 This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with Portion 3, the Additional Specifications included with this document.

HB 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

HB 02.01 The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publication and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall deemed to form part thereof.

HB 02.02 SANS Specifications

02.02.01 SANS 10400 : NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS
02.02.02 SANS 10142 : WIRING CODE

HB 02.03 Department of Public Works Specification PW 774

HB 02.04 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

HB 02.05 Manufacturer's specifications and maintenance instructions**HB 02.06 Additional requirements**

Equipment and material supplied and installed shall be new and unused.

The Contractor shall ensure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during repair and maintenance work on cabling, wiring, fuel tanks, batteries and diesel engines.

HB 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

HB 03.01 The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of a complete set of Operating-and-Maintenance manuals.

This shall be done in accordance with the Additional Specification SB – Operating and Maintenance manuals.

All information shall be recorded and reproduced in electronic format as well as supplying the Engineer with seven sets of hard copies.

HB 03.02 Over and above what is specified in the Additional Specification – SB Operating and Maintenance manuals, the Operating and Maintenance Manual to be compiled shall be structured and shall at least include the following:

03.02.01 Description of installation

- a) Complete system description of each standby power source. This shall be done for each installation individually. The system description shall contain detailed information regarding the supply configuration (cabling, distribution boards), the switching arrangement (change-over and override facilities) and the refuelling procedure as well as the earthing, fire and lightning protection arrangement.
- b) Service records

03.02.02 Commissioning Data

- a) Complete commissioning, test and inspection data of standby power system.

This shall be done for each installation individually. The commissioning data will comprise voltage and output current measurements, running hour meter readings, battery voltage during starting and engine compression tests.

03.02.03 Operating Data

- a) Safety precautions to be implemented.
- b) Operation of systems; automatic, manual and bypass switching.
- c) Emergency starting and forced change-over procedure.

03.02.04 Maintenance Documentation

- a) Recommended service intervals with service descriptions.
- b) Projected service life of:
 - diesel engine to next overhaul
 - diesel engine starter batteries
 - electronics on UPS units
 - battery pack
- c) Trouble shooting diagrams.
- d) Schedule of consumable spares.
- e) Schedule of batteries comprising the battery bank.

HB 04 TEST AND INSPECTIONS PRIOR TO PRACTICAL COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

HB 04.01 It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all labour, accessories and properly calibrated and certified measuring instruments necessary to record the following parameters:

- 04.01.01 output phase voltages
- 04.01.02 output current per phase
- 04.01.03 insulation testing at 500V
- 04.01.04 system earthing resistance testing by means of wheatstone bridge instrument
- 04.01.05 load testing, utilising dummy loads

The Contractor is responsible for the arrangement of such tests. He shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer prior to the test date.

HB 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

HB 05.01 The Contractor shall as part of this Contract institute a Recording system as part of his Maintenance Control Plan as defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance. This shall consist of a Record book which shall be utilised to log and record all faults, system checks, services, overhauls, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections, etc.

HB 05.02 The logbook shall be stored in a safe place inside each generator room and shall only be utilised by the Contractor and Engineer. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report to the Engineer.

This logbook shall be structured to at least include the following:

- 05.02.01 Monthly inspection and maintenance actions.
- 05.02.02 Scheduled services.
- 05.02.03 Breakdown / call out reports.
- 05.02.04 Major overhaul or battery replacements.

HB 06 MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES

HB 06.01 On commencement of the Repair and Maintenance Contract, the Contractor shall supply and deliver certain tools and spares to the user client. These tools and spares will be the property of the Department of Public Works. Any deficiencies or short fall or damaged Tools and Spares during the contract shall be replaced with new equipment / material.

HB 06.02 The Tools and Spares shall be kept safe in a lockable store room on site. The Contractor shall provide his own lock for the designated store room. The inventory of the Tools and Spares shall be verified on a monthly basis. Any short fall shall be replaced by the Contractor as part of his responsibility under this contract.

HB 06.03 The Tools and Spares shall at least include the following:
 Distribution Board key (3 off)
 Distribution Board face plate square key (3 off)
 20L HD diesel oil as per engine manufacturer's specification
 220V diesel jockey pump
 5m 20mm Ø diesel hose
 10mm² battery jumper cables : 1 pair
 First Aid Kit
 Industrial type wall mounted (aluminium) paper towel dispenser with paper cartridge per generator room similar or equal to "Kimberley Clark MP Wall Stand"

HB 07 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

HB 07.01 Following formal approval of his Quality Assurance system by the Engineer to the Contractor shall implement the approved Quality Assurance system.

HB 07.02 Records of this Quality Assurance system shall be kept throughout the duration of the contract and shall be submitted to the Engineer as required by the Department.

HB 08 RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION

On practical completion of the repair work, battery replacement and services, the installations shall be put into operation.

HB 09 REPAIR WORK TO STANDBY POWER INSTALLATIONS

HB 09.01 The various systems shall be repaired during the first phase of the repair and maintenance contract.

HB 09.02 The scope of the repair work shall include, but shall not be limited to the activities listed below.

HB 09.03 The Contractor shall record the repair actions in tabular format before the Contractor's responsibility for maintenance commences.

HB 09.04 Repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs.

HB 09.05 New equipment and material (eg. batteries, fuel pumps, starter motor, etc shall be supplied with a written guarantee confirming a defects liability period of 12 months from date of practical completion. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works.

HB 10 STANDBY GENERATORS: TECHNICAL DETAILS**HB 10.01 Installation description**

ITEM No.	Locality	Engine Description	Alternator Description	Output kVA	Auto/ Manual/ Switching	Operational Yes/No	Approx year of installation	Critical load	Last service
1	Boesmansnek Land Ports of Entry	John Deere ID: CD6068C037149	Faraday Alternator FD3C1-4	125	Auto	Yes	2008	Operational Area and Security lights	2022

ITEM No.	Locality	Engine Description	Alternator Description	Output kVA	Auto/ Manual/ Switching	Operational Yes/No	Approx year of installation	Critical load	Last service
1	Ramatselitso Land Ports of Entry	Volvo Model: TAD 532 GE	Marelli Generators Type: MJB 225LA4	130	Auto	Yes	2017	Operational Area and Security lights	2022
2	Ramatselitso Land Ports of Entry	Volvo Model: TAD 532 GE	Marelli Generators Type: MJB 225LA4	130	Auto	Yes	2017	Operational Area and Security lights	2022

ITEM No.	Locality	Engine Description	Alternator Description	Output kVA	Auto/ Manual/ Switching	Operational Yes/No	Approx year of installation	Critical load	Last service
1	Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry	Volvo Mod: TAD 532 GE	Marelli Generators Type: MJB 225LA4	130	Auto	Yes	2017	Operational Area and Security lights	2022
2	Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry	Volvo Model: TAD 532 GE	Marelli Generators Type: MJB 225LA4	130	Auto	Yes	2017	Operational Area and Security lights	2022

HB 10.02 Scope of repair work: Generators

HB 10.02.01 Service diesel engine and steam clean engine, alternator as well as day tank.

Inspect all rubber hoses and wiring; replace if required.

Service existing battery.

Do cold starting volt drop test on prime mover starter battery; replace starter battery if required.

Clean sliprings and inspect brush gear. Open alternator terminal box, clean and tighten terminations. Check and record earthing value as measured with resistance measuring instrument.

Service alarm and control panel and clean internally and externally. Simulate and verify all alarm and shut down conditions. Replace all inoperative lamps, sirens and meters. Check and complete all labelling and notices.

Repair lagging on exhaust system.

Reinstate fuel shut off system with fusible link.

Fit new padlocks on enclosure.

Supply and install a fuel/water separator with automatic water dump feature in the fuel line from the tank to the generator. The separator shall be manufactured from robust corrosion resistant material and shall be similar or equal to Duvalco MK3 series.

Supply and install a fuel modular filtration with automatic water dump feature at the bulk fuel tank. The fuel modular filtration shall be manufactured from robust corrosion resistant material and shall be similar or equal to Duvalco FMS series.

HB 10.02.02 Do witnessed dummy load test.

HB 10.02.03 Service change-over switchgear. Disassemble contactors and clean. Test operation following service.

HB 10.02.04 Add an 12/24 V DC fluorescent emergency light, with switch above the control panel door of each generator installation.
The light shall be energised via a push button switch with adjustable run down timer (0 – 120 minutes)

HB 10.03 Generator repair work: measurement and payment

HB 10.03.01 Repair plant room

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plant room cleaned and painted.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the repair of Floors that shall be washed (Steam cleaned) and painted with grey 2-part industrial self levelling epoxy paint.

Cable trenches shall be cleaned and finally vacuumed. All cable sleeves shall be sealed with builders foam and chicken wire.

HB 10.03.02 Service genset

The unit of measurement shall be the number of services performed on alternators in the 20kW up to 250kW range

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the complete mechanical/electrical service of the generator installation according to the manufacturer's instructions, replacement of wiring, opening and cleaning of alternator and alarm panel as well as the steam cleaning of the assembly as described in Clause HB 10.02.

HB 10.03.03 Diesel engine service

The unit of measurement shall be the number of mechanical services performed on diesel engines in the 20kW up to 250kW range.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the execution of a full engine service as per the manufacturer's recommendations including air, fuel and oil filters, oil, replacement of wiring, V-belts and hoses as needed and other consumable items as described in Clause HB 10.02 and the steam cleaning of the assembly.

The tendered rate shall further include for the supply and installation of a fuel shut off system with fusible link including all consumables such as pipes, cables, fittings and taps.

HB 10.03.04 Replace starter battery

The unit of measurement shall be the number of diesel starter batteries replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing battery, the installation and reconnection of a new "Deltec Heavy-Duty Freedom"-type battery and final test of start-up volt drop.

HB 10.03.05 Dummy load test

The unit of measurement shall be the number of on-site dummy load tests performed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of the alternator terminal box, connection of dummy load, 30 minute full load test, recording of test results and disconnection of load and reconnection of site load.

HB 10.03.06 Change-over switchgear service

The unit of measurement shall be the number of assemblies serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the disassembly of the change-over contractor pair, cleaning and reinstallation as well as the testing following completion of the test.

Service alarm and control panel and clean internally and externally. Simulate and verify all alarm and shut down conditions. Replace all inoperative lamps, sirens and meters. Check and complete all labelling and notices.

HB 10.03.07 Supply and install padlocks

The unit of measurement shall be the number of 75mm padlocks installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply, engraving and installation of the plant room padlocks.

HB 10.03.08 Supply of diesel fuel

The unit of measurement shall be the quantity of diesel fuel supplied and transferred into day tanks upon instruction from the Engineer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, transport and transfer of diesel fuel.

HB 10.03.09 Supply of Tools and Spares

The unit of measurement shall be a lump sum. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the Tools and Spares specified.

HB 10.03.10 Repair alarm sounder

The unit of measurement shall be the number of alarm / flasher units installed. The tender rate shall include full compensation for the repair of the panel mounted alarm and circuit and the supply and installation of the specified external alarm/flasher unit, in full working order including all cabling to and from the Control panel.

HB 10.03.11 Add 12/24V DC emergency light.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of lights installed. The tender rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of all materials, brackets and fixings for the specified emergency light in full working order above the Control panel.

HB 10.03.12 Supply and install fuel water separator

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuel/water separator units with automatic water dump installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply, installation and commissioning of the fuel/water separator unit similar or equal to Duvalco MK 3 series or Duvalco Modular Filtration System.

HB 10.03.13 Supply and install a fuel drip tray

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuel drip trays supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacturing, supply and installation of a fuel drip tray as described in Clause HB 10.03

HB 10.03.14 Supply and Install water jacket heater

The unit of measurement shall be the number of water jacket heaters supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of a water heater complete with a thermostat, element connection of all water hoses including all couplings and taps, cabling to and from the control panel and testing and commissioning of the unit

HB 10.03.15 Repair Exhaust

The unit of measurement shall be a sum for the removal of the existing exhaust and the supply and installation of the new exhaust similar to the existing.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the new exhaust including, lagging, flexible connections and sealing of the room exit port.

HB 10.03.16 Re-condition Diesel Engine

The unit of measurement shall be the number of diesel engines re-conditioned according to the manufacturer's specifications.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the disconnection, removal and complete overhaul of the diesel engine at an approved mechanical engineering works.

The tender rate shall further include for the replacement of all the internal components, seals, pipes, fittings etc of the diesel engine.

HB 11 MAINTENANCE OF THE INSTALLATION

HB 11.01 Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified, shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment for the maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work.

Maintenance responsibilities of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work, and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

HB 11.02 The following maintenance actions will be required under the contract:

11.02.01 Routine Preventative Maintenance

11.02.02 Corrective Maintenance

11.02.03 Breakdown Maintenance

These actions are defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

HB 11.03 The maintenance schedules and frequency of services and maintenance activities shall be developed under the maintenance control plan which will be instituted by the Contractor. The Contractor's responsibility in this regard is specified in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

HB 11.04 **Generator maintenance: scope of work.**

HB 11.04.01 **Monthly inspection**

- (a) The following activities shall be executed during the monthly generator inspections:
- check oil level and top up as required.
 - check oil viscosity for dilution by water or fuel.
 - check starter battery terminals and apply contact grease.
 - check battery cables for damage and secure terminations.
 - check battery electrolyte.
 - check battery voltage and record.
 - check battery voltage drop during engine cranking and record.
 - check battery charger operation after cranking test.
 - check starter motor for abnormal noise.
 - check diesel engine while running for noise, vibration or loose components.
 - check all flexible hoses for leaks, corrosion and ageing.
 - check all engine V-belts.
 - monitor engine / alternator coupling for noise.
- (b) Verify that alarm functions are operational by simulation:
- low oil pressure.
 - high engine temperature.
 - low engine coolant level.
 - abnormal speed.
 - synchronising failure (if applicable)
 - cooling water pump failure.
 - cooling tower fan failure (if applicable).
 - low battery voltage.
 - low fuel day tank.
 - fuel pump failure.
 - low fuel bulk tank (if applicable).
- (c) Test that following alarms trigger correctly by creating the alarm condition:
- Unit not in auto : turn selector switch to manual or test
 - Battery charger failure : switch off AC supply to battery charger
 - Auxiliary supply failure : switch off auxiliary power supply
- (d) Alternator shall be checked for accumulation of dust on the regulator and for any loose components.
- (e) Test run shall be undertaken, if possible on load, and volt, ampere and frequency readings recorded.
- (f) Alternator shall be cleaned and switched back into 'auto' mode.
- (g) Complete Standby Generator monthly log sheets
- (h) Record running hours, diesel consumption etc.

HB 11.04.02 Annual or 150 hour service inspection

The following activities shall be executed in addition to the monthly maintenance work after every twelve months.

- (a) Drain an oil sample and submit for analysis to establish need for an oil change. Fix test report in Record book.
- (b) Record output parameters while on load.
- (c) Record running hours.
- (d) Replace oil and fuel filters.

HB 11.04.03 Every two years: inspection and service

In addition to the annual service, the cooling system shall be drained, flushed and refilled with water and prescribed water conditioner.

HB 11.05 Generator maintenance: measurement and payment

Refer to Clause SA 06 of the ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION: SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

HC LOW VOLTAGE RETICULATION

CONTENTS

HC 01	SCOPE
HC 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS
HC 03	AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
HC 04	TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
HC 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
HC 06	MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES
HC 07	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
HC 08	RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION
HC 09	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS
HC 10	INSTALLATION MAINTENANCE
HC 11	LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION BOARDS : TECHNICAL DETAILS
HC 12	LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION KIOSKS : TECHNICAL DETAILS
HC 13	LOW VOLTAGE OVERHEAD DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM : TECHNICAL DETAILS

HC 01 SCOPE

HC 01.01	This specification comprises all aspects regarding the maintenance of low voltage systems. Low voltage comprises : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ low voltage distribution boards ♦ low voltage kiosks
HC 01.02	This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance contract document and shall be read in conjunction with Part C, the Additional Specification included with this document.

HC 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

HC 02.01	The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publication and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with the specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.
HC 02.02	<u>SANS Specifications</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ SANS 10142-1 ♦ SANS 10142-2 ♦ SANS 141 ♦ SANS 1091 ♦ SANS 763 ♦ SANS 1195 ♦ SANS 784
HC 02.03	<u>Department of Public Works Specifications</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ PW 774

HC 02.04 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993 (OHS-Act)

HC 02.05 Manufacturer's specifications and maintenance instructions

HC 02.06 Additional requirements

Equipment and material installed shall be new and unused.
All equipment shall bear the SANS stamp. The Contractor shall ensure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during repair and maintenance work on low voltage distribution boards and kiosks.

HC 03 AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

HC 03.01 No current as built information on the installation is available.

The Contractor shall, be responsible for the compilation of a complete set of as-built drawings, inventory list and Operating- and -Maintenance manuals. The Contractor shall be responsible for the verification of the correctness of all such information.

This shall be done in accordance with the Additional Specification SB-Operating and Maintenance manuals.

The Contractor shall allow for the required tools and equipment to establish the correct as-built information.

All information shall be recorded and reproduced in electronic format as well as supplying the Engineer with three sets of hard copies.

HC 03.02 Over and above what is specified in the Additional Specification - SB Operating and Maintenance manuals, the Operating and Maintenance Manual to be compiled shall be structured and shall at least include the following :

◆ System Description

- Complete system description of the low voltage system. This shall be done for each low voltage installation individually. The system description shall contain detailed information regarding the system configuration (system input, cabling system output), the installed components (circuit breaker ratings, meter configuration) as well as the earthing and lightning protection.
- Complete details of L.V distribution boards, panels and kiosks and overhead reticulation system.

◆ Commissioning Data

- Complete commissioning, test and inspection data of the low voltage system.

This shall be done for each low voltage system individually. The commissioning data will comprise of usual inspection sheets startup and running current measurements. Full data on equipment fitted with installation dates.

◆ Operating data

- Safety precautions to be implemented.

◆ Maintenance instructions

- Procedure to verify operation of circuit breakers.
- Procedure to replace low voltage kiosk.
- Trouble shooting diagram.
- Equipment details, including manufacturer brochures / pamphlets, order number, list of components and equipment specifications.
- Schedule of serviceable components per low voltage system.
- Procedure to replace wooden poles for overhead reticulation
- Procedure to replace broken isolators for overhead reticulation
- Procedure to tension overhead conductors by adjustment of anchors.
- Hoisting equipment specification, if applicable.

HC 04 TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

HC 04.01 It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all labour, accessories and properly calibrated and certified measuring instruments necessary to record the following parameters :

- Phase voltages and current
- Earthing resistance testing

The Contractor is responsible for the arrangement of such tests. He shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer prior to the test date.

HC 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

HC 05.01 The Contractor shall as part of this Contract institute a Recording system as part of his Maintenance Control Plan as defined in the Additional Specification SA - General Maintenance. This shall consist of a Record book which shall be utilized to log and record all faults, system checks, services, overhauls, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections, etc.

HC 05.02 The logbook shall be stored in a safe place inside the main substation and shall only be utilized by the Contractor and the Engineer. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report to the Engineer.

This logbook shall be structured to at least include the following :

- Monthly low voltage equipment inspection and maintenance actions.
- Bi-annual inspection and testing of low voltage systems.
- Annual earthing and insulation test report.
- Breakdown / call out reports.

HC 06 MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES

HC 06.01 On commencement of the Repair and Maintenance Contract, the Contractor shall compile an inventory of the existing Tools and Spares in the presence of the User Client. Any deficiencies or short fall or damaged Tools and Spares shall be replaced with new equipment / material, as part of the contract.

HC 06.02 The Tools and Spares shall be kept in a lockable store room on site. The Contractor shall provide his own lock for the designated store room. The inventory of the Tools and Spares shall be verified on a monthly basis. Any short fall shall be replaced by the Contractor as part of his responsibility under this contract.

HC 06.03 The Tools and Spares shall at least include the following :

DB Key
DB face plate square key.

HC 07 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

HC 07.01 Following formal approval of his Quality Assurance system by the Engineer, the Contractor shall implement the approved QA system.

HC 07.02 Records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the contract and shall be submitted to the Engineer as required.

HC 08 RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION

On completion of the repair work, the low voltage reticulation shall be put into operation.

HC 09 REPAIR WORK TO LOW VOLTAGE RETICULATION

HC 09.01 The distribution boards, kiosks and overhead reticulation system shall be repaired as measured in the bills of quantities, during the first period of the repair and maintenance contract.

HC 09.02 The scope of the repair work shall include, but shall not be limited to the activities listed below.

HC 09.03 The Contractor shall record the repair actions in tabular format before the maintenance phase commences.

HC 09.04 Repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs. This period shall be agreed at the start of the contract period.

HC 09.05 New equipment and material shall be supplied with a written guarantee confirming a defects liability period of 12 months from date of hand-over. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the User Client.

HC 09.06 The maintenance phase of this contract shall commence once the repair work on the installation have been commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

HC 10 LOW VOLTAGE RETICULATION MAINTENANCE

HC 10.01 The various low voltage systems shall be maintained following the initial repair work. The maintenance contract shall run for the balance of the 36 month contract period.

HC 11 LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION BOARDS : TECHNICAL DETAILS

HC 11.01 Installation description

This section describes the electrical distribution network that will be repaired and maintained in terms of the contract.

Substations

The low voltage supply is distributed from the low voltage compartment in the miniature substation.

HC 11.02

Scope of repair work

HC 11.02.01

General repair work

- ☐ Service low voltage distribution boards : clean, secure circuit breakers, secure terminations, label circuit breakers and cables.

HC 11.03

Repair work: measurement and payment

Item

Unit

- (a) Service low voltage distribution boards

No

The unit of measure shall be the number of low voltage boards serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening and cleaning of low voltage board, vermin protection, secure MCBs and terminations, fitting of engraved labels and blank covers.

HC 11.04

Scope of Maintenance work

HC 11.04.01

Monthly inspection

- a) Verify operation of volt and ammeters.
- b) Check that access covers are secure.
- c) Visually check distribution board.
- d) Check all connections.
- e) Check operation of switching timers.

HC 11.04.02

Annual inspection

- a) Service all low voltage boards.
- b) Measure phase voltages and line currents in low voltage distribution board.
- c) Record values in record book.

HC 11.05

Maintenance work : measurement and payment

Refer to clause SA 06 of the ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION : SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE.

HC 12 DISTRIBUTION AND METERING KIOSKS : TECHNICAL DETAILS**HC 12.01 Installation description**

This section describes the electrical distribution and metering kiosks that will be repaired and maintained in terms of this contract.

This part of the distribution network consists of freestanding low voltage outdoor kiosks. The kiosks contain circuit breakers, switching and instrumentation equipment.

HC 12.02 Scope of repair work

- 1) Open distribution kiosk, check locks, door hinges, clean inside, provide rodent protection, secure circuit breaker and terminations : label all kiosks, label circuit breakers, label cables and provide warning notices.
- 2) Measure earth resistance.
- 3) Touch up kiosks : Remove all rust with an anti corrosion agent and repaint kiosks.
- 4) Replace handles and padlocks on distribution kiosks.
- 5) Replace door hinges and latches
- 6) Replace panel catches

HC 12.03 Repair work : measurement and payments.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(a) Service distribution kiosk	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the distribution kiosk, vermin protection, cleaning of circuit breakers, general cleaning of the kiosk, earth testing, securing of MCB and terminations. The contractor shall submit a report on the general condition of the kiosk (damage, rust etc.)

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(b) Remove rust and paint kiosks	No

The unit of measurement shall be the total number of kiosks painted.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of rust with a anti corrosion agent and the repainting of the whole kiosk.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(c) Label kiosks	No.

The unit of measure shall be the total number of kiosks labelled.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labelling of kiosks circuit breakers, cable and the warning notification to be installed.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(d) Supply and install padlocks	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of padlocks installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply, engraving and installation of the padlocks, locking devices and seals.

Lock shall be "keyed alike".

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(e) Replace distribution meter and stubby kiosks.	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks replaced.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the removal, the ordering, supply and installation of the new meter boxes and stubbies.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(f) Replace door hinges on meter and distribution kiosks.	No.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of damaged hinges, the supply, delivery and installation of new hinges.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(g) Supply and install handles.	No.

(Perano type lockable turn catch door handle (heavy duty)

The unit of measure shall be the total number of handles installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the old handle and ordering, supply and installation of a lockable turn catch handle.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(h) Supply and install low voltage PVC/SWA/PVC Cu cable and bare copper earth wire.	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the total length of cable supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include the ordering and delivery to site of the cable. (Excavations measured somewhere else.)

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(i) Termination of low voltage PVC/SWA/PVC Cu cables.	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the total number of terminations removed and new terminations made. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of cable glands and lugs.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(j) Jointing of low voltage PVC/SWA/PVC Cu cable.	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the total number of joints made.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of all material needed to complete the joints.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(k) Excavations for cable trenches and meter boxes.	m ³

The unit of measurement shall be the total volume excavated and backfilled in dimensions as specified by the engineer.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(l) Supply and installation bare copper earth conductor.	meter

The unit of measure shall be the total length of cable supplied and installed. The tendered rate shall include the ordering and delivery to site of the cable (Excavations measured somewhere else).

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(m) Termination of bare copper earth conductor.	No.

The unit of measure shall be the total number of terminations removed and new terminations made.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of cable glands and lugs.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(n) Re-wiring of kiosk.	No

The unit of measure shall be number of kiosks re-wired.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for removal of the existing wiring, re-wiring, labelling and commissioning of the kiosk.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(o) Reposition contactors on kiosk.	No

The unit of measure shall be number of contactors repositioned.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for removal of the existing wiring, removal of contactors, mounting in new positions re-wiring, labelling and commissioning of the kiosk.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(p) Supply and install front covers.	No

The unit of measure shall be number of covers supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for measuring, manufacturing painting and installation of front covers.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(q) Replace distribution meter kiosks.	No.

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks replaced.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the removal, the ordering, supply and installation of the new 6/4 way meter boxes complete with watt hour meters, circuit breakers, gland plate, labelling and concrete foot strip as specified. The distribution kiosks shall be similar or equal to Eprotech or Aluex.

CONSUMER DISTRIBUTION KIOSKS

(a) General

The kiosks shall be of adequate size to accommodate the number of outgoing consumer circuits specified.

The kiosks shall have two sections, namely:

- (i) one section containing all incoming and outgoing switchgear and cables, and
- (ii) one section containing the consumer meters and circuit breakers.

(b) Fabrication

The kiosks shall be fabricated from 3CR12 stainless steel of minimum thickness 2,5 mm and shall be mounted on a channel iron steel base.

A metal frame work, manufactured from solid angle iron, channel iron, or 2,5 mm 3CR12 folded sheet steel shall be mounted on the base of the kiosk. The kiosk shell shall be completely independent from the frame and equipment so that the kiosk shell can be removed and replaced without disconnecting any equipment. The kiosk shall be bolted down onto the base by means of four M16 high tensile bolts which shall be accessible from the inside of the kiosk only.

The kiosks shall be weatherproof, vermin and insect-proof and proved against tampering. To prevent the ingress of water onto live equipment, the door entry surrounds shall have a channel shape, at least 12 mm deep, to accommodate the door edge. A rubber or neoprene closer strip shall be so fitted to the edges of each door as to provide a seal to keep rain water and dust out of the kiosk.

The kiosk shall have a pitched roof that slopes downwards at the front and at the back with an overhang of at least 75 mm all round.

The kiosks shall be fitted with a door in the front and at the back of the kiosk. The maximum width per door shall be 600 mm. The doors shall provide free access to the equipment and shall provide a full view of all meters. The doors shall have well returning edges to fit into the channel of the door entry surrounds. Each door shall have three robust solid brass hinges each of length at least 100 mm. The hinges shall be completely concealed. Doors shall be fitted with lever locks equal or similar to the "Barker & Nelson" type. The locking mechanism shall facilitate three point latching at the top, side and bottom of the doors. In the case of double doors the first door shall be locked with two slides on the inside onto the kiosk shell. The second door shall close over a lip on the first one. Nylon door restraints shall be provided. The fixing points of the restraints at the door and the canopy shall be reinforced. The doors shall be earthed bonded to the frame by means of a copper braided strap, tooth washers, bolts and nuts.

Ventilation louvres with approximate size 225 x 150 mm shall be provided on both sides of the kiosk. Each ventilation louver shall be covered on the inside with perforated plates with 2,5 mm \square holes so that

- it is not possible to push a steel wire through it into the interior of the kiosk, and
- it prevents vermin from entering into the kiosk.

A mounting panel shall be positioned in the centre of each kiosk, fixed to the frame work, for the mounting of the specified equipment.

(c) Mounting panel

The mounting panel shall consist of a minimum 3 mm thick mild steel plate.

The one section of the panel shall be equipped with copper busbars mounted on porcelain or similar insulators and of sufficient length to accommodate three 12 mm brass bolts for the connection of distribution cables and six consumer meter connections per phase. The busbars shall be tinned after the drilling of holes. The busbars shall be able to carry 250 Ampere at a current density of not more

then 1,5 A/mm². Each busbar shall be marked red, yellow and blue with black for the neutral bar. The busbars shall be able to withstand the thermal and dynamic forces resulting from short circuits without deformation taking place or parts breaking.

The specified consumer equipment shall be installed in the second section. The mounting panel and equipment shall be enclosed by a machine punched removable front panel through which the operating handles of the equipment and the face plates of the meters protrude.

(d) Equipment installed in kiosks

The equipment to be installed in the kiosks shall be as specified in the detail specification.

(e) Wiring of kiosks

The internal wiring in the kiosks shall be done with PVC insulated copper conductors. The wiring shall be done in neat horizontal and vertical columns. Each consumer circuit shall be wired from the phase busbars to the circuit breaker and from the circuit breaker to the meter.

Connections to busbars and terminals shall be done by means of cable lugs crimped in an approved manner to the conductor ends. Connections to the busbars shall be made by means of cadmium plated high tensile steel bolts and nuts with locking washers.

(f) Earthing

A 25 mm x 6 mm long tinned copper earth bar shall be installed at the bottom of the kiosk.

10 mm diameter holes shall be drilled through the earth bar to provide for the distribution cable and service cable earth conductors. All bolts used for the fixing of the earth conductors shall be cadmium plated and only one earth conductor shall be connected per bolt.

The metal work of the kiosk shall be earthed to the earth bar by means of a 70 mm² stranded copper conductor. An earth stud shall be provided on the kiosk housing for this purpose.

(g) Cable gland plate

The cables shall be terminated on a removable galvanised gland plate of suitable dimension and strength. The gland plate shall cover the full length of the kiosk.

The gland plate shall be at least 300 mm below the nearest terminal of switchgear allowing sufficient space for bending the cable ends. Sufficient space shall be provided underneath the gland plate to allow for the installation of the cables without removing the gland plate. The gland plate shall be earthed to the earthbar by means of a 70 mm² stranded copper earth conductor.

(h) Terminal blocks

A terminal block of the "Klippon SAK" or equivalent type suitable for the termination of 16 mm² stranded copper conductors shall be provided. Terminals shall be of the screw type and a terminal shall be provided for each service connection cable.

(i) Labels

The kiosks shall be supplied with the following labels:

- (i) An aluminium label with 40 mm high letters and numeral indicating the kiosk number.
- (ii) Engraved trafolite labels with 6 mm high numerals under each circuit breaker, meter, and terminal on the terminal block indicating the consumer stand number.

The labels shall have a white background and black letters. The 40 mm labels shall be fixed by means of rivets and the 6 mm high labels shall be inserted in 25 mm wide aluminium label holder mounted at the bottom of the relevant equipment.

(j) Danger signs

The requirements of Regulation C-52 of the Machinery and Occupational Safety Act No 6 of 1983 shall be complied with. All doors shall be fitted with a 150 x 100 mm Danger/Gevaar/Ingozi signs.

(k) Painting and finishing

(i) Post-weld cleaning and passivation of 3CR12

Post-weld cleaning shall be undertaken on all welded areas. One of the following cleaning methods may be used to remove all surface discolouration and scale from welded areas.

- (1) Wire brushing : Where it is possible to remove the discolouration and detritus from weld areas by brushing, stainless steel wire brushes, that have not been used on other material other than 3CR12, may be used.
- (2) Grinding : Dedicated grinding wheels and discs based on alumina shall be used for the dressing of welds. The use of silicon carbide wheels and discs shall not be used.
- (3) Abrasive blast cleaning : The abrasive used shall be washed silica sand or alumina totally free of metallic iron, iron oxides or chlorides.

(ii) Chemical cleaning (pickling)

The pickling of 3CR12 shall be carried out using formulations based on nitric (HNO₃) and hydrofluoric (HF) acid. Formulations based on hydrochloric acids shall not be used. Acids used shall conform to commercial purity standards. Where proprietary pickling formulations are used, the manufacturer's directions concerning the application procedures shall be strictly adhered to.

(iii) Passivation

The passivation of the 3CR12 shall be carried out as soon as possible after the post-weld cleaning has taken place. A solution made up of nitric acid shall be used for the passivation of the 3CR12. The solution shall be generously applied to the steel by brush, cloth, spray or dipping. Care shall be taken that the solution does not dry on the steel surface. The steel shall be thoroughly washed with clean cold water to remove all traces of the acid use.

(iv) General

The entire process of cleaning, pickling, passivation and neutralization shall be completed in one working day.

Tenderers shall submit full details of the post weld process their suppliers intend to use.

(v) Painting

All interior metal work shall be thoroughly derusted and degreased and shall be prepared for painting in accordance with SANS 066.

Immediately after cleaning a zinc chromate red oxide primer with a dry film thickness of 25 micrometre shall be applied in accordance with SANS 679. An intermediate enamel coat shall be applied to the primed surface and thereafter the finishing coat of white enamel paint shall be applied to the interior and "light stone", colour C37 SANS 1091 to the exterior.

The bases and under sides must be treated in an approved manner and finished with two coats epoxy-tar paint.

(l) Drawings and information

Tenderers shall submit full details of the cubicles offered with the following drawings with the tender

- a drawing indicating all dimensions of the kiosks
- a drawing indicating the dimensions of the plinth with fixing arrangements
- a drawing indicating the general internal equipment layout of the kiosks.

The successful tenderer shall, before the manufacturing of the kiosks commences, submit the final drawings to the Engineer for approval.

A schematic wiring diagram of the kiosk, as wired and colour coded, shall be submitted at the completion of the contract.

(m) Inspection

The successful tenderer shall allow the representative of the Engineer access to the manufacturer's works at all reasonable times to inspect the progress of the work and to witness all test

HC 12.04 Maintenance Work

HC 12.04.01 Monthly

- a) Inspect and secure access doors and covers.
- b) Inspect distribution kiosks.

HC 12.04.02 Annually

- a) Service all distribution and metering kiosks.
- b) Measure phase voltages and line currents in distribution and metering kiosks and record in book.

HC 12.05 Maintenance work measurement and payment.

Refer to clause SA 06 of the ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION: SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

HD SUBSTATION TRANSFORMERS

CONTENTS

HD 01	SCOPE
HD 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS
HD 03	AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
HD 04	TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
HD 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
HD 06	MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES
HD 07	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
HD 08	RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION
HD 09	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS
HD 10	INSTALLATION MAINTENANCE
HD 11	SUBSTATION TRANSFORMERS: TECHNICAL DETAILS

HD 01 SCOPE

HD 01.01 This specification comprises all aspects regarding the maintenance and servicing of transformer systems. Transformers comprise:

- ◆ substation transformers
- ◆ pole mounted transformers.

HD 01.02 This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with Part C, the Additional Specification included with this document.

HD 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

HD 02.01 The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publication and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with the specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

HD 02.02 SANS Specifications

- ◆ SANS 0780
- ◆ SANS 10400
- ◆ SANS 10142
- ◆ SANS 10225
- ◆ SANS 01277
- ◆ SANS 1088
- ◆ SANS 1749
- ◆ SANS 1250
- ◆ SANS 1279
- ◆ SANS 1777
- ◆ SANS 1763
- ◆ SANS 1266
- ◆ ARP 035

HD 02.03 Department of Public Works Specifications

- ◆ PW 774

HD 02.04 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993 (OHS-Act)

HD 02.05 Manufacturer's specifications and maintenance instructions

HD 02.06 Additional requirements

Equipment and material installed shall be new and unused.
Air driers shall bear the SANS stamp. The Contractor shall ensure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during servicing and maintenance work on transformers.

HD 03 AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

HD 03.01 No current "as-built" information on the installation is available.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of a complete set of as-built drawings, inventory list and Operating and Instruction Manuals. The Contractor shall be responsible for the verification of the correctness of all such information.

This shall be done in accordance with the Additional Specification SB-Operating and Maintenance manuals.

The Contractor shall allow for the required tools and equipment to establish the correct as-built information.

All information shall be recorded and reproduced in electronic format as well as supplying the Engineer with three sets of hard copies.

HD 03.02 Over and above what is specified in the Additional Specification - SB Operating and Maintenance manuals, the Operating and Maintenance Manual to be compiled shall be structured and shall at least include the following:

◆ System Description

- Complete system description of the transformer system. This shall be done for each installation individually. The system description shall contain detailed information regarding the rating and diagram plates (SANS 780), connection and arrangements (MV and LV) as well as earthing and lightning protection arrangements.

◆ Commissioning Data

- Complete commissioning, test and inspection data of the transformer system.

This shall be done for each transformer installation individually. The commissioning data will comprise oil tests, megger tests and earth resistance tests.

◆ Operating data

- Safety precautions to be implemented.

◆ Maintenance instructions

- Projected frequency of replacement of drying agent.
- Procedure to filter and purify oil.

HD 04 TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF SERVICING WORK

HD 04.01 It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all labour, accessories and property calibrated and certified measuring instruments necessary to record the following parameters:

- no-load phase voltages
- earth resistance testing
- insulation resistance testing

The Contractor is responsible for the arrangement of such tests. He shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer prior to the test date.

HD 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

HD 05.01 The Contractor shall as part of this Contract institute a Recording system as part of his Maintenance Control Plan as defined in the Additional Specification SA - General Maintenance. This shall consist of a Record book which shall be utilised to log and record all faults, system checks, services, overhauls, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections, etc.

HD 05.02 The logbook shall be stored in a safe place inside the substation and shall only be utilised by the Contractor. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report to the Engineer.

This logbook shall be structured to at least include the following:

- Monthly drier inspection and maintenance actions
- Bi-annual inspection of oil levels
- Annual earthing and insulation test report
- Breakdown / call out reports.

HD 06 MAINTENANCE TOOLS AND SPARES

HD 06.01 On commencement of the Maintenance Contract, the Contractor shall compile an inventory of the existing Tools and Spares in the presence of the Engineer. Any deficiencies or short fall or damaged Tools and Spares shall be replaced with new equipment / material, as part of the contract.

HD 06.02 The Tools and Spares shall be kept safe in a lockable store room on site. The Contractor shall provide his own lock for the designated store room. The inventory of the Tools and Spares shall be verified on a monthly basis. Any short fall shall be replaced by the Contractor as part of his responsibility under this contract.

HD 06.03 The Tools and Spares shall at least include the following:

Impact wrench

HD 07 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

HD 07.01 Following formal approval of his Quality Assurance system by the Engineer, the Contractor shall implement the approved QA system.

HD 07.02 Records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the contract and shall be submitted to the Engineer as required.

HD 08 RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION

HD 08.01 On completion of the repair work the transformer installations shall be put into operation.

HD 09 SERVICE WORK TO TRANSFORMER INSTALLATIONS

HD 09.01 The various transformer systems shall be serviced as measured in the bills of quantities, Installation A10, during the first period of the servicing and maintenance contract.

HD 09.02 The scope of the repair work shall include, but shall not be limited to the activities listed below.

HD 09.03 The Contractor shall record the repair actions in tabular format before the maintenance phase commences.

HD 09.04 Servicing work shall be executed within the approved period. This period shall be agreed at the start of the contract period.

HD 09.05 New equipment and material (e.g. air driers etc.) shall be supplied with a written guarantee confirming a defects liability period of 12 months from date of hand-over. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the User Client.

HD 09.06 The maintenance phase of this contract shall commence once the work on the installation have been commissioned and handed over to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

HD 10 INSTALLATION MAINTENANCE

HD 10.01 The various transformer systems shall be maintained for the duration of the 36 month contract period.

HD 10.02 The following maintenance actions will be required under this period of the contract:

- ◆ routine preventative maintenance
- ◆ corrective maintenance
- ◆ breakdown maintenance

These actions are defined in the Additional Specification SA - General Maintenance.

HD 10.03 The maintenance schedules and frequency of services and maintenance activities shall be developed under the maintenance control plan which will be instituted by the Contractor. The Contractor's responsibility in this regard is specified in the Additional Specification SA - General Maintenance.

HD 11 TRANSFORMERS: TECHNICAL DETAILS**HD 11.01 Installation description**

This section describes the transformers that will be repaired and maintained in terms of this contract.

- To be establish on site and reported to engineer before any repairs commence

HD 11.02**Scope of servicing work**

Oil test: Specific tests to be carried out includes di-electric test, moisture content test, acidity test and gas analysis, per random sample.

Purification of transformer oil: oil to be drained purified and replaced.

Service transformer: Power wash at high pressure and high temperature. Check working of oil level gauge.

Clean and re-torque transformer bushings. Re-torque all loose bolts with impact wrench. Measure earth resistance.

Insulation resistance test: Perform at windings MV to LV, MV to earth and LV to earth. Fit drier: Fit silica gel air drier.

Check drier: Check condition of drying agent and replace, if necessary.

HD 11.03**Service work**

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(a) Service transformer	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of transformers serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cleaning of the transformer, re-torque of bushings and bolts, check oil level gauge, tightening of terminations, replace gaskets, seals, record tap changer settings, etc.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(b) Oil test	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of transformers that is tested.

The tenderer shall include full compensation for the complete test to be performed, which include the following tests:

- di-electric tests
- moisture content tests
- acidity tests and
- gas analysis tests.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(c) Oil purification	Item

The unit of measure shall be number of transformers which oil has been purified.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all labour, transport, draining, on site purification of transformer oil as per the oil test results or replacement of oil.

The tendered rate shall further include full compensation for the testing of the oil as per clause HD10.03 (b) and submitting the test results to the Representative.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(d) Fit silica gel air drier	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of air driers installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply and installation of complete air driers to the supplier's specifications.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(e) Replace drier gel	No
The unit of measure shall be the number of driers where the drying agent is replaced.	

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply and installation of drier gel.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(f) Add additional transformer oil	litres

The unit of measure shall be the number of litres of oil added to the transformer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for ordering, supply and adding additional oil (oil to SANS 0555 specification) to be supplied in 25 litre containers.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(g) Repair oil leak	No.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the replacement of the transformer gasket if and when instructed by the engineer.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(i) Re-tape LV and MV bushings and MV busbars.	item.

The unit of measure shall be a lump sum.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation to re-tape the LV and MV bushing and MV busbars to the bushings of the MV panel using PVC insulation tape.

HD 11.04 Maintenance work

HD 11.04.01 General

Refer to HD 10

HD 11.04.02 Monthly

Check oil levels
Check silica gel
Check for oil leaks

Visually inspect transformers and terminations.

HD 11.04.03

Annual

Service transformers
Record values in logbook
Test Oil
Purification if required

HD 11.05

Maintenance work: measurement and payment

Refer to clause SA 06 of the Additional Specification - SA General Maintenance.

Remuneration for the maintenance work shall form part of the overall Medium and Low Voltage Installation (Installation A10).

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

HE EXTERIOR LIGHTING SYSTEMS

CONTENTS

HE 01	SCOPE
HE 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS
HE 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
HE 04	TEST AND INSPECTION FOLLOWING COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK
HE 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
HE 06	QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM
HE 07	RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION
HE 08	REPAIR WORK TO EXTERIOR LIGHTING INSTALLATIONS AND KIOSKS
HE 09	AREA LIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS
HE 10	SECURITY FENCE LIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS
HE 11	STREET LIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS
HE 12	MAINTENANCE OF EXTERIOR LIGHTING SYSTEMS AND DISTRIBUTION KIOSKS

HE 01 SCOPE

- HE 01.01** This specification comprises all aspects regarding the maintenance of external lighting systems. External lighting comprises:
- i) Area lighting
 - ii) Security lighting along perimeter fences
 - iii) Street lighting
- HE 01.02** This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with Part C, the Additional Specifications included with this document.

HE 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

- HE 02.01** The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following specifications, publication and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

HE 02.02 SANS Specifications

02.02.01	SANS 10400	National Building Regulation
02.02.02	SANS 10142	Wiring code
02.02.03	SANS 10225	Lighting masts
02.02.04	SANS 1277	Read lighting luminaires
02.02.05	SANS 1088	Spigot entries
02.02.06	SANS 1749	Glass polyester poles
02.02.07	SANS 1250	Capacitors, ballasts & lamps
02.02.08	SANS 1279	Floodlight luminaires
02.02.09	SANS 1777	Daylight switches
02.02.10	SANS 763	Galvanised coatings
02.02.11	SANS 1266	Discharge lamps
02.02.12	ARP 035	Streetlighting maintenance

HE 02.03 Department of Public Works Specification PW 774

HE 02.04 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003.

HE 02.05 Manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions

HE 02.06 Additional requirements

Equipment and material supplied and installed shall be new and unused.
Luminaires and control gear shall bear the SANS stamp. The Contractor shall ensure that all safety regulations and measures are applied and enforced during repair and maintenance work on cabling, wiring, luminaires, lighting poles and high masts.

HE 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

HE 03.01 The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of a complete set of Operating-and-Maintenance manuals.

This shall be done in accordance with the Additional Specification SB – Operating and Maintenance manuals.

All information shall be recorded and reproduced in electronic format as well as supplying the Engineer with seven sets of hard copies.

HE 03.02 Over and above what is specified in the Additional Specification – SB Operating and Maintenance manuals, the Operating and Maintenance Manual to be compiled shall be structured and shall at least include the following:

03.02.01 Description of Installation

Complete system description of the lighting system. This shall be done for each lighting installation individually. The system description shall contain detailed information regarding the supply configuration (Distribution board, cabling, distribution kiosks, pole mounted distribution board), the switching arrangement (timers, photocells, override facilities) and the lighting (luminaire detail, lamp detail) as well as the earthing and lightning protection arrangement.

03.02.02 Commissioning Data

Complete commissioning, test and inspection data of lighting system.

This shall be done for each lighting installation individually. The commissioning data will comprise start-up and running current measurements at each termination point e.g. distribution board, kiosk and mast. Full data on lamps fitted with installation dates.

03.02.03 Operating data

- a) Safety precautions to be implemented.
- b) Operation of lighting systems; automatic, manual and bypass switching.

03.02.04 Maintenance instructions

- a) Projected frequency of lamp replacement per lighting system.
- b) Procedure to verify operation of photocell – controlled circuits.
- c) Procedure to verify operation of timer – controlled circuits.
- d) Trouble shooting diagram.
- e) Luminaire details, including manufacturers brochures / pamphlets, order number, list of components and lamp specification.

- f) Schedule of serviceable components per lighting system. These schedules shall include lamps, starters, ignitors, ballasts, lenses, etc.

HE 04 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS PRIOR TO PRACTICAL COMPLETION OF REPAIR WORK

HE 04.01 It is the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all labour, accessories and properly calibrated and certified measuring instruments necessary to record the following parameters:

- 04.01.01 Phase voltages
- 04.01.02 Current per phase
- 04.01.03 Illumination levels in lux
- 04.01.04 Insulation testing at 500V
- 04.01.05 Earthing resistance testing by means of wheatstone bridge instrument

The Contractor is responsible for the arrangement of such tests. He shall give at least 72 hours notice to the Engineer prior to the test date.

HE 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

HE 05.01 The Contractor shall as part of this Contract institute a Recording system as part of his Maintenance Control Plan as defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance. This shall consist of a Record book which shall be utilised to log and record all faults, system checks, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections etc.

HE 05.02 The logbook shall be stored in a safe place inside the prison maintenance supervisor's office and shall only be utilised by the Contractor and Engineer. A copy of the monthly entries and recordings into this logbook shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report to the Engineer.

This logbook shall be structured to at least include the following:

- 05.02.01 Monthly lamp inspection and maintenance actions.
- 05.02.02 Bi-annual inspection and testing of lighting systems.
- 05.02.03 Annual earthing test report.
- 05.02.04 Breakdown / call out reports.

HE 06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SYSTEM

HE 06.01 Following formal approval of his Quality Assurance system by the Engineer, the Contractor shall implement the approved QA system.

HE 06.02 Records of this QA system shall be kept throughout the duration of the contract and shall be submitted to the Engineer as required by the Department.

HE 07 RE-COMMISSIONING OF INSTALLATION

HE 07.01 On practical completion of the repair work and lamp replacement, the lighting installations shall be put into operation.

HE 07.02 Lighting installations shall be energised for a minimum continuous period of 96 hours immediately prior to the Engineer's Practical Completion inspection to verify lamp stability and reliability of power reticulation

HE 08 REPAIR WORK TO EXTERIOR LIGHTING INSTALLATIONS

- HE 08.01** The various lighting systems shall be repaired as part of installation H during the first phase of the repair and maintenance contract
- HE 08.02** The scope of the repair work shall include, but shall not be limited to the activities listed below.
- HE 08.03** The Contractor shall record the repair actions in tabular format before the Contractor's responsibility for maintenance commences.
- HE 08.04** Repair work shall be executed within the approved period for repairs.
- HE 08.05** New equipment and material shall be supplied with a written guarantee confirming a defects liability period of 12 months from date of practical completion. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works.
- HE 08.06** The following measurement and payment items shall apply for repair work

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|----------------------|
| HE 08.06(a) | <u>Excavate in all materials for trenches, backfill, compact and dispose of surplus material</u> | m³ |
|--------------------|---|----------------------|

This rate shall apply to all the excavations.

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated in trenches, classified according to the depth and width specified listed. The width classification shall be in accordance with the authorised dimensions and the depth classification in accordance with the total depth of the trench and not with the depth range in which the material is situated before excavation. The depth of excavation shall be measured to the underside of the bedding.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for clearing and grubbing the trench areas and the temporary removal of improvements from the line of the trench, for excavating the trench, preparing the bottom of the trench, separating material unsuitable for backfill, keeping the excavations safe, dealing with any surface or subsurface water, measuring, classification and keeping of all records and for separating topsoil and selected backfill material where necessary.

The rate shall furthermore cover the costs of installing the 150mm sand bed and 200mm sand cover, backfilling, compacting and disposing of the surplus material.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
-------------	-------------

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|----------------------|
| HE 08.06(b) | <u>Extra over item HE 08.06(a) for excavating in hard material</u> | m³ |
|--------------------|---|----------------------|

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of material excavated and classified as hard, in accordance with the classification set out hereunder.

The tendered rate shall be paid over and above the rate tendered for excavation in respect of items HD 08.06(a) in full compensation for the additional cost of excavating in hard material instead of soft.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for any overbreak as well as the additional backfilling required, reinstating the trench bottom, and for any other incidentals resulting from overbreak.

The materials excavated shall be classified as follows for payment purposes:
Hard material:

Material which cannot be excavated efficiently except with the use of pneumatic tools, blasting or wedging and splitting, and shall include boulders exceeding 0,15 m³ in volume.

Soft material:

All material not classified as hard material.

Notwithstanding the above classification, all material excavated from previously constructed fills, embankments, pavement layers and from above existing services shall be classified as soft material.

The decision of the Engineer as to the classification of the material shall be final and binding and any objection as to the classification shall be made before the excavation has been backfilled.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06(c) Extra over item 3.10.1.1 for excavating by hand in all materials

m³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of trench material excavated by means of hand tools as instructed or authorised in writing by the Engineer where the use of conventional excavating equipment is either impractical or likely to cause damage to services, trees or property or where the electrical Contractor has to excavate by hand where he cannot excavate by machine.

The volumes of the trench excavation will be computed from the length and the depth to the bottom of the specified bedding layer and the minimum base widths specified in the drawings. The rate shall cover the cost of complying with the safety and protection requirements specified except where particular items are scheduled to cover particular costs for the excavation.

The tendered rate shall be paid extra over the rates tendered for item HE09.06(a).1 in full compensation for the additional expense of excavating by means of hand labour instead of conventional trenching equipment.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06(d) Extra over item HD09.06(a) for using backfill material obtained from sources provided by the Contractor

m³

The unit of measurement shall be the cubic metre of imported backfill material.

Item HD09.06(d) above will not be measured for payment unless importation has been ordered in writing. The volume will be computed from the trench width and the depth from ground level to the top of the sand bed cover as shown on the tender drawings. The rate for material from designated borrow pits shall cover the cost of excavation and selection of suitable material, the moving of the material to the backfilling site, and the disposal of the material that becomes surplus as a result of the importation, all within 0,5 km.

The tendered rate for item HE09.06(d) paid extra over item HE09.06(a) shall cover the cost of the acquisition of the material and of the disposal of the surplus material resulting from the importation together with all the costs of transporting the material to the site regardless of distance.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06(e) Supply and Install Cable Sleeves

m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length in meter of cable sleeves supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, handling and installing the cable sleeves including all the required couplings, steel draw wires and plugs.

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(f)	<u>Supply and Install Plastic Warning Tape</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the length in meter of plastic warning tape supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supplying, handling and laying the plastic warning tape.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(g)	<u>Supply and delivery of low-voltage cable</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the length of low-voltage cable supplied.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture, supply and delivery of the specified cable to the site.	
	Separate items shall be scheduled under this payment item for each size and type of cable required.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(h)	<u>Lay LV-cable</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the linear length in meter of LV-cable installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspecting, laying, cutting and testing the cable. Cables shall be measured linearly over all lengths laid. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and each type of cable laid.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06 (i)	<u>Termination of LV-cables</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of LV-cable terminations.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for providing the cable glands, shrouds and lugs, the cost of handling, fitting and cutting the cable. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size and type of cable.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(j)	<u>Supply bare copper earth conductor</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the length in meter of bare copper earth conductor supplied.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and laying the specified earth continuity conductor.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(k)	<u>Installation of bare copper earth conductor</u>	m
	The unit of measurement shall be the length in meter of bare copper earth conductor installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for procuring, furnishing and laying the specified earth continuity conductor.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>

HE 08.06(l)	<u>Terminate and connect bare copper earth conductor</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of bare copper earth conductors terminated and connected.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying all the material required to terminate and connect the bare copper earth conductors and the connecting thereof to the earth bars.		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(m)	<u>Jointing of low-voltage cable</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of LV-cables joints.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the cost of providing the kits, the cost of cutting the cable, handling and fitting the kits and the cost of testing the joints.		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(n)	<u>Re-lamp luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaire lamps replaced.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the lamp according to the manufacturer's instructions.		
Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of lamp.		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(o)	<u>Supply and installation of internal luminaire components</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of internal luminaire components replaced.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the components according to the manufacturer's instructions.		
Separate items shall be scheduled for each component.		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(p)	<u>Internal wiring of luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaires rewired with silicone insulated wiring.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and wiring of a luminaire with silicone insulated wiring where the wiring are specified separately.		
<u>Item</u>		<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(q)	<u>Supply and install circuit breakers</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of circuit breakers supplied and installed.		
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the circuit breakers where the circuit breakers are specified separately.		

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(r)	<u>Supply and install isolators</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the isolators where the isolators are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(s)	<u>Supply and install contactors</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of contactors supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the contactors where the contactors are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(t)	<u>Supply and install of low tension fuses</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuses supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the fuses where the fuses are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(u)	<u>Supply and install photocell (plug-in type)</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of photocells supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the photocells where the photocells are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(v)	<u>Supply and install QAT-R type electronic timer</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of timers supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the timers where the timers are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(w)	<u>Supply and install 0-30A HRC fuses</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuses supplied and installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the fuses where the circuit breakers are specified separately.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(x)	<u>Supply and install end connectors and insulating sleeves</u>	No
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of end connectors and insulating sleeves supplied and installed.	

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the end connectors at the light pole or where cables forms a looping system.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06 (y) Replace pole

The unit of measure shall be the number of poles replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of all equipment from the existing pole, removal of the existing pole from site, ordering, supply and installation of the pole in the position specified.

The contractor shall install all existing equipment onto the new pole

Item

Unit

HE 08.06 (z) Replace Luminaire diffuser

The unit of measure shall be the number of luminaire diffusers replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the diffuser from the existing luminaire, ordering, supply and installation of the new diffuser as specified according to manufactures instructions.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06 (aa) Replace pole mounted brackets

The unit of measure shall be the number of pole brackets replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply and installation of the pole bracket including all fixing accessories as specified according to manufactures instructions.

The tendered rate shall further include for the removal of all old equipment from the pole and the supply and installation of the new equipment onto the pole bracket including the connection of the equipment.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06 (ab) Replace pole cover

The unit of measure shall be the number of pole covers replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the pole cover from the existing pole, ordering, supply and installation of the new pole cover as specified according to manufactures instructions.

Item

Unit

HE 08.06(ac) Junction boxes including pole mount brackets.

No.

The unit of measure shall be the number of junction boxes supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of junction boxes brackets and strapping. The junction box must be fitted with a neutral bar earth bar, din terminal rails and CBI circuit breaker clips to accommodate the maximum amount of terminals and circuit breakers.

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(ad)	<u>Remove rust and paint kiosks</u>	
	The unit of measurement shall be the total number of kiosks painted.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of rust with a anti corrosion agent and the repainting of the whole kiosk.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(ae)	<u>Label kiosks</u>	No.
	The unit of measure shall be the total number of kiosks labelled.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the labelling of kiosks circuit breakers, cable and the warning notification to be installed.	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(af)	<u>Supply and install padlocks</u>	No.
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of padlocks installed.	
	The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply, engraving and installation of the padlocks, locking devices and seals.	
	Lock shall be "keyed alike".	
	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
HE 08.06(ag)	<u>Replace distribution meter kiosks.</u>	No.
	The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks replaced.	
	The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the removal, the ordering, supply and installation of the new 6/4 way meter boxes complete with watt hour meters, circuit breakers, gland plate, labelling and concrete foot strip as specified.	

CONSUMER DISTRIBUTION KIOSKS

(a) General

The kiosks shall be of adequate size to accommodate the number of outgoing consumer circuits specified.

The kiosks shall have two sections, namely:

- (i) one section containing all incoming and outgoing switchgear and cables, and
- (ii) one section containing the consumer meters and circuit breakers.

(b) Fabrication

The kiosks shall be fabricated from 3CR12 stainless steel of minimum thickness 2,5 mm and shall be mounted on a channel iron steel base.

A metal frame work, manufactured from solid angle iron, channel iron, or 2,5 mm 3CR12 folded sheet steel shall be mounted on the base of the kiosk. The kiosk shell shall be completely independent from the frame and equipment so that the kiosk shell can be removed and replaced without disconnecting any equipment. The kiosk shall be bolted down onto the base by means of four M16 high tensile bolts which shall be accessible from the inside of the kiosk only.

The kiosks shall be weatherproof, vermin and insect-proof and proved against tampering. To prevent the ingress of water onto live equipment, the door entry surrounds shall have a channel shape, at least 12 mm deep, to accommodate the door edge. A rubber or neoprene closer strip shall be so fitted to the edges of each door as to provide a seal to keep rain water and dust out of the kiosk.

The kiosk shall have a pitched roof that slopes downwards at the front and at the back with an overhang of at least 75 mm all round.

The kiosks shall be fitted with a door in the front and at the back of the kiosk. The maximum width per door shall be 600 mm. The doors shall provide free access to the equipment and shall provide a full view of all meters. The doors shall have well returning edges to fit into the channel of the door entry surrounds. Each door shall have three robust solid brass hinges each of length at least 100 mm. The hinges shall be completely concealed. Doors shall be fitted with lever locks. The locking mechanism shall facilitate three point latching at the top, side and bottom of the doors. In the case of double doors the first door shall be locked with two slides on the inside onto the kiosk shell. The second door shall close over a lip on the first one. Nylon door restraints shall be provided. The fixing points of the restraints at the door and the canopy shall be reinforced. The doors shall be earthed bonded to the frame by means of a copper braided strap, tooth washers, bolts and nuts.

Ventilation louvres with approximate size 225 x 150 mm shall be provided on both sides of the kiosk. Each ventilation louver shall be covered on the inside with perforated plates with 2,5 mm holes so that

- it is not possible to push a steel wire through it into the interior of the kiosk, and
- it prevents vermin from entering into the kiosk.

A mounting panel shall be positioned in the centre of each kiosk, fixed to the frame work, for the mounting of the specified equipment.

(c) Mounting panel

The mounting panel shall consist of a minimum 3 mm thick mild steel plate.

The one section of the panel shall be equipped with copper busbars mounted on porcelain or similar insulators and of sufficient length to accommodate three 12 mm brass bolts for the connection of distribution cables and six consumer meter connections per phase. The busbars shall be tinned after the drilling of holes. The busbars shall be able to carry 250 Ampere at a current density of not more than 1,5 A/mm². Each busbar shall be marked red, yellow and blue with black for the neutral bar. The busbars shall be able to withstand the thermal and dynamic forces resulting from short circuits without deformation taking place or parts breaking.

The specified consumer equipment shall be installed in the second section. The mounting panel and equipment shall be enclosed by a machine punched removable front panel through which the operating handles of the equipment and the face plates of the meters protrude.

(d) Equipment installed in kiosks

The equipment to be installed in the kiosks shall be as specified in the detail specification.

(e) Wiring of kiosks

The internal wiring in the kiosks shall be done with PVC insulated copper conductors. The wiring shall be done in neat horizontal and vertical columns. Each consumer circuit shall be wired from the phase busbars to the circuit breaker and from the circuit breaker to the meter.

Connections to busbars and terminals shall be done by means of cable lugs crimped in an approved manner to the conductor ends. Connections to the busbars shall be made by means of cadmium plated high tensile steel bolts and nuts with locking washers.

(f) Earthing

A 25 mm x 6 mm long tinned copper earth bar shall be installed at the bottom of the kiosk.

10 mm diameter holes shall be drilled through the earth bar to provide for the distribution cable and service cable earth conductors. All bolts used for the fixing of the earth conductors shall be cadmium plated and only one earth conductor shall be connected per bolt.

The metal work of the kiosk shall be earthed to the earth bar by means of a 70 mm² stranded copper conductor. An earth stud shall be provided on the kiosk housing for this purpose.

(g) Cable gland plate

The cables shall be terminated on a removable galvanised gland plate of suitable dimension and strength. The gland plate shall cover the full length of the kiosk.

The gland plate shall be at least 300 mm below the nearest terminal of switchgear allowing sufficient space for bending the cable ends. Sufficient space shall be provided underneath the gland plate to allow for the installation of the cables without removing the gland plate. The gland plate shall be earthed to the earthbar by means of a 70 mm² stranded copper earth conductor.

(h) Terminal blocks

A terminal block type suitable for the termination of 16 mm² stranded copper conductors shall be provided. Terminals shall be of the screw type and a terminal shall be provided for each service connection cable.

(i) Labels

The kiosks shall be supplied with the following labels:

- (i) An aluminum label with 40 mm high letters and numeral indicating the kiosk number.
- (ii) Engraved trafolite labels with 6 mm high numerals under each circuit breaker, meter, and terminal on the terminal block indicating the consumer stand number.

The labels shall have a white background and black letters. The 40 mm labels shall be fixed by means of rivets and the 6 mm high labels shall be inserted in 25 mm wide aluminium label holder mounted at the bottom of the relevant equipment.

(j) Danger signs

The requirements of Regulation C-52 of the Machinery and Occupational Safety Act No 6 of 1983 shall be complied with. All doors shall be fitted with a 150 x 100 mm Danger/Gevaar/Ingozi signs.

(k) Painting and finishing

- (i) Post-weld cleaning and passivation of 3CR12

Post-weld cleaning shall be undertaken on all welded areas. One of the following cleaning methods may be used to remove all surface discolouration and scale from welded areas.

- (1) Wire brushing : Where it is possible to remove the discolouration and detritus from weld areas by brushing, stainless steel wire brushes, that have not been used on other material other than 3CR12, may be used.
- (2) Grinding : Dedicated grinding wheels and discs based on alumina shall be used for the dressing of welds. The use of silicon carbide wheels and discs shall not be used.
- (3) Abrasive blast cleaning : The abrasive used shall be washed silica sand or alumina totally free of metallic iron, iron oxides or chlorides.

(ii) Chemical cleaning (pickling)

The pickling of 3CR12 shall be carried out using formulations based on nitric (HNO₃) and hydrofluoric (HF) acid. Formulations based on hydrochloric acids shall not be used. Acids used shall conform to commercial purity standards. Where proprietary pickling formulations are used, the manufacturer's directions concerning the application procedures shall be strictly adhered to.

(iii) Passivation

The passivation of the 3CR12 shall be carried out as soon as possible after the post-weld cleaning has taken place. A solution made up of nitric acid shall be used for the passivation of the 3CR12. The solution shall be generously applied to the steel by brush, cloth, spray or dipping. Care shall be taken that the solution does not dry on the steel surface. The steel shall be thoroughly washed with clean cold water to remove all traces of the acid use.

(iv) General

The entire process of cleaning, pickling, passivation and neutralization shall be completed in one working day.

Tenderers shall submit full details of the post-weld process their suppliers intend to use.

(v) Painting

All interior metal work shall be thoroughly de-rusted and degreased and shall be prepared for painting in accordance with SANS 066.

Immediately after cleaning a zinc chromate red oxide primer with a dry film thickness of 25 micrometre shall be applied in accordance with SANS 679. An intermediate enamel coat shall be applied to the primed surface and thereafter the finishing coat of white enamel paint shall be applied to the interior and "light stone", colour C37 SANS 1091 to the exterior.

The bases and undersides must be treated in an approved manner and finished with two coats epoxy-tar paint.

(l) Drawings and information

Tenderers shall submit full details of the cubicles offered with the following drawings with the tender

- a drawing indicating all dimensions of the kiosks
- a drawing indicating the dimensions of the plinth with fixing arrangements
- a drawing indicating the general internal equipment layout of the kiosks.

The successful tenderer shall, before the manufacturing of the kiosks commences, submit the final drawings to the Engineer for approval.

A schematic wiring diagram of the kiosk, as wired and colour coded, shall be submitted at the completion of the contract.

(m) Inspection

The successful tenderer shall allow the representative of the Engineer access to the manufacturer's works at all reasonable times to inspect the progress of the work and to witness all tests

ItemUnit**HE 08.06(ah) Replace door hinges on meter and distribution kiosks.**

No.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of damaged hinges, the supply, delivery and installation of new hinges.

ItemUnit**HE 08.06(ai) Supply and install handles.**

No.

(Perano type lockable turn catch door handle (heavy duty))

The unit of measure shall be the total number of handles installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the old handle and ordering, supply and installation of a lockable turn catch handle.

HE 09 AREA LIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS**HE 09.01 Installation description**

This section describes the electrical distribution network that will be repaired and maintained in terms of this contract.

Luminaires are suspended on fibreglass poles of various lengths. Area lights are controlled by means of photocells and manual on/off switches.

AREA	POLE / MAST INFORMATION		LUMINAIRE INFORMATION		
	MOUNTING HEIGHT	DESCRIPTION / MATERIAL	DESCRIPTION	SWITCHING	NUMBER
Boesmansnek, Port of Entry:	3m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Kazelle LED 47W N4010	Photocell	12
Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	3m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Kazelle LED 47W N4010	Photocell	3
Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:	3m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Kazelle LED 47W N4010	Photocell	5

HE 09.02 Scope of repair work

Open each pole cover and inspect the fuse or circuit breaker, tray, and shield plate as well as earthing connection. Check and replace the cover seal if required.

Service each luminaire, open control gear enclosures and treat for moisture ingress and corrosion. Wash luminaires with detergent and clean lenses. Check and replace neoprene seals.

Re-lamp luminaires.

Replace luminaires: Remove existing damaged luminaires, supply and install similar and approved luminaires complete with lamps and control gear, if applicable.

Open upstream distribution board. Check and fasten cable terminations, fit labeling and blank face-plate covers. Check the locking mechanism and fit the padlock.

Open distribution kiosk. Clean inside and add termite and rodent poison. Fit circuit labelling. Check locking mechanism and fit padlock.

Service luminaries by washing with detergent and re-lamping where necessary. Clean lenses. Check condition of seals and glands and test for earth continuity.

Check consistency of aiming angles and tighten mounting bracket bolts

HE 09.03

Repair work: Measurement and payment

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(a) <u>Relamp luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of lamps replaced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the lamp according to the manufacturer's instructions.	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(b) <u>Service luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of luminaires opened and serviced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the luminaire, including washing, corrosion protection, checking of seals and glands, cleaning of the lenses, tightening of stirrup bracket bolts and the checking of earthing continuity, connections and aiming angle.	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(c) <u>Service light distribution kiosk or DB</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution boards or kiosks serviced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the cleaning and opening of kiosk or DB, vermin protection, checking of MCB's, checking and tightening of wire terminations, fitting of labels and blank covers. The contractor is to submit a report on the general condition of the kiosk or distribution boards (damaged, rust marks, etc.)	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(d) <u>Supply and install padlocks</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of 75mm padlocks installed.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the ordering, supply, engraving and installation of the padlocks, locking devices and seals. Locks shall be "key alike".	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(e) <u>Service area light pole</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be number of area light poles opened and serviced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of pole cover, visual inspections, tightening all connections and straightening of pole	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(f) <u>Replace luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be number of luminaires replaced.	

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the specified luminaire complete with lamp and control gear according to manufacturer's instructions.

I	<u>tem</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(g)	<u>pole</u>	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of poles replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of all equipment from the existing pole, removal of the existing pole from site, ordering, supply and installation of the pole in the position specified.

The contractor shall install all existing equipment onto the new pole

	<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(h)	<u>Supply and install 25m High Scissor Light Mast</u>	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of 25m high scissor light mast hot dip galvanised to SANS 121 ISO 1461 specification supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacturing, delivery, assemble and erection of the 25m high scissor light mast complete with brackets to carry 9 x 400W HPS Floodlight luminaries, cabling, ring, wiring of luminaries, electrical distribution board and splitter box.

The tendered rate shall further include full compensation for grouting the gap between the mast base plate and the foundation with a Prostruct 531 mixture.

The earthing, excavations and casting of foundation of the mast will be measured elsewhere.

HIGH MAST SPECIFICATION

1. Construction

The masts shall be constructed from conical sections which, when assembled, will form a tapered column of circular cross section. There shall be no fillet welds of the overlaps. The sections shall be joined by friction fit only.

The masts shall be of lightweight construction and a base plate shall be welded to the bottom end of the lowest section suitably drilled for foundation bolts.

All welding to be subject to S.A.B.S. Spec 044 Part 3 Grade B and shall be carried out by S.A.B.S. coded welders only. Proof that all welders have been tested by the S.A.B.S. must be submitted on request. Inspection and acceptance certificates shall be furnished on request.

The steel used in the manufacture of the mast shall have an ultimate tensile strength of between 450 and 620 MPa and identical to SABS 1431 grade 300WA steel.

Proof must be supplied that the manufacturer is ISO 9001 accredited.

2 Dimensions

The masts offered shall give an overall floodlight mounting height of 25 m. The cross-section and wall thickness of the mast is determined on the basis of the working loads.

3. Working Loads

The masts shall be designed in accordance with the S.A.B.S. 0225 Code of Practice for the design and construction of lighting masts. The following site factors shall be considered:

Design wind speed	=	40m/s
Class of structure	=	B
Category of terrain	=	2
Altitude of site	=	1200 m

The mast shall carry at its top 9 x 400W HPS Floodlights evenly around its circumference.

Data on wind induced oscillations and the dynamic behaviour of the mast shall be submitted.

4. Access Opening

An access door adequately protected against the weather shall be provided in the mast, with the bottom lintel 600mm above the base plate. The door shall be adequately protected against vandalism and secured by three screws requiring a special opening tool.

A doorframe shall reinforce the opening in the mast.

The mounting strips welded opposite the door opening shall be drilled for the mounting of a control board. Earth terminals, as well as a support bar for the incoming supply cables, shall be provided below the door opening.

5. Corrosion Protection

All parts of the mast and raising and lowering device, not specified as manufactured from stainless steel, shall be hot dip galvanised to SAB Specification No. 763/1977 and inspection certificates provided if required.

No welding, drilling, punching, bending or removal of burrs shall be carried out after galvanising.

6. Electrical Connection to the Luminaires

A fully enclosed distribution board shall be provided for each mast, containing:

- 1 x 3 pole isolator (main switch)
- 3 x single pole MCB's (lights)
- 1 x single phase switched socket outlet for the use of a power tool
- 1 x two pole earth leakage unit protecting the single phase outlet
- 1 x 7pinCEE socket

1 x adequately rated contactor

1 x single pole MCB acting as by-pass switch

1 x single pole MCB protecting the contactor

All circuit breakers and isolators shall have a rupturing capacity of 5 kA and shall bear the mark of the S.A.B.S. and shall be accessible through cut-outs in the cover without having to remove the cover.

All equipment shall be clearly marked with engraved labels. No stick-on embossed tape shall be used.

The distribution board shall be fully wired and ready for connection to the incoming supply cables.

7. FOUNDATIONS

Each mast shall be supplied with foundation bolts and templates. The bolts shall be hot dip galvanised over their entire length to S.A.B.S. Specification No. 763/1977. Two galvanised nuts, two washers and one spring washer shall be supplied for each bolt. The number of foundation bolts shall be determined according to the design of I .3 above. Calculations shall be submitted upon request.

A foundation plan, adequately designed for the conditions as per I .3 of this specification, and based on a soil bearing capacity of 150 kPa, giving details of the reinforcing required shall be submitted. Soil pressure and overturning safety factor shall be stated.

All reinforcing and foundation bolts shall have a minimum of 100mm concrete cover. The 28 days cube strength of the concrete shall be 25 MPa.

All foundations shall have a circular flat base from which a square plinth shall rise to above the surrounding ground level.

One or two PVC, Class B cable sleeves shall be provided from the centre of the top of the foundation plinth, through the concrete to a point below ground level on the side of the plinth.

After casting of the foundation, the slab shall be covered by earth, properly compacted. The area around the plinth shall be brought to the original level and shall be left neat and tidy.

8. LUMINAIRES

- The floodlight luminaire shall be beam type 400W HPS.
- The floodlight shall be suitable for HST 1000W lamp.
- The body of the luminaire shall be of die-cast aluminium with polyurethane finish.
- The reflector shall be high purity bright anodised aluminium and shall provide a narrow asymmetrical beam.
- The peak intensity shall not be less than 48000 lumens.
- The front glass shall be heat resistant armoured glass.
- The gaskets shall be silicone rubber.
- The fasteners shall be stainless steel.
- The luminaire control gear shall be housed in an integral weatherproof container.

HE 10 SECURITY FENCE LIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS**HE 10.01 Installation description**

This section describes the electrical distribution network that will be repaired and maintained in terms of this contract.

Luminaires are suspended on fibreglass poles. Lights are controlled by means of photocells and manual on/off switches.

SECURITY FENCE	POLE / MAST INFORMATION		LUMINAIRE INFORMATION		
	MOUNTING HEIGHT	DESCRIPTION / MATERIAL	DESCRIPTION	SWITCHING	Number
Boesmansnek, Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	22
Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	3
Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	9

HE 10.02 Scope of repair work

Open each pole cover and inspect fuse or circuit breaker, tray and shield plate as well as earthing connection. Check and replace cover seal if required. Wash luminaire and lens, replace neoprene seal and re-lamp luminaires.

Replace luminaires: Remove existing damaged luminaires, supply and install similar and approved luminaires complete with lamps and control gear, if applicable. Check aiming angle and adjust if necessary.

Open upstream distribution board. Check and fasten cable terminations, fit labelling and blank face-plate covers. Check locking mechanism and fit padlock.

Open distribution kiosk. Clean inside and add termite and rodent poison. Fit circuit labelling. Check locking mechanism and fit padlock.

Open each distribution Kiosk, clean inside provide termite and rodent poison. Check earth bar and earth continuity. Check and fasten cable terminations, fit labelling and blank face-plate covers. Check locking mechanism and fit padlock. Check earth connection to electrode.

Service luminaires by washing with detergent and re-lamping where necessary. Clean lenses. Check condition of seals and glands and test for earth continuity.

HE 10.03 Repair work: Measurement and payment

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(a) <u>Service security light pole</u>	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of security light poles opened and serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of pole box, visual inspections, corrosion protection, straightening of poles if necessary, treating of wooden poles with cresote and securing circuit breakers and terminations.

The contractor shall give a general report on the condition of the pole and equipment. The report should indicate if poles are rotten (wood poles), bent (steel poles), broken (wood, steel, concrete or fibreglass poles) or if the pole should be painted (steel). Strap all cable to pole.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(b) <u>Re-lamp luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of security lamps replaced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the lamp according to the manufacturer's instructions.	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(c) <u>Service distribution kiosk</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks or boards opened and serviced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of kiosk or distribution board, vermin protection, cleaning of circuit breakers, earth testing, secure circuit breakers and terminations and fitting of blank covers. The contractor is to submit a report on the general condition of the kiosk or distribution board (damaged, rust marks, etc.)	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(d) <u>Replace luminaires</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of security floodlight luminaires replaced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the luminaire complete with the lamp and control gear according to the manufacturer's instructions.	
<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(e) <u>Service luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measure shall be the number of luminaires serviced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the service of the luminaire, including washing, corrosion protection, checking of seals and glands, cleaning of lenses, tightening of brackets bolts, checking of earthing continuity, checking of aiming angle and adjust if necessary	

HE 11 STREETLIGHTING: TECHNICAL DETAILS

HE 11.01 Installation description

This section describes the electrical distribution network that will be repaired and maintained in terms of this contract.

Luminaires are suspended on steel, wood, concrete and fibreglass poles of various lengths. Street lights are controlled by means of photocells and manual on/off switches.

AREA /STREET	POLE / MAST INFORMATION		LUMINAIRE INFORMATION		
	MOUNTING HEIGHT	DESCRIPTION / MATERIAL	DESCRIPTION	SWITCHING	NUMBER
Boesmansnek,Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	10
Ramatselitso Land Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	2
Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:	7-9m	Fibreglass Pole	Beka Ledlume Streetlight	Photocell	3

HE 11.02 **Scope of repair work.**

Open distribution kiosk, check locks, clean inside, provide termite and rodent poison.

Open each mast cover and inspect fuse or circuit breaker, tray and shield plate as well as earthing connection. Check and replace cover seal if required. Wash luminaire, replace neoprene seal, clean lens and re-lamp luminaires if required. Replace luminaires: Remove existing damaged luminaires, supply and install similar and approved luminaires complete with lamps and control gear, if applicable. Assess aiming angle and adjust if necessary

HE 11.03 **Repair work: Measurement and payment**

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(a) <u>Service streetlight pole</u>	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of security light poles opened and serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the opening of pole cover, visual inspections, straightening of poles if necessary and securing circuit breakers and terminations.

The contractor shall give a general report on the condition of the pole and equipment. The report should indicate if poles are rotten (wood poles), bent (steel poles), broken (wood, steel, concrete or fiberglass poles) or if the pole should be painted (steel). Strap all cable to pole.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(b) <u>Re-lamp luminaire</u>	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of street light lamps replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the lamp according to the manufacturer's instructions.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(c) <u>Service street Luminaire</u>	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of luminaires serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the service of the luminaire, including washing, corrosion protection, checking of seals and glands, cleaning of lenses, tightening of brackets bolts, checking of earthing continuity, checking of aiming angle and adjust if necessary

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(d) <u>Replace streetlight luminaire</u>	No
The unit of measurement shall be the number of streetlight luminaires replaced.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the luminaire complete with the lamp and control gear as per manufacturer's instructions.	

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(e) <u>Supply and install photocell bypass</u>	No
The unit of measure shall be the number of photocell bypasses installed.	
The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the design supply and installation of the photocell bypass.	

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(f) <u>Replace 125MV choke in control gear.</u>	No
The unit of measure shall be the number of chokes installed.	
The tendered rate shall make full compensation for ordering, supply and installation of chokes.	

<u>Item</u>	<u>Unit</u>
(g) <u>Replace connection to streetlight luminaire.</u>	No
The unit of measure shall be the number of connections replaced from the streetlight luminaire to the overhead line.	
The tendered rate shall make full compensation for ordering, supply and connection of the luminaire to the overhead line with silicon cable or airtight and cable clamps on to the overhead line.	

HE 12 MAINTENANCE OF THE INSTALLATION

HE 12.01	The various lighting systems shall be maintained in perfect working order following the initial repair work. The maintenance contract shall run for the balance of the 36-month contract period.
HE 12.02	The following maintenance actions will be required under this phase of the contract:
12.02.01	Routine preventative maintenance
12.02.02	Corrective maintenance
12.02.03	Breakdown maintenance
	These actions are defined in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.
HE 12.03	The maintenance schedules and frequency of maintenance activities shall be developed under the maintenance control plan which will be instituted by the Contractor. The Contractor's responsibility in this regard is specified in the Additional Specification SA – General Maintenance.

HE 12.04 The following shall be used as guidelines to ensure effective maintenance:**12.04.01 Scope of maintenance work on area lighting**

- a) Monthly
 - i) Verify operation of switching element
 - ii) Check lamps
 - iii) Check mast door for weatherproof seal
 - iv) Check earth connection at footing, record value
- b) Annual
 - i) Service all luminaires
 - ii) Measure earth resistance of electrode
 - iii) Measure earth resistance of trench earth
 - v) Record values in record book

12.04.02 Scope of maintenance work on security lighting

- a) Monthly
 - i) Verify operation of switching element.
 - ii) Check lamps.
 - iii) Check that all pole covers are secure.
 - iv) Visually check distribution kiosk.
- b) Annual

Measure phase voltages and line currents in distribution kiosk or local distribution board. Record values in record book. Do vermin protection. Service all luminaires.

12.04.03 Scope of maintenance work on street lighting

- a) Monthly
 - i) Verify operation of switching element.
 - ii) Check lamps.
 - iii) Check that all pole covers are secure.
 - iv) Visually check distribution kiosk.
- b) Annual

Measure phase voltages and line currents in distribution kiosk. Record values in Record book. Do vermin protection. Service all luminaries and distribution kiosks.

HE.12.05 Maintenance shall include all repairs, replacing of components or materials, routine setting or any other actions necessary to ensure a perfect functional condition.

HE.12.06 Maintenance work measurement and payment.

Refer to clause SA06 of the ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION : SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

JC CONVENTIONAL FIREFIGHTING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

JC 01	SCOPE
JC 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
JC 03	OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
JC 04	TRAINING OF OPERATORS FOR THE OPERATION OF THE INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT
JC 05	LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES
JC 06	REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT
JC 07	MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

JC 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the general maintenance of the conventional firefighting equipment installations, which include the following:

- (a) Fire hydrants
- (b) Fire hose reels
- (c) Fire extinguishers
- (d) Fire booster pumps

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with the additional and particular specifications compiled as part of this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification. In the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

JC 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

JC 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof.

JC 02.01.01 SANS and other specifications and codes

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| SANS 6172;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire extinguishers, classification system, fire ratings |
| CKS 532;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire extinguishers, foams |
| SANS 10105-1;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire extinguishers, portable, classification system, control systems |
| SANS 1322;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire extinguishers, portable, non-refillable |
| SANS 1567; | - Fire extinguishers, portable, rechargeable, carbon |

ICS 13.220.10	dioxide
SANS 1573; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, portable, rechargeable, foams
SANS 1475-1; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, portable, reconditioning
SANS 810; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, powder, portable, rechargeable
SANS 1522; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, powders
SANS 1571; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, transportable, rechargeable
SANS 889; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire extinguishers, water fire extinguishers, portable, rechargeable
SANS 10105-1; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire fighting equipment, fire extinguishers, portable
SANS 1322; ICS 13.220.10, 23.020.30	- Firefighting equipment, fire extinguishers, portable, non-refillable
SANS 543; ICS 13.220.10	- Firefighting equipment, fire hose reels
SANS 10105-2; ICS 13.220.10	- Firefighting equipment, fire hose reels
SANS 1128-2; ICS 13.220.10, 23.040.60	- Firefighting equipment, fire hose, pipe couplings, pipe connections
SANS 1128-1; ICS 13.220.10, 23.060.99	- Firefighting equipment, fire hydrants
SANS 810; ICS 13.220.10	- Firefighting equipment, powder fire extinguishers, portable, rechargeable
SANS 1475-1; ICS 13.220.10	- Firefighting equipment, reconditioning, fire extinguishers, portable
SANS 889; ICS 13.220.10	- Firefighting equipment, water fire extinguishers, portable, rechargeable
SANS 543; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hose reels
SANS 10105-2; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hose reels, classification systems, control systems
SANS 1475-2; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hose reels, reconditioning
SANS 1456-5; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hoses, collapsible, delivery pipes (firefighting), oil resistance tests, chemical resistance tests
SANS 1456-2; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hoses, collapsible, delivery pipes (firefighting), percolating hoses
SANS 1456-1; ICS 13.220.10	- Fire hose, collapsible, delivery pipes (firefighting), testing

- | | |
|--|--|
| SANS 1456-4;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire hoses, collapsible, delivery pipes, coated materials, non-percolating hoses |
| SANS 1456-3;
ICS 13.220.10 | - Fire hoses, collapsible, delivery pipes, uncoated materials, non-percolating hoses |
| SANS 1128-2;
ICS 13.220.10, 23.040.60 | - Fire hoses, pipe couplings, pipe connections |
| SANS 1128-1;
ICS 13.220.10, 23.060.99 | - Fire hydrants, firefighting equipment |
| SANS 1056-1;
ICS 23.060.20 | - Fire safety, ball valves |
| SANS 10400 | - Application of the NBR |
| SANS 10287 | - Automatic sprinkler installations for firefighting purposes. |
| FPO/82/6E(STS 10) | - Standard technical specification for a pump installation for automatic sprinkler fire extinguishing systems. |

JC 02.01.02 Department of Public Works Specifications:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| F.P.O/G.61/3E | - Fire Security: A guide to Architects |
| PW 371 | - Specification of Materials and Methods to be used |

JC 02.01.03 Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993. Construction Regulations, 2014 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 37305 of 04 April 2014 shall be adhered to.

JC 02.01.04 Manufacturers' specifications, codes of practice and installation instructions

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

In the event of a discrepancy between the statutory codes and the manufacturer's codes, the discrepancy shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer, who, in collaboration with the Employer and Local Authority, will prescribe the steps to be taken.

JC 02.01.05 Municipal regulations, laws and by-laws

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

JC 03 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

No operating and maintenance manuals will be developed for this section.

The contractor shall use the Maintenance Control Plan (see SA Maintenance) to schedule routine preventative maintenance activities.

Over and above the afore-mentioned, the Contractor shall also be responsible for the compilation of the following:

(a) Cataloguing of the fire-fighting equipment

All the fire-fighting equipment must be catalogued under the following headings:

- (i) Location and details of equipment
- (ii) Service date
- (iii) Service frequency
- (iv) Condition of equipment
- (v) History: Usage incidents, breaking, etc.

(b) Provision of a "Fire Plan"

The Contractor shall provide a Fire Plan indicating positions, and keeping up to date any changes of the equipment position, status and operation.

JC 04 TRAINING OF OPERATORS FOR THE OPERATION OF THE INSTALLATION AND EQUIPMENT

The end user shall be trained by the supplier of the firefighting equipment to operate the individual firefighting equipment.

Firefighting training shall be done by a nationally accredited training institute (Fire Protection Association of South Africa).

JC 05 LOGGING AND RECORDING PROCEDURES

The Contractor shall under this repair and maintenance contract institute a logging and recording system as part of his maintenance control plan as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance. This shall consist of a log and record book, which shall be utilised to log and record all service records, system checks, breakdowns, maintenance visits, inspections, etc.

The logbook shall be stored in a safe place as agreed with the User Client and the Engineer and shall only be utilised by the Fire Protection Officer, the Contractor and the Engineer. The Contractor shall submit copies of the monthly entries and recordings into the logbook , together with his monthly report, to the Engineer.

The logbook shall be structured to include at least the following:

- (a) Service records
- (b) Inspection and maintenance actions
- (c) Breakdown reports
- (d) Fire safety officer's comments
- (e) Inspection and test comments and reports.

The Contractor shall also institute an attendance register, which shall be kept in a safe place as agreed with the User Client and Engineer. This register shall be completed by all persons visiting the installation, including:

- (a) Fire safety officer
- (b) Contractor
- (c) Inspectors
- (d) Department personnel
- (e) Engineer.

The register shall state the date, time-in, time-out, name, company and reason for visit.

A copy of the register shall be submitted by the Contractor together with his monthly report.

JC 06 REPAIR WORK TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT**JC 06.01 GENERAL**

During the repair and maintenance contract all the systems, installations and equipment shall be repaired as specified in the Particular Specification. This repair work shall include, but not be limited to the specified Particular Specification details.

All repair work shall be executed using approved materials and equipment suitable to the systems and/or installations they serve. The said repair work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws, manufacturer's specifications and codes of practice and all applicable additional and particular specifications included in this document.

The repair work items are listed in the Particular Specification and Schedule of Quantities with all relevant details, such as capacity, size, manufacturer, model number, etc.

All repair work shall be executed within the specified durations listed in the Appendix to Tender. All new equipment, materials, and systems shall be furnished with a written guarantee of a defects liability period of 12 months commencing on the date of issue of a certificate for completion of the repair work. These guarantees shall be furnished in favour of the Department of Public Works.

Repair work items for the firefighting equipment shall be categorised under the following headings:

- (a) Fire hydrants
- (b) Fire hose reels
- (c) Fire extinguishers.

JC 06.02 REPAIR WORK TO EXISTING EQUIPMENT

The Contractor shall at the start of the repair and maintenance contract inspect, record and report on all the existing firefighting equipment listed in this specification.

This inspection and report shall comprise the following:

- (a) Establishing the condition of all equipment;
- (b) Reporting all defects to equipment;
- (c) Compliance of equipment in respect of the governing regulations at the start of the Contract;
- (d) Recording all equipment with an identifying system;
- (e) Details of all equipment;
- (f) Suitability of equipment regarding the purpose it serves;
- (g) Water supply pressure;
- (h) Listing of latest service.

The Contractor shall report on the above in writing to the Engineer. No repair, service and/or replacement work shall commence prior to approval by or directives from the Engineer.

JC 06.03 FIRE HYDRANTS

Repair work to the fire hydrants system is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include, but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of damaged, broken, leaking, corroded pipe work and fittings;
- (b) Replacement of main hydrant seal;
- (c) Repair/replacement of quick coupling catches;
- (d) Replacement of damaged shaft ends (right angle wheel type);
- (e) Replacement of damaged and expired or missing 65 mm diameter hose streamers;
- (f) Replacement of damaged or missing 65 mm diameter hose nozzle;
- (g) Replacement of damaged valve stem seal;
- (h) Replacement, repair and repainting of concrete pedestals;
- (i) Replacement of fire-damaged, missing or shortfall fire signage to equipment;
- (j) Hydrants shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded.

JC 06.04

FIRE HOSE REELS

Repair work to the fire hose reel systems is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replacement of the hose drum seal where leaks occur;
- (b) Replacement of the 30 m hose where perished, damaged or missing;
- (c) Repair damaged hose drums and, where directed by the Engineer, replace with new;
- (d) Replace gland packing and gaskets to hose reel shut-off valve;
- (e) Replace missing hose reel shut-off valve wheel handles;
- (f) Number and catalogue hose reel;
- (g) Where hose reels shut-off valves are damaged beyond repair, these shall be replaced with new;
- (h) All hose reel mountings shall be checked and where loose or damaged, replaced with new;
- (i) Where paintwork of equipment has deteriorated, such equipment items shall be replaced and repainted in accordance with the manufacturer's specification;
- (j) Hose reels shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded, including service records.

JC 06.05

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

Repair work to the fire extinguishers is detailed in the Particular Specification and shall include, but not be limited to the following:

- (a) Replace wall mounting boards and brackets where damaged or missing.
- (b) Dry chemical powder extinguishers shall be repaired and serviced and shall include at least the following:

- (i) Replace discharge hose and nozzle where damaged or missing;
 - (ii) Replace gauge on the bottle where reading is incorrect, damaged or missing;
 - (iii) Check, service and repair activation mechanism;
 - (iv) Replace DCP powder;
 - (v) Recharge the discharge cylinder to the required capacity;
 - (vi) Reseal discharge mechanism;
 - (vii) Replace instructions on extinguishers where necessary;
 - (viii) Extinguishers shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded, including service records.
- (c) CO₂ extinguishers shall be repaired and serviced and shall include at least the following:
- (i) Replace discharge nozzle and pipe where damaged or missing;
 - (ii) Replace gauge on bottle where reading is incorrect, damaged or missing;
 - (iii) Repair activation mechanism;
 - (iv) Recharge with CO₂ to required capacity;
 - (v) Reseal discharge mechanism;
 - (vi) Replace instructions on extinguishers where necessary;
 - (vii) Extinguishers shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded, including service record.
- (d) Water extinguishers shall be repaired and serviced and shall include at least the following:
- (i) Check cylinder for corrosion and report to Engineer. Where directed, the complete unit shall be replaced;
 - (ii) Replace discharge hose and nozzle where damaged and missing;
 - (iii) Replace gauge on bottle where damaged, missing or where reading is incorrect;
 - (iv) Check service and repair activation mechanism;
 - (v) Replace water content;
 - (vi) Recharge discharge cylinder to the required capacity;
 - (vii) Reseal discharge mechanism;
 - (viii) Replace instructions on extinguisher where damaged or missing;
 - (ix) Extinguishers shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded, including service record.

- (e) Foam type extinguisher shall be serviced and repaired and shall include at least the following:
 - (i) Check cylinder for corrosion and report to Engineer. Where directed, the complete unit shall be replaced;
 - (ii) Replace discharge hose and nozzle where damaged or missing;
 - (iii) Replace gauge on bottle where damaged, missing or incorrect;
 - (iv) Check, service and repair activation mechanism;
 - (v) Replace foam concentrate content;
 - (vi) Recharge discharge cylinder to required capacity;
 - (vii) Reseal discharge mechanism;
 - (viii) Replace instructions on extinguisher where damaged or missing;
 - (ix) Extinguishers shall be labelled with identifying tags and details recorded, including service record.

JC 07 MAINTENANCE TO INSTALLATIONS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

JC 07.01 GENERAL

Annual maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment prior to and after practical completion of the work.

Maintenance of the completed installation shall commence upon the issue of a certificate of practical completion for repair work, and shall continue for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

This part of the Contract shall include:

- (a) Routine preventative maintenance;
- (b) Corrective maintenance, and
- (c) Breakdown maintenance,

as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, for the specified installations described under JC 01 of this specification.

The maintenance work to be performed and executed shall be done strictly in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance and as specified in Particular Specification PJC and this specification.

The said maintenance work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of practice, statutory regulations, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturers' specifications and codes of practice.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be instituted by the Contractor, as specified in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All new equipment, components and materials supplied and installed under the maintenance contract shall be furnished with a prescribed manufacturer's guarantee.
The maintenance work and items are to be categorised for each maintenance activity under the following headings:

- (a) Fire hydrants
- (b) Fire hose reels
- (c) Fire extinguishers
- (d) Fire booster pumps

The Contractor shall be remunerated monthly, based on his performance, for maintaining the complete installation in a perfect functional condition.

JC 07.02 **ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE**

The routine maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The routine maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed below under the respective headings.

These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

JC 07.02.01 **Fire hydrants**

Maintenance work shall include at least the following actions and shall be scheduled in accordance with the relevant regulations and requirements and include monthly and six-monthly inspections and services.

- (a) Check hydrant valve seal.
- (b) Check right angle wheel for tightness.
- (c) Check valve stem and or top for damage.
- (d) Check valve stem seal and readjust.
- (e) Check operation of quick couplers.
- (f) Check operation (opening and closing movement of valve).
- (g) Check water pressure and flow.
- (h) Check stand pipe for rigidity and leaks.
- (i) Log maintenance schedule.
- (j) Report defects for processing and repair.
- (k) For fire water pipe systems see Technical Specification AA.
- (l) For fire pump see Technical Specifications FN and JA.

JC 07.02.02 **Fire hose reels**

Maintenance work shall include at least the following actions and shall be scheduled in accordance with the relevant regulations and requirements and include monthly and six-monthly inspections and services.

- (a) Check drain seal.
- (b) Roll down hose and check for cracks or perishing.
- (c) Check operation of PWD type nozzle.

- (d) Check operation of drain.
- (e) Check operation of fire hose reel valve.
- (f) Lubricate moving parts of drum.
- (g) Check pressure and flow of fire hose reel.
- (h) Check piping for leaks and damages.
- (i) Log maintenance schedules.
- (j) Report defects for processing and repair.
- (k) For fire water pipe systems see Technical Specification AA.
- (l) For fire pumps see Technical Specifications FN and JA.

JC 07.02.03 Fire extinguishers

Maintenance work shall include at least the following actions and shall be scheduled in accordance with the relevant regulations and requirements and include monthly and six-monthly inspections and services.

(a) General

- (i) Check mounting of backboard and bracket.
- (ii) Check charge of the extinguisher.
- (iii) Check the condition of the discharge.
- (iv) Check the mechanism condition of the discharge hose.
- (v) Update the log entry on the extinguisher.
- (vi) Log maintenance schedule.
- (vii) Report defects for processing and repair.

(b) Individual types of extinguishers

Over and above the preceding requirements, the following shall apply to individual types of extinguishers.

- (i) DCP extinguishers:
Check charge and replace powder at prescribed intervals.
- (ii) CO₂ extinguisher:
Check charge.
- (iii) Water extinguisher:
Replace water at pre-described intervals.
- (iv) Foam extinguisher:
Check foam mix and replace at predetermined intervals.

(c) Fire booster pumps

JC 07.03 CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE

This corrective maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and the Particular Specification related to this work.

The Contractor shall inspect and check all equipment, materials, systems and installations for any pending breakdowns, maladjustments or anomalies of equipment.

The Contractor shall report and take actions to correct such shortfall.

JC 07.04 BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE

Breakdown maintenance of the installations, systems and equipment shall be done in accordance with Additional Specifications SA: General Maintenance.

All breakdown problems experienced shall be acted upon within the time limitations allowed in the General Maintenance specifications.

All breakdown maintenance shall be done in accordance with the relevant specifications, standards, regulations and codes.

The Contractor shall have access to the necessary spares, equipment and tools for any possible breakdowns.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

KA WATER AUDIT

CONTENTS

KA 01	SCOPE
KA 02	STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS
KA 03	EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK
KA 04	MAINTENANCE
KA 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

KA 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the material, equipment, testing and work required for the implementation of a water audit. It covers only the external water services comprising the water supply from the point of delivery and the associated distribution system.

This specification shall form an integral part of the maintenance and servicing contract document and shall be read in conjunction with portion 3: Additional Specifications included in this document.

This specification shall act as a guideline to the Particular Specification and, in the event of any discrepancies between the Technical Specification and the Particular Specification, the latter shall take precedence.

KA 02 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

KA 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS, REGULATIONS AND CODES

The latest edition including all amendments up to the date of tender, of the following specification, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

- SANS 1200 DB - Earth works (pipe trenches)
- SANS 1200 LB - Bedding and pipes
- SANS 10306 - Management of potable water in distribution systems
- BS 1780 - Specification for Bourdon tube pressure and vacuum gauges

KA 02.02 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT OF 1993

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993: Construction Regulations, 2003 as promulgated in Government Gazette No 25207 and Regulation Gazette No 7721 of 18 July 2003 shall be adhered to.

KA 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

KA 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

KA 02.05 MECHANICAL PRESSURE GAUGES

- (a) Analogue mechanical or Bourdon tube pressure gauges shall be of the bottom entry type and shall have faces at least 60 mm in diameter with clear, readable markings and indicators. The screw-in fitting shall be compatible with the pipe fitting, which shall be the metric equivalent of a ½ inch BSP internal thread unless otherwise specified. Threads shall be in accordance with BS 21 for jointing threads or BS 1387 for long screw threads. The Contractor shall provide the relevant details in the operation and maintenance manuals.
- (b) The indicated range on the gauge shall span 120 % of the operational pressure range specified for the relevant equipment. Accuracy shall be within 3 % of the full-scale deflection value. An adjustable indicator shall be set to indicate the maximum operational system pressure clearly.
- (c) It shall be possible to isolate the pressure gauge from the pressure pipe by means of a valve or a gauge cock, which shall be supplied and installed by the Contractor and shall be included in the tendered rate for the equipment.
- (d) A gauge protector shall be fitted where a gauge has to indicate pressures in corrosive media or liquids that could easily clog the pressure ports. It is a requirement that gauge protectors be fitted where sludge is the working medium.
- (e) Pressure gauges fitted to hydraulic pipelines shall be glycerine-filled for damping purposes, and gauges fitted to pneumatic or gas pipelines shall be vacuum-damped.
- (f) The circumferential positioning of pressure gauges on water and sewerage pipes shall be in accordance with BS 5316: Part 1 class C, and the static head tapping shall also comply with these standards.
- (g) Bourdon type pressure gauges shall comply with BS 1780.

KA 02.06 DATA LOGGER SPECIFICATION

KA 02.06.01 Special features required

The following special features are required of the data logger:

- Recording of analogue values (pressure) and flow simultaneously;
- Inputs may be used for either digital or analogue sensing devices;
- Three independent memories (day, hour and events);
- Positive and negative data logging;
- LC-display;
- Alarm contact;
- Battery-powered (independent of the mains power supply);
- Appropriate software included.

KA 02.06.02 Technical data

Protection	IP68
Casing	Cast aluminium
Operating temperature	0 to 50 °C
Storage temperature	-10 to + 70 °C

System clock	Read time
Output	V.24/RS 232-compatible data interface to connect to the PC. All socket connectors are waterproof.
Alarm contact	FET open drain - 1 max 100 mA; U max 50 V

KA 02.06.03 Pressure sensor

The sensor may be either:

- direct-connected to a 3/8" NPT thread nipple, or
- connected by an adapter to a 3/8" Whitworth female connection.

Material:

All parts which are in contact with the media and the housing must be manufactured from stainless steel.

Storage temperature	-55 to +100 °C
Operating temperature	-40 to +100 °C
Operating temperature interface	0 to +70 °C
Compensated range	0 to +70 °C
Media temperature	-40 to +125 °C
Humidity	0 to 100 % (RH)
Shock	50 g
Accuracy	± 1,0 % FS at constant temperature
Non-linearity	± 0,2 % FS
Repeatability	± 0,5 % FS
Thermal effects	0 °C to 70 °C
Response time	1,0 ms

Pressure ratings (bar):	<u>Operating pressure</u>	<u>Proof pressure²</u>	<u>Burst³</u>
	0 - 20,70	31,0	345

- (a) Sensor including interface;
- (b) Maximum pressure without causing damage to the sensing elements;
- (c) The media will be contained until this extreme pressure limit is exceeded.

Measuring range: 0,0 to 20,7 bar

KA 03 EXECUTION OF REPAIR WORK

KA 03.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall investigate and inspect all areas of the installation to confirm the extent of the repair work required and shall report to the Engineer. The Engineer will thereafter demarcate any areas to be repaired and shall instruct the Contractor with regard to the repair work to be done.

KA 03.02 INSTALLATION OF WATER METERS

This section covers the installation and repair of all water meters that will be used as part of the water audit process.

KA 03.02.01 Bulk water meters

Bulk water meters at reservoirs shall be repaired or replaced depending on the condition of the meter. Meters not installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall also be rectified.

All reservoir outlets shall be metered.

All boreholes will be metered.

KA 03.02.02 Zone meters

Zone meters shall be installed within the network where significant benefit can be obtained from dividing the area into zones so that the consumption pattern can be monitored and discrepancies between the supply and consumption within the area compared.

Zone meters will also be used for the measurement of night flows where required.

KA 03.02.03 Individual connections

All individual connections within the reticulation shall be metered. Such connections shall include meters for individual buildings.

KA 03.02.04 Domestic water meters

Meters for domestic water consumption shall be provided in above ground installations, but underground in secure areas.

KA 03.02.05 Combination water meters

The installation of combination water meters shall be considered for all installations where connections larger than 80 mm are used for institutions that have peak flows exceeding 400 times the minimum anticipated flow.

KA 03.02.06 Fire flow connections

Where fire flow connections are provided, measures shall be taken to ensure that the fire flow and domestic water consumption are metered separately. The Engineer will indicate where the meters are to be installed.

KA 03.03 ROUTINE INSPECTIONS OF PIPELINE ROUTES

KA 03.03.01 Water pipelines

The routes of all water supply pipelines shall be inspected for visible leaks. All leaks shall be properly logged and reported for repair.

KA 03.03.02 Sewer manholes

Sewer manholes shall be inspected for excessive night flows. The households in areas with high night flow rates shall be inspected for leakages resulting from leaking cisterns, etc., which occur on the consumers' side of the meters.

KA 03.04 COMPILATION OF DATABASE

The Contractor shall compile a database to assist in effective management of the system. The database shall contain the following information:

- (a) Meter serial number
- (b) Meter size
- (c) Meter make
- (d) Installation position
- (e) Meter reading on installation
- (f) Date of installation
- (g) Date last calibrated
- (h) Consumer name
- (i) Postal and residential address
- (j) Length and diameter of pipeline.

The above-mentioned data may also be provided as part of the User Client's billing system.

In the compilation of the database the Contractor shall ensure that the information required for the "water audit" software is also collected.

KA 03.05 LEAK DETECTION AND REPAIR

This clause covers the providing of additional equipment for implementing a water loss management programme in identified areas. Areas with significantly high unaccounted for water flows will be identified for measuring night flows.

KA 03.05.01 Provision of data loggers

Data loggers shall be provided in accordance with Particular Specification PA: Measuring instruments. The data loggers will enable the monitoring of flow patterns and detailed inspection of the minimum night flow in a particular area.

KA 03.05.02 Measurement of night flows

Measurement of the night flow shall be done as instructed by the Engineer.

KA 03.05.03 Meter management

All metered consumers must be incorporated into a billing system for the accurate compilation of monthly accounts for water consumed.

The billing system shall be user-friendly and cover at least the following aspects:

- (a) Meter serial number;
- (b) Consumer name;
- (c) Postal and residential address;
- (d) Meter reading at start and end of period;
- (e) Dates of meter reading;
- (f) Volume of water consumed;

- (g) Tariff applicable for payment;
- (h) Estimated interim accounts;
- (i) Accounts in arrears;
- (j) Unreadable accounts with associated reasons;
- (k) Incorporation of prepayment meters and associated consumption.

KA 03.05.04 Provision of software

Software packages shall be provided to enable the following:

- (a) Establishment of a meter database;
- (b) Establishment of a user-friendly database;
- (c) Water audit;
- (d) Night-flow evaluation.

KA 03.05.05 Training and capacity building

This clause covers the training of representative staff of the User Client to acquire a level of competency so that they will be able to manage the water control plan.

The training programme shall include the following aspects:

- (a) Software application for water balance, water audit and billing system;
- (b) Meter reading;
- (c) Use of data loggers.

SANS 10306 will be used as a basis for the training.

KA 04 MAINTENANCE

This specification must be read in conjunction with Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

All components of the water control plan including the associated water meters, as well as software and hardware for the computers, shall be maintained during the maintenance phase of the Contract. Maintenance of the system shall ensure reliable functioning and optimum service life thereof. Commencement of maintenance of the system shall mean that the system has been repaired to its original level of serviceability and shall leave the Contractor with an as-new system to maintain for the remaining period of the 36 month contract.

Remuneration for maintaining the system, services and parts of the infrastructure in perfect functional condition is provided for in the Schedule of Quantities by means of monthly payment items.

Maintenance implies and shall include monthly routine preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance, as well as breakdown maintenance on all components of the specified installation. Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing defects or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete operation of the water control plan.

KA 04.01 SCOPE OF MAINTENANCE

Maintenance work for the water control plan shall comprise the following:

KA 04.01.01 Monthly maintenance

- (a) Check operation of water meters;
- (b) Read all water meters;
- (c) Verify sample meter readings;
- (d) Update database;
- (e) Issue consumer accounts;
- (f) Repair visible leaks;
- (g) Compile monthly water balance on volume and costs.

KA 04.01.02 Four-monthly maintenance

- (a) Check sewer night flows three-monthly;
- (b) Install data loggers to measure night flows at bulk and zone meters three-monthly;
- (c) Analyse data from data loggers;
- (d) Implement leak detection in areas indicated as problematic through data logger analysis.

KA 04.01.03 Six-monthly maintenance

- (a) Clean strainer units at water meters;
- (b) Confirm settings and operation of pressure-reducing valves.

KA 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**KA.01 COMPILATION OF DATABASE.....Unit: sum**

The tendered sum shall include for the provision of the software and the input of all the initial data.

KA.02 MEASUREMENT OF NIGHT FLOWS..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of periods during which a night flow is measured per water meter installation, irrespective of the duration of the measuring period.

The tendered rate shall include for the installation of data loggers, downloading of data, presentation and analysis of results and all associated incidental charges.

KA.03 METER MANAGEMENT SYSTEMUnit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum for the complete compilation of a meter management system sufficient for management of the installation.

The tendered rate shall include for the input of all related data.

KA.04 PROVISION OF SOFTWARE Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of software packages provided.

The tendered rate shall include for the supply, delivery and installation of the relevant software. All associated labour costs shall be included but, the associated computer hardware costs are to be excluded.

Separate pay items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different software packages.

KA.05 TRAINING AND CAPACITY BUILDING Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum to cover the respective training and capacity building offered.

The tendered rate shall include for the labour, transport, materials and all other related costs.

Separate items will be listed in the Schedule of Quantities for different courses required.

KA.06 SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF PRESSURE GAUGES Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of pressure gauges supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the pressure gauges, including site handling, correct positioning, testing and all material and labour required to obtain a fully functional pressure gauge.

KA.07 SUPPLY AND DELIVERY OF DATA LOGGERS Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of data loggers supplied and delivered. There will be different items for different data loggers.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the corrosion protection, patent rights, royalties, transport and all other costs and actions required for the supply and delivery of data loggers as specified.

KA.08 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING OF DATA LOGGERS AS SPECIFIED Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of data loggers installed, tested and commissioned as specified.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the site handling, positioning, installation, testing and commissioning of the data loggers as specified, including all other costs and actions required to obtain a fully functional system for flow measurement.

All actions required as part of the software installation shall be included.

BOESMANSNEK, ONGELUKSNEK AND RAMATSELISO LAND PORTS OF ENTRY: 36 MONTHS INFRASTRUCTURE MAINTENANCE AND REPAIRS OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL, MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL AND INSTALLATIONS (APPOINTMENT OF A CONTRACTOR)



Particular Specifications

PAA	:	Plumbing and Drainage Installations
PBF	:	Pest Control
PFD	:	Heating Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems
PJC	:	Conventional Fire-Fighting Equipment

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION**PAA PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTALLATION****CONTENTS**

PAA 01	SCOPE
PAA 02	GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATION
PAA 03	TECHNICAL DETAILS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION
PAA 04	STATUS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION
PAA 05	DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK
PAA 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
PAA 07	DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK

PAA 01 SCOPE

- (a) This specification covers the particulars of the maintenance work to the plumbing and drainage installations at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry. This particular specification shall be read in conjunction with the Technical Specification AA: Plumbing and Drainage Installation, and all additional and technical specifications compiled as part of this document, in particular the following Additional Specifications:

- SA: General Maintenance
 SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals
 SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures
 SD: General Training

The intended maintenance work to this installation will restore the existing installations to safe, efficiently functional systems that comply with all statutory regulations and applicable standards, in the process repairing all defects and shortfalls. On completion of the repair work, the completed installations shall be maintained and serviced by the Contractor for the remainder of the 36-month contract period.

The various sites consist of various facilities, as listed below, which form part of the maintenance and servicing contract for plumbing and drainage installation.

PAA 01.01 BOESMANSNEK, RAMATSELITSO AND ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORTS OF ENTRY

All the buildings at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek are connected to water meters. Other items in buildings are described below:

BOESMANSNEK

QTY	Location	Taps Valves (No)	WC Pan (No)	WC Cistern (No)	Urinal (No)	WHB (No)
240	Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry	145	26	26	5	38

RAMATSELITSO

QTY	Location	Taps Valves (No)	WC Pan (No)	WC Cistern (No)	Urinal (No)	WHB (No)
119	Ramatseletso Land Port of Entry	80	13	13	2	11

ONGELUKSNEK

QTY	Location	Taps Valves (No)	WC Pan (No)	WC Cistern (No)	Urinal (No)	WHB (No)
163	Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry	106	15	15	4	23

BOESMANSNEK

QTY	Location	Bath (No)	Shower (No)	Geyser (No)
INSTALLATION A2: BOESMANSNEK - RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS: PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE				
33	Boesmansnek, Land Port of Entry	7	10	16

RAMATSELITSO

QTY	Location	Bath (No)	Shower (No)	Geyser (No)
INSTALLATION A2: RAMATSELITSO - RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS: PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE				
16	Ramatseletso, Land Port of Entry	2	5	9

ONGELUKSNEK

QTY	Location	Bath (No)	Shower (No)	Geyser (No)
INSTALLATION A2: ONGELUKSNEK - RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS: PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE				
24	Ongeluksnek, Land Port of Entry	5	9	10

PAA 02 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATIONS

The existing plumbing and drainage installations provide potable hot and cold water to the various buildings on these sites. The potable cold-water installation is provided with supply points from the underground reticulation networks outside the buildings to an above ground reticulation network via service ducts, ceiling voids and chased into walls to outlet points. The potable hot-water installation is provided with supplies from various domestic or industrial geysers where applicable.

This contract also provides for repair and maintenance of the fire water piped reticulation network, excluding the fire fighting equipment which is dealt with under Particular Specification PJC: Conventional Fire Fighting equipment.

Technical details of sanitary and brassware, as well as the plumbing and drainage installations are given in PAA 03.

PAA 03 TECHNICAL DETAILS OF EXISTING INSTALLATIONS

At the time of compilation of this document the existing installations consisted of the equipment and plant listed below with their relevant technical details.

PAA 03.01 SANITARY AND BRASSWARE: GENERAL

	SANITARY WARE	BRASSWARE	TRAP
WCs (cistern)	Armitage Shanks/Vaal: white, floor-mounted, vitreous china	Brass shut-off valves	Not applicable
Cistern (WC)	Wall-mounted, white, CI; Wall-mounted, white, vitreous china; Wall-mounted, white, plastic	Brass shut-off valves	Not applicable
Urinals (flush)	Armitage Shanks, white, wall-mounted, vitreous china; Citimetal stainless steel wall-mounted.	Junior flush valve, exposed type, shut-off valves; Brass shut-off valves	CP bottle trap. Flexi P-trap; Flexi S-trap
WHBs	Armitage Shanks, white wall-mounted, white enamel; Wall-mounted stainless steel	Cobra 15 mm, CP star handle pillar taps	Flexi P-trap; Flexi S-trap
Showers		15 mm CP under-tile stop-cocks	

	SANITARY WARE	BRASSWARE	TRAP
Wash troughs	Stainless steel, double bowl, wall-mounted	Cobra 15 mm, CP star handle wall type taps	Flexi P-trap
Baths	Steel enamel, white, 2 m long	Cobra 20 mm, CP star handle wall type taps	Not applicable
Sinks	Stainless steel, cabinet-mounted	20 mm CP star handle taps, 20 mm Cobra taps CP sink mixer with over arm swivel outlet	Flexi P-trap, lead P-trap
Wash tubs	Concrete double bowl	CP wall type taps	Lead P-trap

PAA 03.02 SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING: GENERAL

	PIPE	FITTINGS	EQUIPMENT
Gullies	VCP	CI or plastic grating	Not applicable
Waste pipes	GMS, uPVC	Brass, uPVC	Not applicable
Soil pipes	S&S CI, uPVC	S&S CI, uPVC	Not applicable
Cleaning eyes	CI (ABC), uPVC	Not applicable	Not applicable
Vent pipes	S&S CI	S&S CI	Not applicable

PAA 03.03 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING: GENERAL

	PIPE	FITTINGS	EQUIPMENT
Cold-water piping	Cu GMS	Conex, soldered GMS	Brass gate shut-off valve Brass gate shut-off valve
Hot-water piping	Cu GMS	Conex, soldered GMS	Brass gate shut-off valve Brass gate shut-off valve

PAA 03.04 FIRE WATER PIPING: GENERAL

	PIPE	FITTINGS	EQUIPMENT
Fire water piping	GMS, Cu	GMS, Conex soldered	See specifications

PAA 03.06 FIRE WATER INSTALLATION QUANTITIES

The fire fighting equipment currently installed is listed in Particular Specification PJC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment. The piped reticulation networks to these equipment items shall form part of this contract where applicable.

PAA 04 STATUS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION

The status of the equipment and installation at the time of compilation of this document is summarised below:

PAA 04.01 SANITARY AND BRASSWARE

The condition of sanitary and brassware varies between the different buildings and are therefore grouped as shown earlier.

PAA 04.02 PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

Visible damages must be reported and repaired.

PAA 05 DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK

The following work shall form part of the repair work to Building Services. This work shall be done in accordance with the relevant regulations, codes, specifications and Technical Specification AA: Plumbing and Drainage Installations, as set out in this document. The work to be included is set out in PAA 05.01 and PAA 05.02 below and shall be read in conjunction with the Schedule of Quantities and Technical Specifications.

The repair work shall be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Additional Specification SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures.

PAA 05.01 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF REPAIR WORK

PAA 05.01.01 The Contractor shall at the start of the Repair and Maintenance Contract inspect the items, systems, equipment, components and installations listed below. This inspection shall involve the determination of any defects, leaks, damages, shortfalls, structural soundness, repairs required, details of existing equipment, suitability of equipment for the purpose it serves, etc. The Contractor shall report back to the Engineer in writing on all the above and the following items. No repair work shall commence prior to approval by the Engineer:

- (a) Sanitary and brassware, including traps, brackets, piping, pan connectors, etc;
- (b) Sanitary drainage installation, including fittings, traps, floor drains, gullies, cleaning eyes, manholes, grease and oil separators, etc;
- (c) Domestic water piped installation, including fittings, valves, strainers, lagging and cladding, non-return valves, safety valves, etc;
- (d) Fire water piped installation, including fittings, valves, non-return valves, pressure gauges, etc;
- (e) Bracketing system;
- (f) Domestic geysers including valves, pressure reducing valves, strainers, vacuum breakers, safety valves, non-return valves, lagging and cladding, etc.
- (g) Industrial geysers including valves, pressure reducing valves, strainers, vacuum breakers, safety valves, non-return valves, lagging and cladding, etc.

PAA 05.01.02 The general scope of work at the time of going on tender is defined as follows:

- (a) Replacing of irreparably damaged, missing and unsuitable sanitary and brassware, including the isolation, removal and stripping of the existing equipment;
- (b) Replacing of irreparably damaged, corroded and unsuitable sanitary drainage piping, including fittings, brackets, traps, floor drains, oil and grease separators, cleaning eyes and gullies, etc;
- (c) Replacing of irreparably damaged, corroded and unsuitable domestic water piping, including fittings, brackets, valves, strainers, water meters, lagging and cladding, etc;
- (d) Replacing of irreparably damaged, corroded and unsuitable fire water piping, including fittings, brackets, valves, non-return valves, pressure gauges, etc;
- (e) Replacing of irreparably damaged and corroded domestic or industrial geysers, including valves, pressure-reducing valves, air release valves, strainers, non-return valves, vacuum breakers and safety valves;

- (f) Servicing, cleaning and repair of existing sanitary ware including removal of stains, repair of chipped enamel, replacing of damaged and missing seats and lids, de-scaling and cleaning of cisterns and servicing of filling and flushing mechanisms, fixing of loose fixtures and brackets, cleaning of traps, etc;
- (g) Servicing, overhauling and cleaning of existing brassware, including dismantling, de-scaling, repair kits, replacing of washers, gland packing and gaskets, replacing of missing tap handles and flushing assemblies, etc;
- (h) Servicing, cleaning and repair of existing domestic water and drainage pipe installations, including traps, floor drains, gullies, manholes, valve chambers, grease and oil separators, brackets, valves, vacuum breakers, strainers, pipe lagging and cladding, etc;
- (i) Servicing and repair of existing fire water piped reticulation, including fittings, valves, pressure gauges, brackets, etc;
- (j) Servicing, cleaning and repair of domestic geysers, including de-scaling, testing for leaks, replacing of elements, safety valves and thermostats if required, etc;
- (k) Handing over of complete systems on completion of the repair work to the satisfaction of the Engineer, when the maintenance period shall commence;
- (l) The supply and compilation of operating and maintenance manuals;
- (m) The testing, adjusting and commissioning of all systems;
- (n) The introduction of a maintenance control plan, including logging, recording and control procedures.

PAA 05.02 REPAIR WORK TO PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

The repair work to this installation shall at least include, but not be limited to the work listed below. Any items, components or installations not detailed in particular but found to be defective or inoperative during the inspection and report phase, shall be repaired or replaced as instructed by the Engineer.

PAA 05.02.01 Various Sites

- (i) Service and repair domestic hot and cold-water installations, including pressure testing of existing systems, and replace items that are beyond repair. Where necessary, replace entire system with capillary soldered copper pipe system.
- (ii) Service and repair drainage system, including rodding of system, and replace damaged or leaking pipes and fittings, manhole covers, cleaning and inspection eyes, gullies and gully gratings.
- (iii) Service and repair brassware, such as taps, stop-cocks and flushing mechanisms with repair kits, and replace items that are missing or beyond repair.
- (iv) Service and repair sanitary ware, including chip repair, de-staining and re-coating of baths, WC bowls and wash hand basins, dent removal and de-staining of wash troughs and kitchen sinks and replacement of damaged or missing parts such as WC seats and lids and cistern lids. Replace missing or irreparably damaged equipment. The following replacement items shall be installed where required:

- (1) Ceramic and Plastic cisterns
 - (2) Steel enamel bathtubs
 - (3) Stainless steel wash troughs
 - (4) Ceramic wash hand basins
- (v) Service and repair domestic geysers, including de-scaling, testing for leaks, replacement of electrical heating elements if required, servicing or replacement of valves, or replace leaking and corroded geysers where necessary.

PAA 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

All new building work and repair work to existing structures and buildings necessitated by repairs to the plumbing and drainage services as scheduled, shall be done in accordance with the structural and building section of the Technical and Particular Specifications. The costs of such building and repair works shall be deemed to be included in the tendered rates for the applicable items as scheduled in this section.

PAA.01 INSPECTION AND REPORT ON EXISTING INSTALLATIONSUnit: installation

The unit of measurement shall be the installation reported on.

The tendered rate for the installation shall include full compensation for the inspection and written report on all items, systems, components, equipment and installations, including the establishment of defects, leaks, damage, shortfalls, structural soundness, repairs required, details of existing equipment and suitability of the equipment for the purpose it serves.

PAA.03 ISOLATION, STRIPPING, DISMANTLING AND REMOVAL OF EXISTING BRASSWARE, SANITARY WARE AND PIPING INSTALLATIONSUnit: number, metre

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each item of brassware and sanitary ware and metre of piping removed, including fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the isolation, dismantling and removal of irreparably damaged, broken and/or unsuitable brassware (flush valves, taps, mixers, shower roses, under tile stop-cocks, demand bib taps, hose bib taps, shut-off valves, etc) and sanitary ware (water closets, cisterns, basins, urinals, baths, wash troughs, sinks, etc) including all associated pipe work, brackets, traps, pan connectors, etc.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the isolation, stripping, dismantling and removal of irreparably damaged, broken or unsuitable pipe work installed on surface, underground, chased into walls, in ceiling voids and/or service ducts, as well as the plugging off of connections to this pipe work.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the removal off site and/or to storage of all removed items as mentioned above.

PAA.04 ISOLATION, STRIPPING, DISMANTLING AND REMOVAL OF EXISTING GEYSER INSTALLATIONSUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each geyser installation removed, including associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the isolation, stripping, dismantling and removal of irreparably damaged, broken and/or corroded domestic geysers, including shut-off valves, non-return valves, strainers, pressure-reducing valves, vacuum breakers, air release valves, safety valves, etc, and the removal off site.

PAA.05 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF SANITARY WARE
AND BRASSWARE**Unit: metre, number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each item of sanitary and brassware supplied and installed, including all associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation, testing, cleaning, commissioning and hand-over of sanitary and brassware including all necessary pipe work, traps, brackets, fittings, bends, junctions, cleaning eyes, etc, to connect the sanitary and brassware to the existing water supply and/or drainage installation.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for chasing and/or building into walls and the reinstating of existing surfaces such as floors, walls, ceilings, etc.

PAA.06 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF DRAINAGE
PIPING INSTALLATION**Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of piping in the installation supplied and installed, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, installation, testing, cleaning, commissioning and handover of new drainage piping, installed on surface against walls or soffits, underground, in ceiling voids, chased or built into walls and/or service ducts, including all necessary bends, junctions, tees, cleaning eyes, covers, traps, floor drains, gratings, brackets, hangers, etc, to hand over a complete and effective installation that complies with local government regulations.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the necessary underground works such as excavation, pipe bedding, fill blanket, backfilling and compaction and for the reinstatement of existing surfaces such as floors, walls, ceiling, roads, paving, etc, as well as connection to the existing drainage installation.

PAA.07 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC
WATER PIPING INSTALLATION** Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of piping in the installation supplied and installed, indicating all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, installation, testing, cleaning, sterilising, commissioning and hand-over of new water piping installed on surface against walls or soffits, underground, in ceiling voids, chased or built into walls and/or in service ducts, including all necessary bends, tees, reducers, elbows, valves, strainers, adapters, brackets, hangers, etc, to hand over a complete and effective installation that complies with local government regulations.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the supply and installation of hot-water pipe insulation and cladding.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the necessary underground works such as excavation, pipe bedding, fill blanket, backfilling and compaction and for the reinstatement of existing surfaces such as floors, walls, ceilings, roads, paving, etc, as well as connection to the existing domestic water installation.

PAA.08 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC
GEYSER INSTALLATION**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each geyser installation supplied and installed, including all associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of domestic geysers, including shut-off valves, non-return valves, strainers, pressure-reducing valves, vacuum breakers, air release valves, safety valves, etc, as well as connection to existing piping and electrical supply.

PAA.09 SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF FIRE WATER
RETICULATION PIPEWORK..... Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of pipe work supplied and installed in the firewater reticulation, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, installation, testing, cleaning, commissioning and hand-over of new fire water reticulation pipe work installed on surface against walls or soffits and/or underground, including all necessary bends, tees, reducers, elbows, valves, adapters, brackets, hangers, pressure gauges, etc, to hand over a complete and effective installation that complies with local government regulations.

The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the necessary underground work such as excavation, pipe bedding, fill blanket, backfilling and compaction and for the reinstatement of existing surfaces such as floors, walls, ceilings, roads, paving, etc, as well as connection to the existing fire water reticulation network.

PAA.10 SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF
SANITARY WARE.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each item of sanitary ware serviced, cleaned and repaired, including all associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the repair or replacement of all damaged or missing parts, servicing of all movable parts, cleaning of stained sanitary ware with approved cleaning agent, fixing of loose fixtures and brackets according to manufacturer's specifications, de-scaling and cleaning of cisterns and servicing of filling and flushing mechanisms, cleaning of all traps, fixing or replacing of damaged or missing shower, urinal and channel outlet gratings and any other work or action required to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.11 SERVICING, OVERHAULING AND CLEANING
OF BRASSWARE..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each item of brassware serviced, overhauled or cleaned, including all associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for dismantling, cleaning and de-scaling, replacement of all gaskets, gland packing and seals on all valves, repair or replacement of all damaged or missing parts, replacement kits for worn or leaking flush valves, taps and mixers, repair or replacement of leaking, corroded or damaged flush pipes, readjusting of timing mechanisms on flush valves and metering taps and any other work or action required to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.12 SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF
DOMESTIC WATER AND DRAINAGE
PIPE INSTALLATIONS Unit: number, metre, item

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of pipe installation serviced, cleaned and repaired, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for inspection, sampling testing, servicing, cleaning and repair of existing piping and equipment such as:

- (a) Video surveying of all underground drainage pipe work to establish root ingress, damaged and corroded pipe work, fat build-up, blockages, incorrect falls, sagging and to provide as-built information;
- (b) Initial unblocking and cleaning of all drainage pipe work, traps, floor drains and gullies;
- (c) Pressure testing of piping and taking of water piping samples to determine state of corrosion and scaling;
- (d) Repair work to damaged manholes, gullies, cleaning eyes, valve chambers, etc, including builders' work and benching;
- (e) Repair of existing bracketing systems including fixing and repair of existing brackets and hangers, as well as the supply and installation of additional brackets where required;
- (f) Emptying, cleaning, checking, testing and repair of oil and grease separators;
- (g) Service and repair to all valves, strainers, pressure-reducing valves, water meters, non-return valves, air release valves and vacuum breakers, including new gaskets, gland packing and seals;
- (h) Taking of water samples and bacteriological testing to determine the compliance with the relevant codes of practice;
- (i) Repairing and/or replacement of damaged hot-water pipe lagging and cladding;
- (j) Preparation, painting and repainting of pipe work and;
- (k) Any other work or action to hand over an effective installation that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.13**SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF DOMESTIC GEYSERS**

Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of domestic geysers serviced, cleaned and repaired, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the isolation, servicing, cleaning and repair of domestic geysers in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, including descaling, testing for leaks, replacing of elements, replacement of safety valve and replacement of thermostat and set point, and replacement of connections if required and any other work or action to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.14**SERVICING AND REPAIR OF FIRE WATER PIPED RETICULATION NETWORKS**

Unit: metre

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of each type of piping in the firewater network serviced and repaired, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the inspection, testing, servicing and repair of existing piping and equipment such as:

- (a) Pressure testing of piping and taking of pipe samples to determine the extent of corrosion and scaling;
- (b) Repair or replacement of damaged, leaking, broken and corroded pipe work or fittings;
- (c) Repair and service to all valves, including new gaskets, gland packing and seals;
- (d) Repair, service, adjustment and calibration of all pressure gauges;
- (e) Repair and fixing of existing brackets and hangers and the installation of additional brackets and hangers where required;

- (f) Any other work or action to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.15 **CLEANING OUT SEPTIC TANKS AND DISPOSE**
OF CONTENTS OFF-SITEUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of septic tanks thoroughly cleaned and pumping the waste into a tanker and disposing of all the waste off site at a wastewater dumping area.

PAA.16 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC**
GEYSER INSTALLATION.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each geyser installation supplied and installed, including all associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of industrial geyser installations including isolating lever-ball valves (from 22 to 50mm), 400kPa expansion relief valve, drain connection, overflow pipe, inline circulating pump (25mm), Temperature and pressure safety valve, electrical control panel, bulk hot water vessel, pump supply cable, dual thermostat, hot water outlet, y-strainer, pressure gauge, non-return valve, temperature gauge, balanced cold water and expansion valve stand pipe.

PAA.17 **SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF**
INDUSTRIAL GEYSERS..... Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of industrial geysers serviced, cleaned and repaired, including all fixtures and fittings.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the isolation, servicing, cleaning and repair of industrial geysers in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, including de-scaling, testing for leaks, servicing, checking or replacing of isolating lever-ball valves (from 22 to 50mm), 400kPa expansion relief valve, drain connection, overflow pipe, inline circulating pump (25mm), Temperature and pressure safety valve, electrical control panel, dual thermostat, y-strainer, pressure gauge, non-return valve, temperature gauge, and any other work or action to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.18 **RE-INSTALLATION OF EXISTING GEYSER INSTALLATIONS AT LOCATION**
INDICATED BY ENGINEERUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each geyser re-installed including associated pipe work and fittings.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the re-installation of the isolated domestic geysers, including servicing, cleaning and repair of domestic geysers in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications scaling, testing for leaks, replacing of elements, and replacement of thermostat and set point, replacement of two shut-off valves, non-return valve, strainer, two vacuum breakers, safety valve and replacement pipe work not exceeding 10m from the previous location according to SANS specifications and any other work or action to hand over an effective system that complies with local government regulations.

PAA.19 **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC**
GALVANISED GEYSER DRIP TRAY.....Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of each geyser drip tray installation supplied and installed, including isolation and re-installation of geyser.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the supply and installation of the geyser drip trays including isolation of geyser and re-installation of geyser on drip tray.

PAA 07 **DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK****PAA 07.01** **GENERAL**

The Contractor shall be responsible for the complete maintenance of all the equipment, components, installations and systems forming part of this repair and maintenance contract and as set out in PAA 03.05. The Contractor shall strictly adhere to Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and Technical Specification AA: Plumbing and Drainage Installations, with regard to the maintenance period, obligations, responsibilities, actions and activities, etc, which shall also include the following maintenance actions:

- (a) Routine preventative maintenance. A guideline to the required actions is provided in specification AA. The actions will not be limited to these guidelines, but shall include all additional actions, work, materials, etc. necessary to maintain this installation at an acceptable level.
- (b) Corrective maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.
- (c) Breakdown maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

Fatal breakdown shall be defined as any equipment, components and systems preventing the supply of water to fire hydrants and fire hoses due to a failure of this system at the particular point of incident.

Emergency breakdown shall be defined as any equipment, components and systems preventing the provision of water and the drainage of the equipment to the consumer points due to a failure of part of this system at the particular point of incident.

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION**PBF PEST CONTROL****CONTENTS**

PBF 01	SCOPE
PBF 02	PESTS ATTACKING TIMBER
PBF 03	PESTS ATTACKING CARPETS & FABRICS
PBF 04	ANTS
PBF 05	RATS AND MICE

PBF 01 SCOPE

This specification covers the application of pesticides for the specific purpose of eliminating pest which may cause structural damage. This specification includes the breakdown of various buildings and installations included within the facility and the specific dimensions of each building.

PBF 02 PESTS ATTACKING TIMBER**PBF 02.01 PESTS**

Pests that caused damage to timber shall include but not be limited to the following:
mould, blue stain, powder post beetle, shot-hole borer, brown house borer, Cossonid woodborer, drywood termite, subterranean wood-destroying termites, false furniture beetle, furniture beetle, Italian beetle, decay and discolouring fungi.

PBF 02.02 LIST OF LOCATIONS

ITEM NO.	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	DIMENSIONS m/m ² /m ³
02.02.01	Residential Buildings	Wooden beams and planks used in the roof. Ceiling boards. Wooden skirting and cornices. All insulations.	
02.02.02	Operational Buildings	Wooden beams and planks used in the roof. Ceiling boards. Wooden skirting and cornices. All insulations.	

PBF 02.03 PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME AND REPORTING

The pest control program submitted in terms of sub-clause BE 04.01 shall include but shall not be limited to:

- Initial inspection of all buildings and installations to ascertain the damage caused to timber by the activity of the various pests.
- If pests are found an initial "clean up" process is to be conducted.
- Continuous monitoring of the activity of pests.
- A comprehensive quarterly inspection of the buildings and installations.

- (e) Reporting on the damage caused by and the activity of the pests together with recommendations (To follow quarterly inspection).
- (f) Execution of the recommendations once approved by the Engineer.

PBF 03 PESTS ATTACKING CARPETS AND OTHER FABRICS

PBF 03.01 PESTS

Pests that cause damage to carpets and other fabrics shall include but not be limited to carpet beetles, clothes moths and fish moths.

PBF 03.02 LIST OF LOCATIONS

ITEM NO.	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	DIMENSIONS m/m ² /m ³
03.02.01	Residential	Carpets and Blinds	
	Buildings		
	Operational	Carpets and Blinds	
	Buildings		

PBF 03.03 PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME & REPORTING

A thorough inspection of the buildings and installations at each facility shall be conducted with specific attention to the relevance of preventative pest control. The Contractor shall compile a comprehensive pest control programme to be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

The preventative pest control programme may only commence upon instruction from the Engineer.

The pest control programme shall include but shall not be limited to:

- (i) Initial inspection of all buildings and installations to ascertain the damage caused to carpets and other fabrics by the activity of the various pests.
- (ii) If pests are found an initial "clean up" process is to be conducted.
- (iii) A comprehensive inspection is to be conducted at the intervals specified below:
 - Bi-annually in residential units.
 - Bi-annually in office facilities.
 - Two monthly in cell units.
 - Monthly in all food preparation areas.
- (iv) Reporting on the damage caused by the activity of the pests together with recommendations (To follow inspection as above).
- (v) Execution of the recommendations once approved by the Engineer.

PBF 04 ANTS

PBF 04.01 PESTS

Ants shall include all ants irrespective of size, colour or species.

PBF 04.02 LIST OF BUILDINGS AND INSTALLATIONS

ITEM NO.	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	DIMENSIONS m/m ² /m ³
04.02.01	All sites		N/A

PBF04.03 PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME & REPORTING

A thorough inspection of the buildings and installations at each facility shall be conducted with specific attention to the relevance of preventative pest control. The Contractor shall compile a comprehensive pest control programme to be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

The preventative pest control programme may only commence upon instruction from the Engineer.

The pest control programme submitted in terms of sub-clause BE 04.01 shall include but not be limited to:

- (a) Initial inspection of all the buildings and installations facilities to ascertain the damage caused by the activity of ants.
- (b) If ants are found an initial "clean up" process is to be conducted.
- (c) A comprehensive inspection is to be conducted at the intervals specified below:

Bi-annually in residential units.

Bi-annually in office facilities.

Two monthly in cell units.

Monthly in any food preparation area.

- (d) Reporting on the damage caused by the activity of the ants together with recommendations (To follow inspection as above).
- (e) Execution of the recommendations once approved by the Engineer.

PBF 05 RATS AND MICE**PBF 05.01 PESTS**

Rats and mice shall include but shall not be limited to house mice, Norway rats and roof rats.

PBF 05.02 LIST OF LOCATIONS

ITEM NO.	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	DIMENSIONS m/m ² /m ³
05.02.01	All Sites	N/A	

PBF 05.03 PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME & REPORTING

The pest control programme submitted in terms of sub-clause BE 04.01 shall include but not be limited to:

- (a) Initial inspection of all buildings and installations to ascertain the damage caused by the activity of rats and mice.
- (b) Closing off of all potential entry points for rats and mice.
- (c) If rats and/or mice are found an initial "clean up" process is to be conducted.
- (d) Continuous baiting to assist in control and monitoring is to be conducted.
- (e) A comprehensive inspection is to be conducted at the intervals specified below:

Bi-annually in residential units.

Bi-annually in office facilities.

Two monthly in cell units.

Monthly in any food preparation area.

- (f) Reporting on the damage caused by the activity of mice and rats together with recommendations (To follow inspection as above).
- (g) Execution of the recommendations once approved by the Engineer.

PBF 06 COCKROACHES**PBF 06.01 PESTS**

Cockroaches shall include all roaches irrespective of size, colour or species.

PBF 06.02 LIST OF BUILDINGS AND INSTALLATIONS

ITEM NO.	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	DIMENSIONS m/m ² /m ³
06.02.01	Operational Buildings	Walls, storage areas, windows and all areas where entrance may be gained.	

PBF06.03 PEST CONTROL PROGRAMME & REPORTING

A thorough inspection of the buildings and installations at each facility shall be conducted with specific attention to the relevance of preventative pest control. The Contractor shall compile a comprehensive pest control programme to be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

The preventative pest control programme may only commence upon instruction from the Engineer.

The pest control programme submitted in terms of sub-clause BE 04.01 shall include but not be limited to:

- (f) Initial inspection of all the buildings and installations facilities to ascertain the damage caused by the activity of cockroaches.
- (g) If cockroaches are found an initial "clean up" process is to be conducted.
- (h) A comprehensive inspection is to be conducted at the intervals specified below:
 - Bi-annually in residential units.
 - Bi-annually in office facilities.
 - Two monthly in cell units.
 - Monthly in any food preparation area.
- (i) Reporting on the damage caused by the activity of the ants together with recommendations (To follow inspection as above).
- (j) Execution of the recommendations once approved by the Engineer.

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS**PFD HEATING VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM****CONTENTS**

PFD 01	SCOPE
PFD 02	GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATIONS
PFD 03	TECHNICAL DETAILS OF INSTALLATION
PFD 04	DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK
PFD 05	DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK

PFD 01 SCOPE

- (a) This specification encompasses all aspects regarding the particulars of the maintenance work to the Heating Ventilation and Air-conditioning systems at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry. This particular Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Technical Specification FD: Heating, Ventilation and air-conditioning systems and all additional and technical specifications compiled as part of this document, and in particular the following Additional specifications.

SA: General Maintenance
 SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals
 SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures

The intended repair and maintenance work to this installation will restore the existing installation to a safe, efficiently functional system that complies with all statutory regulations and applicable standards, in the process repairing all defects and shortfalls. On completion of the repair work, the equipment shall be maintained and serviced by the Contractor for the remainder of the 36-month Contract period.

The installations which have to be maintained under this Contract include the following equipment and are referred to as Installation: A11.

Total		Boesmansnek	Ramatselitso	Ongeluksnek
8	9 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings		8	
18	12 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings	13		5
9	18 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings	5		4
1	24 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings			1
1	36 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings	1		
37		19	8	5

PFD 02 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATIONS

- (a) The split, window and wall unit air conditioning units are inside the offices and at the residential area for a cooler working condition for workers, residents, public and the electronic equipment.

PFD 03 TECHNICAL DETAILS OF INSTALLATION

At the time of this document the existing installation consisted of the equipment and plant as listed below with their relevant technical detail (Heating detail not provided).

PFD 03.01 AIR CONDITIONING UNITS

Installation ID:	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4	Type 5
Equipment Details	8 of	18 of	9 of	1 of	1 of
Manufacturer	LG	DUNHAM-BUSH	DUNHAM-BUSH	DUNHAM-BUSH	DUNHAM-BUSH
Type	High Wall Split Unit	High Wall Split Unit	High Wall Split Unit	High Wall Split Unit	High Wall Split Unit
Cooling (Btu/h)	9000	12000	18 000	24 000	36 000

* Note: Number of units are not limited to quantities mentioned above

PFD 04 DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK**PFD 04.01 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF REPAIR WORK**

PFD 04.01.01 The Contractor shall at the start of the Repair and Maintenance Contract inspect the items, systems, equipment, components and installations listed below. This inspection shall include the establishing of any defects, leaks, conditions, damages, shortfalls, structural soundness, repairs required, details of existing equipment, suitability of equipment for the purpose it serves, etc. The Contractor shall report back to the Engineer in writing on all the above and the following items. No repair work shall commence prior to approval by the Engineer:

- (a) Air-conditioning units;
- (b) Support and bracketing system;
- (c) Drainage installations to equipment;
- (d) Electrical supply, wiring to and control of equipment.

PFD 04.01.02 The general scope of repair work to this installation shall at least include, but not be limited to the following. Any items, components, installations and systems not detailed in the Particular Specification shall be repaired and/or replaced if found to be defective and/or inoperative.

- (a) All statutory inspections required for steam-driven equipment shall be inspected, tested and certified by an approved third party inspection authority where required by the Occupational Health and Safety Act as amended;
- (b) Dismantling, stripping, overhauling, repair, service, reassembling, testing and commissioning of all equipment that form part of this installation;
- (c) Implementation of a maintenance control plan;

- (d) Supplying as-built information and drawings, as well as operating and maintenance manuals for all equipment that form part of this installation.

PFD 04.02

DETAILS OF REPAIR WORK TO EQUIPMENT

The following work shall form part of the repair work the heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Systems. This work shall be done in accordance with the relevant regulations, codes of practice, specifications and Technical specification FD: Heating ventilation and air conditioning, as set out in this document. The following work shall be included.

PFD 04.02.01

Air-Conditioning Units

- (a) Clean air intake screen.
- (b) Replace filters
- (c) De-rust, neutralise and touch up paintwork
- (d) Replace canvas collars
- (e) Clean housing, ensure all panels are properly secured and door panels close properly. Replace panel seals.
- (f) Check setting and operation of all pressure switches, reset if required.
- (g) Check setting and operation of all safety switches, i.a. LP&HP switches, oil pressure switch.
- (h) Check setting and operation of thermostats.
- (i) Check timers and reset if required.
- (j) Check operation of seven-day timer.
- (k) Check running current of fans and compressor and settings and operation of overloads.
- (l) Check tightness of all electrical terminals.
- (m) Ensure operation of local and remote isolators.
- (n) Check condition of all cables and whether cables are neatly strapped and reposition and strap if required
- (o) Ensure correct operation of emergency stop.
- (p) Carry out a leak test on all refrigeration piping and components inclusive of evaporator and condenser.
- (q) All leaks shall be repaired. Should a leak on a component be of such a nature that it cannot be repaired, the component shall be replaced. The procedure to follow is as set out in section FD 03.02
- (r) The superheat setting of the thermostatic expansion valve shall be checked and adjusted if required (setting approximately 8°C).
- (s) The filter dryer shall be replaced.
- (t) Check compressor vibration mounts.

- (u) Test oil acidity.
- (v) Check refrigerant charge sight glass being clear or flashing.
- (w) Check moisture indication being dry.
- (x) Clean condensate tray and test drainage operation.
- (y) Clean evaporator and condenser fan blades and check unbalance.
- (z) Replaced suction line insulation.
- (aa) Check all service valves for full operation, replaced caps if missing.

PFD 05.01 HEATING VENTILATION AND AIRCONDITIONING SYSTEM REPAIR WORK: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item

PFD 05.01.01 Service air conditioning unitsUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of AC units serviced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the servicing of the units as per Manufacturer's instructions. Cleaning of filters, evaporator coils, condenser coils, cleaning of the housing, check gas pressure, gas leaks, checking of all switches, thermostat and compressors as described in clause PFD 04.02.01.

Item

PFD 05.01.02 Replace AC temp controllerUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of defective controllers/remotes replaced.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective controller or remote, the supply and installation of the new controller/remote as well as testing.

Item

PFD 05.01.03 Vacuum, re-gas and re-lubricate AC unitUnit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of AC units vacuumed, re-gassed and re-lubricated.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the evacuation of the unit, the re-filling of the gas and the lubrication of all fan bearings.

Item

PFD 05.01.04 **Replace air conditioning unit**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of specified AC units replaced (Heating & Cooling).

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective unit, the supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the new unit including all piping, drainage, electrical connection complete with unistrut galvanized brackets, anti vibration rubbers and galvanized trunking.

Item

PFD 05.01.05 **Replace isolation**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of Class O Armaflex SS self-seal tubes supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the existing isolation: supply, handling and installation of the specified type of isolation.

This rate shall further include for the supply of all cable ties, clamps and other material necessary to ensure that the installation conforms to the specification.

Item

PFD 05.01.06 **Replace Control (PC) Board**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of defective PC Boards diagnosed and replaced.

The tender rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective boards as well as the supply, installation and testing of the new PC board.

Item

PFD 05.01.07 **Replace Compressor**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of defective compressors replaced

The tender rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective compressor as well as the supply, installation, of the new compressor, re-gas system and testing and commissioning of the unit.

Item

PFD 05.01.08 **Replace Capacitor**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of defective capacitors diagnosed and replaced.

The tender rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the defective capacitor as well as the supply, installation and testing of the new capacitor.

Item

PFD 05.01.09 **Remove and re-install air conditioners**Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of air conditioners removed and re-installed at a different position.

The tender rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the complete unit with brackets and the re-installation, of the complete unit at a different position, re-gas of the system and testing and commissioning of the unit.

PFD 06 **DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK**

PFD 06.01 **GENERAL**

The Contractor shall be responsible for the complete maintenance of all the equipment, components, installations and systems forming part of this repair and maintenance contract for Installation: B10. The Contractor shall strictly adhere to Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and Technical Specification FD: HVAC with regards to the maintenance period, obligations, responsibilities, actions and activities, etc, which shall also include the following maintenance actions:

- (a) Routine preventative maintenance. A guideline to the required actions is provided in specification FD. The actions will not be limited to these guidelines, but shall include all additional actions, work, materials, etc, necessary to maintain this installation at an acceptable level.
- (b) Corrective maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.
- (c) Breakdown maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.
- (d) For this particular installation an emergency breakdown shall be defined as a breakdown, resulting in non-operation of HVAC equipment.

Emergency breakdown shall be defined as failure to any equipment, resulting in the room conditions exceeding the temperature norms as defined by the Occupational Health and Safety Act as amended.

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

PJC CONVENTIONAL FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

PJC 01	SCOPE
PJC 02	GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATION
PJC 03	TECHNICAL DETAILS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION
PJC 04	STATUS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION
PJC 05	DETAILS OF REPAIR AND SERVICE WORK
PJC 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT
PJC 07	DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK

PJC 01 SCOPE

- (a) This specification covers the particulars of the maintenance work to the conventional fire fighting equipment installation at the various sites. This Particular Specification shall be read in conjunction with Technical Specification JC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment, and all additional and technical specifications compiled as part of this document, in particular the following Additional Specifications:

SA: General Maintenance
 SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals
 SC: General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures

The intended maintenance work to this installation will restore the existing installation to a safe, efficiently functional system that complies with all statutory regulations and applicable standards, in the process repairing all defects and shortfalls. Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation shall commence with access to the site. A difference shall be made in payment for maintenance prior to and after practical completion of repair work. The Contractor shall be responsible to take over the completed installation which shall be maintained and serviced by the Contractor for the remainder of the 36-month Contract period. Additional repair work will also form part of the Maintenance work in the Contract.

- (b) The fire fighting equipment to the ports of entries, its associated residential areas shall form part of this maintenance and servicing contract and is referred to as Installation A12. The piped fire water reticulation network to the equipment, such as hydrants and hose reels are also included in the maintenance.

PJC 02 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF INSTALLATION

(a) BOESMANSNEK, RAMATSELITSO AND ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORTS OF ENTRY

The Port of Entry consists of fire extinguishers. The residential and operational area is in a fully functional state.

PJC 03 TECHNICAL DETAILS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION

The equipment that is listed in the table below will be maintained as part of the Repair and Maintenance Contract. Newly installed fire fighting equipment shall also form part of the Contractors maintenance responsibilities.

PJC 03.01 EXISTING FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

Total		Boesmansnek	Ramatselitso	Ongeluksnek
5	2.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers			5
22	4.5 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers	19	3	
13	5.0 kg (CO ²) Firefighting extinguishers	6	2	5
70	9.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers	27	19	24
110		52	24	34

PJC 04 STATUS OF EXISTING INSTALLATION

At the time of compilation of this document the status of the equipment and installation was briefly as described below.

The existing fire fighting equipment at the residential area is currently being maintained by a Contractor.

The existing fire fighting equipment at the operational area is new.

FACILITIES

Equipment is generally in a good condition and fire extinguishers that are not according to SABS specifications will be replaced. New fire fighting equipment will be installed where necessary. Damaged fire fighting equipment will be replaced.

PJC 05 DETAILS OF REPAIR AND SERVICE WORK

The following work shall form part of the intended repair work to the fire fighting equipment. This work shall be done in accordance with the relevant regulations, codes, specifications and Technical Specification JC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment.

The description of the repair work as set out below shall be read in conjunction with the Schedule of Quantities and Technical Specifications

PJC 05.01 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF REPAIR WORK

PJC 05.01.01 The Contractor shall, at the start of the Repair and Maintenance Contract, have the items, systems, equipment and installations listed below inspected by qualified personnel. This inspection shall include the establishing of any defects, leaks, conditions, damages, shortfalls, repairs required, details of existing equipment, suitability of equipment for the purpose it serves, etc. The Contractor shall report to the Engineer in writing on all the above and the following items. No repair work shall commence prior to approval by the Engineer.

- (a) Correlation of all fire fighting equipment;
- (b) Last service record;
- (c) Inventory list of all equipment;
- (d) Compliance with present governing regulations;
- (e) Accessibility to equipment;

- (f) Dynamic water pressure under flow conditions of equipment;
- (g) As-built information.

PJC 05.01.02 The general scope of work at the time of going on tender is defined as follows:

- (a) Replacing of irreparably damaged, missing and unsuitable fire fighting equipment;
- (b) Servicing and overhauling of all fire hose reels and fire hydrants;
- (c) Servicing and recharging of all fire extinguishers;
- (d) Replacing of missing and damaged fire extinguisher brackets;
- (e) Replacing damaged fire hose reel cabinets;
- (f) Supply and installation of additional fire hose reels, hydrants and extinguishers where necessary, in accordance with the requirements of SABS 0400;
- (g) Servicing and overhauling of fire booster and pump connections;
- (h) Compilation of fire plan for each of the service buildings;
- (i) Compilation of inventory list with all relevant details and an identification system to all equipment.

PJC 05.02 **REPAIR WORK TO FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT**

The repair work to this installation shall include, but not be limited to at least the following items. Any items, components or installations not detailed in this specification but found to be defective or inoperative during the inspection and report phase, shall be repaired or replaced as instructed by the Engineer.

PJC 05.02.01 **Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek as listed in PJC 02**

- (a) Service existing fire extinguishers
- (b) Add additional firefighting equipment according so SANS 0400.

PJC 06 **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

All new building work and repair work to existing structures and buildings resulting from repairs to the conventional fire fighting equipment as scheduled, shall be done in accordance with the Specifications for the structural and building section included elsewhere in this Tender Document. The costs of such building and repair works shall be deemed to be included in the tendered rates for the applicable items scheduled in this section.

PJC.01 **INSPECTION AND REPORT ON EXISTING INSTALLATIONS**Unit: item

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the inspection and written report on all items, systems, components, equipment and installations, including the establishment of any defects, leaks conditions, damages, shortfalls, structural soundness, repairs required, details of existing equipment and suitability of the equipment for the purpose it serves.

- PJC.02** **AS-BUILT INFORMATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS** Unit: sum
- The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the compilation and submission of seven complete sets of inventory lists and operating and maintenance manuals in accordance with Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals.
- The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for all equipment necessary to establish the exact position and level of underground services, as well as the recording of all information on electronic drawing format.
- PJC.03** **ISOLATION, STRIPPING, DISMANTLING AND REMOVAL OF EXISTING FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT** Unit: number
- The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the isolation, stripping, dismantling and removal of irreparable damaged, broken or unsuitable fire hydrants, fire hose reels and fire extinguishers, including all valves, cabinets, mounting brackets, streamers, etc, as well as removal off site and/or storage of all removed items mentioned above.
- PJC.04** **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF FIRE HYDRANTS EQUIPMENT** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation, testing, commissioning and hand-over of fire hydrants, including all necessary pipe work, fittings, bends and the reinstating of existing surfaces such as walls, floors, ceilings, etc.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation of cabinets, cupboards, valves, brackets,
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the supply, delivery and positioning and fixing of all fire signage as required by regulation.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.
- PJC.05** **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF FIRE HOSE REELS** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation, testing, commissioning and hand-over of fire hose reels, including all necessary pipe work, cabinets, cupboards, valves, brackets, fittings, bends and the reinstating of existing surfaces such as walls, floors, ceilings, etc.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the supply, delivery and positioning and fixing of all fire signage as required by regulation.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.
- PJC.06** **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF FIRE EXTINGUISHERS** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation and hand-over of the fire extinguishers, including all necessary brackets, backboards, etc.
- The tendered rates shall also include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning and fixing of all fire signage as required by regulation.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.

- PJC.07** **SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF FIRE HYDRANTS** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the repair or replacement of damaged, broken, leaking or corroded pipe work and fittings, main hydrant seals, quick coupling catches, shaft ends for right-angle hand wheel type hydrants, streamers, hose nozzles, valve steam seals, fire cupboard doors and locks, damaged, missing or shortfall fire signage, etc.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.
- PJC.08** **SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF FIRE HOSE REELS** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the repair or replacement of damaged hose drums, mountings and shut-off valves, replacement of damaged or missing 30 m hoses, hose nozzles, shut-off valve wheel handles, hose drum seals where leaks occur, gland packing and gaskets of shut-off valves, repainting of deteriorated paintwork, replacement of fire cupboard doors and locks, damaged, missing or shortfall fire signage, etc.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.
- PJC.09** **SERVICING, CLEANING, RECHARGING AND REPAIR OF FIRE EXTINGUISHERS** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the repair or replacement of all damaged, faulty or missing discharge hoses and nozzles, pressure gauges, operating instructions, the recharging of discharge cylinder to required capacity for DCP, water and foam extinguishers, and the recharging of CO₂ extinguisher to capacity, repair, resealing of CO₂ discharge mechanism, checking, servicing and repairing of activation mechanisms, replacement of water and foam extinguishers that have corroded cylinders, replacement of DCP, water or foam content of extinguishers, the replacement of fire cupboard and cabinet doors and locks, damaged, missing or shortfall fire signage, brackets and backboards, etc.
- The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the labelling with identifying tags and recording of details of all equipment.
- PJC.10** **SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF FIRE EQUIPMENT SIGNAGE** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation and hand-over of the fire signage as required by regulation, including all necessary brackets, frames, etc. as described in the schedule of quantities.
- PJC.11** **SERVICING, CLEANING AND REPAIR OF FIRE PUMP ROOM** Unit: number
- The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the execution of a full engine service as per the manufacturer's recommendations including air, fuel and oil filters, oil, replacement of wiring, V-belts and hoses as needed and other consumables required including the steam cleaning of the assembly.
- The tendered rate shall also include full service of all the listed equipment in PJC.02(a) that includes the pumping equipment and motor control centre and replacing the batteries in the motor control centre.

PJC.12 FIRE FIGHTING TRAINING Unit: number

The tendered rate shall include the number of training sessions conducted for a maximum of 20 attendees including all training material, transport and training aids required.

The end user shall be trained, by the supplier of the fire fighting equipment, to operate the individual fire fighting equipment. Fire Fighting training shall be done by a national accredited training institute (Fire Protection Association of South Africa).

PJC.13 LABELLING OF ALL CONVENTIONAL FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT WITH IDENTIFYING TAGS AND RECORDING OF DETAILS Unit: number

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, and installation of identifying tags which must be in a printed or engraved format on each type of fire fighting equipment and bracket or holder.

The tendered rate shall also include full compensation for the supply, delivery, positioning, installation of labels on existing cabinets, cupboards, valves, brackets,

PJC 07 DETAILS OF MAINTENANCE WORK

PJC 07.01 GENERAL

The Contractor shall be responsible for the complete maintenance of all the equipment, components, installations and systems forming part of this repair and Maintenance Contract for Installation A12. The Contractor shall adhere strictly to Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, and Technical Specification JC: Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment, with regard to the maintenance period, obligations, responsibilities, actions and activities, etc, which shall also include the following maintenance actions:

- (a) Routine preventative maintenance. A guideline to the required actions is provided in Technical Specification JC. The actions will not be limited to these guidelines, but shall include all additional actions, work, materials, etc, necessary to maintain this installation at an acceptable level.
- (b) Corrective maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.
- (c) Breakdown maintenance as described and defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

Emergency breakdown shall be defined as a failure of equipment, components and systems of this particular installation.

BOESMANSNEK, ONGELUKSNEK AND RAMATSELISO LAND PORTS OF ENTRY: 36 MONTHS INFRASTRUCTURE MAINTENANCE AND REPAIRS OF BUILDINGS, CIVIL, MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL AND INSTALLATIONS (APPOINTMENT OF A CONTRACTOR)



Additional Specifications

SA	:	General Maintenance
SB	:	Operating and Maintenance Manuals
SC	:	General Decommissioning, Testing and Commissioning Procedures
SD	:	General Training
SF	:	General Operation
SH	:	HIV / Aids Requirements
SI	:	Occupational Health and Safety (OHS Act)
SJ	:	Covid- 19 Occupational Health and Safety Guidelines for Management of Risk on Construction Sites
SN	:	Implementation of Labour-Intensive Infrastructure Projects Under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)
SS	:	Site Specific Inventory

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SA GENERAL MAINTENANCE

CONTENTS

SA 01	SCOPE
SA 02	MAINTENANCE APPROACH
SA 03	MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS
SA 04	MAINTENANCE CONTROL
SA 05	COMMUNICATION
SA 06	PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT
SA 07	PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE
SA 08	MANDATORY PERIODICAL SERVICES
SA 09	FREQUENT SERVICING OF INSTALLATIONS
SA 10	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SA 01 SCOPE

Maintenance of the specified systems, services and/or parts of buildings and infrastructure shall all be referred to as "Maintenance of an Installation". Maintenance of all completed installations shall ensure reliable functioning and optimum service life thereof. Monthly maintenance responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified shall commence with access to the Site.

Maintenance of an installation shall be performed in accordance with the Technical and Particular Specifications, the Operating and Maintenance Manuals (where applicable) and the Maintenance Control Plan.

Remuneration for maintaining "installations" (systems, services and/or buildings and parts of the infrastructure) in good functional condition is provided for in the Schedules of Quantities by means of monthly payment items.

This Additional Specification covers maintenance requirements, development of a maintenance control plan, identification of equipment, site maintenance administration, maintenance performance measurement, as well as the items for measurement of the Contractor's service level and resulting payment.

The residential area at the Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry form part of an existing Repair and Maintenance Programme.

The various installations are in perfect working order. This places the emphasis of this Contract on maintenance.

No distinction will be made between prior to practical completion and completed installations for the purpose of maintenance.

The maintenance of the operational area for the plumbing and building electrical work will be divided into Section A and Section B as follows:

The Contractor will have the opportunity at the start of the contract to point out items which are not in perfect working order which in turn will be serviced/repaired as per the relevant tendered

rates. The Contractor must submit a written report of these items within 28 days of the date of site hand over. Failing to submit the report within the allowed time will render any and all defective items part of the Contractor maintenance responsibly as set out in the relevant Technical and Particular Specifications.

The Contractor will further more at the start of the contract perform annual maintenance on all the installations as per the items listed in the different Technical and Particular Specifications as part of the Contractor's maintenance obligation.

Maintenance of each of these installations will be the responsibility of the Contractor and will be evaluated on a monthly basis by the Engineer. The remuneration for maintenance work and responsibilities will be certified accordingly.

SA 02 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING APPROACH

The Contractor is expected to be represented on **site full time**. Contractor must allow for the appointment of a qualified project manager to be available on site on a full time basis for the duration of the contract.

SA 02.01 ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE VISITS

When submitting the maintenance control plan (MCP), the Contractor shall schedule "routine preventative maintenance visits" to the site. A "routine preventative maintenance visit" shall be scheduled for the intervals as indicated in the table below. The duration of the "routine preventative maintenance visits" will depend on a time required to complete all routine preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance as well as breakdowns logged during the course of the month as specified. However, a "routine preventative maintenance visit" may never be less than the minimum period specified in the table below. The Engineer will carry out a site inspection on any arbitrary day and measure the quality of maintenance and servicing. The Engineer will also inspect correction/repair of breakdowns that were logged with

INSTALLATION	FREQUENCY OF ROUTINE MAINTENANCE VISIT	MINIMUM DURATION OF ROUTINE MAINTENANCE VISIT
Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entry	7 days a week (Monday - Sunday)	8 hours

* Note: Operational hours is not limited from above, and will vary from season to season. Operational hour changes will be confirmed by the User Client

The Contractor should indicate to the Engineer within 21 days after the site handover the days of the week which he will visit the site for his scheduled routine preventative maintenance visit including the various resources allocated for the different preventative maintenance actions, site keeping and cleaning services to be performed (at least 6 months in advance). Qualified electrician and plumber should also be available for the above-mentioned dates.

SA 02.02 EMERGENCY BREAKDOWN VISIT

Whenever an emergency breakdown is logged with the contractor, an “emergency breakdown repair visit” shall be carried out by the contractor to attend to the repair of the emergency breakdown within **12 hours** after it was logged with the contractor.

Remuneration for the material and labour required to attend to repair of the emergency breakdown shall be deemed included in the payment item for maintenance of an installation based on a point system and measured monthly. Payment for the “emergency breakdown repair visit” will be measured separately in the schedule of quantities to cover the cost of the call-out, in terms of travel and accommodation cost, including travel time and any cost associated with the call-out. No payment for the “emergency breakdown repair visit” shall be done if the call-out coincides with any of the monthly visits as listed in SA 02.01.

The Contractor will only be remunerated for emergency breakdown repair visits upon instruction of the Engineer or his representative.

Typically examples of “emergency repair breakdown visits” would be:

- A breakdown of any standby power generator that prevents the standby power generator from operating at its capacity and meeting the demand.
- A breakdown of any water supply pump or any other component of the water supply or bulk water installation that affects the water supply to such an extent that it cannot meet the demand.
- A breakdown of the water reticulation network or sewer reticulation network that affects water supply or sewer removal to such an extent that the service is disrupted to any site.
- A breakdown of site electrical or building electrical that disrupts power supply to a building (including residential unit)
- A breakdown of a geyser that prevents it from supplying hot water as per specification
- Any other breakdown that can be regarded as having the potential to cause damage to equipment or property and is included in the scope of work to be maintained and serviced by the Contractor, as per specifications. *The Engineer or his representative will be responsible for categorising a breakdown as an emergency.*

SA 03 MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

SA 03.01 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

The Contractor shall maintain the complete installations for the 36-month Contract period.

Maintenance implies and shall include monthly preventative maintenance, corrective maintenance, as well as breakdown maintenance on all components of the specified installations.

The maintenance control plan (specified in Clause SA 03) will be developed by the Contractor, to schedule the frequency of routine inspections and format of reports. The Contractor shall carry out inspections on the equipment as detailed in the Technical and Particular Specifications and the maintenance control plan. Each inspection, test or breakdown shall be recorded in an approved format and listed in a quarterly report (part of the maintenance control plan).

As part of repair of each installation, the Contractor shall submit a set of Operating and Maintenance Manuals where applicable. The Contractor shall ensure through training that the operating and maintenance personnel are conversant with the instructions as presented in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals. Continued training shall be included in the scope of

maintenance work for the duration of the 36-month Contract, in accordance with Additional Specification SD: General Training.

The Operating and Maintenance Manuals, as approved by the Engineer, shall be used as a basis of preventative maintenance. The Contractor shall perform all preventative and corrective maintenance as described in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals. This shall be in accordance with the Technical and Particular Specifications.

The Contractor shall, as part of his maintenance responsibilities repair or replace faulty equipment upon logging of a breakdown, within the down-time as defined in Clause SA 05.02 at the Contractor's cost, except in the event of replacement being labelled as exceeding liability as specified in Clause 63 of the Project Specific Conditions of Contract, in which case the Department of Public Works will bear part of the costs.

The Contractor shall rectify any faulty condition of which he becomes aware, even if it has not been logged. Such rectification shall also be logged and listed in the quarterly report.

SA 03.02

CONDITIONS FOR EXCEEDING THE CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY DUE TO OPERATIONAL DAMAGE BREAKDOWNS

Irrespective the definition of operational damage given in the Oxford dictionary, it shall be defined for the purpose of this clause as being any damage caused on purpose or through negligence by the User Client's employees, suppliers, subcontractors, etc for any reason whatsoever. For the purpose of this clause, operational damage and vandalism shall have the same meaning. Where repair work is necessitated as a result of operational damage caused by User Clients or their associates, the Contractor will be requested to:

- (a) perform work, using tendered rates for the supply, delivery and installation of material forming part of the repair work schedule, within the maximum down-time allowed for operational damage, where the Engineer rules that the damage has been caused by incorrect operation;
- (b) submit one (1) quotation for repair and/or replacement of the damaged unit, where tendered rates are not available and where the Engineer rules that the damage has been caused by incorrect operation;
- (c) perform the work on receipt of an order from the Engineer, within the time offered as part of the quotation, and
- (d) notify the Engineer well in advance of completion of the repair work in order to enable inspection.

The responsibility of determining whether damage to the installation was caused by people other than employees or associates of the Contractor shall rest with the Engineer.

Damage caused by the employees, suppliers, subcontractors, etc of the Contractor, shall be repaired by the Contractor at his own cost.

SA 03.03

CONDITIONS FOR EXCEEDING THE CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY ABOVE MARGINAL BREAKDOWN COST

In the event where the cost for the repair or replacement of any single component/subassembly where a breakdown has occurred due to a single failure, or where the cost for replacing a single item of equipment completely, exceeds the value of R15 000,00 (transport, accommodation and travelling cost excluded), the liability of the Contractor is limited to the value of R15 000,00. The additional cost above the value of R15 000,00 will be paid for by the Employer provided that conditions 1, 2 and 3 below have been met.

1. The defective part/component/subassembly or machine must be identifiable as a single subassembly or component and not the total of a number of small defects or breakdowns on subassemblies/components on any one or more machines.

Examples of subassemblies/components are the following:

- (a) Should the wiring or bearings on an electric motor fail, the complete motor must be removed for repairs and the cost for the repairs on the complete motor will be regarded as repairs on a single subassembly/component.
 - (b) A starter motor, for example, is a subassembly, which can be removed from the machine for repairs. The repairs on the starter motor together with the repairs on the main bearings will not be regarded as a repair on a single subassembly/component. If the complete diesel engine is replaced with its associated subassemblies the replacement of the complete unit will be regarded as a single component.
 - (c) A pump as a whole is regarded as a single component. The pump and driving machine on long coupled pumps are regarded as separate subassemblies. Pumps and motors on close-coupled equipment are regarded as a single component. The pump and motor of a sump pump are therefore regarded as a single component.
 - (d) Control equipment for the control of a single item, with the sensing device, the controller itself and the final controlled variable are regarded as a single component of the system. The repairs on any one item on a controller have an influence on the rest of the control equipment and must after the replacement be commissioned again as a unit.
2. The Contractor shall submit a written report to the Engineer for approval. This report shall contain the following information:
 - (a) The make and model number of the machine serviced/inspected/ repaired/replaced;
 - (b) The identification number of the machine;
 - (c) A description or name and part number of the defective part/component or subassembly;
 - (d) A statement on whether the component could be repaired, together with a cost estimate;
 - (e) A quotation valid for a minimum period of 60 days if the component/part/subassembly has to be replaced or repaired by an outside firm. If the subassembly/machine is to be repaired or replaced by an outside company, the Contractor shall supply one (1) quotation for such parts/repairs or a quotation from any sole supplier. Only an original quotation will be accepted. The mark-up on such

work shall be a percentage as tendered and shall be applicable to the total cost (VAT excluded) of repair work by outside companies;

- (f) The expected urgency for the replacement or repairs, and
 - (g) The delivery time of a new component/subassembly/machine or delivery times on spares required to repair the defective component/ subassembly.
3. A written approval to proceed with the work must be issued by the Department. Copies of the original VAT invoices from outside companies for all repairs or spare parts supplied must be attached to the Contractor's invoice.

SA 03.04

EMERGENCY BREAKDOWN REPAIR VISIT

Whenever an emergency breakdown is logged at a site where no access has been given the Contractor, an "emergency breakdown repair visit" shall be carried out by the Contractor to attend to the repair of the emergency breakdown within 24 hours after it was logged with the Contractor.

Remuneration for the material and labour required to attend to repair of the emergency breakdown shall be deemed included in the payment item for maintenance of an installation based on a point system and measured monthly. Payment for the "emergency breakdown repair visit" will be measured separately in the schedule of quantities to cover the cost of the call-out, in terms of travel and accommodation cost, including travel time and any other cost associated with the call-out.

The Contractor will not be remunerated for emergency breakdown repair visits once the specific installation or site has been completed (Completion Certified). The contractor will be remunerated for maintenance and attending to emergency breakdowns as per his payment item for maintenance of a completed installation based on a point system as measured monthly.

Typical examples of "emergency repair breakdown visits" would be:

- A Breakdown of any standby power generator that prevents the standby power generator from operating at its capacity and meeting the demand.
- A Breakdown of any water supply pump or any other component of the water supply or bulk water installation that affects the water supply to such an extent that it cannot meet the demand.
- A Breakdown of the water reticulation network or sewer reticulation network that affects water supply or sewer removal to such an extent that the service is disrupted to any building.
- A Breakdown of site electrical or building electrical that disrupts power supply to a building (including residential unit).
- A Breakdown of a geyser that prevents it from supplying hot water as per specification.
- Any other Breakdown that can be regarded as life threatening or having the potential to cause damage to equipment or property and is included in the scope of work to be maintained by the Contractor, as per the technical and particular specifications. The Engineer will be responsible for categorising a breakdown as an emergency.

SA 03.05**COMPONENTS INCLUDED IN MAINTENANCE SCOPE**

The following main sections of a facility with their subsections are as set out in the Technical Specifications and Particular Specifications where applicable and in the Schedule of Quantities and will each be deemed "an installation". Maintenance, as specified, will be applicable to all of these installations.

**INSTALLATIONS: BOESMANSNEK, RAMATSELITSO AND ONGELUKSNEK PORTS
OF ENTRY**

- Installation C1.M: Structural and Building Works
- Installation C2.M: Plumbing, Drainage and Wet Services
- Installation C3.M: Wastewater and Sewer Networks
- Installation C4.M: Fencing, Cleaning and Site Keeping
- Installation C5.M: Bulk Water & External Water Reticulation
- Installation C6.M: Roads and Storm water Drainage
- Installation E1.M: Building electrical and Site Electrical
- Installation E2.M: External Lighting
- Installation E3.M: Standby Power
- Installation M1.M: Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems
- Installation M2.M: Conventional Fire-Fighting Equipment

Building Structural and Building related installations are excluded from the maintenance portion of the contract. The Contractor will however be instructed during the maintenance phase to repair certain damaged structural items. The Contractor will be remunerated for the structural items repaired as per his tendered rates in the schedule of quantities No additional fixed or time related P&G may be claimed for the repair work to damaged structural items.

SA 03.06**COMMENCEMENT OF MAINTENANCE PERIOD**

Maintenance responsibilities for an installation prior to practical completion of repair work shall include maintenance of all individual units, equipment or components thereof, for which no repair work is required (as per the contract document) or for which the repair work has not yet started, and shall commence with access to the installation.

Where access to an installation with a view to commence repair work is delayed, then the maintenance responsibilities which in such cases will consist of keeping the installation in the condition it is in, shall commence immediately at the start of the Contract.

Such maintenance before access is obtained, shall consist for example of fixing leaks without replacing pipework or opening a blocked pipeline without further altering or inspecting such pipes.

The Contractor shall accept full maintenance responsibilities for each completed installation upon issue of a Certificate of Practical Completion for repair work of that installation.

The preliminary construction programme differentiates between commencement of maintenance on various installations.

SA 03.07 PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE: DEFINITION

This entails the rendering of services and servicing of equipment according to a predetermined maintenance control plan to:

- (a) replace and service components of equipment, units or parts thereof for each installation at prescheduled moments regardless of condition;
- (b) readjust, reset, clean, corrosion protect all components of equipment, units or parts thereof for each installation, and
- (c) carry out all implied actions to maintain installations in their present functional condition.

Preventative maintenance shall be aimed at minimisation of breakdowns.

SA 03.08 CORRECTIVE MAINTENANCE: DEFINITION

This entails regular observation of the equipment, identifying pending breakdowns, maladjustment or anomalies of equipment, units or parts of installations and subsequent action to restore installations to the functional condition as before the breakdown.

SA 03.09 BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE: DEFINITION

This entails repair and/or replacement of defective equipment, units or parts of installations following a breakdown that leaves the installation inoperable or unsafe, and subsequent action to restore installations to their normal functional condition, within the maximum down-time allowed.

SA 03.10 OPERATIONAL DAMAGE BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE: DEFINITION

This entails repair and/or replacement of defective or damaged equipment, units or parts of installations following a breakdown that leaves the installation inoperable or unsafe, and subsequent action to restore installations to their normal functional condition, within the maximum down-time allowed.

Typical examples of "operational damage breakdown visits" would be:

- A Breakdown of any structural items such as locks, window handles and stays, windows, doors and any other structural related items.
- A Breakdown of any plumbing, drainage or sanitary ware related items.
- A Breakdown of any electrical related items.
- Any other damaged items not caused by normal wear and tear.

SA 03.11 SITE MAINTENANCE RECORD KEEPING

The Contractor shall provide and maintain hard-cover A4 maintenance files for each installation for the duration of the Contract. All schedules, checklists, breakdown reports, preventative maintenance records, component replacement records and quarterly reports shall be filed, together with information regarding repairs exceeding the Contractor's liability, as set out in SA 03.02 and SA 03.03.

Site maintenance records shall be submitted at each monthly meeting.

SA 03.11 OPERATIONAL DAMAGE BREAKDOWN DEFINITION**SA 32.12.01 Labour**

Competent personnel that have been trained by the Contractor, in accordance with Additional Specification SD: General Training shall execute all maintenance work.

SA 03.12.02 Equipment

All tools and equipment required for maintenance work shall be supplied by the Contractor at his cost (except where otherwise provided).

SA 03.12.03 Material

All material, spare parts, components, equipment and appurtenances necessary for the complete maintenance of each installation shall be supplied and installed by the Contractor at his cost, to a maximum value per part/subassembly as specified in the Special Conditions of Contract for exceeding Contractor's Liability.

Materials as provided for in the Schedule of Quantities, shall be supplied and delivered by the Contractor at the tendered rates upon order of the Engineer only, and shall be free-issued to the User Client for own use. The Contractor shall inform the Engineer of all scheduled deliveries to arrange official hand-over with the User Client.

SA 03.13 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT

A unique identification number will be allocated only to each mechanical equipment item forming part of the installation. This identification number will be allocated and administered in collaboration with the User Client and must be described in the maintenance control plan.

Reference shall be made to identification numbers in the maintenance control plan, operating and maintenance manuals and during all maintenance activities, including the logging of breakdowns and other correspondence. Identification numbers shall also be indicated on as-built drawings.

SA 04 MAINTENANCE CONTROL**SA 04.01 SCOPE**

Maintenance quality control shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall introduce a maintenance control plan to assist him in ensuring that preventative, corrective and breakdown maintenance are performed as described in the operating and maintenance manuals and Technical and Particular Specifications.

SA 04.02 PRELIMINARY MAINTENANCE CONTROL PLAN

A preliminary version of the maintenance control plan shall be submitted with the programme and the framework of the preliminary version shall be as close as possible to that of the final maintenance control plan as specified in SA 03.03 below. Detail contained in this preliminary maintenance control plan shall include:

- (a) Actual time that a representative of the Contractor will be present on Site for the duration of the maintenance period;

- (b) the scope and frequency of routine inspections
- (c) repair methodology
- (d) details of training plan to be implemented in accordance with Additional Specification SD

SA 04.03**MAINTENANCE CONTROL PLAN**

- (a) The maintenance control plan shall be based on the Contractor's preliminary maintenance control plan, and shall be bound in a neat, A4-sized, ring-bound document with a cover page and back cover. The contents of the document shall be indexed.

In drawing up the document, the Contractor may reproduce relevant paragraphs and clauses from any of the specifications forming part of the Contract documents, but should there be any discrepancies between such clauses and paragraphs in the maintenance control plan and those in the Contract documents, those in the Contract documents shall be regarded as being correct and shall apply.

- (b) To ensure that the Engineer is satisfied that the Contractor understands the purpose and advantage of carrying out maintenance work according to a maintenance control plan he shall, as an introduction to the control plan document, set out his views as to what he believes the implementation of a maintenance control plan will achieve.
- (c) The maintenance control plan shall also contain the following:
 - (i) A summary of the repair and maintenance work to be carried out under the Contract giving details of the conditions of the various installations at the facility(ies) affected by the activities under the Contract. The Contractor shall bear in mind that maintenance work may have to be carried out before the repair phase of the installation has been entirely completed and the summary mentioned above shall therefore differentiate between maintenance work before and after the repair phase has been completed.
 - (ii) Details of how the Contractor intends to carry out the various types of maintenance work especially breakdown maintenance should breakdowns occur.
 - (iii) Details of how the call centre works, as specified in clause SA 04 as well as all statistics of breakdowns, leakages, blockages, etc. available from the call centre for the installation and the age of the installation that has been taken into account in compiling the contents of the maintenance control plan.
 - (iv) A list of organisations and persons directly involved with the Contract or whose requirements have to be taken into account during the entire Contract Period such as the Department of Public Works, the User Client, the Consulting Engineer, the Contractor, the Local Authority, etc. Each person's position within his organisation as well as the applicable phone numbers shall be given.
 - (v) Details of monthly meetings to be held with the Department of Public Works, the User Client, Contractor and Engineer;
 - (vi) Reports to be submitted after every routine inspection (all reports, checklists, breakdown records, score card results, etc. for each system of an installation shall be kept on the site in a hard cover file);
 - (vii) Procedures to address complaints and logged breakdowns;

- (viii) Details of quarterly reports, summarising all inspections, together with inspection data such as nature of test, names of persons carrying out tests and inspection results. Detail of repairs and replacements, together with testing of repaired equipment shall also be reflected in this report, and
- (ix) Assistance to be given by the Engineer with decisions regarding material, equipment and other recommendations.
- (d) The codes of practice as set out in ISO 10006 and ISO 9004 for quality systems and management shall be used as a guideline for compiling a maintenance control plan. ISO accreditation is not a requirement in terms of this Contract.
- (e) The maintenance control plan shall be upgraded when its contents are no longer representative of actual conditions.
- (f) The Contractor shall check the contents of existing Operating and Maintenance Manuals (if available) and shall update or modify and then incorporate applicable data into his own manuals. Where no manuals exist, the Contractor shall draw up his own Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

Pertinent data contained in the Operating and Maintenance Manual may be transferred to the Maintenance control plan to make it a document which can be used as an independent handbook for maintenance work.

The Contractor is referred to the contents of paragraph (a) above regarding the reproduction of data, as this shall also be applicable to data reproduced from Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

SA 05 **COMMUNICATION**

The maintenance control plan (Clause SA 03) will provide, after agreement between the Contractor and the Engineer, for the following communication and complaint logging procedure:

- (a) The Contractor shall establish a telephone and fax line and a cellular telephone connection to ensure that he can be reached at any time.
- (b) The Contractor shall primarily be responsible for determining the items requiring preventative, corrective and breakdown maintenance, and shall communicate this information directly to his maintenance workforce.
- (c) Should the Engineer or operating personnel of the User Client determine or suspect that preventative, corrective or breakdown maintenance is required, a call shall be logged through the call centre to reach the Contractor as soon as possible.
- (d) Reaction times will be as described in Clause SA 05.02.
- (e) All complaints of the User Client shall be reported to the Engineer via the call centre, as set out in the maintenance control plan, and the Engineer shall issue instructions to the Contractor. After the Contractor has attended to the complaint, the Engineer will provide feedback to the call centre both telephonically and via fax.

The call centre logs the details of the Engineer's call and provides feedback to the complainant.

SA 06 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT

The Contractor's performance shall be measured against the following parameters:

SA 06.01 SPECIAL TESTING OF AN INSTALLATION

The Engineer may at any time inspect any part of the entire installation. During Maintenance work, the Engineer shall at his discretion order special tests to be carried out on complete installations at intervals of not less than four months, to verify the satisfactory functional condition of the installation.

The Engineer reserves the right to select at random component equipment and trade practices to be tested by independent authorities for compliance with specifications as specified in this Contract document.

The Contractor shall provide all equipment, tools and instruments required for testing.

SA 06.02 MAXIMUM MAINTENANCE DOWN-TIME

After a complaint has been logged and forwarded to the Contractor, the Contractor shall be expected to minimise the maintenance down-time until the system component is fully operational to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Should the Contractor not respond within the maximum down-time, the Engineer may arrange, at the cost of the Contractor, for the necessary repair work to be done by others.

Should the actual down-time exceed the maximum down-time the Contractor shall be liable to a payment reduction for the difference between actual down-time and maximum down-time. This is reflected in the table below:

No.	REQUIRED MAINTENANCE	MAXIMUM DOWN-TIME ALLOWED	PAYMENT REDUCTION IF EXCEEDED
1.	Fatal Breakdown	1 hour	R1 000/hour
2.	Emergency Breakdown	12 hours	R2 000/day
3.	Ordinary Breakdown	7 days	R500/day
4.	Operational damage repair	7 days	R500/day

"Maximum down-time" shall mean the period of time allowed to repair a breakdown, and "actual down-time" shall mean the measured period from the instant when the breakdown was logged with the Contractor until the installation has been repaired to its functional specification.

"Immediate response repairs" shall imply breakdown maintenance repair work where no breakdowns are allowed at any time in terms of the Technical Specification.

"Emergency maintenance repairs" shall imply any breakdown maintenance repair work required to rectify a component or unit of the installation that disables the installation from functioning at its designed maximum requirement in terms of the Technical Specification.

"Ordinary maintenance repairs" shall imply all breakdown maintenance repair work required other than immediate response or emergency maintenance repairs.

"Operational damage repairs" shall imply all operational damage breakdown repair work required on any other damaged items not caused by normal wear and tear and shall also include and structural related breakdowns.

SA 06.03 PERFORMANCE-BASED PAYMENT

Remuneration for all value-related as well as all time-related preliminary and general charges shall be deemed included in the monthly maintenance payments for the various installations.

SA 06.03.01 Score-card

The Engineer shall inspect each installation monthly after Practical Completion of the repair phase of the installation. The Engineer shall use a score-card to measure the quality of preventative and corrective maintenance rendered by the Contractor during the preceding month, on all components that form part of the installation, in accordance with the maintenance specifications. The Engineer will record his inspection directly onto the score-card. The score-card shall serve to evaluate ten performance indicators each month.

SA 06.03.02 Performance indicators

Performance indicators shall be selected to measure the Contractor's service level of preventative and corrective maintenance.

The Engineer shall have the opportunity to select ten (10) performance indicators each month, which shall focus on the measurement of maintenance quality against the relevant specifications for the ensuing month. All ten (10) performance indicators are known to both the Engineer and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall aim to perform satisfactorily on all ten performance indicators. All indicators shall be selected from the scope of his normal preventative and corrective maintenance work and shall be based on the maintenance control plan and operating and maintenance manuals. The work shall either be satisfactory, or unsatisfactory, and the Contractor shall score one (1) or zero (0) respectively per indicator.

Performance indicators shall be used to focus on certain key aspects of the work and shall in no way limit the Contractor's responsibility to do all the required work.

SA 06.03.03 Satisfactory performance

The Engineer shall inspect the site on an arbitrary day to measure the quality of maintenance against the ten selected performance indicators. Should the Contractor score the maximum points (10) he shall receive his full maintenance payment for the installation. Should the quality of preventative maintenance, or components requiring persistent corrective maintenance be unsatisfactory according to the score-card, the Contractor may fail to achieve full payment due to a reduced service level. Each monthly payment for maintenance shall be subject to evaluation based on the score-card.

A copy of the score-card including a guideline for the use thereof is included in this Specification.

SA 07 PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ACTIONS

The preventative maintenance actions for the various installations for preventative maintenance are described in this section. Remuneration for maintenance of the infrastructure shall be deemed included in the tendered monthly payment for the respective installations

The said maintenance and servicing work shall be executed in accordance with the relevant codes of the practise, standards, regulations, municipal laws and by-laws and the manufacturer's specifications and codes of practise.

The maintenance schedules and frequency shall be developed under the maintenance control plan to be instituted by the Contractor.

The maintenance and servicing work to be performed and executed shall include but not be limited to the items listed below. These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports forming part of the Maintenance Control Plan.

The Ports of Entry consists of various facilities, are listed in additional specification **SS: Site Specific Inventory**. The preventative actions required are divided into maintenance installations and grouped as follows:

1. Plumbing and Drainage

- SA 07.01 – Plumbing and Drainage Installations

2. Electrical Installations

- SA 07.02 – Electrical Installations

3. Fencing, Refuge Removal and Pest Control

- SA 07.03 – Fencing
- SA 07.04 – Refuge Removal and Pest Control

4. Cleaning and Site Keeping

- SA 07.05 – Cleaning and Site Keeping

5. External Water and Sewer Networks

- SA 07.06 – Water Distribution Networks
- SA 07.07 – Water Reservoirs and Storage Tanks
- SA 07.08 – Borehole Pump Systems
- SA 07.09 – Water Pump Systems
- SA 07.10 – Sewerage Networks

6. Roads and Stormwater Drainage

- SA 07.11 – Roads
- SA 07.12 – Stormwater Drainage

7. External Lighting and Standby Power

- SA 07.13 – External Lighting
- SA 07.14 – Low Voltage Distribution Networks
- SA 07.15 – Standby Power Systems

8. Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems

- SA 07.16 – Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems

9 Fire Fighting Equipment

- SA 07.17 – Fire Fighting Equipment

SA 07.01

PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTALLATIONS

RAINWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEM

NO	PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Clean out and clear all rainwater gutters and full bores	Bi-monthly
2	Clean out and clear all catch pits, channel drains and floor outlets	Bi-monthly
3	Clean and unblock all pipes	Bi-monthly
4	Check alignments of gutters	Six-monthly
5	Check and inspect all rainwater outlet gratings and replace if necessary	Six-monthly
6	Check gutter and pipe bracketing systems	Four-monthly
7	Check and inspect manhole covers and frames for damage or missing	Monthly

SOIL AND WASTEWATER DRAINAGE SYSTEM

NO	PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, inspect and clean out all gullies	Monthly
2	Replace broken or missing gully gratings	Monthly
3	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole covers and frames	Bi-monthly
4	Check, inspect and repair manhole benching	Four-monthly
5	Check, inspect, repair or replace all inspection eyes, end caps and cleaning eye covers	Monthly
6	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly
7	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockage that occurs	Monthly
8	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all vacuum and two-way vents	Four-monthly

DOMESTIC WATER DISTRIBUTION AND RETICULATION SYSTEMS

NO	PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks	Monthly
2	Replace all valve gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
3	Check, inspect, repair and readjust all pressure-reducing valves	Annually
4	Check, inspect and test operation of all valves on site	Four-monthly
5	Clean out all strainers	Monthly
6	Check, inspect, service test and repair/replace all safety and expansion release valves	Six-monthly
7	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly
8	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all air release valves and vacuum breakers	Four-monthly
9	Check, service, repair or replace all ball float valves	Four-monthly
10	Check, inspect, test, service and repair all geyser installations	Four-monthly
11	Check, inspect, test, service and repair all non-return valves	Four-monthly

SANITARY AND BRASSWARE EQUIPMENT

NO	PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Inspect, repair/replace WC seats and covers	Monthly
2	Replace all tap washers	Annually
3	Replace all tap gland packings	Annually
4	Check, inspect, repair, fix and where necessary replace sanitary ware mountings and brackets	Four-monthly
5	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all cistern flushing mechanisms	Monthly
6	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all brassware	Four-monthly
7	Check, inspect, service, repair/replace all sanitary ware	Four-monthly
8	Check, inspect, service, repair, readjust all flushing valves	Four-monthly
9	Repair all flushing valve internal parts with replacement kits	As occur
10	Stained equipment to be cleaned with approved manufacturer's cleaning agent	Six-monthly
11	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks	Monthly
12	Check, inspect, repair/replace all shower gratings	Four-monthly
13	Check, inspect, repair, service, replace all missing valves	Six-monthly
14	Replace missing tap handles	As occur
15	Replace missing bath, basin, sink, plug, etc	As occur

SA 07.02 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS**SA 07.02.01 Monthly maintenance**

Check operative protective and monitoring devices.

Verify operation of switching elements and meters

Check lamp operation

Measure phase voltages and currents in distribution board and record values in Record book

Inspect and repair the following:

- any visible damage to the installations
- setting of protective and monitoring devices

Ensure upkeep of the labelling of the distribution board, equipment, cabling and wiring

Ensure presence of labelling on face plates or bodies of light switches, socket, outlets and isolators.

SA 07.02.02 Annual maintenance

Service all luminaries, distribution boards, socket outlets, isolators, light switches, etc.

Witnessed testing of all earth leakage protection units on all socket outlet units.

Visually inspect the following and repair if required:

- Connection of cables and conductors including earthing and bonding.
- Presence of appropriate devices for isolation and switching.
- Correct connection of socket outlets, light switches, isolators, lamp holders, etc.

SA 07.03 FENCING

Maintenance shall include replacing of components, fixing defects, tightening, redressing or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete operation of the fencing installation. This shall include keeping the installation free of litter or any other element interfering with the function or integrity of the system, 0,5 wide on each of the fence.

SA 07.03.01 Monthly maintenance

- Clearing the fence route.
- Inspect and repair any visible damages to installation.
- Corrosion protection on fencing, gates and tubular posts.
- Inspect fence for tightness to straining wire redress or repair if necessary.
- Inspect tension of straining wires and repair if necessary.

SA 07.04 REFUGE REMOVAL AND PEST CONTROL

The whole of the site within the perimeter fences of the Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Ports of Entry project shall be kept free of litter, rubble and solid waste. Litter and rubble (solid waste) shall be collected, stored by the Contractor and removed from site as frequently as necessary

Removal of household solid waste to the municipal dump site will be carried out by the Contractor. The cleanliness of the site will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

Garden refuse may be amongst the litter rubble to be collected and disposed off by the Contractor.

The tendered monthly payment for maintenance for site keeping shall be deemed to include to *continuously* collecting litter and rubble across the entire site, placing it in a central solid waste container (skip) and removing it off-site to a formal waste facility.

NO	ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Cleaning out all waste bins in public areas	Daily
2	Cleaning out all waste bins at residential units	Weekly
3	Collect litter, rubble and other waste across the entire site within the perimeter fences of the Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Ports of Entry project and place in central solid waste container (skip)	Continuously
4	Re-fill all rodent bait stations	Monthly
5	Internal pest, termite and rodent control	Monthly
6	External pest, termite and rodent control	monthly

SA 07.05 CLEANING AND SITE KEEPING

The Contractor shall further be responsible for supplying and maintaining the grass cutting equipment in a perfect working condition.

SA 07.05.01 Site keeping

Site keeping activities will include providing all equipment and consumables necessary for site keeping, such as lawn mowers, brush-cutters, rakes, fuel, shovels, etc, and shall be deemed included in the monthly maintenance cost for Site keeping and Cleaning.

NO	ACTION	FREQUENCY
1	Cleaning out of <i>and supply</i> of black waste bin bags to all waste bins in public areas	Daily
2	Cleaning out of all waste bins in residential areas	Weekly
3	Emptying the solid waste skip and removal of waste off-site to approved dumping site	At least monthly (when required)
4	Watering of plants, shrubs, grass and trees (<i>only</i> if water is readily available and instructed for by Engineer)	daily

5	Removal of weeds	Weekly
6	Clearing of weeds and grass along the edges of paved areas	Weekly
7	Cutting of grass. Lawns: No grass to exceed the length of 40mm. Open areas: No grass shall exceed the length of 100mm.	At least weekly (when required)
8	Trimming of dense shrubs	2 Monthly
9	Removal of undesirable shrubs	Quarterly
10	Trimming of trees where branches cause obstruction	Quarterly
11	Collecting of litter and foreign objects	Continuous Daily

SA 07.05.02 Cleaning tasks for Offices, Ablutions and Support Facilities

The Contractor shall be responsible for cleaning ablution facilities as frequently as necessary to maintain them in a clean and healthy condition. The actions outlined below serve only as a benchmark for the cleaning and maintaining of the facilities.

Cleaning activities will include providing all cleaning agents and equipment necessary for cleaning. Consumables such as toilet paper, sanitizers, bin liners of she-bins, paper towels and hand wash soap will be replaced by the Contractor as and when necessary and shall be deemed include in the monthly maintenance cost for Site Keeping and Cleaning. It can be assumed that toilet paper will be consumed at 3 rolls per toilet (public ablution) per day (single ply), and hand washing soap at 2 litres per soap dispenser per month.

CLEANING TASKS FOR OFFICE AND SUPPORT FACILITIES

NO	ACTION	FREQUENCY
1	Disinfect and cleaning of floors in public passage areas and open plan offices	Daily (before the opening of the port of entry)
2	Disinfect and cleaning of counter tops and under counter shelves	Daily (before the opening of the port of entry)
3	Emptying of waste baskets in offices and service buildings	Daily
4	Disinfect and cleaning of office floors / Vacuum of carpets	Weekly
5	Washing of windows and dusting of window sills and ledges	Weekly
6	Clean and polish all fittings	Weekly
7	Washing of walls	Weekly
8	Dusting of interior of the building to remove dust and spider webs	Weekly

CLEANING TASKS FOR ABLUTION FACILITIES

NO	ACTION	FREQUENCY
1	Disinfecting, cleaning and ensuring that the ablution facilities are in a pristine sanitary condition at all times	Continuous 7 days a week
2	Disinfect, washing and cleaning of floors	Continuous 7 days a week
3	Empty and clean all waste receptacles	Continuous Daily
4	Clean and sanitise all bowls, basins and urinals	Continuous Daily
5	Clean, sanitise and polish all fittings and mirrors	Continuous Daily
6	Sanitising and cleaning out of she-bins	Continuous Daily
7	Washing of windows and dusting of window sills, ledges, pipes and fittings	Weekly
8	Disinfecting and washing of walls	Monthly
9	Dusting of interior of the building to remove dust and spider webs	weekly

SA 07.06**WATER DISTRIBUTION NETWORKS**

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Water Audit	Monthly
2	Clean out all strainers	Monthly
3	Check, inspect, repair or replace all bracketing systems	Four-monthly
4	Pant repairs to piping, fittings and equipment	Annually

CLEANING OF EXISTING PIPELINES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Remove silt, debris and loose lime deposits from within pipeline where required by scouring	Annually
2	Do general cleaning in areas where leakage has occurred	Six-monthly

FITTINGS AND STRUCTURES

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Replace all valves gaskets, gland packings and seals	Annually
2	Check, inspect, service, repair and readjust all pressure reducing valves	Annually
3	Check, inspect and test operation of all valves on site	Four-monthly
4	Check, inspect, service, test and repair/replace all safety and expansion release valves	Six-monthly
5	Check, inspect, service, test and repair/replace all air release valves and vacuum breakers	Four-monthly
6	Check, service, repair or replace all ball float valves	Six-monthly
7	Clean out structures of debris	Four-monthly
8	Check, inspect, test, service and repair/replace all non-return valves	Four-monthly

SA 07.07**WATER RESERVOIRS AND STORAGE TANKS**

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE OF PRESSED STEEL TANKS AND ANCILLARIES	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check for and repair all leaks. Repair leaks.	Monthly
2	Corrosion protection.	Annually
3	Clean and sterilise pressed steel tanks.	annually

SA 07.08 BOREHOLE PUMP SYSTEMS

The borehole pumping equipment and systems shall be serviced and maintained to keep it in perfect functional condition.

NO	ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Service submersible pumps	Annually
2	Clean filters/ strainers	Three-monthly
3	Check V-belts (Lister Engine)	Monthly
4	Measure rest water-level	Three-monthly
5	Check and clean MCC panel	Three-monthly
6	Check electric motors	Monthly
7	Monitor supply to storage tanks from borehole	Daily

SA 07.09 WATER PUMP SYSTEMS

Maintenance shall include all repairs, replacing of components or materials, routine setting or any other actions necessary to ensure a perfect functional condition

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE OF CLEAR-WATER PUMP SYSTEMS	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, service, repair and clean all pumps	Annually
2	Corrosion protect pumps, motors and surface piping	As required
3	Check, inspect, report and repair all leaks	Monthly
4	Check and lubricate moving parts	Four-monthly
5	Operation and supply of diesel for water pump at Boesmansnek, Ramatselitso and Ongeluksnek Ports of Entry	Daily

SA 07.10 SEWAGE NETWORKS**SA 07.10.01 Sewage Network Systems**

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole covers and frames and builder's work to manholes	Four-monthly
2	Check, inspect and repair manhole benching	Four-monthly
3	Check, inspect, repair or replace all inspection eye, end caps and cleaning eye covers	Four monthly
4	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockages that occurs	Monthly
5	Systematically mechanical cleaning of all sewer manholes and unblocking of all sewer line	Monthly
6	Check, inspect, repair/replace sewer pipes where necessary to maintain good working condition at all times	Four-monthly

SA 07.11 ROADS

All components of a roadway infrastructure, which includes the road surface, underlying layer works, kerbing, road markings, road signs and sidewalks, shall be maintained during the Contract.

Maintenance shall all repair work, replacing of components, fixing of defects, or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete and safe functioning of the road infrastructure.

Maintenance of the road infrastructure shall also include all other actions related to maintenance, such as temporary accommodation of traffic through and around work areas, and provision of temporary accesses to properties.

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, inspect, repair all surface failures	Two-monthly
2	Check, inspect, repair all pavement failures	Six-monthly
3	Inspect and repair gravel shoulders	Six-monthly
4	Check, inspect, repair, repaint, replace road markings	Six-monthly
5	Check, inspect, repair, repaint, replace road markings	Annually
6	Remove loose material from the surface of parking areas by means of mechanical brooming	monthly

SA 07.12 STORMWATER DRAINAGE

All components of the stormwater drainage infrastructure, including surface as well as underground components, shall be maintained during the contract.

Maintenance shall include all repair work, replacing of components, fixing of defects, cleaning, or any other actions or rectifying measures necessary for complete and safe functioning of the stormwater drainage infrastructure.

Maintenance on the stormwater drainage infrastructure shall also include all other actions related to maintenance, such as temporary drainage features and temporary accommodation of traffic.

NO	ROUTINE PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE ITEM DESCRIPTION	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
1	Check, inspect, repair or replace all manhole or inlet covers, grids and frames and builder's work to manholes.	Four-monthly
2	Check, inspect and repair manhole and inlet benching.	Four-monthly
3	Check, inspect, report and unblock any blockage that occurs.	Monthly
4	Clean all vegetation and debris accumulated in inlets and around stormwater pipes / culverts.	monthly

SA 07.13 EXTERNAL LIGHTING SYSTEMS

Maintenance shall include all repairs, replacing of components or materials, routine setting or any other actions necessary to ensure a perfect functional condition. The following shall be used as guidelines to ensure effective maintenance:

SA 07.13.01 Area LightingMonthly Maintenance

- Verify operation of switching element.
- Check lamps.
- Check mast door for weatherproof seal.
- Check earth connection at footing, record value.

Annual Maintenance

- Service all luminaries
- Measure earth resistance of electrode.
- Measure earth resistance of trench earth.
- Record values in record book.

SA 07.13.02 Security lightingMonthly Maintenance

- Verify operation of switching element.
- Check lamps.
- Check that all pole covers are secure.
- Visually check distribution kiosk.

Annual Maintenance

- Measure phase voltages and line currents in distribution kiosk or local distribution board.
- Do vermin protection.
- Service all luminaires.
- Paint timber poles with creosote.

SA 07.13.03 Street LightingMonthly Maintenance

- Verify operation of switching element.
- Check lamps.
- Check that all pole covers are secure.
- Visually check distribution kiosk

Annual Maintenance

- Measure phase voltages and line currents in distribution kiosk.
- Do vermin protection.
- Service all luminaires and distribution kiosks.
- Paint timber poles with creosote.

SA 07.14 LOW VOLTAGE RETICULATION

SA 07.14.01 Monthly maintenance

- Verify operation of volt and ammeters.
- Check that access covers are secure.
- Visually check distribution board.
- Check all connections.
- Check operation of switching timers.
- Inspect and secure access doors and covers.
- Inspect distribution kiosks.
- Inspect overhead conductors, insulators and poles.
- Monthly electricity meter readings.

Annual maintenance

- Service all low voltage boards.
- Measure phase voltages and line currents in low voltage distribution board.
- Record values in record book and Maintenance Control Plan.
- Service all distribution and metering kiosks.
- Service overhead distribution system.

SA 07.15 STANBY POWER SYSTEMS

SA 07.15.01 Weekly maintenance

1. Simulate a power failure **EVERY FRIDAY** at **11:00** to ensure generator is fully operational. Test run shall be undertaken, if possible on load, and running hours, diesel levels, volt, ampere and frequency readings recorded.

SA 07.15.02 Monthly maintenance

1. The following activities shall be executed during the monthly generator inspections:
 - Check oil level and top up as required.
 - Check oil viscosity for dilution by water or fuel.
 - Check starter battery terminals and apply contact grease.
 - Check battery cables for damage and secure termination.
 - Check battery electrolyte.
 - Check battery voltage and record.
 - Check battery voltage drop during engine cranking and record.
 - Check battery charger operation after cranking test.
 - Check starter motor for abnormal noise.
 - Check diesel engine while running for noise, vibration or loose components.
 - Check all flexible hoses for leaks, corrosion and ageing.
 - Check all engine V-belts.
 - Monitor engine / alternator coupling for noise.

2. Verify that the alarm functions are operational by simulation:

- Low oil pressure.
- High engine temperature.
- Low engine coolant level.
- Abnormal speed.
- Synchronising failure (if applicable).
- Cooling water pump failure.
- Cooling tower fan failure (if applicable).
- Low battery voltage.
- Fuel pump failure.
- Low fuel bulk tank (if applicable).

3. Test that following alarms trigger correctly by creating the alarm condition:

- Unit not in auto : turn selector switch to manual or test
- Battery charger failure : switch off AC supply to battery charger
- Auxiliary supply failure : switch off auxiliary power supply

4. Alternator shall be checked for accumulation of dust on the regular and for any loose components.

5. Test run shall be undertaken, if possible on load, and volt, ampere and frequency readings recorded.

6. Alternator shall be cleaned and switched back into 'auto' mode

7. Complete standby Generator monthly log sheets

8. Record running hours, diesel consumption etc in the following prescribed format (example):

	Previous Measurement	This Measurement	Consumption	Average Per day
Date:	01-Apr-2016	03-May-2016	Total	32 days
			(litres)	(ltrs/day)
Diesel Tank Meter Reading (litres)	26542.2	30546.2	4004.0	125.1
<u>Running Hours:</u>			(hours)	(hrs/day)
Generator 1 (hrs)	1245.6	1604.2	358.6	11.2
Generator 2 (hrs)	2535.6	2927.6	392.0	12.3
Total Generator hours (hrs)			750.6	
Average Diesel consumption			5.3	ltrs/hr

SA 07.15.03 Annual maintenance

The following activities shall be executed in addition to the monthly maintenance work after every twelve months.

1. Drain an oil sample and submit for analysis to establish need for an oil change.
Fix test report in Record book
2. Record output parameters while on load.
3. Record running hours
4. Replace oil and fuel filters if not replaced during 1 year as part of 200hrs service).
5. The cooling system shall be drained, flushed and refilled with water and prescribed water conditioner.

SA 07.16 HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEMS**SA 07.16.01 Monthly maintenance**

REFERENCE NUMBER	ACTION
S-1	Clean filters, replace if required
S-2	Inspect air intake and discharge for blockages
S-3	Check all refrigerant, drainage pipes for damage and leaks
S-4	Check sight glass: clear or flash gas
S-5	Carry out visual inspection of condenser coil for blockages and correct operation of fans
S-6	Carry out visual inspection of evaporator coil for blockages and correct operation of supply fan
S-7	Check enclosure for damages
S-8	Check electric motor running temperature
S-9	Check electric connections for tightness
S-10	Test thermostat and control operation
S-11	Clean condensate tray and test drainage for proper operation
S-12	Check cooling and heating cycle

SA 07.16.02 Bi-Annual maintenance (6-months)

REFERENCE NUMBER	ACTION
S-1	Clean filters, replace if required
S-2	Inspect air intake and discharge for blockages
S-3	Check all refrigerant, drainage pipes for damages and leaks
S-4	Check sight-glass: clear or flash gas
S-5	Carry out visual inspection of evaporator coil for blockages and correct operation of fans
S-6	Carry out visual inspection of evaporator coil for blockages and correct operation of supply fans
S-7	Check enclosure for damages
S-8	Check electric motor running temperature
S-9	Check electric connections for tightness
S-10	Test thermostat and control operation
S-11	Clean condensate tray and test drainage for proper operation

S-12	Check filter/dryer
S-13	Check superheat and functioning of expansion valve
S-14	Check operation of HP and LP
S-15	Check operation of controllers
S-16	De-rust, neutralize and touch up paint work
S-17	Check cooling and heating cycle
S-18	Clean evaporator and condenser oil chemically
S-19	Clean all filter frames and seals
S-20	Check fan motor and compressor current
S-21	Check and test overload settings
S-22	Lubricate all bearings

SA 17.17 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

The routine preventative maintenance work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed below under the respective headings. These actions and findings shall be logged and reported on the relevant approved schedules and reports.

SA 17.17.01 Fire Extinguisher: Monthly Maintenance

- Check charge of the extinguisher.
- Check the condition of the discharge.
- Check the mechanism condition of the discharge hose.
- Update the log entry on the extinguisher.
- Log maintenance schedule
- DCP extinguishers: Check charge and replace powder at prescribed intervals.
- CO₂ extinguisher: Check charge.

SA 08 MANDATORY PERIODIC SERVICE

The following mandatory periodical services shall be measured for payment separately and does not form part of the remuneration for monthly preventative maintenance items

SA 08.01 Log all water meter readings and calculate losses on a monthly basis and report in the following format (example):

	Previous Measurement	This Measurement	Consumption	Average per day (kl)
Date:	01-Apr-2016	03-May-2016	Total	32 days
WATER SUPPLY: (kl)			(kl)	(kl/day)
Main Supply (input)	278540.6	279235.5	694.9	21.716

Admin	15642.0	15690.0	48.0	1.500
Cell Block	15674.0	15721.5	47.5	1.484
House A1	18569.5	18610.8	41.3	1.291
House A2	32598.0	32650.5	52.5	1.641
House B1	13349.4	13396.0	36.6	1.144
House B2	89562.5	89620.7	58.2	1.819
House B3	98685.3	98721.1	35.8	1.119
Ablution A	85684.0	85723.2	39.2	1.225
Ablution B	53265.5	53397.6	132.1	4.128
Building A	25689.2	25790.2	101.0	3.156
Building B	26858.8	269521.1	93.3	2.916
Total consumption Output)			685.5	21.422
Loss (Input – Output)			9.4	0.294
PORTABLE WATER SUPPLY:				
Water supply within standards	Yes/No	Yes/No		
Water test report attached	Yes/No	Yes/No		

SA 08.02 Sample potable water supply and chemical analyses to be provided by an authorised company on a monthly basis. The water report should be provided monthly in the following format, **in accordance with SANS241:**

SANS 241:2006	Unit	Class 1 (recommended values)
Chemical report		
pH		5.5 tot 9.5
Electrical conductivity	mS/m	150
Calcium as Ca	mg/L	150
Magnesium as Mg	mg/L	70
Sodium as Na	mg/L	200
Potassium as K	mg/L	50
P-Alkalinity	mg/L	
M-Alkalinity	mg/L	
Fluoride as F	mg/L	1
Chlorine as Cl	mg/L	200
Bromide as Br	mg/L	**3
Nitrate as N	mg/L	10
Phosphate as PO ₄	mg/L	
Sulphate as SO ₄	mg/L	400
Calcium Hardness	mg/L	375
Magnesium hardness	mg/L	287
Total hardness as CaCO ₃	mg/L	662
Aluminium as Al	mg/L	0.300
Arsenic as As	mg/L	0.010

Chromium as Cr	mg/L	0.100
Copper as Cu	mg/L	1.000
Iron as Fe	mg/L	0.200
Manganese as Mn	mg/L	0.100
Lead as Pb	mg/L	0.020
Zinc as Zn	mg/L	5000
Bacteria report		
Heterotrophic plate count	cfu/ml	100
Total coliform	cfu/100ml	0
e. coli	cfu/100ml	0

SA 08.03 Log all electricity meter readings on a monthly basis in the following format:

	Previous Measurement	This Measurement	Consumption	Average per day (kl)
Date:	01-Apr-2016	03-May-2016	Total	32 days
ELECTRICITY: (kWh)			(kWh)	(kWh/day)
Main Supply	124899.0	145865.9	20966.9	655.2
Admin	135899.0	1523.3	167.3	5.2
Cell Block	3596.5	3658.2	61.7	1.9
House A1	8976.0	9256.3	280.3	8.8
House A2	9686.0	9785.2	99.2	3.1
House B1	9565.0	10152.2	587.3	18.4
House B2	3594.0	4512.3	918.3	28.7
House B3	3594.0	4689.2	1095.2	34.2
Ablution A	3598.0	4154.3	556.8	17.4
Ablution B	5975.0	8785.3	2779.3	86.9
Building A	5698.0	8520.0	2822.0	88.2
Building B	5689.0	8654.2	2965.2	92.7

SA 08.04 Cleaning and sterilization of water storage reservoir/tank to be performed annually.

SA 08.05 Remove and empty waste from skip to external waste disposal site on a weekly basis.

SA 08.06 De-sludge and cleaning of septic tanks as and when required and instructed for by the Engineer.

SA 08.07 Service submersible pumps for borehole installations annually.

SA 08.08 Statutory annual servicing of fire extinguishers.

SA 08.09 Annual Pest control (internal and external).

SA 09 FREQUENT SERVICING OF INSTALLATIONS**SA 09.01 Wastewater Treatment**

General frequent servicing of the wastewater treatment works shall be done in accordance with this specification.

SA 09.01.01 General

The general frequent servicing work to be performed and executed shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the table below:

Item	Description	Frequency
01	General housekeeping: keeping site in neat and acceptable condition.	Daily
02	Control access to the site.	Daily
03	Maintain safety conditions on site.	Daily
04	Log and report spills, pollution events, power failures, extraordinary process phenomena, etc. check auto-reset of power to mechanical equipment	Event
05	Develop a feel for effective treatment by means of visual indicators of good/bad plant performance: colour, odour, foam, algae growth, aerator spray patterns, effluent clarity, bubbles, floating material, solids accumulation, flow patterns, turbulence, touch.	Daily
06	Record operating hours and kW-hours of all mechanical equipment	Daily
07	Check operation of all valves and sluices	monthly

SA 09.01.02 Specific Processes and Units

The specific frequent servicing work to be performed and executed shall include, but shall not be limited to the items listed in the table below:

Item	Operation of Specific Processes and Units	Frequency
01	Septic tanks and French drains	
01	Check and log scum, water and sludge depths in tank	6 Months
02	Empty tank as specified frequencies (max. 3years) or when full	3 Years
03	Inspect French drain for accumulation of water or for seepage to surface. If positive, repair again	3 Months
04	Clean connecting pipes and accessories and remove tree and grass roots from pipes	3 Months
02	Inlet works	
01	Hand-raked screens: remove screenings rags, plastics, etc), ensuring that only degradable material is passed on to subsequent process units. (Last removal after evening peak flow	2 hours during day
02	Wash screenings and grit, and return degradable material to treatment train	Hourly
03	Dispose of screenings and grit by on-site burial	Daily
03	Oxidation/maturation ponds	
01	Remove floating material from trap at an inlet pond and dispose of by off-site removal.	Daily
02	Remove tree and grass roots from verges of ponds.	Monthly
03	Check leak detection facilities (if provided) for signs of leakages	Monthly
04	Ensure that surface growths are not accumulated in ponds.	monthly

04		Settling tanks	
	01	Scour settling tank and check for clumps of floating sludge.	Daily
	02	Remove scum and clean overflow weirs.	Daily
	03	Clean submerged portion of settling tank walls by pushing settled sludge on inclined surfaces down to the apex of the cone.	Monthly
05		Sludge drying beds	
	01	Apply sludge to drying beds in depths to suit climatic conditions, and remove when adequately dried.	Daily
	02	Keep sludge beds free of weed growth.	Daily
	03	Replenish filter media when required.	Event
06		Sludge disposal facilities.	
	01	Remove tree grass roots from verges of sludge lagoon.	Monthly
	02	Check leak detection facilities (if provided) for signs of leakage from lagoon.	Monthly
	03	Maintain hygienic conditions at sludge handling facilities.	Daily
07		Pump stations	
	01	Check operation and correct switching of pumps.	Daily
	02	Clean pump sumps.	Weekly
08		Bio filters	
	01	Check operation of dosing siphons and snifter pipes.	Daily
	02	Check operation of flow distribution pipes.	Daily
	03	Flush flow distribution pipes.	Weekly
	04	Check spread of flow and clean distribution nozzles/holes	Weekly
	05	Evaluate, by means of measurement and calculation, flushing rates, frequency and duration.	6 Monthly
	06	Inspect health of biological growth on filter media.	Weekly
	07	Check occurrence of blockages, ponding and nuisance conditions on filter media.	Monthly
	08	Check operation of dosing and re-circulation pumps.	Daily
09		Chemical phosphate removal	
	01	Check operation of dosing equipment.	Daily
	02	Select chemicals and dosing rates by means of beaker tests. Ensure correct calculation of dosage concentration and dosing rates.	6 Months
	03	Check, by means of measurement and calculation, the accuracy of dosing rates and their control proportion to flow rate.	Daily
	04	Manage provision, storage and control of chemicals.	Daily
	05	Ensure continuous dosing – avoid pulsing of dosing stream.	Daily
10		Disinfection	
	01	Check operation of dosing facilities.	Daily
	02	Clean chlorine contact tank.	4 Months
	03	Ensure chlorine-dosing proportional to flow rate.	Weekly
11		Effluent disposal facilities	
	01	Oxidation ponds: manage irrigation of effluent as means of disposal.	Daily
	02	Ensure erosion free discharge to receiving water body.	Monthly

SA 09.01.03 Monitoring and Reporting

The contractor shall keep a written record of all measurements taken and analyses done for process control and reporting to relevant authorities in terms of legal or project requirements.

A logbook shall be kept for daily recording of failures, malfunctions, spills, pollution events, power failure and detail of measures taken.

SA 10 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**SA.01 MAINTENANCE OF A COMPLETE INSTALLATION Unit: point**

The unit of measurement shall be a point. Each month shall represent a maximum of ten points and a minimum of zero points, depending on the performance and quality of maintenance. Ten points per month, determined by using the tendered rate per point, shall include full compensation for all liabilities and obligations described or implied in the Contract document and deemed by the Contractor to be applicable to the maintenance phase of the Contract, for the complete monthly maintenance of an entire installation, and all appurtenant works deemed to form part thereof, as defined in the relevant Technical or Particular Specifications.

tendered Contract Price) shall also include full compensation for complete preventative, corrective and breakdown maintenance (as defined in this General Maintenance Specification), including full compensation for all costs related to resetting, repair, procurement, supply, delivery, replacement, protecting, furnishing, installing, testing and commissioning of all items and material required to maintain the complete installation in a perfect functional condition. The only items not to be included in the rate for monthly maintenance points are:

1. Supply, delivery, installation and testing of special equipment/materials that will be measured elsewhere, and
2. Special testing of an installation.

Different installations shall be listed in the Schedule of Quantities, in accordance with the definition of each installation.

Although ten points per month shall include full compensation for preventative, corrective and breakdown maintenance, the Contractor might fail to achieve all points applicable in the event of unsatisfactory performance, in which case he shall still perform all maintenance requirements according to specification, but at his own cost where a reduction in points awarded is insufficient to cover his cost.

SA.02 ADDITIONAL TESTS:**SA.02.01 Where ordered by the Engineer Unit: rand (R)****SA.02.02 Charge required by the Contractor on subitem SA.03.01 above Unit: %**

An amount has been allowed in the Schedule of Quantities to cover the cost of additional tests required by the Engineer. The Engineer will have the sole authority to spend the amount or part thereof under subitem SA.03.01.

The tendered percentage under subitem SA.03.02 will be paid to the Contractor on the value of each payment made to the approved testing authority.

SA.03 PAYMENT REDUCTION DUE TO EXCEEDING OF MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DOWN-TIME DURING EMERGENCY BREAKDOWN Unit: days

The unit of measurement shall be the number of days, in excess of 36 hours, during which a component of an installation was in a disfunctional condition that required emergency repairs.

The negative fixed rate shall include full compensation for the User Client's loss in productivity and, multiplied by the number of days measured, shall be deducted from the certified amount due to the Contractor.

**SA.04 PAYMENT REDUCTION DUE TO EXCEEDING OF MAXIMUM
ALLOWABLE DOWN-TIME DURING ORDINARY BREAKDOWNUnit: days**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of days, in excess of 7 days, during which a component of an installation was in a disfunctional condition that required ordinary repairs.

The negative fixed rate shall include full compensation for the User Client's loss in productivity and, multiplied by the number of days measured, shall be deducted from the certified amount due to the Contractor.

**SA.05 PAYMENT REDUCTION DUE TO EXCEEDING OF MAXIMUM
ALLOWABLE DOWN-TIME DURING OPERATIONAL DAMAGE
BREAKDOWNUnit: days**

The unit of measurement shall be the number of days, in excess of 7 days, during which a component of an installation was in a disfunctional condition that required ordinary repairs.

The negative fixed rate shall include full compensation for the Client's loss in productivity and, multiplied by the number of days measured, shall be deducted from the certified amount due to the Contractor.

SA.06 CALL-OUT FOR REPAIR OF EMERGENCY BREAKDOWN (24 Hours)Unit: No

The Unit of measurement shall be number. The Contractor will be remunerated for the number of call-out trips to the site, in order attend to the repair of an emergency breakdown logged (Before Access to a Site) with him by the Engineer. The tendered rate shall provide full compensation for all travel, accommodation and travel-time cost to and from the site. Remuneration for material and labour cost is deemed to be included under the "maintenance of a completed installation" payment item in the schedule of quantities, based on the points system and measured monthly.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

MAINTENANCE SCORE-CARD

CONTRACT NUMBER: WCS



CONTRACT: _____

CONTRACTOR: _____

ENGINEER: _____

INSTALLATION: _____

MONTH: _____

OF 36

The following components of the installation were selected by the contractor at the Monthly Operation Meeting
nr. _____ as performance indicators to be tested according to specification:

1. ENGINEER'S SELECTION

- 1.1 _____
- 1.2 _____
- 1.3 _____
- 1.4 _____
- 1.5 _____
- 1.6 _____
- 1.7 _____
- 1.8 _____
- 1.9 _____
- 1.10 _____

0	1

TOTAL SCORE: _____

Engineer's Representative

Signature

Date

Date

GUIDELINE FOR THE USE OF THE MAINTENANCE SCORE-CARD

The score-card and performance indicators must be used as a maintenance management tool. The aim with each score-card is to ensure that:

- (a) the project focuses on key aspects of maintenance per month;
- (b) the Contractor receives payment for his work, and
- (c) the Employer receives value for money and a sustained high level of service.

Performance indicators must be selected to measure the Contractor's service level of preventative and corrective maintenance that will be based on the Maintenance Control Plan and the Operating and Maintenance Manuals (containing information specified in the Contract documentation).

For each specific installation, different performance indicators must be defined each month based on the content of the maintenance in relation to the scope of maintenance work per installation and must be based on the Contractor's service level record on preventative and corrective maintenance.

Breakdowns must be dealt with if and when necessary by logging of the breakdown and monitoring the downtime.

The Contractor and the Engineer must agree on all performance indicators at an occasion prior to the month during which the Contractor's performance (service level of maintenance) will be measured.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SB OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

CONTENTS

SB 01	SCOPE
SB 02	PROCEDURE FOR SUBMISSION OF MANUALS
SB 03	FORMAT OF OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
SB 04	CONTENTS
SB 05	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SB 01 SCOPE

The Contractor shall be responsible for the compilation of complete sets of Operating and Maintenance Manuals. A separate Operating and Maintenance Manual shall be supplied for each installation where required and as defined in the Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

SB 02 PROCEDURE FOR SUBMISSION OF MANUALS

SB 02.01 SUBMISSION OF DRAFT MANUALS

A draft copy of each Operating and Maintenance Manual shall be submitted to the Engineer prior to safety inspection of the installation. Approval of the draft Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be a prerequisite for commencement of the safety inspection in terms of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)

The manuals will be reviewed and checked by the Engineer and returned to the Contractor with comments, where necessary. The Contractor shall make the necessary changes and amendments to the manuals to incorporate the Engineer's comments.

SB 02.02 DEVELOPMENT OF FINAL MANUALS

A final draft copy of each Operating and Maintenance Manual shall be submitted to the Engineer at least one week prior to commencement of Day 1 tests on commissioning. This set of manuals will not be accepted without the Contractor's verification of the information contained in the manuals and the professional language editing thereof. The Engineer shall return the manuals to the Contractor, who shall make the final corrections. The Engineer will, however, not be responsible for the quality control on manuals. Approval of final Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be a prerequisite for issuing of a Certificate of Practical Completion for repair of the installation.

After the Engineer has approved the final Operating and Maintenance Manuals, the Contractor shall provide the Engineer with seven (7) sets of the manuals. Approval of the final Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be a prerequisite for issuing of a Certificate of Completion.

SB 03 **FORMAT OF OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- (a) Manuals shall be bound in hardcover lever-arch files with plastic coatings. The files shall be clearly labelled on the front cover, as well as on the back band, with the following information:
 - (i) The title "Operating and Maintenance Manuals"
 - (ii) Name of the installation (as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance)
 - (iii) Name of the contract and contract number
 - (iv) The Contractor's name, address and contact telephone number and fax (logo optional)
 - (v) Month and year in which the manuals are finally handed over to the Employer
 - (vi) Name of the User Client.
- (b) Pamphlets and bound leaflets/booklets from suppliers or manufacturers shall be placed in plastic pockets.
- (c) Drawings and diagrams larger than A3 shall be folded and placed in plastic pockets to be easily removed or stored.
- (d) The sections of the manuals specified below shall be clearly partitioned.
- (e) Cross-referencing between drawings/diagrams and text shall be in a clear and consequent format.
- (f) The Operating and Maintenance Manuals shall be supplied in English.

SB 04 **CONTENTS****SB 04.01** **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

The table of contents shall appear on the second page and shall consist of the headings of the various sections in the manual and the relevant page numbers.

The table of contents shall essentially contain at least the following:

1. Introduction
 - 1.1 Scope of the manual
 - 1.2 General arrangement of the manual
 - 1.3 Description of installation
 - 1.4 Specifications
2. List of drawings and diagrams
3. Parts and components
4. Operating procedures

5. Maintenance
 - 5.1 Purpose of maintenance
 - 5.2 Preventative maintenance
 - 5.3 Trouble-shooting
6. Breakdown maintenance and repair
7. List of Appendices.

SB 04.02 INTRODUCTION

The introduction shall contain at least the following:

SB 04.02.01 Scope of the manual

A summary shall explain the scope of the contents.

SB 04.02.02 General arrangement of the manual

A brief description shall explain the way in which the manual is arranged.

SB 04.02.03 Description of installation

This section shall give a functional description of the complete installation covered by the manual, including all systems and/or functional units deemed to form part thereof, as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

SB 04.02.04 Specifications

A summary shall be given of the specifications applicable to the particular part of the Contract.

SB 04.03 DRAWINGS AND DIAGRAMS

SB 04.03.01 Mechanical flow diagrams (MFDs) and single line diagrams

Mechanical flow diagrams (for mechanical systems) or single line diagrams (for electrical systems) of the system and/or functional unit shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals for easy reference by the operators of the installation. Diagrams shall be drawn not only for parts of an installation that have been repaired, but also for the complete installation, including all the components.

SB 04.04 PARTS AND COMPONENTS

SB 04.04.01 Equipment data sheets

A data sheet shall be drawn up for each piece of equipment and/or machine forming part of the installation and shall contain the following information:

- (a) Equipment tag number
- (b) Equipment description
- (c) Model/make/manufacture
- (d) Supplier/Reconditioning details
- (e) Ordering details
- (f) Details of fixed components

- (g) Details of lubrication
- (h) Maintenance references (refer to supplier/reconditioning technical manual).

SB 04.04.02 Technical equipment manuals

For each piece of equipment and/or machine forming part of the installation the following information shall be included in this section of the Operating and Maintenance Manuals:

- (a) the supplier or reconditioning manual and/or standards of operating and maintenance instructions;
- (b) illustrated parts breakdown and/or group assembly drawings as agreed with the Engineer;
- (c) parts lists and data sheets, including all characteristic curves for machines indicating operation point, efficiency, power consumption, etc;
- (d) calibration charts, and
- (e) test certificates for hydraulic pressure tests, flame-proof grading, materials, non-destructive examinations, coating and lining details, etc.

Each detailed description shall be accompanied by a set of engineering drawings. From the drawings the functionality of each part or component used, as well as the special characteristics associated with the part or component shall be very clear.

SB 04.04.03 Parts and components list

A detailed description shall specify all the parts and components used for the duration of the Contract. This description shall include new parts and components, as well as existing parts and components that have either been reconditioned or used as specified in the Contract.

The description shall state at least the part or component number, part or component name, the size of the part or component, an explanatory description, the quantity used, the material of which the part or component is made, the coating (if any), date of purchase, as well as any relevant remarks as to the application thereof.

Details of the manufacturer of the part or component shall also be listed. This shall at least state the name, address, telephone number, fax number and name of a contact person.

The supplier of the part or component shall also be stated and shall include at least the name, address, telephone number, fax number, name of a contact person and an alternative supplier (if available).

SB 04.04.04 Drawings

Drawings shall contain a descriptive heading, an explanatory key and relevant comments. Drawings shall be done on a computer-aided design package approved by the Engineer.

A compound drawing for all subassemblies shall clearly indicate how and where the various parts fit in the subassembly. The compound drawing shall be linked to the equipment data sheets and parts and components list and shall clearly specify the parts or components used, their model numbers, their sizes and the quantities used. The compound drawings shall also be accompanied by a short description explaining the workings of the subassembly, as well as the assembly of the parts or components to complete the subassembly.

SB 04.05 OPERATING PROCEDURES

The operating instructions shall be a step by step description of the manual start-up and shut-down procedure for every piece of equipment and/or process reconditioned, repaired or supplied with references to the MFDs. For automatic operation the operators shall be referred to the automatic control manual (if applicable).

The functioning of the installation shall be clearly described, using a flow diagram depicting the interrelationships among the various subassemblies. The subassemblies shall be described by descriptive drawings.

Each mechanical or process flow diagram shall contain at least a heading, relevant comments and a key.

Every subassembly shall also have its own flow diagram explaining the operation of the subassembly, as well as the application of each part and component. The application of the subassembly shall also be very clear. The flow diagram shall consist of at least a heading, relevant comments and an explanatory key.

A detailed description shall be given of all operational systems forming part of the installation, explaining the operation and functioning of the system and the number of operations personnel required for performing the operation successfully.

The preparations, which are required before the system can be operational, shall be clearly stated and explained.

The operation tasks shall be clearly explained with reference to dangerous situations that might occur. Hazardous operations shall be explained in great detail and cover all the applicable safety precautions.

SB 04.06 MAINTENANCE**SB 04.06.01 Purpose of maintenance**

The maintenance process shall be explained and the main responsibilities described.

SB 04.06.02 Preventative maintenance

A preventative maintenance and lubrication schedule shall be included in this section. This schedule shall be in table format and shall include a summary of all the maintenance actions required for each different system and/or functional unit covered by this manual, in order to give a single summary of all routine preventative maintenance actions required for the complete installation.

The schedule shall indicate daily, weekly, fortnightly, monthly and yearly maintenance actions. A lubrication schedule summary shall also be included under this section.

The frequency of routine preventative maintenance actions shall be indicated very clearly.

The Contractor shall provide the maintenance requirements as prescribed by the manufacturer. The type of maintenance shall be clearly indicated. The description of the maintenance to be performed shall include at least the part name, location of the part in either the assembly or subassembly, the model number, the quantity of the particular part or component to be maintained, the type of maintenance, and notes on the maintenance procedure.

A brief description shall accompany the maintenance schedule, indicating special tools to be used, maintenance and test equipment required for the test procedures. Any special tools necessary for maintenance shall be specified in terms of name, model, size, manufacturer, supplier (name, telephone number, fax number, contact person), coating (if any) and notes on the use of the equipment.

Remarks on the system readiness checks of each subassembly shall be explained in detail. Routine inspection and maintenance processes shall be described. It shall be very clear what needs to be done, how to perform the necessary task and any dangers that are present.

SB 04.06.03 Trouble-shooting

An explanation shall be given to assist the maintenance personnel in analysing and resolving malfunctions that might occur. Various scenarios with possible causes and rectification procedures shall be explained.

The scenarios shall be accompanied by drawings indicating the position of the part that is faulty. Each of these drawings shall have a heading, comments and an explanatory key.

SB 04.07 BREAKDOWN MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR

The Contractor shall describe the complete procedure to be followed in the event of a breakdown. It shall be very clear what the operating personnel should look for, how to eliminate any dangers due to the breakdown (eg electricity must be shut off in the event of problems with the wiring) and who should be contacted. The Contractor shall supply the names and telephone numbers of at least two contact persons who may be contacted in the event of a breakdown.

The Contractor shall refer to Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance, to determine the reaction time for the repair to the breakdown.

Repair instructions shall provide the maintenance personnel with detailed instructions for the removal and/or replacement of any item requiring replacement due to malfunctioning. Contact numbers shall also be given to assist maintenance personnel, should a breakdown occur.

The Contractor shall specify the actions expected of maintenance personnel in the event of a breakdown.

The Contractor shall also specify the testing procedures to be followed before the system can be put into operation again. Every procedure shall be described clearly and all the potential dangers pointed out, as well as the precautions that have to be taken.

The testing procedures shall be accompanied by drawings illustrating the process to be performed. Every drawing shall have a heading, comments and an explanatory key.

SB 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SB.01 Compile and supply a complete set of Operating and Maintenance Manuals Unit : sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum for each complete set (seven copies) of Operating and Maintenance Manuals. Operating and Maintenance Manuals for different installations shall be measured separately in the Schedule of Quantities.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for all technical research, gathering of information, compilation of manufacturer's instructions, compilation of drawings and diagrams, and for writing of all the descriptions, instructions and functional procedures, as well as language editing, in order to provide a clear and correct set of Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for all expenses such as paper, copy work, binding and printing necessary for the completion of the manuals.

The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for the compilation of draft sets of operating and maintenance manuals in accordance with the specification, and for incorporation of all comments and corrective requirements.

SB.02 Compile and supply a complete site plan Unit : sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum for the complete set (three A1-size copies for each plan) and electronic format of the site plan(s).

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for all expenses such as paper, copy work and printing required for the completion of the site plan.

The site plan shall include and comply with the following:

SB.02. 01 SCOPE

This specification provides minimum requirements for the preparation of a Site Layout Plan and is based on the specifications of the Department of Public Works.

SB.02. 02 SPECIFICATIONS

The Specification is based on the following specifications:

1. Civil Engineering Manual PW347/2012, Annexure A1
2. Specification of Materials and Methods to be Used PW371
3. Additional Specification SB: Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

Compile and supply a complete Site Layout Plan:

(a) Detail Ground Survey

All services must be shown on a complete Site Layout Plan as required by the Engineer, including roads, fences, paving, transmission and telephone lines, etc. For sewerage reticulation and storm water drainage systems the pipe sizes, as well as invert heights must be provided. An effort must be made to trace the routes of these services.

(b) Survey of Buildings

The "footprint" of all the buildings and structures must be surveyed.

(c) General

All survey data shall be captured in electronic format.

SB.02. 03 TITLE BLOCK

The standard drawing sheet layout and title block of the Department of Public Works must be used.

Complete all the relevant fields in the title block with reference to the name of the Port of Entry in the appropriate block. The words SITE LAYOUT PLAN should form part of the drawing title.

SB.01 Drawing Number

The drawing number should consist of a four-part identifier:

- Port of entry designator: WCS
- Group: 1
- Drawing number: Numbering will start at 1
- Revision number: Will start at 01

Typical example: WCS/1/1 Rev 01

SB.02 Overlay Sheets/Layering Scheme (if required)

The overlay sheet designator identifies the type of drawing (example: overlay for water reticulation) and can be added to the drawing number:

- C: Existing structures, facilities, roads, paving, fencing, etc
- CR: Storm water drainage system
- CE: Electrical power and equipment
- CF: Fire-fighting equipment
- CS: Sewer network
- CT: Telephone lines
- CW: Water reticulation system

Typical example for the numbering of an overlay sheet: WCS/1/**CW**/1 Rev 01

SB.02. 04 DRAFTING CONVENTIONS

The Site Layout Plan should be created following engineering conventions and standards in order to represent a clear drawing simplifying the huge amount of visual information.

SB.01 Paper Prints

Preference is given to size A1 plans, but for reporting size A3 will be used and the information should still be legible in this format.

SB.02 Scale

The Site Layout Plan must be drawn according to scale and the following scales can be used:

- 1:200 or
- 1:500 or
- 1:1000

SB.03 Plan Orientation

The Port of Entry should be rotated on the plan so that the north point arrow are pointing in the direction of either the upper left or upper right quadrants of the plan. The north point arrow to be placed in the top right hand corner of the drawing space.

SB.04 Contours

Contours do not form part of the Site Layout Plan.

SB.05 Line Weight





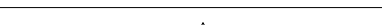

Line weight/width is extremely important and features such as the services should be drawn with lines that are more prominent. The following line weights (mm) can be used:

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. 0.10 | 5. 0.35 |
| 2. 0.15 | 6. 0.50 |
| 3. 0.25 | 7. 0.70 |
| 4. 0.30 | 8. 1.00 |

SB.06 Line Type/Style

The following typical standard line types that can be used:

TYPICAL LINE TYPES

LINE DESCRIPTION	LINE APPEARANCE
1. Centre Line	
2. Solid/Continuous line	
3. Short broken line	
4. Long broken line	
5. Break line	
6. Hatch lines 45°	

SB.07 Hatching

Hatching are angled line patterns to indicate the position of permanent structures. The spacing between lines should be consistent at 45° to the structure. Park Homes must be shown on the plan, but without hatching.








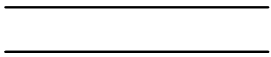


SB.08 Surfaced Areas

Surfaced roads should be indicated by two solid lines as well as paved areas.

Two long broken lines should be used to indicate gravel roads.

SB.09 Non Standard Line Types

The following lines could be used for the various services, but must be identified in the Legend as a non standard line type:

LEGEND			<u>Colour Code</u>	<u>Line Weight (mm)</u>
	W	Water pipe line	Cyan	0.50
	S	Sewer pipe line	Black	0.50
	EL	Electrical overhead line	Magenta	0.50
	EC	Electrical cable	Magenta	0.50
	T	Telephone line	Green	0.50
	G	Gas pipe line	Brown	0.50
	x	Fence line	Black	0.30
		Surfaced Road	Black	0.30
		Gravel Road	Black	0.30
		Railway Line	Black	0.25

SB.10 Lettering and Font Styles

Use the standard font style and font size for engineering drawings and do not use stylized fonts.

Create all text in upper case letters, except for certain unit designations such as km, m, mm, kVA, etc.

SB.11 Site Layout Plan

When the Port of Entry is too large for one sheet, divide the plan into logical sections. Add a key layout in the title block showing how the various sheets should be joined together to obtain a layout of the entire site. This key layout should form part of each sheet.

SB.12 Facilities

The name of the facility should be written adjacent to the facility. If the space is limited, a reference number of the facility, which refers to a description of the facility, is inserted in a table format in or close to the title block as a legend.

SB.13 Fences and gates

Show the position of the security fence and all other fences as well as gates. Include the height of all fences.

SB.14 Destinations

The destination to the nearest town with a pointing arrow should appear on all incoming and outgoing roads.

SB.02. 05 SERVICES

The position of the services is extremely important and should be indicated by lines that are more prominent/thicker. The description of the line types for the various services must be given in the Legend. See DIR04.09.

The following services, where applicable, must be shown on the Site Layout Plan for future reference:

SB.01 Water Reticulation System

Show the position of the water reticulation system and include the following:

- Pipe lines, pipe sizes, type of pipes, valves, meters, boreholes and tanks (include capacities). Show the direction of flow.

SB..02 Sewerage Network

Show the layout of the sewerage network and include the following:

- Pipe lines, pipe sizes, type of pipes, manholes, rodding eyes, septic tanks (include capacities), french drains (include volumes). Show the invert levels of all manholes as well as the position and level of the bench mark.

SB.03 Electrical Power

Indicate the position of electrical power lines, cables, substations, kiosks, flood lights along the perimeter as well as street lights and area lighting.

Air-conditioning units should be numbered and listed in table format including the type and size.

Give the source(s) of electrical power.

SB.04 Telephone Lines

Show the position of overhead telephone lines.

SB.05 Storm water System

Show the layout of the storm water system, culverts and sizes as well as inlet and outlet structures. Give the invert levels of all structures as well as the position and level of the bench mark.

SB.06 Fire Fighting Equipment

Include the pump installation, tank and capacity, fire hydrants, valves, meters, fire extinguishers and fire hose reels.

Fire extinguishers should be numbered and listed in table format including the type and size.

SB.02. 06 ELECTRONIC FORMAT

A complete set of electronic files shall be placed on CD(s) in a Data Exchange Format (DXF) or DWG format.

Affix a stick-on label to the CD with the following information:

- Department of Public Works and logo
- Name of Port of Entry
- WCS number
- Description: SITE LAYOUT PLAN
- Drawing number(s)
- Date issued
- Electronic format: DXF or DWG

SB.02. 07 SUBMISSION

The Consultant must submit A1 and A3 paper prints as well as a CD(s) of the Site Layout Plan(s) to the Project Manager before the Final Approval Certificate is signed.

The CD(s) must include the entire overlays/layering scheme and a compound drawing which includes all the services and information on one Site Layout Plan in DXF/DWG format.

During the Repair and Maintenance phase, the Project Manager will forward a request from time-to-time to the Consultants to prepare an A3 print(s) of the Site Layout Plan, which will be submitted as part of a report to Department of Public Works.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SC GENERAL DECOMMISSIONING, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING PROCEDURES

CONTENTS

SC 01	SCOPE
SC 02	PHASED REPAIRS AND UPGRADING OF THE INSTALLATION
SC 03	DETAILED COMMISSIONING PROGRAMME
SC 04	COMMISSIONING COMMUNICATION CHANNELS
SC 05	COMMISSIONING RISK CONTROL AND PENALTIES
SC 06	DELAYS TO SCHEDULED SHUTDOWNS
SC 07	MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT PROCUREMENT AND PROTECTION
SC 08	TESTING OF EQUIPMENT PRIOR TO RECOMMISSIONING
SC 09	TESTING OF MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT SPECIFICATIONS AND WORKMANSHIP
SC 10	DECOMMISSIONING
SC 11	RECOMMISSIONING, COMMISSIONING AND COMPLETION OF INSTALLATIONS
SC 12	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SC 01 SCOPE

This specification encompasses all aspects of the repairs of systems and services that form part of an installation, including the factory and on-site testing, decommissioning, installation and commissioning of all equipment, instrumentation and materials reconditioned, supplied and installed as part of an installation as defined in Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.

The specified procedures are the minimum requirements to be supplemented by various technical and particular specifications in this document. These requirements shall apply to all commissioning work scheduled as part of the initial repair work on installations, as well as commissioning work that is part of the routine preventive and corrective maintenance.

SC 02 PHASED REPAIRS AND UPGRADING OF THE INSTALLATION

When an installation consists of parallel systems or components, the complete installation and all its components shall be repaired without taking the complete installation out of commission at any time, unless otherwise specified in the Technical Specifications.

In order to schedule the repairs of an installation, all work shall be done in phases as specified in the Technical Specifications and illustrated in detail on the drawings. Repairs of each part shall terminate with the successful reconditioning of that part.

Each part of the system shall be decommissioned and recommissioned in the sequence specified in the Technical Specifications and on the drawings.

The Contractor shall install all the necessary temporary specials, spool pieces, supporting frames and brackets to provide a functional link between each repaired and upgraded part of the system and the part of the installation that has not yet been repaired and upgraded during recommissioning. Electrical and instrumentation Contractors and subcontractors shall ensure

that the system remains operational as specified, using either existing or newly installed instruments, cables and controls.

Payment is based on the successful recommissioning of a specific part of the installation.

SC 03 DETAILED COMMISSIONING PROGRAMME

No work of any kind on any part of the existing installation shall take place prior to the Engineer's approval of a detailed commissioning programme. This programme shall be submitted in addition to the general programme for planning and monitoring contract progress, at least two weeks prior to any programmed shutdown. The programme shall be the coordinated product of the Engineer and the User Department. Commissioning programmes shall take all process requirements into account. The detailed commissioning programme shall indicate all actions necessary for:

- (a) Decommissioning
- (b) Recommissioning of parts of the installation
- (c) Commissioning of the installation as a whole.

All work deemed necessary for practical completion of the installation shall be indicated on the commissioning programme.

The programme shall indicate the milestones to be achieved before shutdown and decommissioning as activities of zero duration, all of which shall be prerequisites linked to the "start" of decommissioning.

The following specific actions shall be included in the programme, clearly indicating the time allowed for:

- (a) Communication, including the time for confirmation of the official shutdown;
- (b) Draining parts of the installation to sumps, where available, or to other storage facilities provided by the Contractor;
- (c) Installation of temporary blanked flanges or other means of isolation where necessary;
- (d) Partial decommissioning and removal of existing material and equipment to perform work, including protection of pipework against hot work, cutting into pipework, loosening bolts, flanges and all other work necessary for recommissioning;
- (e) Installation of temporary functional links (pipe specials) between any two parts of the installation;
- (f) Each individual field weld, subject to the Engineer's approval;
- (g) Non-destructive testing of materials, for manufacturing/construction quality and for producing test results;
- (h) Installation of all instruments and their connection to SCADA systems;
- (i) Installation and connection of all power cables;
- (j) De-aeration of all pipe sections;
- (k) Communication between the Contractor, the Engineer, the Employer and the User Client;

- (l) Start-up of the complete system, indicating start-up procedures.

Inspection of the prefabricated installation, testing of all equipment prior to final commissioning, pressure testing and non-destructive testing shall be clearly scheduled in the project progress programme.

Day 30 tests and instruction/training sessions with the User Department shall be scheduled in the project progress programme.

SC 04 COMMISSIONING COMMUNICATION CHANNELS

The Contractor shall communicate with the User Department's operating and maintenance managers via the Engineer to finalise start-up after decommissioning in accordance with the specified procedures.

The following key parties shall be involved before and during shutdown and decommissioning of any part of the system:

Contractor: Site Agent

Engineer: Resident Engineer

Employer: Representative of Area Manager

User Department: Operating and Maintenance Manager.

SC 05 COMMISSIONING RISK CONTROL AND PENALTIES

- (a) The safety instructions stipulated by the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993) shall be adhered to at all times.
- (b) The Contractor shall not be allowed to work on any part of the installation without obtaining a commissioning check permit on the day of shutdown. A typical example of a commissioning check permit is included in this document, referring to the minimum required milestones to be achieved prior to decommissioning.
- (c) Payment reductions for exceeding the maximum permissible down-time during maintenance shall apply as stipulated in the General and special Conditions of Contract. This stipulation does not include shutdowns during programmed routine preventive maintenance work.

SC 06 DELAYS OF SCHEDULED SHUTDOWNS

Specific dates on which an installation shall be shut down for decommissioning shall be finalised during coordination meetings of all the parties involved, including the Engineer, the Employer, the User Department and the Contractor.

Although a date for each shutdown will be scheduled at the coordination meetings, the actual date of the shutdown shall be determined by the process requirements and user demands, allowing for a window of seven (7) calendar days from the date of the planned shutdown.

Prospective tenderers shall make allowances in their tendered rates for the shutdown to occur at any time during this seven-day period. No additional payment shall be due if the shutdown occurs within this seven-day period.

If the Contractor fails to commence with the shutdown and decommissioning of the installation

within the scheduled period, all additional costs arising from the shutdown at a later stage shall be for the Contractor's account.

SC 07 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT PROCUREMENT AND PROTECTION

It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure the functionality of all units of new equipment prior to decommissioning, before installation of any specific part of the system. If the equipment, whether free-issued or not, does not conform to the functionality specifications during pre-installation testing, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing without delay.

SC 08 TESTING OF EQUIPMENT PRIOR TO RECOMMISSIONING

The equipment shall be tested for functionality after pre-installation of equipment in parts of the installation.

- (a) The Contractor shall inform the Engineer well in advance of his intention to perform the first tests and start-up of equipment in order to allow a representative of the Engineer to witness the tests. The extent of all precommissioning tests and checks shall be agreed with the Engineer prior to commencement.
- (b) The Contractor shall first conduct his own tests of the equipment. When he is satisfied that the equipment complies with the specifications, he shall notify the Engineer that he is ready for the official tests on completion. The Contractor shall not conduct an official test without the Engineer's presence or approval. All equipment shall conform to the specified requirements.
- (c) Before starting up any part of the installation or filling the tanks and sumps with liquid, the Contractor shall clean out the tanks, pipes, fittings, equipment or structures and, if necessary, make arrangements with other Contractors to remove their building rubble from the structures, check that all safety devices and alarms have been set and activated, all nuts have been tightened correctly, that all the equipment is complete and ready for start-up, that the plant has been installed correctly, and that copies of the operating manuals have been handed to the Engineer.
- (d) The Contractor shall start up each section of equipment after ensuring that oil fillings, lubrication, vibration monitoring, cable termination and so on have been correctly completed. He is also responsible for the first refilling of all lubricating oils and for adjusting the plant to operate according to the specifications. Before any equipment is started or energised, the Contractor shall ensure that it is safe in terms of the personnel and equipment on the site to do so. The Contractor's tendered rates and sums shall allow for these costs.

All equipment shall be tested according to the relevant specifications that form part of this document.

No shutdown or decommissioning of any part of the system shall take place unless all the equipment to be installed have been tested by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer.

SC 09 TESTING OF MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT SPECIFICATIONS AND WORKMANSHIP

All results of the required non-destructive, pre-commissioning and manufacturing testing shall be submitted to the Engineer well in advance of testing the equipment on recommissioning. All such test results shall be submitted before Day 1 commissioning tests and no certificate of practical completion shall be issued prior to receipt of the required test results.

SC 10 DECOMMISSIONING

The decommissioning period shall commence on the instant of the entire system shutdown. The recommissioning period shall start in parallel with decommissioning.

Shutdown and decommissioning shall not proceed without compliance with all the milestones in the detailed commissioning programme. The list of milestones in this document is not complete but indicates the minimum requirements. Milestones to be achieved prior to shutdown and decommissioning may be added to the programme at the Engineer's discretion.

The Contractor is responsible for the safe decommissioning of all material, equipment, components and instrumentation to avoid damage to parts or components of the installation.

SC 11 RECOMMISSIONING, COMMISSIONING AND COMPLETION OF INSTALLATIONS

SC 11.01 RE-COMMISSIONING

Re-commissioning means the commissioning of all sections or systems that form part of the installation to meet the required functional specifications for the individual section or system prior to commissioning of the repaired and upgraded installation.

The Contractor is responsible for the recommissioning of all parts of the system and he shall perform the tasks listed below.

- (a) Prior notice shall be given to and proper arrangements shall be made for recommissioning with the Employer, the Engineer, the User Client and the suppliers of equipment that is affected by recommissioning and testing.
- (b) If plant and equipment supplied by others are to be commissioned, the supplier's specific permission together with all requirements related to commissioning shall be obtained prior to recommissioning without in any way altering the Special Conditions of Contract with reference to the Contractor's liability in terms of defects.
- (c) The new and reconditioned parts of the installation shall be thoroughly inspected by a responsible representative of the Contractor to ensure that manufacture/construction and installation work have been completed according to the specifications.

SC 11.02 COMMISSIONING AND COMPLETION OF REPAIRS AND UPGRADING WORK

Commissioning means commissioning of the repaired and upgraded installation as a whole to perform in perfect working order.

- (a) The commissioning period for each installation as a whole:
 - (i) Commences with the Day 1 tests of the complete repaired and upgraded installation;
 - (ii) Includes commissioning of all sections and systems that have been recommissioned prior to the Day 1 tests;
 - (iii) Includes training of the User Department's operating personnel and the maintenance teams;
 - (iv) Terminates with a Day 30 test in compliance with the commissioning report.

- (b) The purpose of the Day 1 tests is to ensure that:
 - (i) The electronic, electrical and mechanical equipment and materials are functional and in perfect working order with respect to each other and the installation as a whole;
 - (ii) The commissioning period, including training, commences on successful completion of the Day 1 tests;
 - (iii) The Contractor is entitled to a certificate of practical completion for the repairs and upgrading of the installation on successful completion of the Day 1 tests;
 - (iv) The Contractor becomes responsible for maintenance of the installation and is entitled to performance-based payments in compliance with the Special Conditions of Contract and Additional Specification SA: General Maintenance.
- (c) Commissioning shall be undertaken over a trouble-free period up to Day 30. During this period the Contractor shall train the User Department's operators and his maintenance team for operating and maintaining the installation. This training shall allow for all possible operational conditions, including emergency conditions, the correct servicing of every part, the type of oil or grease to be used, and similar tasks. The training shall take place by means of demonstrations, and the operating and maintenance manuals shall be referred to for this purpose.
- (d) Day 30 commissioning tests shall be performed thirty calendar days after the successful completion of the Day 1 tests. The commissioning period of the installation terminates upon the successful completion of the Day 30 tests.
- (e) The Contractor shall conduct all the tests required to satisfy the Engineer that the installation is performing according to specification, and shall make allowance for these tests in his tendered rates and prices. These tests shall be conducted to certify that the installation, as repaired, upgraded and installed, is in perfect working order in terms of the specified functional requirements. The Contractor shall note that all equipment is to be tested as part of an installation, where appropriate, and will not be passed if all protection devices, interlocking with other equipment, etc, are not fully functional.
- (f) The Engineer shall provide commissioning sheets to the Contractor at least three weeks before the commissioning period commences, for all the equipment supplied, reconditioned and installed by the Contractor. The Contractor shall complete the commissioning sheets during the commissioning period and all items listed shall be entered. No completion certificate will be issued for an installation of which the equipment has incomplete commissioning reports. Information that is not available or applicable, or instances where certain tests have not been carried out, are subject to the Engineer's decision.
- (g) Commissioning of the plant (which includes the thirty days between the Day 1 and Day 30 tests) includes operating under conditions that adequately prove that all the specifications have been met. All safety devices, standby plant, automatic controls and protection devices shall be adequately tested for reliability and correct functioning. The Contractor may be called upon to repeat testing during the maintenance period if the performance of the equipment is suspected to be substandard. Costs related to such tests shall be for the Contractor's account and shall comply with the specified requirements. Copies of updated commissioning reports shall be provided to the Engineer within two days after a test has been performed.
- (h) The Contractor is responsible for providing all labour and materials (including testing equipment) during the commissioning period and shall carry out all the servicing and adjustments to ensure that the installation operates as specified. Valid calibration

certificates shall be available for all testing equipment on the site during the commissioning period.

- (i) Programmes for the Day 1 tests, Day 30 tests and instruction/training sessions with the User Department's operators and maintenance team shall be prepared by the Contractor and submitted to the Engineer at least two weeks before the commissioning period commences. The Contractor shall provide weekly updates of these schedules for the duration of the commissioning period.
- (j) The Contractor shall note that if any equipment fails during the commissioning period, the equipment shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor, and testing and commissioning shall commence from scratch.
- (k) Successful commissioning of an installation entitles the Contractor to a certificate of completion for the installation.

SC 12 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SC.01 Decommissioning and removing parts of the installation.....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for all actions and labour required for shutdown and decommissioning of the entire installation as specified to enable decommissioning and removal of parts of the installation as listed in the Schedule of Quantities.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the decommissioning and removal of the parts and components of an installation as listed individually in the Schedule of Quantities, including actions and/or costs resulting from such work, to enable the recommissioning of parts of the repaired and/or upgraded installation.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for final dismantling of decommissioned materials and equipment and the removal of all such items to stores on site, as directed by the Engineer.

SC.02 Commissioning and testing of parts of the installation.....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for commissioning and testing parts of the installation to be operational while still incomplete in relation to the entire repaired and/or upgraded system or installation.

Separate payment items shall be scheduled for separate parts of the system.

SC.03 Commissioning and testing of the installation.....Unit: sum

The unit of measurement shall be a sum.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for commissioning the upgraded installation as a whole and for all costs and expenses related to labour, removal, repair, reinstallation and testing of material and equipment during the commissioning period for each part of the installation. The tendered sum shall include full compensation for the final commissioning and

testing, including Day 1 and Day 30 tests, of all parts and components of the installation to the specified functional condition.

Payment shall be based on successful completion of the Day 30 tests.

SC.04

Provision for safety and hot work requirements

during shutdown Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of shutdowns during which all the required safety and hot work requirements are provided.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all the required safety and hot work requirements and arrangements in accordance with the specifications during a shutdown period, including all labour, personnel, equipment, materials and consumables required.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SD GENERAL TRAINING

CONTENTS

SD 01	SCOPE
SD 02	BASIC METHOD REQUIREMENT
SD 03	TRAINING OF USER CLIENT PERSONNEL
SD 04	TRAINING OF MAINTENANCE PERSONNEL

SD 01 SCOPE

The Contractor shall be responsible for providing diverse training to various groups, including operating and maintenance personnel. The Contractor shall develop and facilitate initial training sessions for all parties, as well as training sessions at specified intervals to revive and supplement the initial training. An accredited trainer shall present all training sessions.

This specification includes all requirements for methods to be employed, the syllabus required by the User Client, the syllabus required for maintenance managers and workers and the method of measurement and payment.

SD 02 BASIC METHOD REQUIREMENT

The Contractor shall be responsible for conducting a complete investigation of the groups that have to be trained in order to compile a proper training plan.

The investigation shall cover at least the following aspects:

- (a) Assess likelihood of conformance to task-specific requirements (*status quo*) of capabilities.
- (b) Identify minimum pre-qualification criteria in terms of existing knowledge and skill levels in relation to reaching target requirements.
- (c) Evaluate personnel in terms of pre-qualification criteria and tasks to be performed (skills profile).
- (d) Identify training needs.
- (e) Develop appropriate and accredited training courses and material in terms of task-specific activities and identified training needs, and compile the training syllabus per installation.

The Contractor shall identify an accredited trainer to assist in the above investigation and finalise the compilation of a training plan and syllabus. Approval of the syllabus shall be a condition for issue of a Certificate of Practical Completion for repair of an installation. Once the training plan and syllabus have been approved the Contractor shall liaise with the Engineer to establish a date and appropriate training venue that would be conducive to learning to perform training.

The training shall be revived within one month after initial training to determine its effectiveness. Further regular training sessions shall be scheduled according to the effectiveness of initial training.

The Engineer will be responsible for recording all training sessions and shall keep an attendance register. The Engineer will also examine the trainees officially with each training session and issue certificates of trainees' acquired skills on satisfactory completion of the training.

SD 03 TRAINING OF USER CLIENT PERSONNEL

The Contractor's training shall include training of the User Client's operators on biannual basis to acquaint them with operating of installations (especially electrical and mechanical systems). The training sessions shall comprise lectures and on-site (hands-on) demonstrations, and shall be conducted over two-day periods. The Contractor shall liaise with the Engineer to prepare for the correct number of trainee operators.

The content of training courses for operators shall include the essential features of operating the installation, as also described in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

Completion of an installation shall, in terms of the Special Conditions of Contract, be subject to successful completion of training. The training course shall also be based on the Operating and Maintenance Manuals. No training shall commence without the Engineer's approval of the final draft Operating and Maintenance Manual for the particular installation.

SD 04 TRAINING OF MAINTENANCE PERSONNEL

The Contractor shall train either his own employees, or local labourers, with regard to maintenance of the installation.

The training of maintenance managers shall include the following aspects:

- (a) Awareness of safety, health and personal hygiene in terms of the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993);
- (b) functioning of the installation, including all its systems, services, parts of buildings and infrastructure;
- (c) all specific tasks related to routine preventative maintenance;
- (d) interpretation and understanding of Operating and Maintenance Manuals with specific reference to requirements in cases of corrective and breakdown maintenance, and
- (e) repair/reconditioning and installation/construction of equipment and materials forming part of an installation.

SD 05 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**SD.01 Development of a syllabus for training of operators Unit: sum**

The unit of measurement shall be the lump sum for the compilation of a training syllabus for each installation that shall be measured separately in the Schedule of Quantities.

The tendered sum shall include full compensation for identification of pre-qualification criteria and training needs, staff assessment and evaluation prior to training, all technical research, development and compilation of an accredited training course and course material, and all other actions necessary for commencement of official training sessions in accordance with the specification.

The tendered sum shall also include full compensation for the compilation of a draft syllabus and for incorporation of all the Engineer's comments and corrective requirements.

SD.02 Presenting a training course for operators Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of training courses presented based on the approved syllabus.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for presenting a two-day training course, including lectures, demonstrations, on-site training and hands-on development and improvement of operators' skills to enable the operators to operate installations safely and efficiently.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the Contractor's time, appointment of the accredited trainer for the course, and for all material expenses such as paper hand-outs and slides for the whole group of trainees, the number of which shall be determined during development of the training course.

SD.03 Presenting a training course for maintenance personnel Unit: number

The unit of measurement shall be the number of training courses presented.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for presenting a two-day training course, including lectures, demonstrations, on-site training and hands-on development, and improvement of maintenance personnel's skills to enable them to maintain and repair installations safely and efficiently at the satisfactory functional condition specified.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the Contractor's time, appointment of the accredited trainer for the course, and for all material expenses such as paper hand-outs and slides for the whole group of trainees, the number of which shall be determined during development of the training course.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SF GENERAL OPERATION

CONTENTS

SF 01	SCOPE
SF 02	OPERATION REQUIREMENTS
SF 03	OPERATION CONTROL
SF 04	COMMUNICATION
SF 05	PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT
SF 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SF 01 SCOPE

Operation of the specified systems, services or equipment shall all be referred to as "Operation of an Installation". Operation of an installation shall ensure effective functioning and optimum operational condition thereof. Monthly operation responsibilities for each installation including all units and components as specified shall commence with access to the installation.

Operation of an installation shall be performed in accordance with the Technical and Particular Specifications and the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

Remuneration for operating "installations" (systems, services and equipment) is provided for in the Bills of Quantities by means of monthly payment items, depending on the score achieved by the operators.

This Additional Specification covers operation requirements, site operation administration, communication operation performance measurement, as well as the items for measurement of the Contractor's service level and resulting payment.

SF 02 OPERATION REQUIREMENTS

SF 02.01 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

The Contractor shall operate the complete installation for the 36-month Contract period.

Operation implies and shall include hourly operation, daily operation (night and day), weekly as well as monthly operation on all components of the specified installations, *including* public holidays and non-working days.

The Contractor shall operate the equipment as detailed in the Technical and Particular Specifications and the operation and maintenance manuals. Each operational function, task, test or action shall be recorded in an approved format and listed in a quarterly report by the Contractor.

As part of the repair of each installation, the Contractor shall submit a set of Operating and Maintenance Manuals where applicable. The Contractor shall ensure through training that the operating and maintenance personnel are conversant with the instructions as presented in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals. Continued training shall be

included in the scope of operation work for the duration of the 36-month Contract, in accordance with Additional Specification SD: General Training.

The Operating and Maintenance Manuals, as approved by the Engineer, shall be used as a basis of hourly, daily, weekly and monthly operations. The Contractor shall perform all operational tasks as described in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

SF 02.04 COMPONENTS INCLUDED IN OPERATION SCOPE

The main sections of a facility with their subsections are as set out in the Technical Specifications and Particular Specifications where applicable and in the Bill of Quantities and will each be deemed "an installation". Operation, as specified, will be applicable to all of the installations listed in the Bill of Quantities under the "OPERATION" section

SF 02.05 COMMENCEMENT OF OPERATION PERIOD

Operation responsibilities for an installation shall include operation of all individual units, equipment or components thereof, and shall commence with access to the installation.

SF 02.09 SITE OPERATION RECORD KEEPING

The Contractor shall provide and maintain hard-cover A4 Operation files for each installation that needs to be operated for the duration of the Contract. All schedules, checklists, actions, tasks, reports, hourly, daily and monthly operational records and quarterly reports shall be filed.

Site operation records shall be submitted to the Engineer at each monthly meeting.

These files will become the property of the Department of Public Works after the completion of the 36 months contract.

SF 02.10 SUPPLY OF LABOUR, EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

SF 02.10.01 Labour (qualified where necessary)

Competent personnel (qualified where necessary) that have been trained by the Contractor or external training authority, in accordance with Additional Specification SD: General Training shall execute all operational work.

SF 02.10.02 Equipment

All tools and equipment required for operation work shall be supplied by the Contractor at his cost (except where otherwise provided).

SF 02.10.03 Material

All material, equipment, testing equipment, protective clothing and appurtenances necessary for the complete operation of each installation shall be supplied and installed by the Contractor at his cost. Remuneration for *maintenance* actions and material shall be measured elsewhere in this document.

The technical specification of each specific installation to be operated, shall indicate whether the Contractor should supply other consumables (such as chemicals or coal) as part of his operation requirements.

SF 03 OPERATION CONTROL

Operation quality control shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall introduce his own quality assurance system to assist him in ensuring that hourly, daily and monthly operational tasks are performed as described in the operating and maintenance manuals and Technical and Particular Specifications.

SF 04 COMMUNICATION

The Contractor shall communicate in writing to the Engineer the following operational results on a monthly basis:

- (a) The quantity of ground water or surface water extracted and the total recorded as at the last day of each month.
- (b) The quality of waste water irrigated or discharged into the environment and the total recorded weekly (compiled monthly).
- (c) The quantity of the waste water by grab sampling, at the point at which the waste water enters the effluent disposal system.
- (d) Record keeping of activities as specified shall be up to date on a daily basis and available to the Engineer on inspection.
- (e) The quality of domestic waste water discharged into the environment.
- (f) Details of failures and malfunctions and details of measures taken to avoid environmental pollution.

SF 05 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT

The Contractor's performance shall be measured against the following parameters:

SF 05.03 PERFORMANCE-BASED PAYMENT

Remuneration for all value-related as well as all time-related preliminary and general charges shall be deemed included in the monthly operation payments for the various installations.

SF 05.03.01 Score-card

The Engineer shall inspect each installation monthly after access to the installation has been granted. The Engineer shall use a score-card to measure the quality of operational tasks rendered by the Contractor during the preceding month, on all components that form part of the installation, in accordance with the Operation specifications. The Engineer will record his inspection directly onto the score-card. The score-card shall serve to evaluate ten performance indicators each month in the manner set out below.

The Contractor shall always have the opportunity to score the maximum points, provided that his operation work complies with the Specifications. The Employer shall be protected against a reduced or unsatisfactory operational level and may refuse payment on such points.

SF 05.03.02 Performance indicators

Performance indicators shall be selected to measure the Contractor's service level of operation.

The Engineer shall select ten (10) performance indicators each month, which shall focus on the measurement of operation quality against the relevant specifications for the ensuing month. All ten (10) performance indicators are known to both the Engineer and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall aim to perform satisfactorily on all ten performance indicators. All indicators shall be selected from the scope of his normal hourly, daily and monthly operation work and shall be based on the operation control plan and operating and maintenance manuals. The work shall either be satisfactory, or unsatisfactory, and the Contractor shall score one (1) or zero (0) respectively per indicator.

Performance indicators shall be used to focus on certain key aspects of the work and shall in no way limit the Contractor's responsibility to do all the required work.

SF 05.03.03 Satisfactory performance

The Engineer shall inspect the site on an arbitrary day to measure the quality of operation against the ten selected performance indicators. Should the Contractor score the maximum points (10) he shall receive his full operation payment for the installation. Should the quality of operation be unsatisfactory according to the score-card, the Contractor may fail to achieve full payment due to a reduced service level. Each monthly payment for operation shall be subject to evaluation based on the score-card.

A copy of the score-card including a guideline for the use thereof is included in this Specification.

SF 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**SF.01 OPERATION OF AN INSTALLATION..... Unit: point**

The unit of measurement shall be a point. Each month shall represent a maximum of ten points and a minimum of zero points, depending on the performance and quality of operation. Ten points per month, determined by using the tendered rate per point, shall include full compensation for all liabilities and obligations described or implied in the Contract documents and deemed by the Contractor to be applicable to the operation of an entire installation, and all appurtenant works deemed to form part thereof, as defined in the relevant Technical or Particular Specifications.

The combined bid rate for ten points shall also include full compensation for complete hourly, daily, weekly and monthly operation.

Although ten points per month shall include full compensation for hourly, daily and monthly operation, the Contractor might fail to achieve all points applicable in the event of unsatisfactory performance, in which case he shall still perform all operation requirements according to specification, but at his own cost where a reduction in points awarded is insufficient to cover his cost.

Remuneration for all value-related as well as all time-related preliminary and general charges shall be deemed included in the monthly operation payments for the various installations.

SF.02

**APPOINT MANDATORY CLASS I AND CLASS II
PROCESS CONTROLLERS**.....

Unit: point

The unit of measurement shall be each month the stipulated number of process controllers has performed the duties as prescribed in the Contract and Technical Specifications. Each month shall represent 16 hours per day for 7 days per week. The rate tendered for the process controllers shall include all duties as required by the process controllers in terms of the Contract and Technical Specifications.

The item shall not limit the Contractor to the amount of personnel required to operate the works but shall be deemed the minimum requirement for the operation of the works as required in the Contract and Technical Specifications.

Any additional labour or process controllers required to perform any preventative or breakdown operation work shall be included in the Contractor's rate tendered for the ten operation scoring points per month.

The item shall be deemed mandatory and the Contractor shall be liable in terms of the ten operation scoring points per month to ensure that the required process controllers are appointed.

Remuneration for all value-related as well as all time-related preliminary and general charges shall be deemed included in the monthly operation payments for the various installations.

SF.03

**APPOINT MANDATORY CLASS III AND CLASS IV
PROCESS CONTROLLERS**.....

Unit: point

The unit of measurement shall be each month the stipulated number of process controllers has performed the duties as prescribed in the Contract and Technical Specifications. Each month shall represent 8 hours per day for 5 days per week. The rate tendered for the process controllers shall include all duties as required by the process controllers in terms of the Contract and Technical Specifications.

The item shall not limit the Contractor to the amount of personnel required to operate the works but shall be deemed the minimum requirement for the operation of the works as required in the Contract and Technical Specifications.

Any additional labour or process controllers required to perform any preventative or breakdown operation work shall be included in the Contractor's rate tendered for the ten operation scoring points per month.

The item shall be deemed mandatory and the Contractor shall be liable in terms of the ten operation scoring points per month to ensure that the required process controllers are appointed.

Remuneration for all value-related as well as all time-related preliminary and general charges shall be deemed included in the monthly operation payments for the various installations.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

MAINTENANCE SCORE-CARD

CONTRACT NUMBER: WCS



CONTRACT: _____

CONTRACTOR: _____

ENGINEER: _____

INSTALLATION: _____

MONTH: _____

OF 36

The following components of the installation were selected by the contractor at the Monthly Operation Meeting
nr. _____ as performance indicators to be tested according to specification:

1. ENGINEER'S SELECTION

- 1.1 _____
- 1.2 _____
- 1.3 _____
- 1.4 _____
- 1.5 _____
- 1.6 _____
- 1.7 _____
- 1.8 _____
- 1.9 _____
- 1.10 _____

0	1

TOTAL SCORE: _____

Engineer's Representative

Signature

Date

Date

GUIDELINE FOR THE USE OF THE OPERATION SCORE-CARD

The score-card and performance indicators must be used as an Operation management tool. The aim with each score-card is to ensure that:

- (a) the project focuses on key aspects of Operation per month;
- (b) the Contractor receives payment for his work, and
- (c) the Employer receives value for money and a sustained high level of service.

Performance indicators must be selected to measure the Contractor's service level of operation that will be based on the Operating and Maintenance Manuals (containing information specified in the Contract documentation).

For each specific installation, different performance indicators must be defined each month based on the content of the Operation in relation to the scope of Operation work per installation and must be based on the Contractor's service level record on operation.

The Contractor and the Engineer must agree on all performance indicators at an occasion prior to the month during which the Contractor's performance (service level of Operation) will be measured.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SH HIV/AIDS REQUIREMENTS

CONTENTS

SH 01	SCOPE
SH 02	MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS
SH 03	MAINTENANCE CONTROL
SH 04	COMMUNICATION
SH 05	PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT
SH 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SH 01 SCOPE

This specification contains all requirements applicable to the Contractor for creating HIV/AIDS awareness amongst all of the Workers involved in this project for the duration of the construction period, through the following strategies:

- Raising awareness about HIV/AIDS through education and information on the nature of the disease, how it is transmitted, safe sexual behaviour, attitudes towards people affected and people living with HIV/AIDS, how to live a healthy lifestyle with HIV/AIDS, the importance of voluntary testing and counselling, the diagnosis and treatment of Sexually Transmitted Infections and the closest health Service Providers
- Informing Workers of their rights with regard to HIV/AIDS in the workplace
- Providing Workers with access to condoms and other awareness material that will enable them to make informed decisions about sexual practices.

SH 02 DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

SH 02.01 DEFINITIONS

Service Provider: The natural or juristic person recognised and approved by the Department of Public Works as a specialist in conducting HIV/AIDS awareness programmes.

Service Provider Workshop Plan: A plan outlining the content, process and schedule of the training and education workshops, presented by a Service Provider which has been approved by the Representative/Agent.

Worker: Person in the employ of the Contractor or under the direction or supervision of the Contractor or any of his Sub-contractors, who is on site for a minimum period of 30 days in total.

SH 02.02 ABBREVIATIONS

HIV	:	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
AIDS	:	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
STI	:	Sexually Transmitted Infection

SH 03 BASIC METHOD REQUIREMENT

The Contractor shall, through a Service Provider, conduct onsite workshops with the Workers.

The Service Provider shall develop and compile a Service Provider Workshop Plan to be presented at the workshops and which will be best suited for this project to achieve the specified objectives with regard to HIV/AIDS awareness.

The Service Provider Workshop Plan shall be based on the following information provided by the Contractor:

- Number of Workers and Sub-contractors on site
- When new Workers or Sub-contractors will join the construction project
- Duration of Workers and Sub-contractors on site
- How the maximum number of Workers can be targeted with workshops
- How the Contractor prefers workshops to be scheduled, e.g. three hourly sessions per Worker, or one 2.5 hour workshop per Worker
- Profile of Workers, including educational level, age and gender (if available)
- Preferred time of day or month to conduct workshops
- A Gantt chart reflecting the construction programme, for scheduling of workshops
- Suitable venues for workshops.

The Contractor shall submit the Service Provider Workshop Plan for approval within 21 days after the tender acceptance date. After approval by the Representative/Agent, the Contractor shall make available a suitable venue that will be conducive to education and training.

The Service Provider Workshop Plan shall address, but will not be limited to the following:

- The nature of the disease;
- How it is transmitted;
- Safe sexual behaviour;
- Post exposure services such as voluntary counselling and testing (VCT) and nutritional plans for people living with HIV/AIDS;
- Attitudes towards other people with HIV/AIDS;
- Rights of the Worker in the workplace;
- How the Awareness Champion will be equipped prior to commencement of the HIV/AIDS awareness programme with basic HIV/AIDS information and the necessary skills to handle questions regarding the HIV/AIDS awareness programme on site sensitively and confidentially;
- How the Service Provider will support the Awareness Champion;

- Location and contact numbers of the closest clinics, VCT facilities, counselling services and referral systems;
- How the workshops will be presented, including frequency and duration;
- How the workshops will fit in with the construction programme;
- How the Service Provider will assess the knowledge and attitude levels of attendees to structure workshops accordingly;
- How the video will be used;
- How the Service Provider will elicit maximum participation from the Workers;
- A questions and answers slot (interactive session)
- The Service Provider Workshop Plan shall encompass the Specific Learning Outcomes (SLO) as stipulated.

SH 04 HIV/ AIDS AWARENESS EDUCATION AND TRAINING

SH 04.01 WORKSHOPS

The Contractor shall ensure that all Workers attend the workshops.

The workshops shall adequately deal with all the aspects contained in the Service Provider Workshop Plan. A video of HIV/AIDS in the construction industry, which can be obtained from all Regional Offices of the Department of Public Works, is to be screened to Workers at workshops. In order to enhance the learning experience, groups of not exceeding 25 people shall attend the interactive sessions of the workshops.

SH 04.02 RECOMMENDED PRACTICE

SH 04.02.01 WORKSHOP SCHEDULE

Presenting information contained in the Service Provider Workshop Plan can be divided in as many workshop sessions as deemed practicable by the Contractor, provided that all Workers are exposed to all aspects of the workshops as outlined in the Service Provider Workshop Plan.

Breaking down the content of information to be presented to Workers into more than one workshop session however, has the added advantage that messages are reinforced over time while providing opportunity between workshop sessions for Workers to reflect and test information. Workers will also have an opportunity to ask questions at a following session.

SH 04.02.02 SERVICE PROVIDERS

A database of recommended Service Providers is available from all Regional Offices of the Department of Public Works.

SH 04.02.03 HIV/AIDS SPECIFIC LEARNING OUTCOMES AND ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

Workers shall be exposed to workshops for a minimum duration of two-and-a-half hours. In order to set a minimum standard requirement, the following specific learning outcomes and assessment criteria shall be met.

04.02.03.01 UNIT 1: THE NATURE OF HIV/AIDS

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be able to differentiate between HIV and AIDS and comprehend whether or not it is curable. The Worker will also be able to explain how the HI virus operates once a person is infected and identify the symptoms associated with the progression of HIV/AIDS.

Assessment Criteria:

1. Define and describe HIV and AIDS.
2. List and describe the progression of HIV/AIDS.

04.02.03.02 UNIT 2: TRANSMISSION OF THE HI VIRUS

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be able to identify bodily fluids that carry the HI virus. The Worker will be able to recognise how HIV/AIDS is transmitted and how it is not transmitted.

Assessment Criteria:

1. Record in what bodily fluids the HI virus can be found.
2. Describe how HIV/AIDS can be transmitted.
3. Demonstrate the ability to distinguish between how HIV/AIDS is transmitted and misconceptions around transmittance of HIV/AIDS.

04.02.03.03 UNIT 3: HIV/AIDS PREVENTATIVE MEASURES

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will comprehend how to act in a way that would minimise the risk of HIV/AIDS infection and to use measures to prevent the HI virus from entering the bloodstream.

Assessment Criteria:

1. Report on how to minimise the risk of HIV/AIDS infection.
2. Report on precautions that can be taken to prevent HIV/AIDS infection.
3. Explain or demonstrate how to use a male and female condom.
4. List the factors that could jeopardize the safety of condoms provided against HIV/AIDS transmission.

04.02.03.04 UNIT 4: VOLUNTARY HIV/AIDS COUNSELLING AND TESTING

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be able to recognise methods of testing for HIV/AIDS infection. The Worker will be able to understand the purpose of voluntary HIV/AIDS testing and pre- and post-test counselling.

Assessment Criteria:

1. Describe methods of testing for HIV/AIDS infection.
2. Report on why voluntary testing is important.
3. Report on why pre- and post-test counselling is important.

04.02.03.05 UNIT 5: LIVING WITH HIV/AIDS

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be able to recognise the importance of caring for people living with HIV/AIDS and be able to manage HIV/AIDS.

Assessment Criteria

1. List and describe ways to manage HIV/AIDS.
2. Describe nutritional needs of people living with HIV/AIDS.
3. Describe ways to embrace a healthy lifestyle as a person living with HIV/AIDS.
4. Explain the need for counselling and support to people living with HIV/AIDS.

04.02.03.06 UNIT 6: TREATMENT OPTIONS FOR PEOPLE WITH HIV/AIDS

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be familiar with the various treatments available to HIV/AIDS infected or potentially HIV/AIDS infected people.

Assessment Criteria

1. Discuss anti-retroviral therapy.
2. List methods of treatment to prevent HIV/AIDS transmission from mother-to-child.
3. Describe the need for treatment of opportunistic diseases for people living with HIV/AIDS.
4. Describe post exposure prophylactics.

04.02.03.07 UNIT 7: THE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF WORKERS IN THE WORKPLACE WITH REGARD TO HIV/AIDS

After studying and understanding this unit, the Worker will be able to identify the rights and responsibilities of the Worker living with HIV/AIDS in the workplace. The Worker will recognise the importance of accepting colleagues living with HIV/AIDS and treating them in a non-discriminative way.

Assessment Criteria:

1. Discuss the rights of a person living with HIV/AIDS in the workplace.
2. Discuss the responsibilities of a person living with HIV/AIDS in the workplace.
3. Report on why acceptance and non-discrimination of colleagues living with HIV/AIDS is important.

SH 04.03 DISPLAYING OF PLASTIC LAMINATED POSTERS AND DISTRIBUTION OF INFORMATION BOOKLETS

The Contractor shall obtain a set of four laminated posters conveying different key messages and information booklets, which are available from all Regional Offices of the Department of Public Works.

The above-mentioned posters and information booklets have been prepared to raise awareness and to share information about HIV/AIDS and STI's.

Posters or display stands shall be displayed on site as soon as possible, but not later than 14 days after the date of site handover.

Posters shall be displayed in areas highly trafficked by Workers, including toilets, rest areas, the site office and compounds.

The posters on display must always be intact, clear and readable.

Information booklets must be distributed to all Workers as soon as possible, but not later than 14 days after site handover, or as soon as the Worker joins the site.

SH 05 PROVIDING WORKERS WITH ACCESS TO CONDOMS

The Contractor shall provide and maintain condom dispensers and make both male and female condoms, complying with the requirements of SANS ISO 4074, available at all times to all Workers at readily accessible points on site, for the duration of the contract. The Contractor may obtain condom dispensers from the Department of Health and condoms may be obtained from the Local Clinic or the Department of Health.

At least one male and one female condom dispenser and a sufficient supply of condoms, all to the approval of the Representative/Agent, shall be made available on site within 14 days of site hand over. Contractors should note that arrangements to obtain condoms from the Department of Health Clinics prior to site hand over may be necessary, to ensure that condoms are available within 14 days of site handover.

Condoms shall be made available in areas highly trafficked by Workers, including toilets, the site office and compounds.

SH 06 ENSURING ACCESS TO HIV/AIDS TESTING AND COUNSELLING FACILITIES AND TREATMENT OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS (STI)

The Contractor shall provide Workers with the names of the closest Service Providers that provide HIV/AIDS testing and counselling and Clinics providing Sexually Transmitted Infection (STI) diagnosis and treatment. Information on these Service Providers and Clinics must be displayed on a poster of a size not smaller than A1 in an area highly trafficked by Workers.

SH 07 APPOINTMENT OF AN HIV/AIDS AWARENESS CHAMPION

Within 14 days of site handover the Contractor shall appoint an Awareness Champion from amongst the Workers, who speaks, reads and writes English, who speaks and understands all the local languages spoken by the Workers and who shall be on site during all stages of the construction period. The Contractor shall ensure that the Awareness Champion has been trained by the Service Provider on basic HIV/AIDS information, the support services available and the necessary skills to handle questions regarding the HIV/AIDS programme in a sensitive and confidential manner.

The Awareness Champion shall be responsible for:

- 7.1 Liasing with the Service Provider on organising awareness workshops;
- 7.2 Filling condom dispensers and monitoring condom distribution;
- 7.3 Handing out information booklets;
- 7.4 Placing and maintaining posters

SH 08 MONITORING

The Contractor shall grant to the Representative/Agent reasonable access to the construction site, in order to establish that the Contractor complies with his obligations regarding HIV/AIDS awareness under this contract.

The Contractor must report problems experienced in implementing the HIV/AIDS requirements to the Representative/Agent.

SH.7

The attached SITE CHECKLIST (SCHEDULE A) shall be completed and submitted at every construction progress inspection to the Representative/Agent.

The attached SERVICE PROVIDER REPORT (SCHEDULE B) shall be completed and submitted on a monthly basis to the Department's Project Manager, through the Representative/Agent.

The attached CONTRACTOR HIV/AIDS PROGRAMME REPORT (SCHEDULE C), a close out programme report, shall be completed by the Contractor at the end of the contract.

HIV/AIDS PROGRAMME: SITE CHECKLIST

Name of Departmental Project Manager _____

[illegible]

[illegible]

SCHEDULE A

Date of progress inspection (dd/mm/yy) _____

Reporting period: (dd/mm/yy)_____ to (dd/mm/yy) _____

Deviations from HIV/AIDS awareness programme plan:

Corrective actions

Representative/Agent

Departmental Project Manager

Date

Date

SCHEDULE B

HIV/AIDS AWARENESS PROGRAMME: SERVICE PROVIDER REPORT

Reporting period: (dd/mm/yy)_____ to (dd/mm/yy) _____

Number of workshops conducted in reporting period _____

Number of scheduled workshops according to approved workshop plan _____

Deviations from workshop plan:

State reasons for deviating from workshop plan:

Corrective actions:

Service Provider

Contractor

Date

Date

SCHEDULE B

HIV/AIDS AWARENESS PROGRAMME: WORKSHOP CONTENT ADDRESSED

[illegible]

SCHEDULE B

HIV/AIDS AWARENESS PROGRAMME: ATTENDANCE REGISTER

[illegible]

SCHEDULE C**CONTRACTOR HIV/AIDS PROGRAMME REPORT**

Project name _____

Project Location _____

Contract value of project (R) _____

Department of Public Works Project Manager _____

HIV/AIDS Programme duration: (dd/mm/yy) _____ to (dd/mm/yy) _____

AWARENESS MATERIAL

Describe location of posters displayed during the programme _____

Comments on posters _____

Indicate total number of booklets distributed _____

Comments on booklets _____

CONDOMS

Indicate total number of male condoms distributed _____

Indicate total number of female condoms distributed _____

Describe where male condom dispenser was placed _____

Describe where female condom dispenser was placed _____

HIV/AIDS WORKSHOPS

Indicate the total number of HIV/AIDS workshops conducted _____

Indicate the duration of workshops _____

Indicate the total number of Workers that participated in the HIV/AIDS workshops _____

Indicate the total number of Workers that were exposed to the video on HIV/AIDS in the Construction Industry _____

Comments on HIV/AIDS workshops on site _____

GENERAL

Briefly describe programme activities and satisfaction with outcome _____

Additional comments, suggestions or needs with regard to the HIV/AIDS awareness programmes on site

Please indicate if your company has a formal HIV/AIDS policy focussing on HIV/AIDS awareness raising and care and support of HIV/AIDS Workers

Yes	No	Currently developing one
-----	----	--------------------------

Please indicate if, to your knowledge, you have lost any workers during the duration of the project to HIV/AIDS related sicknesses. One or more of the following might indicate an HIV/AIDS related death:

Excessive weight loss
Reactive TB
Hair loss
Severe tiredness

Coughing or chest pain
Pain when swallowing
Persistent fever
Diarrhoea

Vomiting
Meningitis
Memory loss
Pneumonia

Number of HIV/AIDS-related deaths _____

Contractor

Date

Departmental Project Manager

Date

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SI OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY (OHS ACT)

CONTENTS

SI 01	APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND REGULATIONS
SI 02	SCOPE OF WORK
SI 03	THE PRINCIPLE CONTRACTOR'S DUTIES
SI 04	THE PRINCIPLE CONTRACTOR'S SPECIFIC DUTIES
SI 05	THE PRINCIPLE CONTRACTOR'S SPECIFIC DUTIES WITH REGARD TO HAZARDOUS WORK OR ACTIVITIES

SI 01 APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND REGULATIONS

This document was prepared to guide the Agent in the compilation of a Health and Safety Specification in terms of Sub-regulation 4(1)a of the Construction Regulation as published under Government Notice R. 85 of 07 February 2014. The content of this document or the fact it was made available for the use of the Agent will not relieve the Agent of any of his obligations in terms of the act.

The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993) together with its applicable Regulations ("the Act") forms part of this Health and Safety Specification. Any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act shall have the meaning so assigned to it unless the context otherwise indicates.

SI 02 SCOPE OF WORK

All work forming part of this Contract is divided into installations.

Schedule 2: Corrective Maintenance Related Work

- Structural And Building
- Plumbing And Drainage
- Building And Site Electrical
- Fencing, Cleaning And Site Keeping
- Bulk Water Supply Systems And External Water Networks
- Wastewater Treatment Works And Sewer Networks
- Roads And Storm Water
- Heating, Ventilation And Air Conditioning
- Conventional Fire Fighting Equipment
- Incinerator

Structural and Building Works

- General structural repair due to operation damage, wear and tear work such as paintwork, replacement of damaged items, e.g. doors, locks, windows, etc. on all buildings
- Apply varnish to all exterior timber doors

SI 2

- Painting of roof timbers and fascia boards
- Repair work to two face brick houses

Plumbing and Drainage

- Replacement of missing or damaged toilette seats
- Replacement of damaged toilette pans
- Service of Cisterns and flush masters
- Servicing of all taps, valves, etc.
- Servicing and cleaning of geysers due to hardness salt precipitation
- Replacement of geyser due to hardness salt precipitation
- Repair work to two face brick houses

Building and Site Electrical

- Supply and install a cable to the chlorinator
- Power supply to the borehole pump
- Power supply to the pumps and equipment at the WWTW
- Service the HV Switchgear and transformers
- Replace the distribution kiosks at the park homes
- Lamp replacements
- Service distribution boards
- Replacement of faulty/damaged lights, light switches and socket outlets

Fencing, Cleaning and Site Keeping

- Installation of ablution block equipment
- Damage repair to fences
- Cleaning of fire break areas at perimeter fences

Bulk Water & External Water Reticulation

- Pressure cleaning the three existing boreholes that were drilled during the construction Contract.
- Test 4 boreholes.
- Connect one borehole for additional water supply and allow for repair of borehole pumps if required to ensure the recommend flow.
- Installation of a motor control centre for the army base borehole.
- Recondition existing motor control centres when required.
- Borehole pipe connections for four boreholes that will be utilised.
- Servicing of all type of valves.
- Replace all types of valves when required.
- Once off cleaning out of manholes in borehole pump line.
- Service manhole covers opening mechanisms on pumping main valve chambers.
- Supply, deliver and install new enclosure complete with roof and floor at the army base borehole as per drawing.
- Supply, deliver and install new enclosure complete with roof and floor at the reservoir as per drawing.
- Supply and Delivery of a Chlorination System.
- Compile operating and maintenance manuals to supply a complete set of operating and maintenance manuals.
- Repair of pipe lines when required, valves, sprinklers and manholes.

Wastewater Treatment Works and Sewer Networks

- Repair (When necessary) two sludge removal pumps in order to accommodate gravity sludge removal and to ensure a 100mm diameter solid passing through the pump
- Recondition existing motor control centres when required.
- Clean at raw sewer pump station
- Service motor control centre if required
- Servicing of existing flow measuring equipment
- Service existing pumps and motors when so required
- Cleaning out of rotating biological contactor
- Repair a leak in the biological contactor chamber.
- Service motor control centre if required
- Cleaning out of chlorination channel
- Service chlorinator
- Servicing of all types of valves if required
- Update existing operating and maintenance manual
- Commissioning and testing of the installation

Roads and Storm water Drainage

- Road marking and maintenance of road signs
- Replacement of damaged paving at residential area
- Repair exiting bitumen road surface at the residential area

Standby Power

- General servicing of the existing Standby Generators
- Provide diesel for the standby generators for the duration of the contract

External Lighting

- Servicing of the existing perimeter, street and area lights
- Bulk Lamp replacement

Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning Systems

- Servicing of all the existing air conditioners in the various buildings and residential units
- Replacement of air conditioners that are at the end of their life cycle at the park homes

Conventional Fire-Fighting Equipment

- Servicing of all fire fighting equipment
- Compile fire plans for operational buildings

Incinerator

- Servicing of burners and equipment of Incinerator
- Provide diesel for the Incinerator for the duration of the contract

SI 03 DUTIES OF A PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR

The Principal Contractor's duties in terms of this Health and Safety Specification are, but not limited to, the following:

(1) A principal contractor must-

- (a) provide and demonstrate to the client a suitable, sufficiently documented and coherent site specific health and safety plan, based on the client's documented health and safety specifications contemplated in regulation 5(1)(b), which plan must be applied from the date of commencement of and for the duration of the construction work and which must be reviewed and updated by the principal contractor as work progresses;
- (b) open and keep on site a health and safety file, which must indicate all documentation required in terms of the Act and the Regulations, which must be made available on request to an inspector, the client, the client's agent or a contractor; and
- (c) on appointing any other contractor, in order to ensure compliance with the provisions Act-
 - (i) provide contractors who are tendering to perform construction work for the principal contractor, with the relevant sections of the health and safety specifications contemplated in regulation (5)(b) pertaining to the construction work which has to be performed;
 - (ii) ensure that potential contractors submitting tenders have made sufficient provision for the health and safety measures during the construction process;
 - (iii) ensure that no contractor is appointed to perform construction work unless the principal contractor is reasonably satisfied that the contractor he or she intends to appoint, has the necessary competencies and resources to perform the construction work safely;
 - (iv) ensure prior to work commencing on the site that every contractor is registered and in good standing with the compensation fund or with a licensed compensation insurer as contemplated in the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Disease Act, 1993;
 - (v) appoint each contractor in writing for the part of the project on the construction site;
 - (vi) take reasonable steps to ensure that each contractors health and safety plan contemplated in subregulation (2)(a) is implemented and maintained on the construction site;
 - (vii) ensure that the periodic site audits and document verification are conducted at intervals mutually agreed upon between the principal contractor and any contractor, but at least once every 30 days;
 - (viii) stop any contractor from executing construction work which is not in accordance with the clients health and safety specifications and the principal contractors health and safety plan for the site or which poses a threat to the health and safety of persons;
 - (ix) where changes are brought about to the design and construction, make available sufficient health and safety information and appropriate resources to the contractor to execute work safely; and
 - (x) discuss and negotiate with the contents of the health and safety plan contemplated in subregulation (2)(a), and must thereafter finally approve that plan for implementation;

- (d) ensure that a copy of his or her health and safety plan contemplated in paragraph (a), as well as the contractors health and safety plan contemplated in subregulation (2)(a), is available on request to an employee, an inspector, a contractor, the client or the client's agent;
- (e) hand over a consolidated health and safety file to the client upon completion of the construction work and must, in addition to the documentation referred to in subregulation (2)(b), include a record of all drawings, designs, materials used and other similar information concerning the completed structure;
- (f) in addition to the documentation required in the health and safety file in terms of paragraph (c)(v) and subregulation (2)(b), include and make available a comprehensive and updated list of all the contractors on site accountable to the principal contractor, the agreements between the parties and the type of work being done; and
- (g) ensure that all his or her employees have a valid medical certificate of fitness specific to the construction work to be performed and issued by an occupational health practitioner in the form of annexure 3.

SI 04 THE PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR'S SPECIFIC DUTIES

The Principal Contractor's specific duties in terms of this Health and Safety Specification are specified in the Construction Regulation as published under Government Notice R. 85 of 07 February 2014. (Hereinafter referred to as "Construction Regulation, 2014").

The Principal Contractor is specifically referred to the following sub-regulations of the Construction Regulation, 2014:

Subject	Applicable sub-regulation of the Construction Regulation, 2014.
Definitions	1
Scope of application	2
Application of construction work permit	3
Notification of construction work	4
Duties of principal contractor and contractor	7
Management and supervision of construction work	8
Risk assessment for construction work	9
Approved inspection authorities	32
Offences and penalties	33
Withdrawal of regulations	34
Short life	35

The Principal Contractor will acquaint himself with these duties and will make provision in his Contract price for the implementation and supervision of these duties.

SI 05 THE PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR'S SPECIFIC DUTIES WITH REGARD TO HAZARDOUS WORK OR ACTIVITIES

The following hazardous work or activities were identified in terms of the Construction Regulation, 2014, and it is the duty of the Principal Contractor to ensure that the said work and activities are performed or carried out in terms of the relevant sub regulations of the Construction Regulation, 2014 and other applicable Regulations.

SI 06 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT

The Contractors compliance to the Occupational Health and Safety Act shall be measured against pre-set parameters relating to compliance to the Act.

SI 06.01 INSPECTIONS BY THE APPOINTED OHSA OFFICER

The OHSA Officer shall inspect the construction site at any time during the construction and repair work period. The Officer shall complete a score card consisting of the following parameters to ensure that the Principal Contractor provide and maintain as far as reasonable a working environment that is safe and without risk to the health of his employees and other persons:

- Safety Management
- Appointments
- Registers
- Facilities
- Incident Management
- Signs
- Contractors (Sub-Contractors)
- Activity / Conditions
- Personal Protective Equipment
- Electrical
- Housekeeping
- Site Establishment
- Records

SI 06.02 EVALUATION SCORE CARD

The OHSA Officer shall inspect each of the above indicated compliance criteria relating to construction and repair work for each type of installation.

The Officer will use a score card to measure compliance under the 13 Sections culminating in a total of 82 possible inspection items, depending on construction activities being executed.

The Officer will record his inspection findings directly onto the Score Card. Items that are not applicable to the site or construction work will not be relevant on the score card and each will have a maximum score of 100%. The Contractor shall always have to comply 100% to each section in order to receive payment for the point associated with that particular section.

SI 06.03 PERFORMANCE SCORE CARD

The thirteen performance indicators shall be recorded on the Performance Score Card and will be used to measure the Contractors remuneration for compliance to the Occupational Health and Safety Act.

The Contractor shall aim to perform satisfactory on all 13 indicators. Compliance shall either be satisfactory (full compliance) or unsatisfactory(less than 100% per indicator) and the Contractor shall score one (1) or zero (0) respectively per indicator.

A copy of the OHSA Evaluation Score Card and Performance Score Card is included in this specification.

SI 07 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

**SI. 01 COMPLIANCE TO OHSA REQUIREMENTS AND
CONSTRUCTION REGULATIONS 2014Points**

The unit of measurement shall be a point. Each month shall represent a maximum of thirteen points and a minimum of zero points depending on the compliance to the OHSA.

Thirteen points per month shall mean full compensation for OHSA compliance for work.

**DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS
PERFORMANCE SCORE CARD**
OHSA
CONTRACT NUMBER: WCS _____

CONTRACT: _____

CONTRACTOR: _____

ENGINEER: _____

INSTALLATION: _____

MONTH:

0	0
---	---

OF 36
OHSA Performance Indicators
1. ITEMS

	0	1
1.1 SAFETY MANAGEMENT		
1.2 APPOINTMENTS		
1.3 REGISTERS		
1.4 FACILITIES		
1.5 INCIDENT MANAGEMENT		
1.6 SIGNS		
1.7 CONTRACTORS (SUB CONTRACTORS)		
1.8 ACTIVITY / CONDITIONS		
1.9 PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT		
1.10 ELECTRICAL		
1.11 HOUSEKEEPING		
1.12 SITE ESTABLISHMENT		
1.13 RECORDS		
TOTAL:		

Engineer's Representative
Signature
Date

Construction, Repair and Maintenance							
ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION. SI OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH SAFETY EVALUATION SCORE CARD							
ITEM	DESCRIPTION					ACTION	
NO	ITEM	POSSIBLE POINTS	POINTS AWARDED	NO	ITEM	POSSIBLE POINTS	POINTS AWARDED
1	<u>SAFETY MANAGEMENT</u>			7	<u>CONTRACTORS (SUB CONTRACTORS)</u>		
1.1	Client SHE (SI) Specifications available on site?	1		7.1	Updated list of Sub Contractors available?	1	
1.2	Principal Contractors SHE Plan available?	1		7.2	Mandatory Agreements with all Sub Contractors on file?	1	
1.3	Adequate Risk Assessments available?	1		7.3	Safety File complete (appointments, risk assessments, safe work procedures, registers)?	1	
1.4	Safe Work Procedures available?	1		7.4	Sub Contractor's First Aider on site or alternatively	1	
1.5	Safe Work Procedures approved by Engineer?	1			First Aid Agreement in place with Contractor?		
1.6	Fall Protection Plan available?	1					
1.7	Notification of Construction Work available?	1					
2	<u>APPOINTMENTS</u>			8	<u>ACTIVITY / CONDITIONS</u>		
2.1	Contractor to confirm if there are any new appointments to be minuted	1					
2.2	Are all the appointments recorded and available in the Health and Safety File ?	1		8.1	Correct use of Scaffolding?	1	
3	<u>REGISTERS</u>			8.2	Correct use of Support Work?	1	
3.1	Fire Extinguisher (stores, site office etc.)	1		8.3	Workers working safely at Elevated Positions?	1	
3.2	Ladders	1		8.4	Safe Operations?	1	
3.3	Scaffolding	1		8.5	Barricading?	1	
3.4	Excavations	1		8.6	Roof work: Harnesses & Lifelines?	1	
3.5	Form / Support Work	1		8.7	Excavation: Shoring & Batter?	1	
3.6	Portable Electrical Tools	1		8.8	Manholes: Demarcated?	1	
3.7	Hand tool Inspection	1		8.9	Ladders Conditions?	1	
3.8	Personal Protective Equipment & Clothing (PPE & C)	1		8.10	Construction Vehicle Condition?	1	
3.9	Explosive Powered Tools	1		8.11	Haz. Chem. Substances Applications?	1	
3.10	Crane	1		8.12	Hand tools properly used and in good condition?	1	
3.11	Lifting Machines	1		9	<u>PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT</u>		
3.12	Lifting Tackle	1		9.1	Correctly issued (documented in file)?	1	
3.13	Construction Vehicles	1		9.2	Used correctly?	1	
3.14	Material/ Man Hoist	1		10	<u>ELECTRICAL</u>		
3.15	Hazardous Chemical Register	1		10.1	DB's & COC's?	1	
4	<u>FACILITIES</u>			10.2	Good Plugs / Earth Wire?	1	
4.1	Hygiene Inspection performed?	1		10.3	Electrical Leads / Condition?	1	

4.2	Toilets adequate and clean for workers?	1		10.4	Portable Electrical Tools?	1	
4.3	Change Area available?	1		11	<u>HOUSEKEEPING</u>		
4.4	Eating Area available for workers?	1		11.1	Good Stacking & storage?	1	
4.5	Washing Area available for workers?	1		11.2	Cement spillage control?	1	
5	<u>INCIDENT MANAGEMENT</u>			11.3	Dust control?	1	
5.1	First Aid Box adequate and available?	1		11.4	Placing of Sand / Stone / Bricks/ materials?	1	
5.2	First Aider on site & valid First Aid Certificate in place?	1		12	<u>SITE ESTABLISHMENT</u>		
5.3	Any incidents to report; (Annexure 1 report; recur/investigation; record to FEM)?	1		12.1	Office	1	
6	<u>SIGNS</u>			12.2	Stores	1	
6.1	"No Unauthorized Entry" Signs?	1		12.3	Fencing / Hoarding	1	
6.2	"Danger Construction Work" signs?	1		12.4	Access Control	1	
6.3	"Danger Lifting Operations" sign?	1		13	<u>RECORDS</u>		
6.4	"Hard Hats" sign?	1		13.1	OHS Act; OHS spec; Construction Regulations	1	
6.5	"Dust Mask" sign?	1		13.2	SANS 10085 (Scaffolding)	1	
6.6	"Ear Protection" sign?	1		13.3	Safety Rep. Inspections	1	
6.7	"Eye Protection" sign?	1		13.4	Safety Meetings (Toolbox Talks and/or Safety Committee)	1	
6.8	"Safety Harness" sign?	1		13.5	Employees Induction	1	
6.9	"No Smoking" sign?	1		13.6	Visitors Inductions	1	
6.10	Scaffold use: "Safe" or "Unsafe" signs?	1		13.7	Job Assessments	1	
6.11	"Emergency Assembly Point" sign?	1		13.8	Medical Certificates	1	
				13.9	Training Certificates (<i>Crane, Lifting Machines, Vehicles, Scaffold, Safety Rep., TLB, Water Cart, Grader, Excavator, Roller, Front Loader, Mobile Crane, Bob-Cat, Bomag, Wacker and Tipper Trucks</i>)	1	
				TOTAL POINTS TO BE AWARDED		82	
				TOTAL POINTS AWARDED		0	
				PERCENTAGE (%)		0.00%	
The Principal Contractor's Score Achieved is:		0.00%					
Compliance with Construction Regulations 2003 is SATISFACTORY / UNSATISFACTORY (delete which is N/A)							

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SJ COVID- 19 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY GUIDELINES FOR MANAGEMENT OF RISK ON CONSTRUCTION SITES

CONTENTS

SJ 01	SCOPE
SJ 02	SPECIFICATIONS, ACTS AND REGULATIONS
SJ 03	GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
SJ 04	DEGREE OF RISK PER SITE TYPE
SJ 05	RISK MITIGATION PLAN
SJ 06	MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SJ 01 SCOPE

This specification covers guidelines and requirements to reduce the risk of a COVID-19 outbreak in the workplace and the possible impact on workers and the public.

SJ 02 SPECIFICATIONS, ACTS AND REGULATIONS

SJ 02.01 GENERAL STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to the date of tender, of the following specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

CODE	DESCRIPTION
SH	HIV/AIDS Requirements
SI	OHS Act: Health and Safety
SANS 1200	Standard Specifications. A. General.

SJ 02.02 ACTS AND REGULATIONS

All regulations and statutory requirements as laid down in the latest edition of the following Acts and Regulations shall be adhered to:

ACT	DESCRIPTION
Act No. 85 of 1993	Occupational Health and Safety Act
	Construction Regulations, 2014
	Hazardous Biological Agents Regulation, 2000
Act No. 57 of 2002	Disaster Management Act
	COVID-19 Occupational Health and Safety Measures in Workplaces Covid-19 (C19 OHS), 2020
	Section 27(2) Regulations, 29 April 2020

SJ 02.03 MANUFACTURERS' SPECIFICATIONS, CODES OF PRACTICE AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

All equipment and materials shall be installed, serviced and repaired strictly in accordance with the manufacturers' specifications, instructions and codes of practice.

SJ 02.04 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS, LAWS AND BY-LAWS

All municipal regulations, laws, by-laws and special requirements of the Local Authority shall be adhered to unless otherwise specified.

SJ 03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SJ 03.01 IMPLEMENTING WORKPLACE CONTROLS

The legislation governing workplaces in relation to COVID-19 is the Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993) as amended, in conjunction with the Hazardous Biological Agents Regulation.

A COVID-19 specific risk assessment together with a written policy concerning the health and safety of all employees, clients, suppliers and sub-contractors who are associated with the Contractor, shall be drawn up and communicated to all the relevant parties, along with mitigation measures which need to be monitored and adjusted should the need arise.

SJ 03.01.01 WORKPLACE CONTROLS

- All offices (including site offices) will be sanitised before opening for business each day.
- Place posters that encourage staying home when sick, cough and sneeze-etiquette, and hand hygiene at the entrances of offices and sites.
- On-site induction with special emphasis on COVID-19 will be done with all employees upon return to work.
- Provide tissues and waste bins lined with a plastic bag so that they can be emptied without contact with the contents.
- Instruct employees to clean their hands frequently using soap and water, for at least 20 seconds or with an alcohol-based hand sanitiser that contains at least 70% alcohol.
- Continue routine environmental cleaning, which includes tools and equipment.
- Increase ventilation in offices by natural or mechanical means.
- Provide soap and water and/or alcohol-based hand sanitiser (at least 70%) in the workplace in multiple locations and in common areas to encourage hand hygiene.
- Practice social distancing (2m) as far as possible (no handshakes, hugs, kissing, horseplay or touching each other). Keep distance from each other while working on site. Supervisors will monitor this throughout the day.
- While queuing at the gate to enter the site, employees must stand in a line, with at least 2m between them.

- Desks for employees working in the office (site office) will be spaced at least 1.5m apart or where this is not possible, protective barriers will be erected between desks.
- It is compulsory to wear face masks at all times. Each employee will be issued with two cloth face masks to wear at work and while commuting, with appropriate training on the use of these masks. Arrangements will be made for the washing, drying and ironing of cloth masks.
- Temperature testing will be done on all employees every morning upon arrival to site, and also randomly during the day. All readings will be recorded, monitored and sent to the SHEQ department. The testing will be conducted by the site safety officer. On sites where a full-time safety officer is not available, the responsibility will fall onto the supervisor.
- During the temperature screening, employees will be screened for any additional symptoms such as body aches, loss of smell or taste, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, fatigue, weakness or tiredness. The results will be recorded in the Social Distancing Control Sheet and send to the SHEQ department. If an employee displays any of the symptoms, he will not be permitted to enter the site/offices.
- In addition to posters, brief employees and sub-contractors that anyone with a mild cough or low-grade fever (37.3 or more) needs to stay at home and take sick leave.
- Any employee who develops flu-like symptoms (i.e. cough, shortness of breath, fever) or any of the additional symptoms should inform his supervisor immediately.
- Where practical, the minimum number of employees will be allowed on site, and rotation, staggered working hours and shift work may be implemented. Promote working from home for employees who are able to do so.
- All visitors to site will undergo induction and temperature screening and must be in possession of the appropriate PPE (i.e. face mask) prior to being allowed access to site. No access will be granted to visitors not complying.
- All visitors will be required to sanitize their hands before entering the site as well as when they leave.
- Sub-contractors shall ensure that all of their employees are issued with face masks and any other necessary PPE, and that hand sanitiser and soap is available for their employees.
- Temperature testing will be done by the sub-contractor and records kept. Failure to do so will result in the sub-contractor's employee/s being put off-site until compliant.
- A copy of the Essential Service Permit must be available on site at all times. All sub-contractors to provide a copy of their Permit prior to being granted permission to work.
- All employees are obliged to comply with measures introduced in the workplace.

SJ 03.01.02 WHAT TO DO WHEN AN EMPLOYEE ON SITE BECOMES ILL WITH COVID-19

If someone becomes ill in the workplace and there is reason to suspect they may have contracted or come into contact with someone who has contracted the COVID-19 virus, the person must be isolated immediately, provided with a **FFP1 surgical mask**, and transport arranged for the employee to go home to be self-isolated or for medical examination. Ensure testing is done at an identified testing site.

The Department of Health and Department of Labour will be informed of any employees testing positive for COVID-19, whereafter an investigation will be conducted to establish the cause, including any control failures. The risk assessment will be reviewed to ensure necessary controls and PPE is in place. The risk of transmission will be assessed, the employees working area disinfected.

If an employee is confirmed to have COVID-19, his/her fellow employees will be informed of their possible exposure to COVID-19 in the workplace and referred for screening, but confidentiality must be maintained at all times, and no discrimination must be shown toward an employee who tested positive for COVID-19.

If evidence exist that the employee contracted COVID-19 as a result of Occupation Exposure, a Claim for Compensation will be lodged in terms of the Compensation of Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act 1993 (Act No. 130 of 1993) in accordance with Notice 193 published on 3 March 2020.

Once an employee was positively diagnosed with COVID-19 and isolated in accordance with the Department of Health Guidelines, the employee may only return to work after he has undergone a medical evaluation confirming the employee has tested negative for COVID-19. The employee will be required to wear a face mask, maintain social distancing and adhere to cough and sneeze-etiquette. The employee will also be monitored for symptoms upon his/her return to work.

SJ 03.01.03 TRANSPORT

- Where transport is provided, occupancy of the vehicle should be reduced in line with social distancing practice.
- All passengers must wear face masks or respirators.
- All passengers to sanitise their hands before getting into the transport, as well as when disembarking.
- Transport vehicles should be sanitised before and after each trip.
- Employees making use of public transport to ensure they wear face masks and sanitise their hands regularly (before getting into the transport and when disembarking) and attempt not to touch any surfaces unless absolutely necessary.

SJ 03.01.04 MEETINGS

Wherever possible, meetings are to be held via tele or video conference in order to maintain social distancing and prevent the possible spread of COVID-19.

Toolbox talk meetings, inductions and briefing sessions should be done in open areas with social distancing in place.

Progress meetings and technical meetings will be held in the site meeting building specified as 14 meter x 5 meter = 70m² to accommodate 12 persons. The conference table will accommodate 12 attendees, 2 meters apart. The room shall be well ventilated at a maximum temperature of 22°C.

SJ 03.01.05 TRACKING RECORD LOG

Example:

[illegible]

[illegible]

SJ 04 DEGREE OF RISK PER SITE TYPE

BUILDING AND PROJECT TYPE	SITE SET-UP AND STAFF WELFARE	CONSTRUCTION STAGE
Lower Risk	For most, but not all project construction stage risk may be as follows:	For most but not all sites, set-up risk may be as follows:
Industrial, Logistical, Roads and Bridge Construction	Lower Risk	Lower Risk
Medium Risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excavation and groundworks Foundations and Piling 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Large Sites
Residential Accommodation	Medium Risk	Medium Risk
High Risk		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Site and management offices
		High Risk
	High Risk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cladding and Glazing M+E and Lifts Interior First Fix Interior Second Fix 	
		<p><u>GUIDLINE</u></p> <p>For each construction site there will be different levels of risk and it will be critical to evaluate the specific risk of each individual project.</p>

SJ 05 RISK MITIGATION PLAN

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
Demographics of Labour: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inadequate procedures in place to identify potential infected employees and workers Manage the exposure to COVID-19 on the project, including visitors and suppliers 		CONTRACTOR

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Origin of labour and transportation</p> <p>Need to minimize the risk of exposure to virus whilst in transport</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>On site transportation:</u> Where on site transportation is done, a policy needs to be available for how such transportation will be made safe and limit any opportunity for cross infection. If possible, the Principal Contractor should provide their own transportation of work force. (Where not possible, use of public transport can be considered to comply to transport limitations) • <u>Parking areas:</u> Private and public vehicles are required to park outside of the construction site • Support staff for professional service providers are to work from office location or from home • <u>Education and information:</u> Information boards are required at entrance of sites and within Site Offices with information on the virus and precautions to be taken during working hours and traveling. • <u>Social Distancing:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ <u>On site:</u> As far as possible, work activities must be so arranged that social distance is kept to a minimum of 2 metre. ○ <u>Site office:</u> seating arrangements must be of such that social distancing for roll players is kept to a minimum of 1 metre, ie; '<u>ONE CHAIR. SKIP CHAIR. ONE CHAIR. SKIP CHAIR</u>'. ○ Roll players must be limited to Professional Team and principal contractor. ○ Facial Masks must be worn at all times by all roll players. ○ Contractor work force when on site and transportation to and from site, where hand gloves can be used, they should be worn at all times to minimize touching of possible contaminated surfaces and injury. 	<p style="text-align: center;">CONTRACTOR AND PROFESSIONAL TEAM</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Public transportation across borders/towns/cities</p> <p>Where a return to work will necessitate travel between Provinces and cities for employees and workers to return to the project, The Principal Contractor and Sub-Contractors are to have in place procedures for or provision of transport for the return of workers to minimize the risk of exposure to the virus whilst in transit.</p>	<p>The contractor to source/recommend a transport service provider that complies with all travel restrictions and requirements as gazetted by the government, inter alia:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum occupancy of vehicles to allow for social distancing • Vehicles sanitized before passengers board • Passengers provided with Face Masks and hand sanitizers provided within vehicles for passengers sanitization before boarding and after returning from vehicles for comfort breaks • Regular testing of body temperature • Adequate number of vehicles to be provided to comply with the maximum occupancy • Principal Contractor to put in place procedures for sanitization of personal belongings and luggage of work force on arrival at final destination • Permits to be provided per vehicle and per passenger from Authorising Authority 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>
<p>Social Distancing:</p> <p>Construction site and facilities not set up in such a way that it will be possible as far as is practicable to maintain the required social distancing of 2 metres between persons when at work</p> <p>Risk:</p> <p>Manual labour for physical tasks and tasks that will not allow for social distancing;</p>	<p><u>Tasks that require more than 1 person to complete:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Providing adequate supplies of suitable PPE such as face masks, task specific gloves, safety glasses, disposable/additional coveralls; • PPE used during multi-person activities to be exchanged immediately after the task is completed; • Sealed bins to be provided for disposable PPE such as masks, disposable coveralls, disposable gloves, etc.; • Sealable bags provided to each person for keeping PPE requiring laundering, such as gloves and coveralls, and • Sanitizing/washing facilities provided for immediate sanitizing of hard hats, safety glasses, shoes, safety harnesses etc, on completion of multi-person tasks 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Site access by non-employees/security access</p> <p>Inadequate access control measures in places</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop all non-essential visitors • All employees and non-employees to be screened with non-contact thermometers (Thermal Thermometers); • Body temperature checks with thermometer upon employee's arrival and departure; • Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times; • Take body temperatures of anybody stepping on or off site; • Monitor site access points to enable social distancing; • Number of access points to be reduced to enable controlled monitoring; • Ensure disinfectants are in place for disinfecting of shoes on entering/leaving the site; • Provide hand sanitizer for all entering the site to sanitize hands; • Allow social distancing of 2 metres in queues for all entering the site; • Regular cleaning of common contact surfaces areas, e.g.; desks, telephones handsets, site office door handles, chairs, etc.; • Drivers of suppliers of materials and goods and services must remain with their vehicles if load will allow it, if not, drivers are to wash hands before unloading goods and materials 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>
<p>Alcohol and Drug Testing</p> <p>Lack of safe testing procedures in place for alcohol and drug testing</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alcohol testing may only be done using single use test units, and must be disposed of in the appropriate contaminated waste bins provided on site; • Drug testing will only be done by an occupational health facility either using urine or blood sampling; • A protocol will be drawn up by the Principal Contractor to manage this with the occupational health service being used. 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Medical Surveillance</p> <p>No methodology in place as part of the normal requirements for pre-placement, periodic and exit medicals that includes factors related to COVID-19</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The normal requirements of pre-placement, periodic and exit medicals will remain, with the Occupational health service providing a methodology of how they will be including factors relating to Covid-19. No lung functions or peak flows will be done until deemed safe to do so by the South African Thoracic Society. • It is preferable that occupational health service providers use a cloud-based record keeping service to ensure easy tracking and tracing. Free apps such as Square 1 is such an example. • Any person who contracts the virus may need to be reported to the Compensation Commissioner as an occupational disease where their work is to monitor and in contact with others. Such details are provided in the Compensation for Injuries and Diseases Act (COIDA). • Isolation of workers who have a temperature or any symptoms, and removal to the closest facility for testing and treatment, through the numbers provided. The PC is to ensure their policy on this includes such information. • Workers will be required to complete COVID-19 questionnaires prior to returning to site. Any worker with any symptoms is not to return to work, or notify the PC of same. 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>
<p>Ablution Facilities on Site</p> <p>Unhygienic ablution facilities leading to poor hygiene</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restrict the number of people using toilet facilities at any one time. e.g. use a welfare attendant; • Hand washing facilities (soap and water, paper towel) to be available where possible, and if not, to provide hand sanitizer. Wash hands before and after using the facilities • Induction training to educate to ensure all users are hand washing correctly; • Enhance the cleaning regimes for toilet facilities particularly door handles, locks and the toilet flush handle. Flush toilets preferably 1:15 ratio unless increased cleaning regime present; • Portable toilets should be avoided wherever possible, but where in use these should be cleaned and emptied more frequently. Portable toilets to be provided at a 1:10 ratio; • Provide suitable and enough rubbish bins for hand towels with regular removal and disposal be cleaned and emptied more frequently; • Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times; • Consider increasing the number or size of facilities available on site if possible. 	<p>CONTRACTOR AND EMPLOYEES</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Waste Management for Covid-19 Waste</p> <p>Outdated waste management arrangements in place that leads to an increased risk of the spread of Covid-19</p>	<p>Waste management arrangements to be updated to include provision for the disposal of additional waste generated due to preventative measures implemented. All waste to be managed as hazardous waste.</p> <p>a. Disposal of any gloves, masks</p> <p>The contractor shall dispose of all used gloves and masks as hazardous waste and provide sealable bags and containers for the safe disposal of this waste.</p> <p>b. Paper towels</p> <p>The contractor shall provide adequate supplies of paper towels on site. At points where these towels are provided lined waste bins to be placed in order to collect all used towels and then to be disposed of in hazardous waste.</p> <p>c. Disinfectant solution</p> <p>The contractor to provide adequate supplies of disinfectant on site where the use of water and soap for cleaning is not practical. If disinfectant dispensers are not refilled it should be disposed with other hazardous waste.</p> <p>d. Wastewater</p> <p>Wastewater at washing points, toilets, and bathrooms to be contained in a drainage system that prevent surface spills. If wastewater is contained in waste buckets it must be sealed when removed and disinfected after it is cleaned.</p>	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>
<p>Site Meetings</p> <p>Not limiting the number of employees at all activities to the minimum required to do the work in a safe manner.</p>	<p>Only necessary meeting participants should attend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attendees should be two metres apart from each other. Rooms should be well ventilated / windows opened to allow fresh air circulation. Consider holding meetings in open areas where possible. Technological alternatives to be exploited for meeting Attendance if possible (Zoom, Skype, MS Teams). Training and awareness to address procedures and the importance of social distancing. Toolbox talks to be conducted outdoors when possible in order for persons to maintain social distancing. Where inclement weather does not allow for this, toolbox talks to be conducted with smaller groupings of workers in a sheltered area large enough to maintain social distancing. 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Signage</p> <p>Conflicting messages/notices displayed on the site in contravention with current requirements to respond to Covid-19</p>	<p>The Principal Contractor is to review all current signs and notices displayed on site. The PC is to avoid conflicting messages/notices that have been in place prior to lockdown and review accordingly.</p> <p>a. Access rules</p> <p>The contractor shall install additional signage with site rules specific to the prevention of spreading the COVID-19 virus at the access control points of the site.</p> <p>b. Notices/Posters with protocols</p> <p>Notices and posters shall be placed and installed to raise awareness and regarding protocols to be followed on site. These notices and posters shall be placed conspicuously at various points on the site including the following places:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entrance • Site notice board • Site Office • Eating areas • Next to toilets and bathrooms • Hand washing stations • Storerooms 	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>
<p>Emergency Planning</p> <p>Emergency plan not completed and undated in line with current Regulations of the National Disaster Management Act</p>	<p>An updated emergency plan is to be completed that is in line with the current Regulations of the National Disaster Management Act.</p> <p>a. First aid</p> <p>Extra gloves, and disinfectants are to be available, first aiders are to be issued with at least FFP2 masks should they be required to respond</p> <p>b. Evacuation plans</p> <p>Evacuation plans should consider social distancing.</p> <p>c. Isolation of potentially infected workers</p> <p>The emergency plan is to consider how anyone who arrives on site and displays any of the symptoms, or has a raised temperature.</p>	<p>CONTRACTOR</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
<p>Welfare facilities</p> <p>Lack of procedures and arrangements for the provision of welfare facilities to prevent the spread of Covid-19 between employees on site</p>	<p>The Principal Contractor shall adapt arrangements regarding the provision of welfare facilities to be in line with Government guidelines and requirements.</p> <p>a. Clean, storage for food and personal belongings</p> <p>The Principal Contractor to provide lockable storage for all employees on site, which shall be disinfected daily. Training and awareness to address procedures and the importance of good hygiene practice.</p> <p>b. No personal belongings to be kept on site</p> <p>Apart from extra clean personal clothing no other personal belongings allowed on site except if kept in locker provided by the Principal Contractor.</p> <p>c. No communal drinking facilities (shared cups etc.)</p> <p>The Principal Contractor to provide adequate supplies of bottled water to all employees on site. Empty bottles to be disposed of as normal waste. Training and awareness to address procedures and the importance of good hygiene practice.</p> <p>d. Eating areas</p> <p>The Principal Contractor is to limit the number of employees at all activities to the minimum. Stagger lunchbreaks and resting periods for work teams. Training and awareness to address procedures and the importance of good hygiene practice and social distancing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Workers are required to stay on site once they have entered it and not use local shops. Dedicated eating areas should be identified on site to reduce food waste and contamination. <p>Where catering is provided on site, it should provide pre-prepared and wrapped food only;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Payments should be taken by contactless card wherever possible; Crockery, eating utensils, cups etc. should be disposable if supplied; Drinking water should be provided with enhanced cleaning measures of the tap mechanism introduced; Tables should be cleaned and disinfected between each use; All rubbish should be put straight in the bin and not left for someone else to clear up; All areas used for eating must be thoroughly cleaned at the end of each break and shift, including chairs, door handles, vending machines and payment devices. 	<p>CONTRACTOR AND EMPLOYEES</p>

RISK DESCRIPTION	MITIGATION PLAN/ACTION	RESPONSIBILITY
Consequence Management Inadequate processes and procedures in place for consequence management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When non-compliance activities are noted, that activity will be stopped. Should the remedial actions not take place the site will be shut down till the corrective actions have been implemented. Employees that do not work according to the SSHSS and SSHSP must be disciplined according to the company's disciplinary codes and practices. Supervisory employees on site must ensure compliance, and when non conformances are noted disciplinary actions should also be followed. Principal Contractor's should note that they could be fined and even according to the Disaster Management Act, arrested. 	CONTRACTOR

SJ 06 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

SJ 06.01 APPOINTMENT OF A COVID-19 AWARENESS CHAMPIONUnit: Month

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of months the Awareness Champion is employed.

The tender rate shall include the training of the person on basic COVID-19 information and regulations and to ensure that the person has the necessary skills to handle questions and apply correct procedures regarding the COVID-19 regulations.

SJ 06.02 ARRANGING AWARENESS WORKSHOP..... Unit: Number

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of events arranged.

The tender rate shall include the cost of the service provider, suitable venue and all tuition material and performing assessment procedures.

SJ 06.03 PROVIDING PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT (PPE)..... Unit: Month

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of months the Contractor must provide PPE to all workers on site.

The tender rate shall include for face masks, gloves, tissues, towels etc. for all workers for the full construction period of 24 months.

SJ 06.04 PROVIDING SANITIZING/WASHING FACILITIES..... Unit: Month

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of months the Contractor must provide sanitizing and washing facilities on site for the total 24 month contract period.

The tender rate shall include for providing sanitizing and washing facilities for all construction workers at all the different construction sites for all PPE equipment as specified.

SJ 06.05 ADDITIONAL ABLUTION FACILITIES.....Unit: Number

The unit of measurement shall be for the number of facilities on the different construction sites.

The tender rate shall include for the construction of sanitizing and washing facilities consisting of a concrete floor area min 3 x 3 meter with 3 hand wash basins and IBR roof covering, including 5000ℓ water tank on stand, as well as soak away for grey water. The facilities to be maintained for the duration of construction at each site.

SJ 06.06 SITE MEETING VENUE.....Unit: Sum

The unit of measurement shall be for the additional cost relating to the site meeting venue building as specified in SANS 1200 and PS 5.4.

The additional rate shall include for the additional m² size of the building and furniture which will consist of a separate chair and an 800mm x 600mm table desk for each of the 12 places.

SJ 06.07 PROVIDE NOTICES AND POSTERS.....Unit: Month

The unit of measurement shall be for the posters and information notices and booklets to raise awareness and to share information about COVID-19.

The posters and notices must be maintained at places as indicated in Item 1.10.7 at all the different construction sites for the duration of construction.

SJ 06.08 PROVIDE SCREENING FACILITYUnit: Month

The unit of measurement shall be for the provision of a screening facility to accommodate workers daily at the start of every working day, including provision of infrared forehead thermometers and the maintenance of the equipment for the duration of the 24 month contract period.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SN IMPLEMENTATION OF LABOUR-INTENSIVE INFRASTRUCTURE PROJECTS UNDER THE EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME (EPWP)

CONTENTS

SN 01	SCOPE
SN 02	TERMINOLOGY AND DEFINITIONS
SN 03	APPLICABLE LABOUR LAWS
SN 04	EMPLOYMENT OF UNSKILLED AND SEMI-SKILLED WORKERS IN LABOUR INTENSIVE WORKS
SN 05	TRAINING OF EPWP WORKERS
SN 06	CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS IN RELATION TO LABOUR
SN 07	SETTING OF RATE OF PAY
SN 08	GENERIC LABOUR INTENSIVE SPECIFICATION

SN 01 SCOPE

This project is part of the Expanded Public Works Programme and aims to alleviate and reduce unemployment. EPWP will achieve this aim through the provision of work opportunities as part of the project. EPWP workers will be recruited and trained in skills relevant to the work to be done on this project. These workers will be employed by the Contractor as part of this project so that they can gain work experience on these projects. The Contractor will be required to manage, supervise and report on the EPWP workers, monthly, for a period of 36 months. Furthermore the Contractor will be required to supervise these EPWP workers to ensure that the work they perform is of the required standard.

Labour-intensive infrastructure projects under the EPWP include:

- using labour intensive construction methods to provide employment opportunities to local unemployed people;
- providing training or skills development to those locally employed workers;
- building cost-effective and quality assets.

The employment of locally employed temporary workers on all EPWP labour-intensive infrastructure projects must be in accordance with the Code of Good Practice for Employment and Conditions for Expanded Public Works Programmes issued in terms of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act N°75 of 1997)..

SN 02 TERMINOLOGY AND DEFINITIONS

SN 02.01 TERMINOLOGY

- | | | |
|----|---------|--|
| a) | BY HAND | refers to the use of tools which are manually operated and powered. |
| b) | EPWP | Expanded Public Works Programme, a National Programme of the government of South Africa, approved by Cabinet. |
| c) | DOL | Department of Labour. Labour-intensive refers to methods of construction involving a mix of machines and labour, where labour, |

utilising hand tools and light plant and equipment, is preferred to the use of heavy machines, where technically and economically feasible. (Note: The normal emphasis on the cost-effectiveness and quality of the asset must be retained.)

- d) Public body refers to a department, trading entity, constitutional institution, municipality, public entity or municipal entity
- e) Scope of work refers to a specification and description of the services or construction works which are to be provided and any other requirements and constraints relating to the manner in which the contract is to be performed

SN 02.02 DEFINITIONS

- (a) "employer" means the contractor or any party employing the worker under the EPWP Programme.
- (b) "client" means the Department of Public Works.
- (c) "worker" means any person working or training in an elementary occupation on an EPWP.

SN 03 APPLICABLE LABOUR LAWS

In line with the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) policies, the Code of Good Practice for Employment and Conditions of Work for Expanded Public Works Programmes read in conjunction with a Ministerial Determination for Expanded Works Programmes issued by the Minister of Labour in terms of Section 50(1) of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997 of which extracts have been reproduced below in clauses SN 04, shall apply to works described in the scope of work and which are undertaken by unskilled or semi-skilled workers.

SN 04 EMPLOYMENT OF UNSKILLED AND SEMI-SKILLED WORKERS IN LABOUR INTENSIVE WORKS

SN 04.01 REQUIREMENTS FOR THE SOURCING AND ENGAGEMENT OF LABOUR

The beneficiaries of the programmes should be locally-based (as close to the project site as possible) individuals prepared to work on the specific EPWP.

In order to spread the benefits as broadly as possible in the community, a maximum of one person per household should be employed, taking local available labour into account.

Workers from other areas may be employed if they have skills that are required for a project and there are not enough persons in the local communities who have those skills or who could undergo appropriate skills training. However, workers from other communities should not exceed 20% of all persons working on a programme. A proper skills audit should be conducted, where possible, in an area where an EPWP is in operation.

Programmes should set participation targets for employment with respect to women, youth, and people with disabilities.

The proposed targets are:

- 55% women;
- 40% youth from 16 to 35 years of age; and
- 2% people with disabilities.

EPWPs should seek to achieve these targets in all occupational categories. Persons under sixteen years of age may not be employed on EPWP.

SN 04.02 **SPECIFIC PROVISIONS PERTAINING TO SANS 1914-5**

Definitions

Targeted labour: Unemployed persons who are employed as local labour on the project.

Contract participation goals

- The specified contract participation goal for the contract is stated in the Scope of Works. The contract participation goal shall be measured in the performance of the contract to enable the employment provided to targeted labour to be quantified.
- The wages and allowances used to calculate the contract participation goal shall, with respect to both time-rated and task rated workers, comprise all wages paid and any training allowance paid in respect of agreed training programmes.
- Further to the provisions of clause 3.3.2 of SANS 1914-5, written contracts shall be entered into with targeted labour.

The definition for net amount shall be amended as follows:

- Financial value of the contract upon completion, exclusive of any value added tax or sales tax which the law requires the employer to pay the contractor.

SN 05 **TRAINING OF EPWP WORKERS**

The contractor shall provide all the necessary on-the-job training to targeted labour to enable such labour to master the basic work techniques required to undertake the work in accordance with the requirements of the contract in a manner that does not compromise worker health and safety.

Three types of training are applicable, namely

- Life skills;
- On the job training;
- First Aid training;
- Technical Skills training.

Training will be implemented by training instructors accredited by DOL and/or CETA:

- EPWP workers shall be employed on the projects for a minimum period of 12 months.
- EPWP workers shall be deployed on projects in the vicinity of their homes. The same arrangements as for other workers regarding accommodation, subsistence and travel shall be applicable to EPWP workers.

- (a) The contractor shall provide all the necessary on-the-job training to targeted labour to enable such labour to master the basic work techniques required to undertake the work in accordance with the requirements of the contract in a manner that does not compromise worker health and safety.
- (b) The cost of the formal training of targeted labour, will be funded by the provincial office of the Department of Labour. This training should take place as close to the project site as practically possible. The contractor, must access this training by informing the relevant provincial office of the Department of Labour in writing, within 14 days of being awarded the contract, of the likely number of persons that will undergo training and when such training is required. The employer must be furnished with a copy of this request.
- (c) A copy of this training request made by the contractor to the DOL provincial office must also be faxed to the EPWP Training Director in the Department of Public Works
- (d) The contractor shall be responsible for scheduling the training of workers and shall take all reasonable steps to ensure that each beneficiary is provided with a minimum of six (6) days of formal training if he/she is employed for 3 months or less and a minimum of ten (10) days if he/she is employed for 4 months or more.
- (e) The contractor shall do nothing to dissuade targeted labour from participating in the above mentioned training programmes.
- (f) An allowance equal to 100% of the task rate or daily rate shall be paid by the contractor to workers who attend formal training, in terms of (d) above.
- (g) Proof of compliance with the requirements of (a) to (e) must be provided by the Contractor to the Employer prior to submission of the final payment certificate.

SN 06 CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS IN RELATION TO LABOUR

The EPWP workers to be employed in the programme (EPWP) shall be directly contracted to the Contractor. Over and above the construction and project management responsibilities, the contractor will be expected to perform the tasks and responsibilities as set out in this specification.

Implementation of labour intensive practices under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is required to a value of not less than 10% of the tendered contract amount for wages paid to local labour.

SN 07 PAYMENT OF WORKERS

Employers must pay workers at least the minimum rate as stipulated in the Ministerial Determination: Expanded Public Works Programme

Workers can be paid on the basis of the number of tasks completed. These workers are referred to as “task-rated workers”. Alternatively, workers can be paid on a daily rate.

There are jobs where it is not possible to pay workers on the basis of tasks performed. These workers must be paid on the basis of the amount of time they worked. They are referred to as “time-rated workers”.

On the task-based system, a worker is paid for each task completed or part thereof.

If workers are informed a day before that work will not take place the next day, they should not be entitled to any payment.

Workers will be paid a training allowance in case they are required to attend agreed training programmes. This should be equal to 100% of the daily task rate for task-rate workers or 100% of the daily rate of pay for time-rated workers. All the costs of training will be covered, for example, travel, trainers, material, tuition fees.

Where a worker participates in a learnership, the relevant learnership determination must be used to determine the training allowance whilst on training.

Each worker must be given written particulars of employment and verbal explanations in an appropriate language of their rate of pay and how this is to be calculated.

Where a project is completed earlier than anticipated the worker should receive the full agreed remuneration for the stipulated period of the contract if the pay for the task was to be calculated on the basis of time. Where such work was to be performed on a task-based system, the full agreed remuneration for the task should be paid for early completion.

SN 08 **GENERIC LABOUR INTENSIVE SPECIFICATION**

The Generic Labour-intensive specification below is the same as SANS 1921-5, Construction and management requirement for works contracts- Part 5: Earthworks activities which are to be performed by hand and should be included in the scope of works without amendment or modification as set out below.

SN 08.01 **Scope**

This specification establishes general requirements for activities which are to be executed by hand involving the following:

- a) trenches having a depth of less than 1.5 metres
- b) cleaning of storm water drainage
- c) cleaning of roads and sidewalks
- d) clearing of fence routes
- e) cleaning and site keeping
- d) cleaning of buildings

SN 08.02 **Precedence**

Where this specification is in conflict with any other standard or specification referred to in the Scope of Works to this Contract, the requirements of this specification shall prevail.

SN 08.03 Hand excavatable material

Hand excavatable material is material:

- a) granular materials:
 - i) whose consistency when profiled may in terms of table 1 be classified as very loose, loose, medium dense, or dense; or
 - ii) where the material is a gravel having a maximum particle size of 10mm and contains no cobbles or isolated boulders, no more than 15 blows of a dynamic cone penetrometer is required to penetrate 100mm;
- b) cohesive materials:
 - i) whose consistency when profiled may in terms of table 1 be classified as very soft, soft, firm, stiff and stiff / very stiff; or
 - ii) where the material is a gravel having a maximum particle size of 10mm and contains no cobbles or isolated boulders, no more than 8 blows of a dynamic cone penetrometer is required to penetrate 100mm;

Note:

- i) A boulder, a cobble and gravel is material with a particle size greater than 200mm, between 60 and 200mm.
- ii) A dynamic cone penetrometer is an instrument used to measure the in-situ shear resistance of a soil comprising a drop weight of approximately 10 kg which falls through a height of 400mm and drives a cone having a maximum diameter of 20mm (cone angle of 60° with respect to the horizontal) into the material being used.

SN 08.04 Trench excavation

All hand excavatable material in trenches having a depth of less than 1,5 metres shall be excavated by hand.

SN 08.05 Compaction of backfilling to trenches (areas not subject to traffic)

Backfilling to trenches shall be placed in layers of thickness (before compaction) not exceeding 100mm. Each layer shall be compacted using hand stampers

- a) to 90% Proctor density;
- b) such that in excess of 5 blows of a dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP) is required to penetrate 100 mm of the backfill, provided that backfill does not comprise more than 10% gravel of size less than 10mm and contains no isolated boulders, or
- c) such that the density of the compacted trench backfill is not less than that of the surrounding undisturbed soil when tested comparatively with a DCP.

SN 08.06 Excavation

All hand excavatable material including topsoil classified as hand excavatable shall be excavated by hand. Harder material may be loosened by mechanical means prior to excavation by hand.

The excavation of any material which presents the possibility of danger or injury to workers shall not be excavated by hand.

SN 08.017 Clearing and grubbing

Grass and small bushes shall be cleared by hand.

SN 08.08 Shaping

All shaping shall be undertaken by hand.

SN 08.09 Loading

All loading shall be done by hand, regardless of the method of haulage.

SN 08.10 Haul

Excavation material shall be hauled to its point of placement by means of wheelbarrows where the haul distance is not greater than 150 m.

SN 08.11 Offloading

All material, however transported, is to be off- loaded by hand, unless tipper-trucks are utilised for haulage

SN 08.12 Spreading

All material shall be spread by hand.

SN 08.13 Compaction

Small areas may be compacted by hand provided that the specified compaction is achieved.

SN 08.14 Grassing

All grassing shall be undertaking by sprigging, sodding, or seeding by hand.

SN 08.15 Stone pitching and rubble concrete masonry

All stone required for stone pitching and rubble concrete masonry, whether grouted or dry, must to be collected, loaded, off loaded and placed by hand.

Sand and stone shall be hauled to its point of placement by means of wheelbarrows where the haul distance is not greater than 150m.

Grout shall be mixed and placed by hand.

SN 08.16 Manufactured Elements

Elements manufactured or designed by the Contractor, such as manhole rings and cover slabs, precast concrete planks and pipes, masonry units and edge beams shall not individually, have a mass of more than 320kg. In addition the items shall be large enough so that four workers can conveniently and simultaneously acquire a proper hand hold on them.

SN 08.17 Roads

The following operations may be carried out using labour intensive methods:

1. Site clearance
2. Layer work construction including loading, hauling and spreading material.

Note: All compaction should be done using conventional compaction equipment and where necessary the use of heavy machinery may be employed to loosen material for excavation by hand. Where significant use of blasting is indicated, then the Works are probably not suitable for labour intensive methods.

3. Where higher standards of roads are to be constructed then the following operations may be included:
 - Macadam base course either dry, water bound or emulsion bound; foamed bitumen gravel; emulsion treated gravel; or slurry bound or composite macadams.
 - Application of bitumen bound surface treatment (cold) including spreading and dragging of chips.
 - Slurry treatments to existing or new road surfaces.
 - In situ concrete roads
 - Segmented block paved roads.
 - Cast in-situ block pavements (hyson-cells);
 - Road markings.
4. Fencing.
5. Erection of road signs.
6. Grass maintenance.
7. Road reserve maintenance.
8. Rubble masonry bridges, culverts and retaining walls

SN 08.18 Storm water

The following operations may be constructed using labour intensive construction methods:

1. Gabions and reno mattresses.
2. Small diameter pre-cast concrete elements (pipes and arches).
3. Grassed or lined water channels

SN 08.19 Sewers

The following operations may be constructed using labour intensive construction methods:

1. Sewer manholes either in brickwork or using specially manufactured pre-cast manhole rings (individual mass less than 320kg).
2. Sewer manhole covers and lids using specially designed pre-cast units.
3. Maturation or flocculation ponds with least dimension not exceeding 100m.

SN 08.20 Water

The following operations may be constructed using labour intensive construction methods:

1. Laying of water pipelines, fittings and house connections in all materials (including steel) where the mass of individual pipe lengths does not exceed 320kg.
2. Construction of ferro-cement reservoirs.
3. Excavation for membrane lined and floating roof reservoirs.

4. Construction of small masonry reservoirs.
5. Spring and well protection measures

SN 08.21 Haul of Material

Where the haul of any material exceeds 200m, consideration should be given to the use of local resources for transporting material. This includes the use of animal drawn vehicles and small trailer combinations utilising locally sourced tractors. All loading and off loading can be done by hand.

SN 08.22 Electricity

The following operations may be constructed using labour intensive methods:

1. Excavation of trenches for reticulation of all voltages.
2. Excavation for and erection of poles for overhead lines.
3. Installation of all electricity cables (joints and terminations by qualified persons).

SN 08.23 Bill of quantities

Labour-intensive works is highlighted in the bills of quantities for the payment items relating to labour-intensive works (LI).

SN 09 REPORTING

The Consultant shall, before certifying a contractor's payment certificate, ensure that the contractor has submitted labour information in a format and timeframe specified by the employer. If the information submitted by the contractor is inadequate the consultant shall not submit the payment certificate to the employer for payment.

The Contractor's payment invoices shall be accompanied by labour information for the corresponding period in a format specified by the employer. If the contractors chooses to delay submitting payment invoices, labour returns shall still be submitted as per frequency and timeframe stipulated by the Employer. The contractor's invoices shall not be paid until all pending labour information has been submitted.

SN 10 MEASUREMENTS AND PAYMENT

The number of EPWP workers specified for this contract that will receive orientation and life skills development training is 15 and technical training is 15

SN 10.01 PAYMENT FOR EMPLOYMENT AND TRAINING OF EPWP WORKERS (TARGET: - 15 EPWP WORKERS)

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| SN 10.01.01 | Orientation and Life Skills development training for EPWP workers for an average of 10 days per EPWP worker.....Unit: PC Sum |
| SN 10.01.02 | Technical skills training for EPWP workers for an average of 20 days per EPWP worker.....Unit: PC Sum |
| SN 10.01.03 | First Aid Level 1 training for EPWP workers for an average of 5 days per EPWP worker.....Unit: PC Sum |

SN 10.01.04 Profit and attendance for administration of items 1 and 2 above..... Unit: %

SN 10.02 PAYMENT FOR TRAVELING OF EPWP WORKERS

SN 10.02.01 Travelling (based on return trip/EPWP worker) Unit: worker/ day

The unit of measurement shall be the number of EPWP workers transported from the nearest local community to the work place and back on a daily basis. The tendered shall allow for the cost of each worker to be able to safely reach the work place and travel back each day and shall be measured as a number for each worker per day.

ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATION

SS SITE SPECIFIC INVENTORY

CONTENTS

SS 01	SCOPE
SS 02	SITE LOCALITY INFORMATION
SS 03	DESIGN STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS
SS 04	SITE INVENTORY
SS 05	SCOPE DEFINITION
SS 06	ADDITIONAL SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

SS 01 SCOPE

This Additional Specification (**SS: Site Specific Inventory**) covers the inventory of the Boesmansnek, Ramatseliso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entries included as part of the contract in order to assist the Contractor with the scope of work regarding specific maintenance and servicing requirements, development of a maintenance control plan, site maintenance administration and preventative maintenance performance.

Additional Specification SS: Site Specific Inventory, should be read in conjunction with all other technical and additional specifications applicable to this contract.

The preventative maintenance and periodical mandatory servicing work to be performed and executed shall include, but not be limited to the items listed in this specification.

SS 02 SITE LOCALITY INFORMATION

Due to the size and locations of Boesmansnek, Ramatseliso and Ongeluksnek Land Ports of Entries, the Contractor should also refer to Additional Specification SA: Maintenance and Servicing regarding the frequency of site visits relating to preventative maintenance.

SS 02.01 BOESMANSNEK LAND PORT OF ENTRY

Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry including onsite staff housing, is situated in KwaZulu-Natal Province on the southern borderline crossing into Lesotho, approximately 170 km westwards from the nearest major city Pietermaritzburg in KwaZulu-Natal.

The GPS coordinate is 29°50'37.72"S, 29°12'42.46"E



Figure 2.1: Boesmansnek Port of Entry: Arial Photograph

The contract at comprises of maintenance and servicing work as specified in **PG-01.1 (EC) Scope of Works**.

SS 02.02 RAMATSELISO LAND PORT OF ENTRY

Ramatseleiso Land Port of Entry including onsite staff housing, is located in the province of Eastern Cape on the southern borderline coring into Lesotho, approximately 270 km westwards from the nearest major city Pietermaritzburg in KwaZulu-Natal.

The GPS coordinate is 30° 3'2.24"S, 28°55'59.72"E



Figure 2.2: Ramatseleiso Land Port of Entry: Arial Photograph

The contract at comprises of maintenance and servicing work as specified in **PG-01.1 (EC) Scope of Works**.

SS 02.03 ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORT OF ENTRY

Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry including onsite staff housing, is located in the Eastern Cape province, situated on the southern borderline crossing in to Lesotho, approximately 320 km westwards from the nearest major city Pietermaritzburg in KwaZulu-Natal.

The GPS coordinate is 30°20'35.08"S, 28°18'40.15"E



Figure 2.3: Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry: Aerial Photograph

The contract at comprises of maintenance and servicing work as specified in **PG-01.1 (EC) Scope of Works**.

SS 03 DESIGN STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS

PW371	Department of Public Works Specification: Specification of Materials and Methods to be used
PW347	Department of Public Works Specification: Civil Engineering Manual
SANS (various)	South African Bureau of Standards: National Standards
GCC	General Conditions of Contract for works of civil engineering construction (1 st edition 2004)
Plumbing Fixtures	Plumbing points such as toilets, wash hand basins, showers, sinks, taps, etc.
Electrical Fixtures	Electrical points such as lights, socket outlets, light switches, isolators, etc.
Call Centre	The National RAMP Call Centre
Colours (standardised)	External plastered walls: Barley Internal plastered walls: Tawny-Mink Steelwork: White Ceilings: White Window and door frames: White Roofs: Green

SS 04 SITE INVENTORY**SS 04.01 BOESMANSNEK PORT OF ENTRY**

The installations to be maintained under the maintenance and servicing contract at Boesmansnek Port of Entry shall

Civil Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		25	Buildings and structures
		668 m ²	Residential Area
		701 m ²	Operational Area
		110	Door Locks
		82	Windows fitted with blinds
		7	Stainless Steel Hand Dryers
		11	Stainless Steel Wall Mounted Bins and She Bins
		5	Stainless Steel Sanitizers
		8	Stainless Steel Soap Dispensers
		145	Taps and Valves
		26	WC Pans
		26	Cisterns
		26	Toilet Seats
		5	Urinals and Jnr Flush Masters
		38	Hand Wash Basins and Sinks
		7	Baths
		10	Showers
		16	Geysers
		15	Water Meters
		11	2.5kl Septic Tank connected to 12m French Drains
3	Fencing, cleaning, site keeping	3 106 m	Fencing with gates
		1	Borehole
		1	Pulsar Chlorination System
		1	Main Water Meter
		1	Pressed Steel Tank (12kl)
		10	Carports (6 single) & (4 double)
		260 m	Roads (concrete and paving)
		1 353 m ²	Concrete Areas
		1 950 m ²	Paved Areas
		150 m	Stormwater network

Electrical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		25	Buildings and structures
		32	Distribution boards
		62	Switch socket outlets (16A)
		29	Isolating switches
		9	Stoves
		96	Light switches
		96	Light fittings
		22	Perimeter flood lights
		12	Area lights
		10	Street lights
3	Power generation	1	125 KVA Generator – Stand-by only

Mechanical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		13	12 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		5	18 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		1	36 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		19	4.5 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers
		6	5.0 kg (CO ²) Firefighting extinguishers
		27	9.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers

SS 04.02 RAMATSELISO LAND PORT OF ENTRY

The installations to be maintained under the maintenance and servicing contract at Ramatseliso Land Port of Entry shall consist of:

Civil Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		25	Buildings and structures
		668 m ²	Residential Area
		701 m ²	Operational Area
		110	Door Locks
		82	Windows fitted with blinds
		7	Stainless Steel Hand Dryers
		11	Stainless Steel Wall Mounted Bins and She Bins
		5	Stainless Steel Sanitizers
		8	Stainless Steel Soap Dispensers
		145	Taps and Valves
		26	WC Pans
		26	Cisterns
		26	Toilet Seats
		5	Urinals and Jnr Flush Masters
		38	Hand Wash Basins and Sinks
		7	Baths
		10	Showers
		16	Geysers
		15	Water Meters
		11	2.5kl Septic Tank connected to 12m French Drains
3	Fencing, cleaning, site keeping	3 106 m	Fencing with gates
		1	Borehole
		1	Pulsar Chlorination System
		1	Main Water Meter
		1	Pressed Steel Tank (12kl)
E l e c t r i c a		10	Carports (6 single) & (4 double)
		260 m	Roads (concrete and paving)
		1 353 m ²	Concrete Areas
		1 950 m ²	Paved Areas
		150 m	Stormwater network

Electrical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		16	Buildings and structures
		15	Distribution boards
		27	Switch socket outlets (16A)
		13	Isolating switches
		5	Stoves
		47	Light switches
		47	Light fittings
		3	Perimeter flood lights
		3	Area lights
		2	Street lights
3	Power generation	2	130 KV Generator – Permanent Alternating

Mechanical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
1	Heating, ventilation and air-conditioning	8	9 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		3	4.5 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers
		2	5.0 kg (CO ²) Firefighting extinguishers
		19	9.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers

SS 04.03 ONGELUKSNEK LAND PORT OF ENTRY

The installations to be maintained under the maintenance and servicing contract at Ongelukstek Land Port of Entry shall consist of:

Civil Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		25	Buildings and structures
		668 m ²	Residential Area
		701 m ²	Operational Area
		110	Door Locks
		82	Windows fitted with blinds
		7	Stainless Steel Hand Dryers
		11	Stainless Steel Wall Mounted Bins and She Bins
		5	Stainless Steel Sanitizers
		8	Stainless Steel Soap Dispensers
		145	Taps and Valves
		26	WC Pans
		26	Cisterns
		26	Toilet Seats
		5	Urinals and Jnr Flush Masters
		38	Hand Wash Basins and Sinks
		7	Baths
		10	Showers
		16	Geysers
		15	Water Meters
		11	2.5kl Septic Tank connected to 12m French Drains
3	Fencing, cleaning, site keeping	3 106 m	Fencing with gates
		1	Borehole
		1	Pulsar Chlorination System
		1	Main Water Meter
		1	Pressed Steel Tank (12kl)
		10	Carports (6 single) & (4 double)
		260 m	Roads (concrete and paving)
		1 353 m ²	Concrete Areas
		1 950 m ²	Paved Areas
		150 m	Stormwater network

Electrical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		18	Buildings and structures
		19	Distribution boards
		51	Switch socket outlets (16A)
		21	Isolating switches
		11	Stoves
		60	Light switches
		60	Light fittings
		9	Perimeter flood lights
		5	Area lights
		3	Street lights
3	Power generation	2	130 KV Generator – Permanent Alternating

Mechanical Infrastructure:

No.	Installation	Number off	Description
		5	12 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		4	18 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		1	24 000 BTU - Air-conditioning units at various buildings
		5	2.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers
		5	5.0 kg (CO2) Firefighting extinguishers
		24	9.0 kg (STP) Firefighting extinguishers

SS 05 SCOPE DEFINITION

The description of the works given above is not necessarily complete and shall not limit the work to be carried out by the Contractor under this contract.

Approximate quantities of each type of work are given in the contract Schedule of Quantities.

SS 06 ADDITIONAL SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Additional site specific information, including asset inventory list, site specific information, bulk water and sewer installations and ablution facilities are attached to this Additional Specification SS: Site Specific Inventory.

SS 06.01 TRAVELLERS

Statistics for year 2023 to date		
	AVERAGE PER MONTH	
	Arrival	Departure
Boesmansnek	56	51
Ramatseliso	85	60
Ongeluksnek	7	6

SS 07.03 PORT OF ENTRY STAFF

Boesmansnek Land Port of Entry:							
STAFF	BMA	SARS	SAPS	DHA	AGR	HLH	TOTAL STAFF
Number	8		5				11

Ramatseliso Land Port of Entry:							
STAFF	BMA	SARS	SAPS	DHA	AGR	HLH	TOTAL STAFF
Number			11				11

Ongeluksnek Land Port of Entry:							
STAFF	BMA	SARS	SAPS	DHA	AGR	HLH	TOTAL STAFF
Number			11				11